

Repair Manual Audi TT 2007 >

Body Interior

Edition 07.2011



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

The erWin logo, featuring the text "erWin" in a stylized font with a small robot character integrated into the letter "i".

List of Workshop Manual Repair Groups

Repair Group

- 00 - General, Technical Data
- 68 - Interior Equipment
- 69 - Passenger Protection, Airbags, Seat Belts
- 70 - Interior Trim
- 72 - Seat Frames
- 74 - Seat Upholstery, Covers



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Technical information should always be available to the foremen and mechanics, because their careful and constant adherence to the instructions is essential to ensure vehicle road-worthiness and safety. In addition, the normal basic safety precautions for working on motor vehicles must, as a matter of course, be observed.

All rights reserved.
No reproduction without prior agreement from publisher.

Contents

| | |
|--|------------|
| 00 - General, Technical Data | 1 |
| 1 General Information | 1 |
| 1.1 Safety Precautions | 1 |
| 1.2 Lines, Routing and Securing | 1 |
| 1.3 Contact Corrosion | 1 |
| 68 - Interior Equipment | 2 |
| 1 Description and Operation | 3 |
| 1.1 Storage Compartments and Covers | 3 |
| 1.2 Center Console | 8 |
| 1.3 Parking Brake Handle Trim | 11 |
| 1.4 Center Armrest | 12 |
| 1.5 Interior Rearview Mirror | 13 |
| 2 Removal and Installation | 18 |
| 2.1 Storage Compartments and Covers | 18 |
| 2.2 Center Console | 25 |
| 2.3 Parking Brake Handle Trim | 33 |
| 2.4 Center Armrest | 34 |
| 2.5 Interior Rearview Mirror | 35 |
| 3 Special Tools | 37 |
| 69 - Passenger Protection, Airbags, Seat Belts | 38 |
| 1 General Information | 38 |
| 1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures | 38 |
| 2 Description and Operation | 52 |
| 2.1 Seat Belts, Coupe | 52 |
| 2.2 Seat Belts, Roadster | 58 |
| 2.3 Child Seat Anchorages, LATCH and Top Tether | 61 |
| 2.4 Airbag, Servicing | 64 |
| 2.5 Driver Side Airbag, Servicing | 67 |
| 2.6 Front Passenger Side Airbag, Servicing | 68 |
| 2.7 Front Side Airbag, Servicing | 69 |
| 2.8 Knee Airbag, Servicing | 70 |
| 2.9 Crash Sensor for Airbags, Servicing | 72 |
| 2.10 Seat Position Sensor | 74 |
| 2.11 Front Passenger Airbag Passenger Occupant Detection System, Servicing | 75 |
| 3 Removal and Installation | 77 |
| 3.1 Seat Belts, Coupe | 77 |
| 3.2 Seat Belts, Roadster | 84 |
| 3.3 Child Seat Anchorages, LATCH and Top Tether | 91 |
| 3.4 Airbag, Servicing | 94 |
| 3.5 Driver Side Airbag, Servicing | 99 |
| 3.6 Front Passenger Side Airbag, Servicing | 102 |
| 3.7 Front Side Airbag, Servicing | 106 |
| 3.8 Knee Airbag, Servicing | 108 |
| 3.9 Crash Sensor for Airbags, Servicing | 119 |
| 3.10 Belt Fastening Detection | 123 |
| 3.11 Seat Position Sensor | 125 |
| 3.12 Front Passenger Passenger Occupant Detection System, Servicing | 127 |
| 4 Special Tools | 132 |
| 70 - Interior Trim | 133 |



| | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|------------|
| 1 | Description and Operation | 133 |
| 1.1 | Door Trim | 133 |
| 1.2 | Instrument Panel | 135 |
| 1.3 | Central Tube | 139 |
| 1.4 | Trim, Coupe | 143 |
| 1.5 | Trim, Roadster | 158 |
| 1.6 | Roof Trim, Coupe | 182 |
| 2 | Removal and Installation | 185 |
| 2.1 | Door Trim | 185 |
| 2.2 | Instrument Panel | 193 |
| 2.3 | Central Tube | 200 |
| 2.4 | Trim, Coupe | 206 |
| 2.5 | Trim, Roadster | 224 |
| 2.6 | Roof Trim, Coupe | 242 |
| 3 | Special Tools | 247 |
| 72 - Seat Frames | | 248 |
| 1 | Description and Operation | 248 |
| 1.1 | Seat Versions Overview | 248 |
| 1.2 | Bringing Front Seats Into Service Position | 249 |
| 1.3 | Installing Front Seat On VAS 6136 | 250 |
| 1.4 | Manual Front Seats | 252 |
| 1.5 | Power Front Seats | 268 |
| 1.6 | Bucket Seat | 306 |
| 1.7 | Rear Seat, Coupe | 309 |
| 2 | Removal and Installation | 315 |
| 2.1 | Manual Front Seats | 315 |
| 2.2 | Power Front Seats | 337 |
| 2.3 | Bucket Seat | 392 |
| 2.4 | Rear Seat, Coupe | 406 |
| 3 | Special Tools | 420 |
| 74 - Seat Upholstery, Covers | | 421 |
| 1 | Description and Operation | 421 |
| 1.1 | Front Seat Covers and Padding | 421 |
| 1.2 | Rear Seat Covers and Upholstery, Coupe Only | 427 |
| 2 | Removal and Installation | 429 |
| 2.1 | Front Seat Covers and Padding | 429 |
| 2.2 | Bucket Seat Covers and Upholstery | 439 |
| 2.3 | Rear Seat Covers and Upholstery, Coupe Only | 443 |
| 3 | Special Tools | 448 |

00 – General, Technical Data

1 General Information

⇒ [“1.1 Safety Precautions”, page 1](#)

⇒ [“1.2 Lines, Routing and Securing”, page 1](#)

⇒ [“1.3 Contact Corrosion”, page 1](#)

1.1 Safety Precautions

For Working on Vehicles with a Start/Stop System

| | |
|---|--|
|  | <p>WARNING</p> <p><i>There is a risk of getting injured by an automatic engine start for vehicles with the start/stop system.</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ <i>For vehicles with an activated start/stop system (recognized by a signal in the instrument cluster), the engine can be started automatically if need be.</i> ◆ <i>Therefore make sure that the start/stop system is deactivated when working on the vehicle (turn off the ignition, turn on the ignition when necessary).</i> |
|---|--|

1.2 Lines, Routing and Securing

When removing and installing hydraulic and pneumatic lines or electrical wires, make a sketch or take a photo to remember the original installation locations.

1.3 Contact Corrosion

Contact corrosion can occur if incorrect fasteners (bolts, nuts, washers, etc.) are used.

For this reason, only connecting elements with a special surface coating are installed.

Furthermore, all rubber or plastic and adhesive are made of non-conductive materials.

If there are doubts as to whether parts can be reused or not, use new parts. Refer to Parts Catalog.

Note

- ◆ *It is recommended to use only original replacement parts as they have been tested and are compatible with aluminum.*
- ◆ *It is recommended to use Audi accessories.*
- ◆ *Warranty does not cover contact corrosion damage.*



68 – Interior Equipment



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 Description and Operation

- ⇒ ["1.1 Storage Compartments and Covers", page 3](#)
- ⇒ ["1.2 Center Console", page 8](#)
- ⇒ ["1.3 Parking Brake Handle Trim", page 11](#)
- ⇒ ["1.4 Center Armrest", page 12](#)
- ⇒ ["1.5 Interior Rearview Mirror", page 13](#)

1.1 Storage Compartments and Covers

- ⇒ ["1.1.1 Storage Compartments and Covers Overview", page 3](#)
- ⇒ ["1.1.2 Driver Side Instrument Panel Cover Assembly Overview", page 5](#)
- ⇒ ["1.1.3 Steering Column Switch Trim Assembly Overview", page 6](#)
- ⇒ ["1.1.4 Glove Compartment Assembly Overview", page 7](#)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for errors or omissions in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

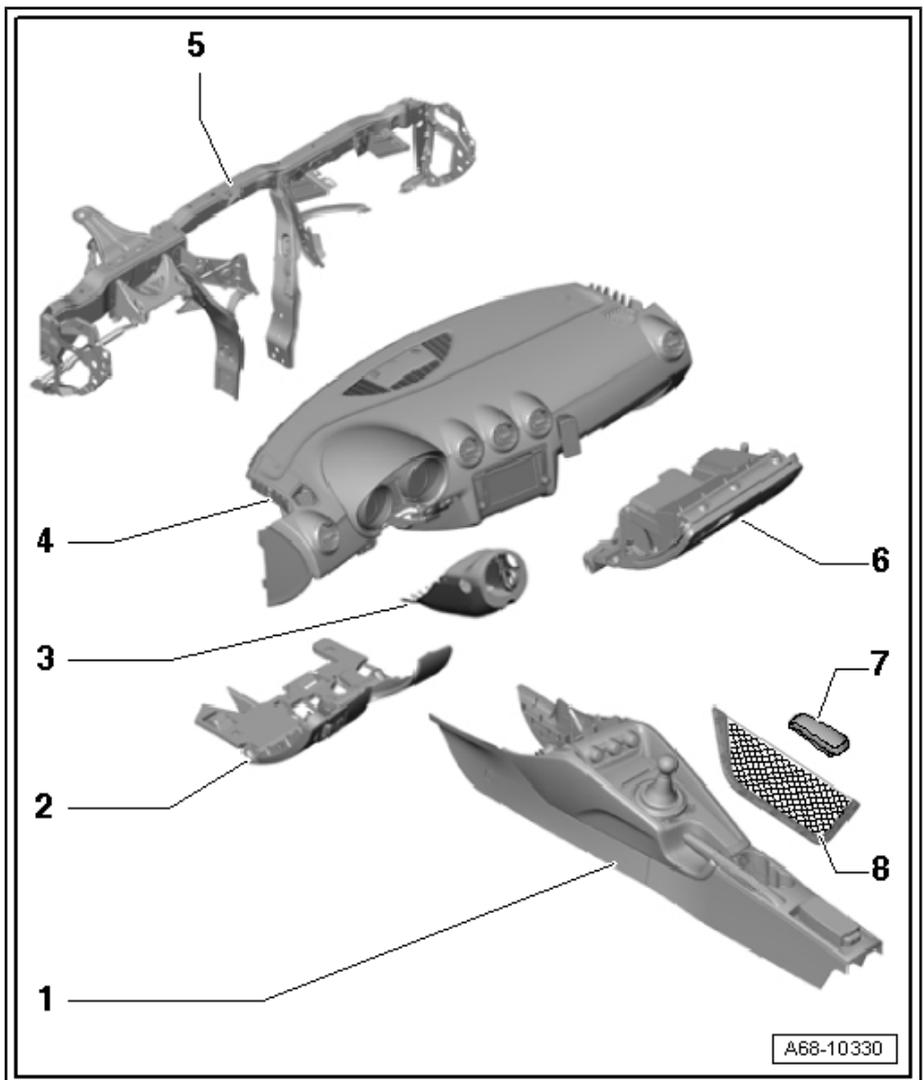
1.1.1 Storage Compartments and Covers Overview

1 - Center Console

- ❑ Assembly Overview, refer to
 ⇒ ["1.2.1 Center Console Assembly Overview", page 8](#)
- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.2.13 Front Center Console", page 31](#)

2 - Driver side instrument panel cover

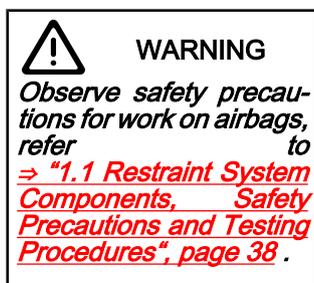
- ❑ for vehicles without knee airbags:
- ◆ Assembly Overview, refer to
 ⇒ ["1.1.2 Driver Side Instrument Panel Cover Assembly Overview", page 5](#)
- ◆ Driver side instrument panel cover, removing and installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.1.1 Driver Side Instrument Panel Cover", page 18](#)
- ❑ for vehicles with knee airbags:
- ◆ Assembly Overview, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.8.1 Front Knee Airbags Overview", page 70](#)
- ◆ Driver side instrument panel cover, removing and installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["3.8.1 Driver Side Instrument Panel Cover", page 108](#)



3 - Steering column switch trim

- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ [“1.1.3 Steering Column Switch Trim Assembly Overview”, page 6](#)
- Upper steering column switch trim, removing and installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.1.3 Upper Steering Column Switch Trim”, page 19](#)
- Lower steering column switch trim, removing and installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.1.4 Lower Steering Column Switch Trim”, page 20](#)

4 - Instrument Panel



- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ [“1.2.2 Instrument Panel Assembly Overview”, page 137](#)
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.2.8 Instrument Panel”, page 196](#)

5 - Central Tube

- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ [“1.3.1 Central Tube Assembly Overview”, page 139](#)
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.3.1 Central Tube”, page 200](#)

6 - Glove compartment

- for vehicles without knee airbags:
- ◆ Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ [“1.1.4 Glove Compartment Assembly Overview”, page 7](#)
- ◆ Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.1.8 Glove Compartment”, page 23](#)
 - for vehicles with knee airbags:
- ◆ Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ [“2.8.1 Front Knee Airbags Overview”, page 70](#)
- ◆ Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“3.8.5 Glove Compartment, Vehicles with Knee Airbag”, page 112](#)

7 - Center armrest upholstery

- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ [“1.4.1 Center Armrest Assembly Overview”, page 12](#)
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.4.1 Center Armrest Upholstery”, page 34](#)
- Upholstery bracket, removing and installing ⇒ [“2.4.2 Upholstery Bracket”, page 35](#)

8 - Storage net

- Attached on the front passenger side on the floor covering near the center console
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.1.10 Storage Net”, page 24](#)

1.1.2 Driver Side Instrument Panel Cover Assembly Overview

1 - Side instrument panel cover

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.2.1 Instrument Panel Side Cover"](#),
[page 193](#)

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 2.5 Nm

3 - Connector, 16-pin -T16-

- ❑ Diagnostic connector

4 - Spring clamp

- ❑ Driver side lower instrument panel cover

5 - Spring clamp

- ❑ For driver side upper instrument panel cover

6 - Driver side instrument panel cover

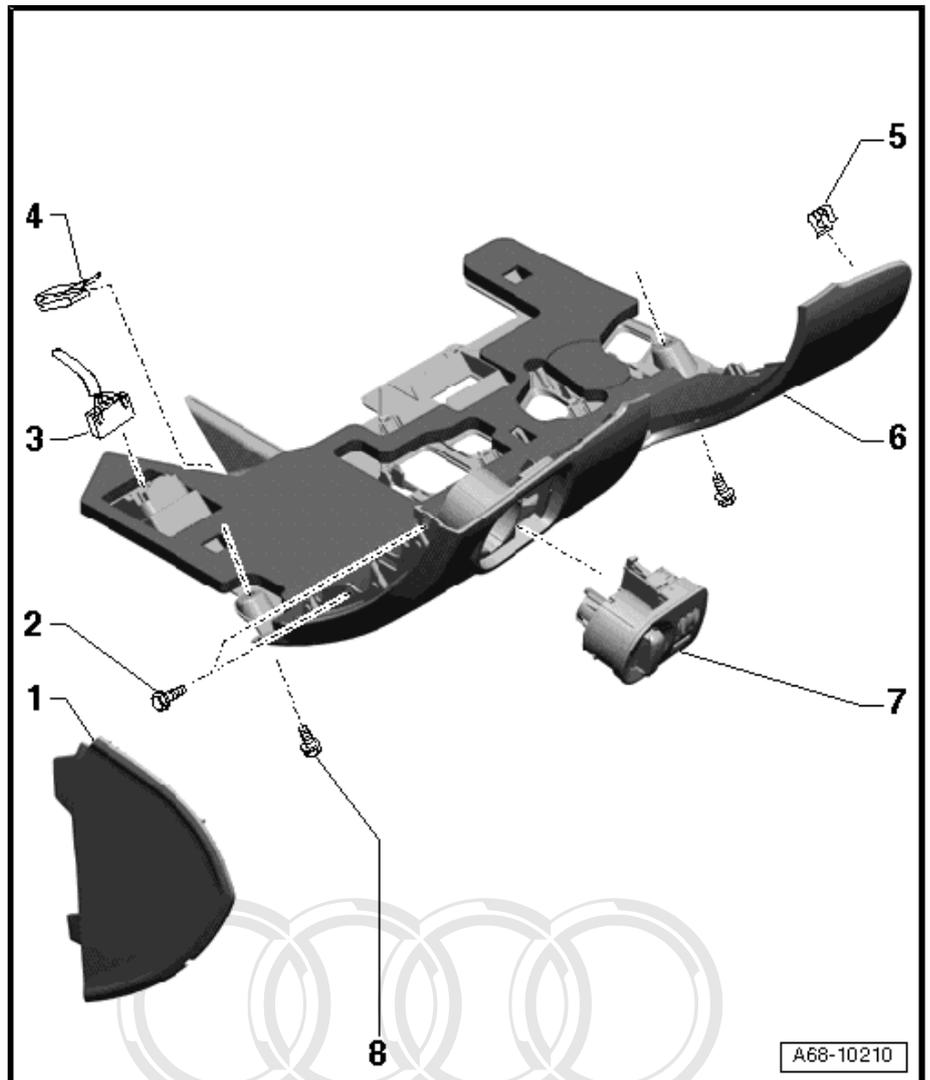
- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.1.1 Driver Side Instrument Panel Cover"](#),
[page 18](#)

7 - Light switch

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 96 ; Removal and Installation

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 2.5 Nm



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin

1.1.3 Steering Column Switch Trim Assembly Overview

1 - Gap cover

- For instrument cluster
- Removing and Installing, refer to ["2.1.2 Instrument Cluster Gap Cover"](#), page 19

2 - Upper steering column switch trim

- Removing and Installing, refer to ["2.1.3 Upper Steering Column Switch Trim"](#), page 19

3 - Screws

- 2.5 Nm

4 - Lower steering column switch trim

- Removing and Installing, refer to ["2.1.4 Lower Steering Column Switch Trim"](#), page 20

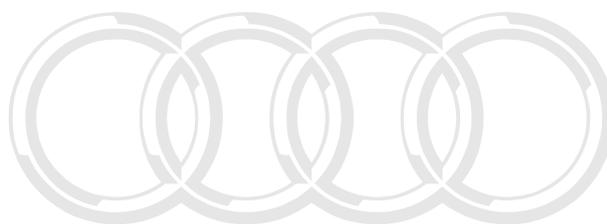
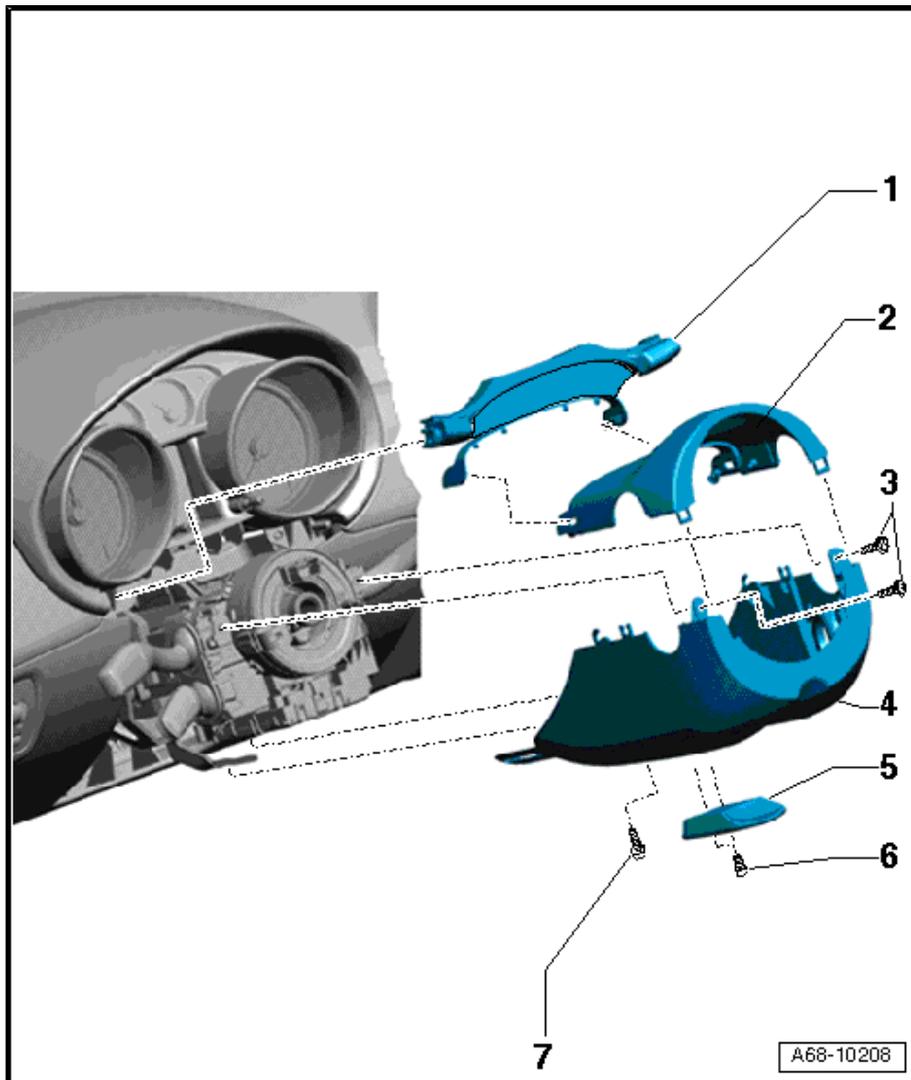
5 - Steering column adjustment handle

6 - Screws

- 3 Nm

7 - Bolt

- 2.5 Nm



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.1.4 Glove Compartment Assembly Overview

1 - Glove compartment light

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 96 ; Removal and Installation

2 - Hinge pin

- For securing the glove compartment cover

3 - Glove compartment

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.1.8 Glove Compartment", page 23](#)

4 - Glove compartment wiring harness

5 - Lid dampening mechanism

- With Glove compartment lamp switch -E26-
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.1.9 Glove Compartment Cover Brake Component", page 24](#)

6 - Hinge pin

7 - Locking pin mount

8 - Front Passenger Airbag - Off- Key Switch -E224-

- Not for North American Market.

9 - Bolt

- 2.5 Nm

10 - Glove compartment cover

- Activate the glove compartment cover emergency release ⇒ ["2.1.5 Glove Compartment Cover Emergency Release, Activating", page 20](#)
- Cannot be replaced separately

11 - Glove compartment lid trim

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.1.6 Glove Compartment Lid Trim", page 21](#)

12 - Glove compartment handle with lock

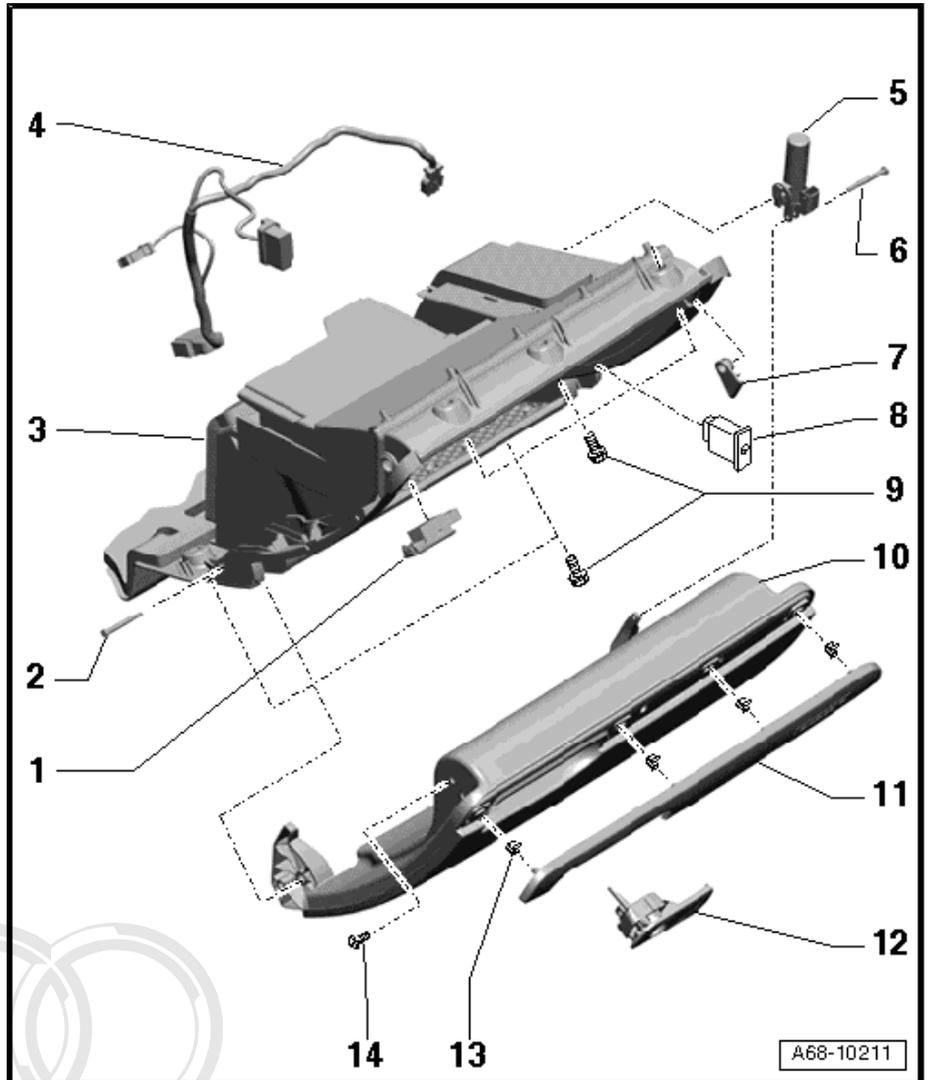
Protected by copyright. All rights reserved. No part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the accuracy of the information.

- Activate the glove compartment cover emergency release ⇒ ["2.1.5 Glove Compartment Cover Emergency Release, Activating", page 20](#)
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.1.7 Glove Compartment Handle with Lock", page 21](#)

13 - Clips

14 - Bolt

- 1.6 Nm



1.2 Center Console

⇒ ["1.2.1 Center Console Assembly Overview", page 8](#)

1.2.1 Center Console Assembly Overview

Part 1 - Front

1 - Cover

2 - Bolt

- 2.5 Nm

3 - Center console side trim

- Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.2.1 Center Console Side Trim", page 25](#)

4 - Front Center Console

- Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.2.13 Front Center Console", page 31](#)

5 - Center console bracket

- With adjusting element

6 - Bolt

- 3.5 Nm

7 - Bolt

- 2.5 Nm

8 - Ashtray

- Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.2.10 Ashtray", page 30](#)

9 - Climatronic Control Module -J255-

10 - Bolt

- 2.5 Nm

11 - Selector lever/shift lever

12 - Button unit

- In center console trim
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.2.7 Center Console Trim Button Unit", page 29](#)

13 - Center console trim

- Various versions
- Removing and installing:

Vehicles with manual transmission

⇒ ["2.2.3 Center Console Trim, Vehicles with Manual Transmission", page 26](#)

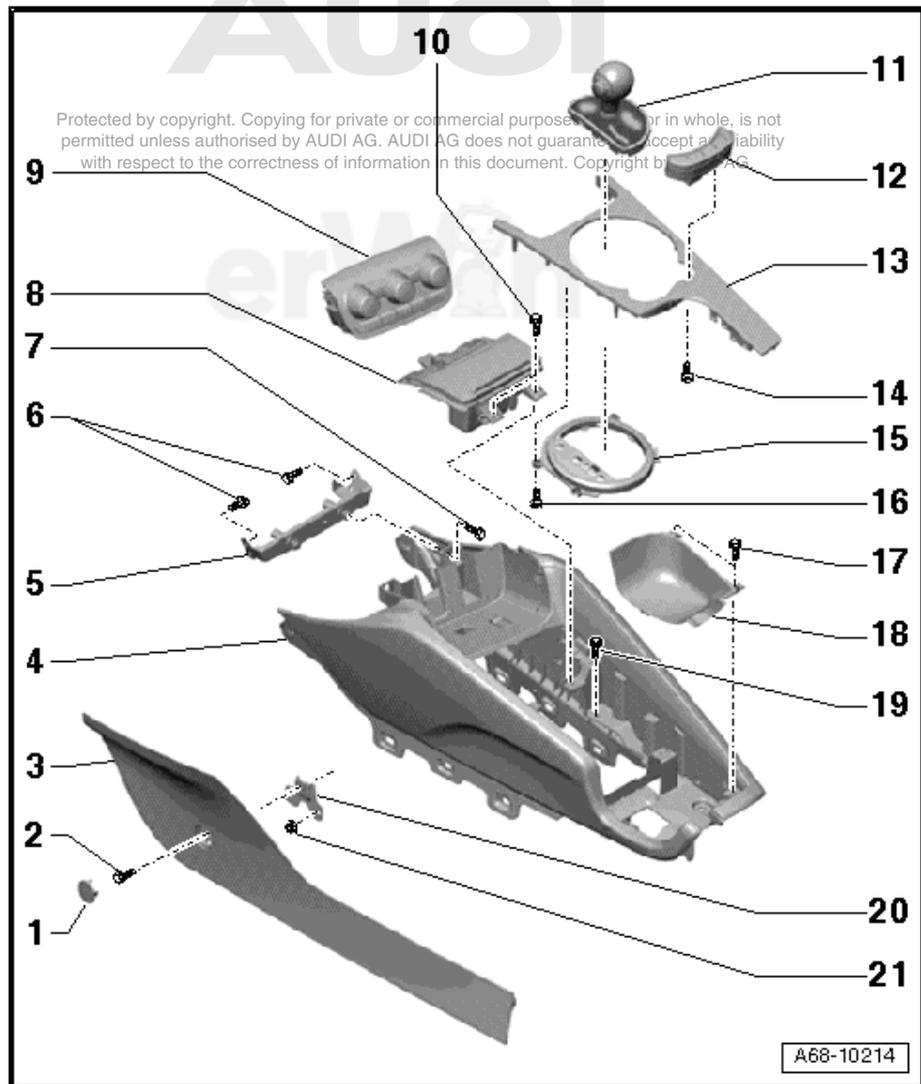
Vehicles with a DSG transmission, refer to

⇒ ["2.2.4 Center Console Trim, DSG Transmission", page 27](#)

- Convertible Top Operation Switch -E137- and Wind Deflector Switch (Cabrio) -E278- installation location
⇒ ["2.2.8 Convertible Top Operation Switch E137 and Wind Deflector Switch \(Cabrio\) E278", page 29](#)

14 - Bolt

- 1 Nm



15 - Decorative frame

- Various versions
- Removing and installing:

Vehicles with manual transmission, refer to

⇒ [“2.2.5 Decorative Frame, Vehicles with Manual Transmission”, page 28](#)

Vehicles with a DSG transmission, refer to ⇒ [“2.2.6 Decorative Frame, DSG Transmission”, page 28](#)

16 - Bolt

- 1 Nm

17 - Bolt

- 2.5 Nm

18 - Parking brake lever handle cover

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.2.9 Parking Brake Lever Handle Cover”, page 29](#)

19 - Bolt

- 2.5 Nm

20 - Side trim bracket

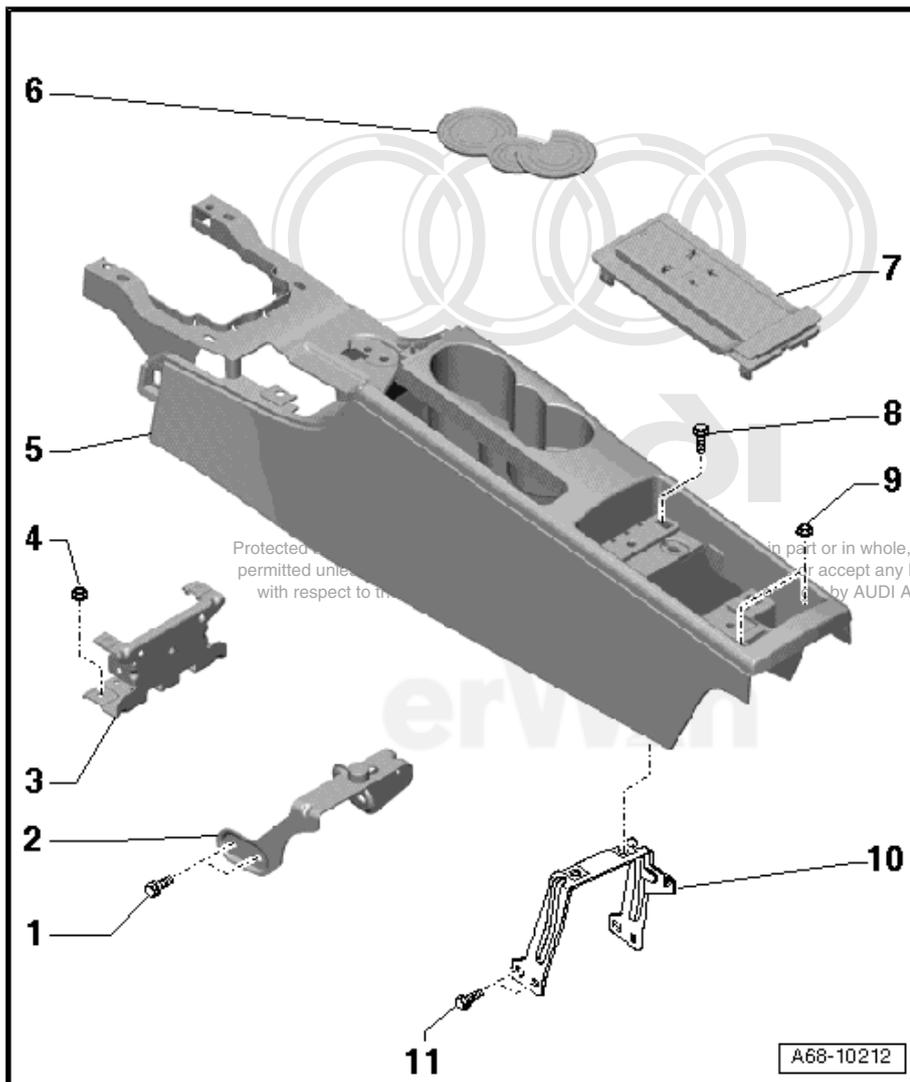
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.2.2 Side Trim Bracket”, page 26](#)

21 - Nut

- 3.5 Nm
- Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

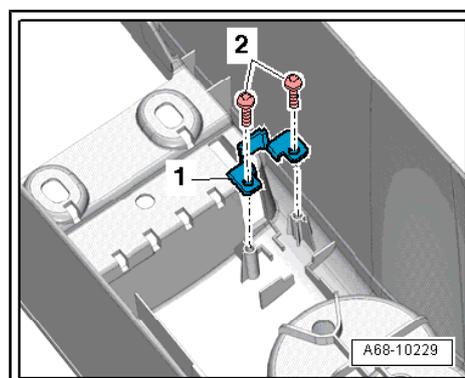
Part 2 - Rear

- 1 - Bolt**
 - 3.5 Nm
- 2 - Bracket**
- 3 - Center console bracket**
 - Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.2.15 Center Console Bracket", page 33](#)
- 4 - Nut**
 - 8 Nm
- 5 - Rear Center Console**
 - Various versions
 - Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.2.14 Rear Center Console", page 31](#)
- 6 - Lining mat**
- 7 - Telephone Baseplate - R126- /compartment**
 - Telephone Baseplate - R126- , removing and installing, refer to [⇒ Communication; Rep. Gr. 91 ; Removal and Installation](#)
- 8 - Bolt**
 - 2.5 Nm
 - Only on Roadster
- 9 - Nut**
 - 3.5 Nm
- 10 - Center console bracket**
 - Only on Roadster
- 11 - Bolt**
 - 3.5 Nm
 - Only on Roadster



Tightening Specification, Blind Cover for AUX Socket

- 1 - Tightening specification, blind cover for the AUX socket
- 2 - Screws - 1.5 Nm



1.3 Parking Brake Handle Trim

⇒ [“1.3.1 Parking Brake Handle Trim Assembly Overview”, page 11](#)

1.3.1 Parking Brake Handle Trim Assembly Overview

1 - Parking Brake Handle Trim

- For vehicles without center armrest
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.3.1 Parking Brake Handle Trim, Vehicles without Center Armrest”, page 33](#)

2 - Push button

- Remove after removing parking brake handle trim

3 - Left parking brake trim

- Vehicles with center armrest
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.3.3 Left and Right Parking Brake Trim, Vehicles with Center Armrest”, page 34](#)

4 - Parking Brake Handle Trim

- Vehicles with center armrest
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.3.2 Parking Brake Handle Trim, Vehicles with Center Armrest”, page 34](#)

5 - Push button

- Remove after removing parking brake handle trim

6 - Cover

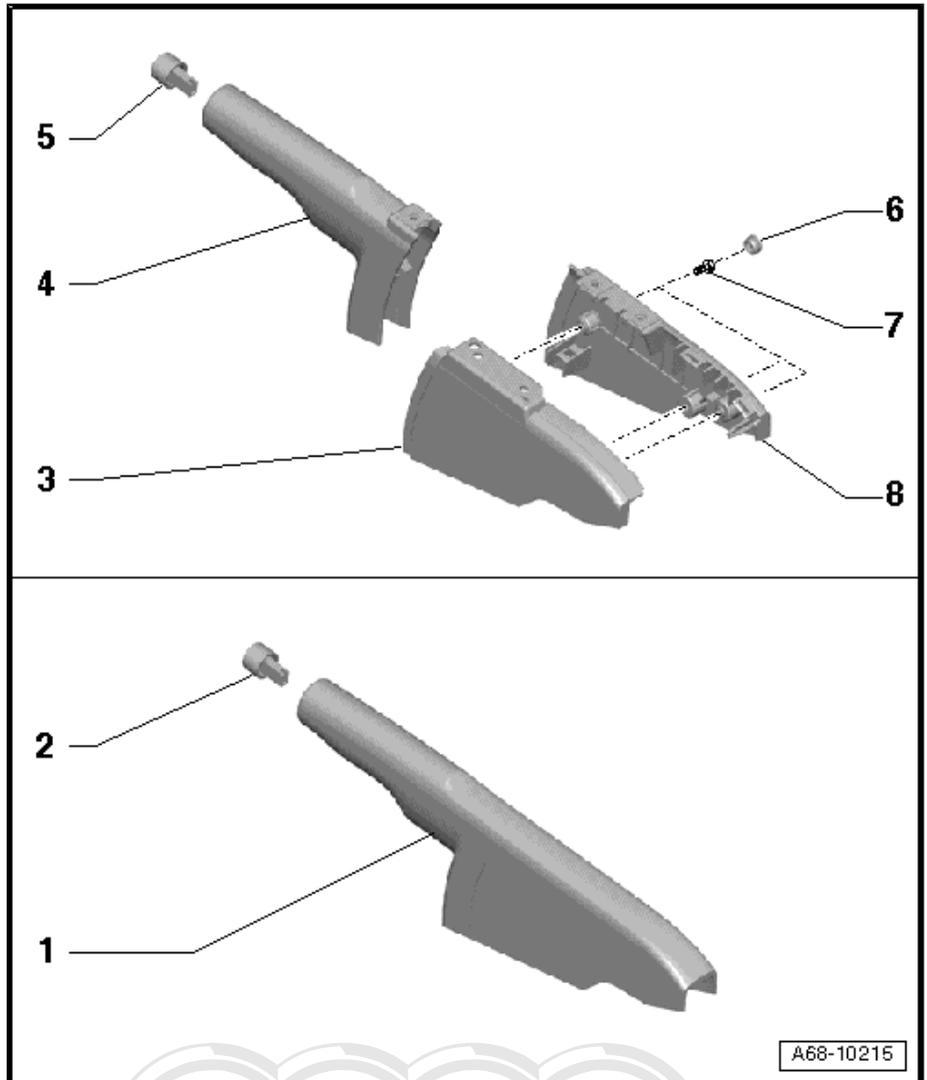
- Vehicles with center armrest

7 - Bolt

- Vehicles with center armrest
- 2.5 Nm
- Quantity: 3

8 - Right parking brake trim

- Vehicles with center armrest
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.3.3 Left and Right Parking Brake Trim, Vehicles with Center Armrest”, page 34](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the express written consent of Audi AG. Audi AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.4 Center Armrest

⇒ ["1.4.1 Center Armrest Assembly Overview", page 12](#)

1.4.1 Center Armrest Assembly Overview

1 - Parking brake lever trim

2 - Retaining spring

3 - Center armrest upholstery

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to

⇒ ["2.4.1 Center Armrest Upholstery", page 34](#)

- ❑ Cannot be disassembled

4 - Bolt

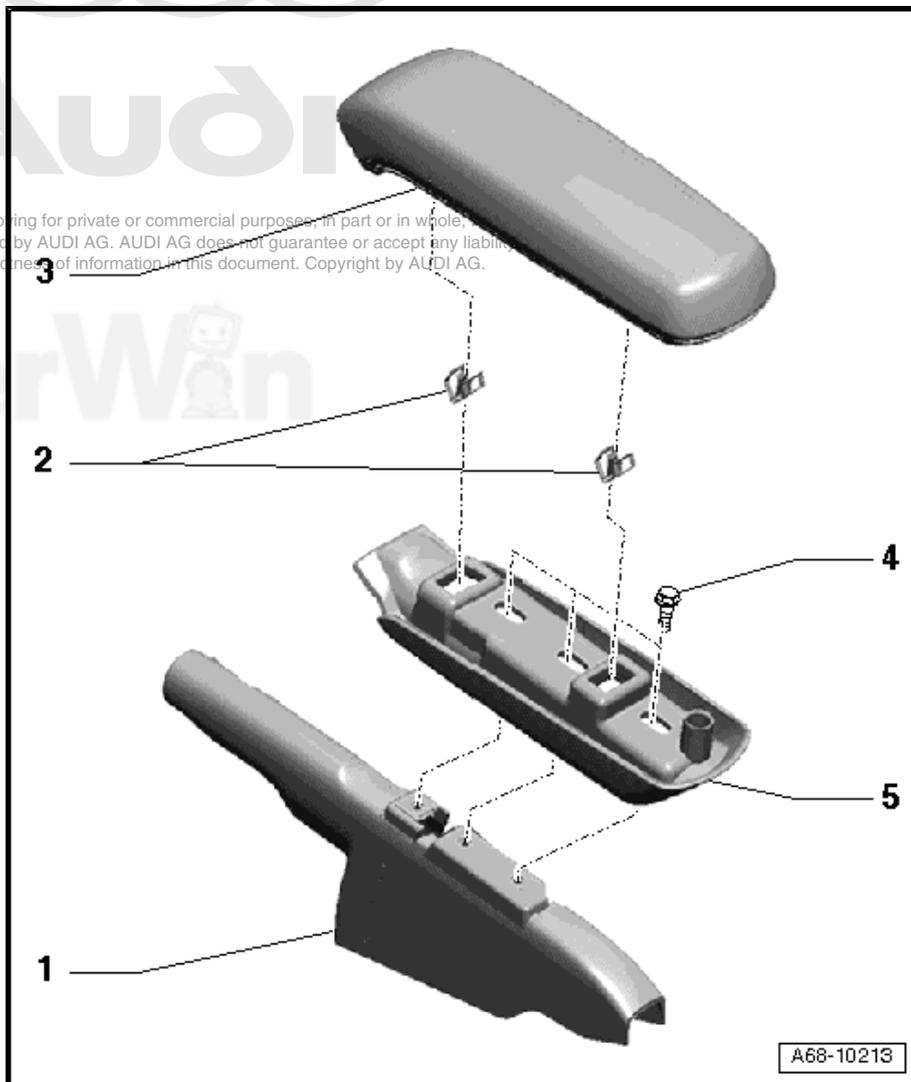
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

- ❑ Quantity: 3

5 - Upholstery bracket

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to

⇒ ["2.4.2 Upholstery Bracket", page 35](#)



1.5 Interior Rearview Mirror

⇒ [“1.5.1 Interior Rearview Mirror Safety Precautions”, page 13](#)

⇒ [“1.5.2 Interior Rearview Mirror General Information”, page 13](#)

⇒ [“1.5.3 Automatic-Dimming Function, Switching On and Off”, page 14](#)

⇒ [“1.5.4 Compass Display, Switching On and Off”, page 14](#)

⇒ [“1.5.5 Magnetic Zone, Setting”, page 14](#)

⇒ [“1.5.6 Digital Compass, Calibrating”, page 15](#)

⇒ [“1.5.7 Automatic Dimming Interior Rearview Mirror Y7, Adjusting”, page 15](#)

⇒ [“1.5.8 Magnetic Zone, Reading in World Maps”, page 16](#)

⇒ [“1.5.9 Automatic Dimming Interior Rearview Mirror, Checking Function”, page 16](#)

1.5.1 Interior Rearview Mirror Safety Precautions



WARNING

- ◆ *The glass in the interior rearview mirror consists of several layers and contains an electrolyte that controls the dimming. Be careful of the electrolyte, which can leak out if the mirror glass is broken.*
- ◆ *The liquid electrolyte can cause irritation to the skin, eyes and respiratory system.*
- ◆ *If liquid electrolyte comes in contact with eyes or skin, flush or rinse immediately with plenty of water. If irritation continues, see a doctor.*



Caution

Liquid electrolyte leaking from a broken mirror will damage all plastic surfaces that come into contact with it. Clean spilled electrolyte immediately using water and a sponge.

1.5.2 Interior Rearview Mirror General Information

There are different versions of the interior rearview mirrors, each with different features:

- ◆ Manual dimming interior rearview mirror
- ◆ Automatic dimming interior rearview mirror -Y7-
- ◆ Interior rearview mirror with digital compass
- ◆ Interior rearview mirror with rain/light recognition sensor -G397-
- ◆ Interior rearview mirror with humidity sensor -G355-

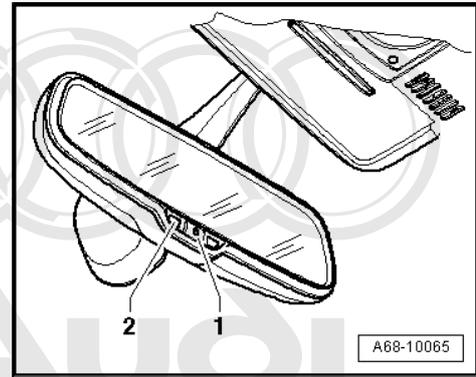
1.5.3 Automatic-Dimming Function, Switching On and Off

- Press the button quickly (less than 3 seconds) -1- to switch the automatic dimming function on or off.

Automatic dimming "ON": the lamp in the display -2- comes on.

Automatic dimming "OFF": the lamp in the display -2- goes out.

- ◆ Automatic dimming function is activated each time "ignition is switched on".
- ◆ If the automatic dimming function is deactivated, the function is also deactivated on the exterior rearview mirror.
- ◆ In dimming mode, mirror surface lights up when interior lights are switched on or reverse gear is engaged.
- ◆ Note that the interior rearview mirror automatic dimming function can only work properly if the rear window shade is raised.

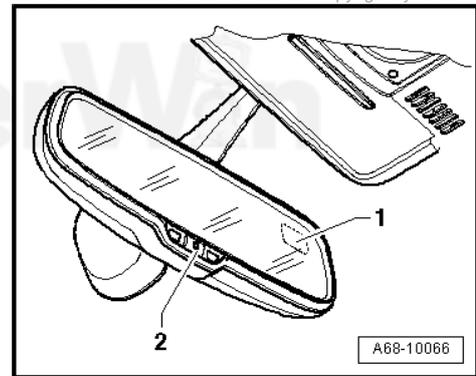


1.5.4 Compass Display, Switching On and Off

- Press the button -2- for three to six seconds. The display switches from "on" to "off" and back.

Compass display -1- "On - the direction is displayed".

Compass display -1- "Off - the direction is not displayed".



1.5.5 Magnetic Zone, Setting

It is necessary to set the magnetic zone if:

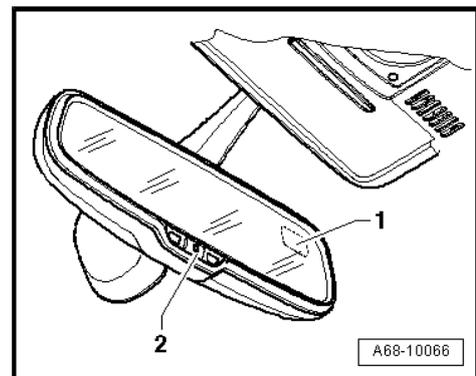
- ◆ A new automatic dimming interior rearview mirror -Y7- is installed.
- ◆ If the vehicle is driven a long distance over more than two zones from the originally set zone, then the new zone must be set again.

Magnetic Zone, Setting:

- Press button -2- for 6 to 9 seconds until a "Z" and a magnetic zone number appear.
- Keep pressing the button -2- until the number of the desired zone appears.
- Find desired zone on world map:
- ◆ North America ⇒ [page 16](#) .

After a few seconds, the compass display switches from the zone number to the direction.

- Make sure the interior rearview mirror automatic dimming function is activated again after setting the zone. Refer to ⇒ ["1.5.4 Compass Display, Switching On and Off", page 14](#) .



1.5.6 Digital Compass, Calibrating

It is necessary to calibrate the digital compass if:

- ◆ The compass directions are not correct,
- ◆ The letter "C" instead of a direction will appear or the display will be blank.
- ◆ A new automatic dimming interior rearview mirror -Y7- is installed.

The digital compass may also need to be calibrated if:

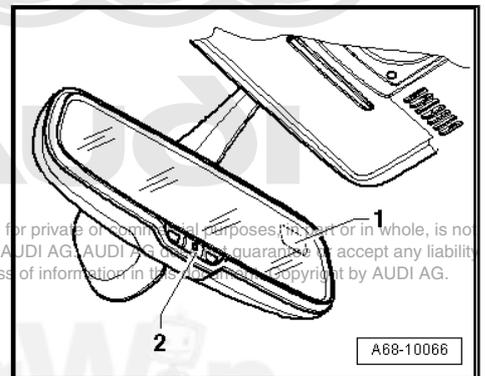
- ◆ the vehicle battery is reconnected after being disconnected for an extended period,
- ◆ a new audio system or audio system component was installed.

Digital Compass, Calibrating:

- Switch on ignition.

The letter "C" must appear in the display -1-.

- If the letter "C" does not appear, press button -2- for 9 to 12 seconds until the "C" appears in compass display -1-.
- Drive in a circle two to three times at about 5 mph (10 km/h) until a direction is shown in compass display -1-.
- Ensure the interior rearview mirror automatic dimming function is activated again after completing the calibration. Refer to ["1.5.3 Automatic-Dimming Function, Switching On and Off", page 14](#).



1.5.7 Automatic Dimming Interior Rearview Mirror Y7, Adjusting

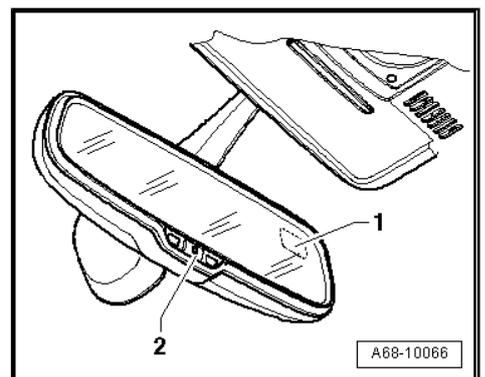
It is necessary to set LHD when:

- ◆ A new automatic dimming interior rearview mirror -Y7- is installed.



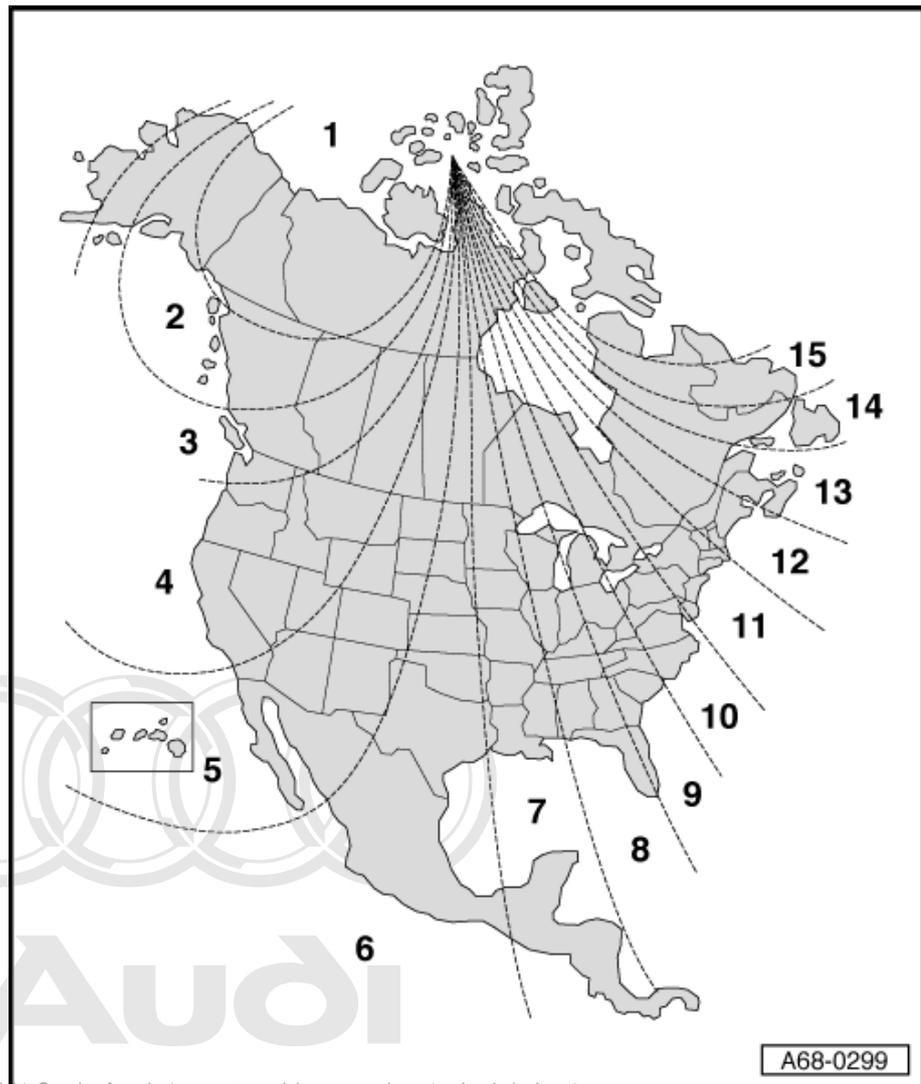
Note

- ◆ *In the newer -Y7- automatic dimming interior rearview mirrors, the magnetic zone sensor has been moved from the mirror base to the mirror housing. The steering side "must" be set only in the case of these mirrors.*
- ◆ *This is how to recognize the new automatic dimming interior rearview mirror -Y7- : press the button -2- for more than 12 seconds and an "L" or an "A" appears in the display.*
- Press button -2- for 12 to 15 seconds until "L - for LHD" appears.
- Press the button -2- again; the drive side will be changed.
- The display switches automatically to "C - for calibrate" after a short time. The digital compass must now be calibrated. Refer to ["1.5.6 Digital Compass, Calibrating", page 15](#).
- Make sure the interior rearview mirror automatic dimming function is activated again after setting the drive side. Refer to ["1.5.3 Automatic-Dimming Function, Switching On and Off", page 14](#).



1.5.8 Magnetic Zone, Reading in World Maps

North America



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.5.9 Automatic Dimming Interior Rearview Mirror, Checking Function

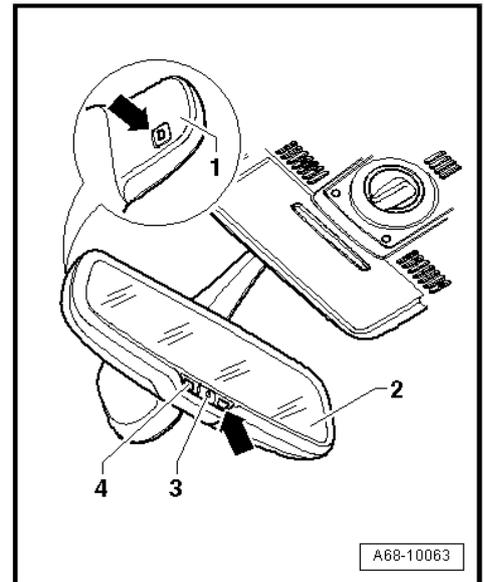
To check function, following conditions must be fulfilled:

- Interior rearview mirror installed.
- Ignition switched on.
- Reverse gear not engaged.
- Automatic-dimming function must be switched on, indicator light must come on.

Test Sequence

- Hold light sensor -arrow- on housing side closed -1- or cover it.
- Shine a light source, such as a flashlight, on mirror side -2- of light sensor -arrow-.

The interior rearview mirror must dim within a short period of time.



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin 

2 Removal and Installation

⇒ ["2.1 Storage Compartments and Covers", page 18](#)

⇒ ["2.2 Center Console", page 25](#)

⇒ ["2.3 Parking Brake Handle Trim", page 33](#)

⇒ ["2.4 Center Armrest", page 34](#)

⇒ ["2.5 Interior Rearview Mirror", page 35](#)

2.1 Storage Compartments and Covers

⇒ ["2.1.1 Driver Side Instrument Panel Cover", page 18](#)

⇒ ["2.1.2 Instrument Cluster Gap Cover", page 19](#)

⇒ ["2.1.3 Upper Steering Column Switch Trim", page 19](#)

⇒ ["2.1.4 Lower Steering Column Switch Trim", page 20](#)

⇒ ["2.1.5 Glove Compartment Cover Emergency Release, Activating", page 20](#)

⇒ ["2.1.6 Glove Compartment Lid Trim", page 21](#)

⇒ ["2.1.7 Glove Compartment Handle with Lock", page 21](#)

⇒ ["2.1.8 Glove Compartment", page 23](#)

⇒ ["2.1.9 Glove Compartment Cover Brake Component", page 24](#)

⇒ ["2.1.10 Storage Net", page 24](#)

2.1.1 Driver Side Instrument Panel Cover

Removing

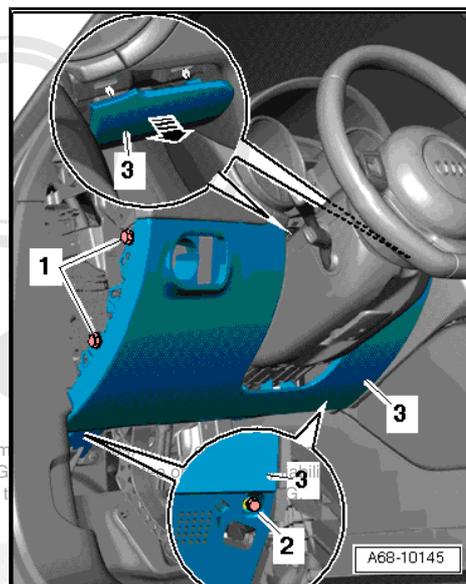
- Remove the headlamp switch. Refer to ⇒ [Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 96 ; Removal and Installation](#) .
- Remove side instrument panel cover. Refer to ⇒ ["2.2.1 Instrument Panel Side Cover", page 193](#) .
- Remove screws -1- and -2-.
- Unclip driver side instrument panel cover -3- from instrument panel at upper edge using a small screwdriver -arrow-.
- Unclip 16-Pin Connector -T16- .
- Remove driver side instrument panel cover.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG is not liable for the correctness of information in this document.

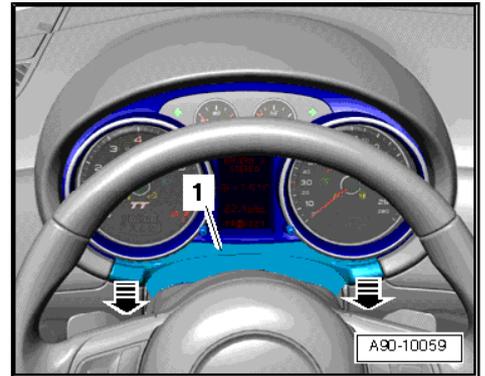
For the correct tightening specifications, refer to
⇒ ["1.1.2 Driver Side Instrument Panel Cover Assembly Overview", page 5](#) .



2.1.2 Instrument Cluster Gap Cover

Removing

- Position steering wheel so that it is as far rearward and down as possible, using full adjustment range of steering column adjuster.
- Remove gap cover -1- in direction of -arrow-.



- Carefully pry gap cover -2- from upper steering column switch trim -3- using a small flat-head screwdriver.

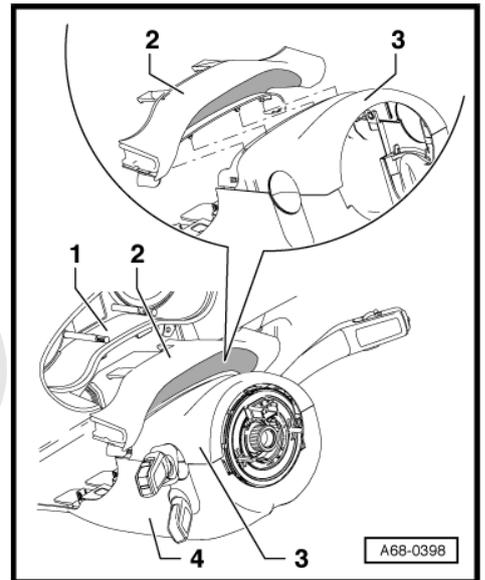


Disregard -1- and -4-

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

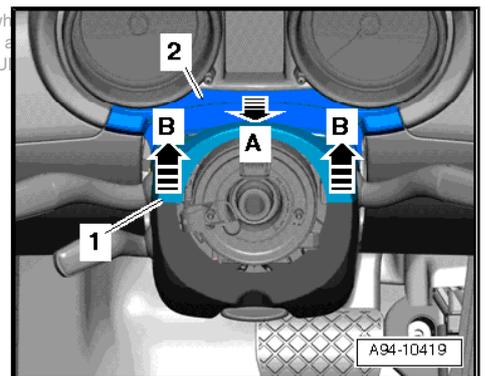
- Make sure the gap cover audibly engages in upper trim.



2.1.3 Upper Steering Column Switch Trim

Removing

- Position steering wheel so that it is as far rearward and down as possible, using full adjustment range of steering column adjuster.
- Remove gap cover -2- in direction of -arrow A-.
- Pull upper steering column switch trim -1- up -B arrows-.
- Disengage upper trim at lower steering column switch trim.



Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

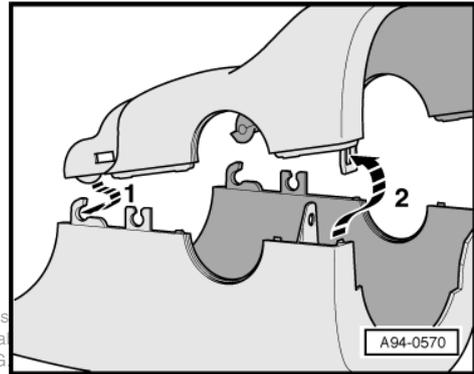
- Next, engage upper trim in lower trim -arrow 1-.
- Make sure the lower trim pins engage in opening at upper trim retaining tab -arrow 2-.



Note

Shown on removed steering column switch trim in the illustration.

- Engage gap cover on instrument cluster.



2.1.4 Lower Steering Column Switch Trim

Removing

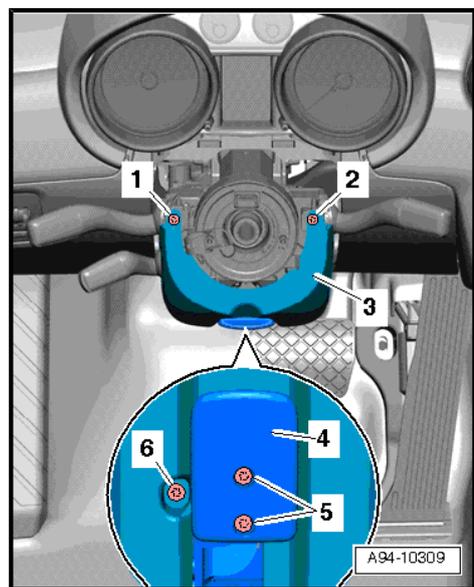
- Remove upper steering column switch trim. Refer to [⇒ "2.1.3 Upper Steering Column Switch Trim", page 19](#),
- Remove the bolts -5- and remove steering column adjustment handle -4-.
- Turn steering wheel 90° to side out of straight-ahead position and remove bolts -1- and -2-.



Note

If bolts -1- and -2- are not accessible, steering wheel must be removed for further work. Refer to ⇒ Suspension, Wheels, Steering; Rep. Gr. 48 ; Removal and Installation .

- Remove bolt -6- and remove lower steering column switch trim -3-.



Installation

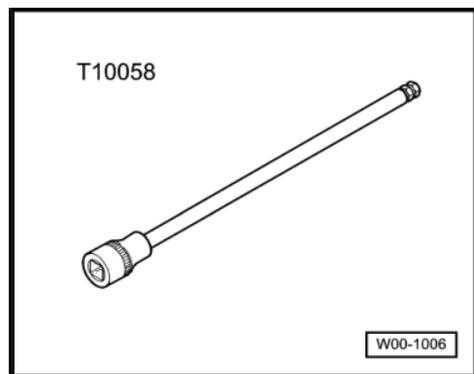
Install in reverse order of removal.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to [⇒ "1.1.3 Steering Column Switch Trim Assembly Overview", page 6](#).

2.1.5 Glove Compartment Cover Emergency Release, Activating

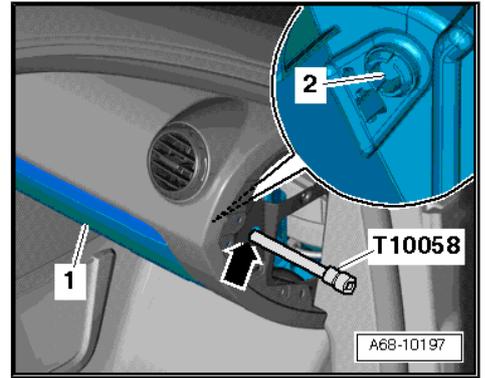
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Socket -T10058-



Procedure

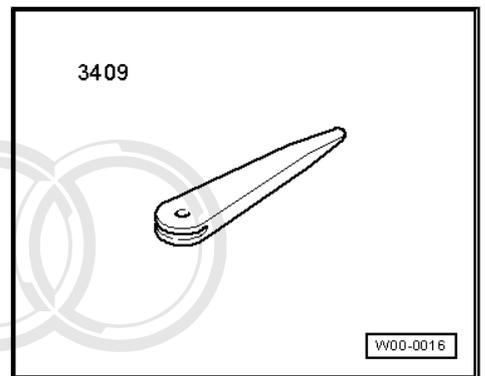
- Remove side instrument panel cover. Refer to [⇒ "2.2.1 Instrument Panel Side Cover", page 193](#).
- Insert Socket -T10058- (or another suitable tool 115 mm long) through opening -arrow- on passenger side of instrument panel.
- Open glove compartment cover -1- by pressing locking pin -2- down.



2.1.6 Glove Compartment Lid Trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



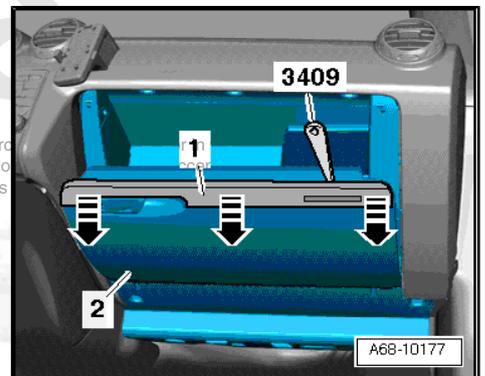
Removing

- Open glove compartment.
- Carefully unclip trim -1- from glove compartment cover -2- -arrows- using Trim Removal Wedge -3409-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

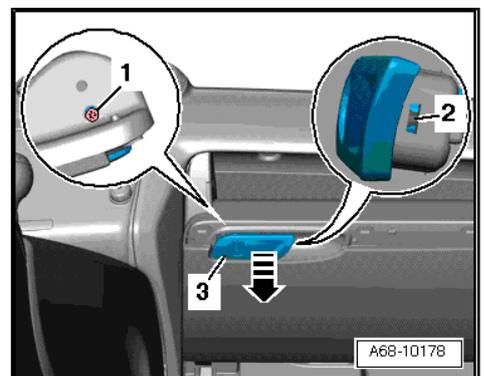
- Make sure the trim engages audibly.



2.1.7 Glove Compartment Handle with Lock

Removing

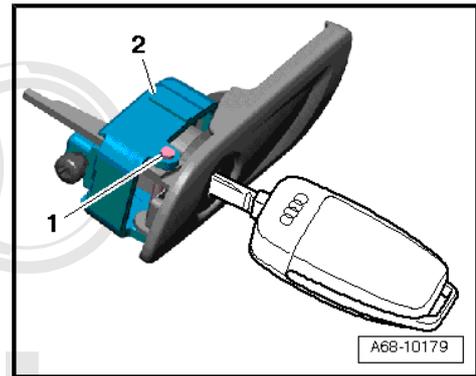
- Remove the glove compartment lid trim. Refer to [⇒ "2.1.6 Glove Compartment Lid Trim", page 21](#).
- Remove the bolt -1-.
- Using a screwdriver, press tabs -2- on side of glove compartment handle down.
- Remove glove compartment handle -3- with lock -arrow-.



 **Note**

It is only possible to remove lock cylinder with key inserted.

- Drive out pin -1- with a drift.
- Remove cover cap -2-.



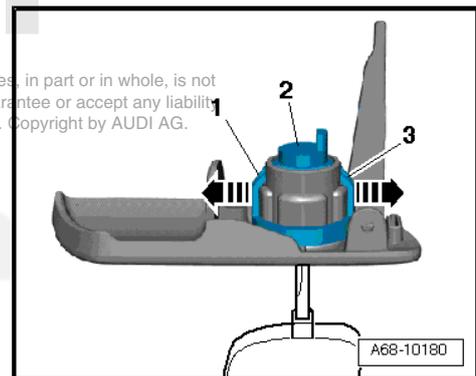
- Using a screwdriver, carefully pry retaining pins -1- and -3- in direction of -arrow- and at the same time, remove lock cylinder -2- from glove compartment handle.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- With key inserted, press lock cylinder in until it engages in all retaining pins.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to [⇒ "1.1.4 Glove Compartment Assembly Overview", page 7](#) .



2.1.8 Glove Compartment

Removing



WARNING

On vehicles with Front Passenger's Airbag -Off- Key Switch - E224- , follow safety precautions for working on airbags ⇒ ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures"](#), page 38 .

- Open the glove compartment cover.



Note

If glove compartment cover does not open, it can be opened via the emergency release. Refer to ⇒ ["2.1.5 Glove Compartment Cover Emergency Release, Activating"](#), page 20 .

- If present, remove CD changer. Refer to ⇒ Communication; Rep. Gr. 91 ; Removal and Installation .
- Unscrew the screws -arrows- and remove the glove compartment.

All:

- Disconnect the connector on the central connector.

Installation



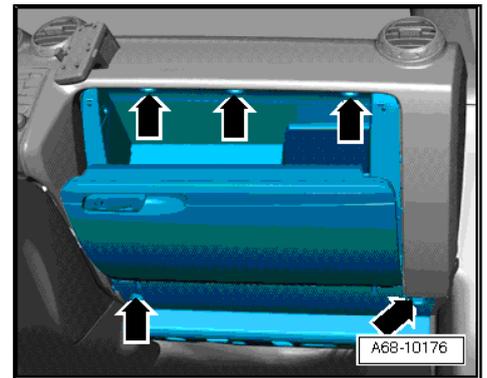
WARNING

On vehicles with Front Passenger's Airbag -Off- Key Switch E224, follow safety precautions for working on airbags. Refer to with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG. ⇒ ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures"](#), page 38 .

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Make sure the connectors engage audibly.

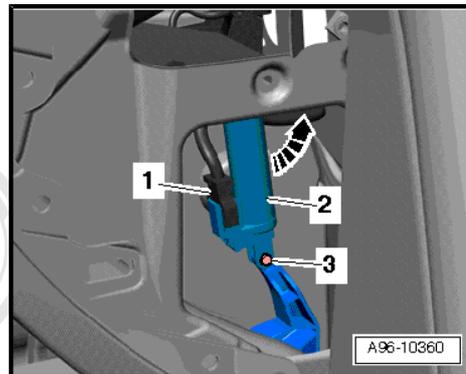
For the correct tightening specifications; refer to ⇒ ["1.1.4 Glove Compartment Assembly Overview"](#), page 7 .



2.1.9 Glove Compartment Cover Brake Component

Removing

- Remove passenger side instrument panel cover. Refer to ⇒ ["2.2.1 Instrument Panel Side Cover", page 193](#) .
- If present, remove Telephone Amplifier -R86- . Refer to ⇒ Communication; Rep. Gr. 91 ; Removal and Installation .
- Disconnect the connector -1-.
- Remove hinge pins -3-.
- Release dampening mechanism -2- counterclockwise -arrow- and remove.



Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.

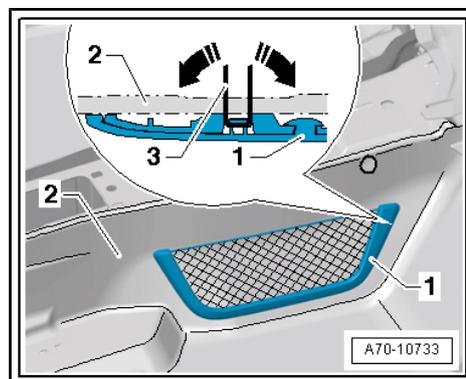
2.1.10 Storage Net

Removing

- Remove passenger seat:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the express written authorization of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ◆ Manual Front Seats: ⇒ ["2.1.1 Front Seat", page 315](#)
- ◆ Power Front Seats: ⇒ ["2.2.1 Front Seat", page 337](#)
- Remove center console side trim on passenger side. Refer to ⇒ ["2.2.1 Center Console Side Trim", page 25](#) .
- Disengage the floor covering from the bracket on the tunnel.
- Fold the floor covering -2- up in the near the front passenger footwell.
- Bend clips -3- for net -1- on back side of floor mat -2- back 90° (opposite direction of -arrows-).
- Remove the net from the floor covering.



Installation

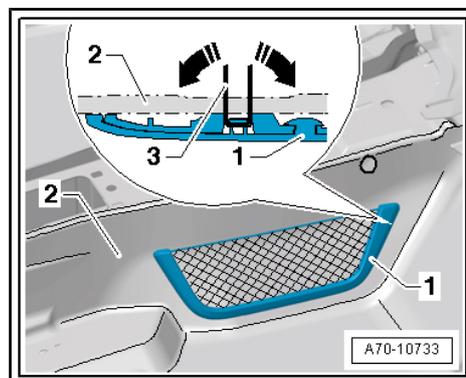


Note

Transfer the holes in the old carpet onto the new carpet when installing.

- Insert the net -1- into the openings in the carpet -2-.
- Bend the clips -3- on the back of the in direction of -arrow-.
- Support front side of net when doing so.

Further installation is performed in the reverse order of removal.



2.2 Center Console

- ⇒ ["2.2.1 Center Console Side Trim", page 25](#)
- ⇒ ["2.2.2 Side Trim Bracket", page 26](#)
- ⇒ ["2.2.3 Center Console Trim, Vehicles with Manual Transmission", page 26](#)
- ⇒ ["2.2.4 Center Console Trim, DSG Transmission", page 27](#)
- ⇒ ["2.2.5 Decorative Frame, Vehicles with Manual Transmission", page 28](#)
- ⇒ ["2.2.6 Decorative Frame, DSG Transmission", page 28](#)
- ⇒ ["2.2.7 Center Console Trim Button Unit", page 29](#)
- ⇒ ["2.2.8 Convertible Top Operation Switch E137 and Wind Deflector Switch \(Cabrio\) E278", page 29](#)
- ⇒ ["2.2.9 Parking Brake Lever Handle Cover", page 29](#)
- ⇒ ["2.2.10 Ashtray", page 30](#)
- ⇒ ["2.2.11 Ashtray Cover", page 30](#)
- ⇒ ["2.2.12 Ashtray Cover Trim", page 30](#)
- ⇒ ["2.2.13 Front Center Console", page 31](#)
- ⇒ ["2.2.14 Rear Center Console", page 31](#)
- ⇒ ["2.2.15 Center Console Bracket", page 33](#)

2.2.1 Center Console Side Trim

Removing



Note

Removing and installing is identical for the left and right sides.

- Pry out cover cap -1- with a screwdriver and remove bolt.
- Grasp under side trim -2- and carefully put it from center console.

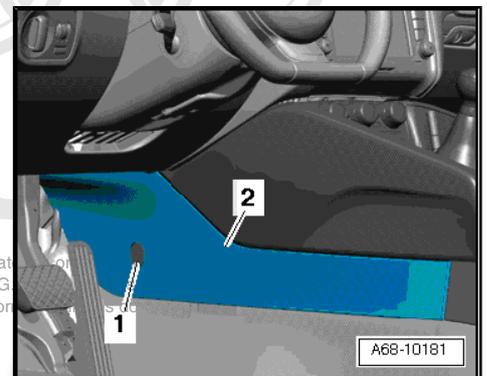
Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Make sure the side trim engages audibly.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to

- ⇒ ["1.2.1 Center Console Assembly Overview", page 8](#) .



2.2.2 Side Trim Bracket

Removing



Note

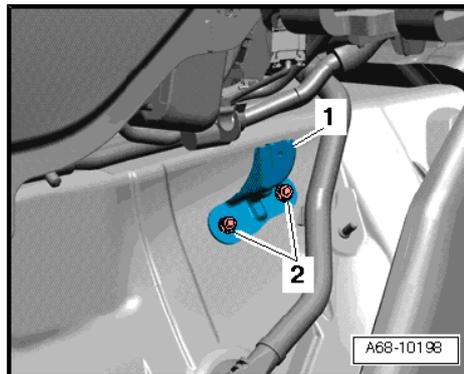
Removing and installing is identical for the left and right sides.

- Remove center console side trim. Refer to ⇒ ["2.2.1 Center Console Side Trim", page 25](#) .
- Fold back carpet around the mount -1-.
- Remove nuts -2- and remove bracket from center tunnel.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to ⇒ ["1.2.1 Center Console Assembly Overview", page 8](#) .



2.2.3 Center Console Trim, Vehicles with Manual Transmission

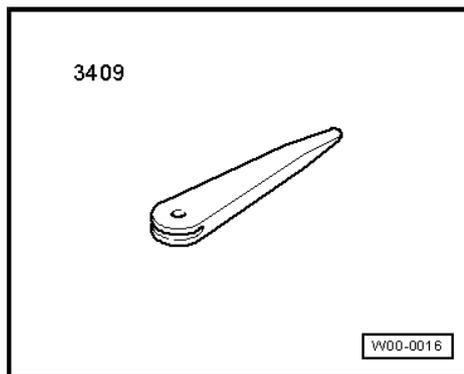
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



Audi

erWin



Removing

- Pry center console trim out of center console -arrows- using Trim Removal Wedge -3409-.
- Disconnect electrical connectors.



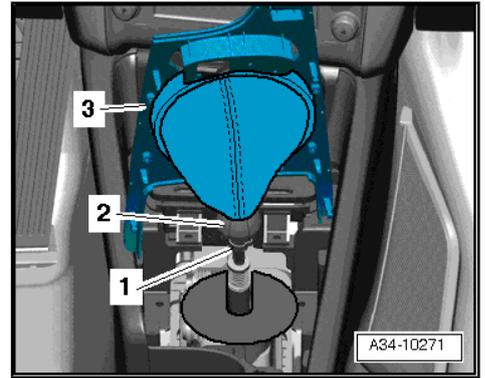
- Fold center console trim and selector lever boot up over the gearshift knob.
- Open hose clamp -1- and remove the gearshift knob -2- together with center console trim -3- upward.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:



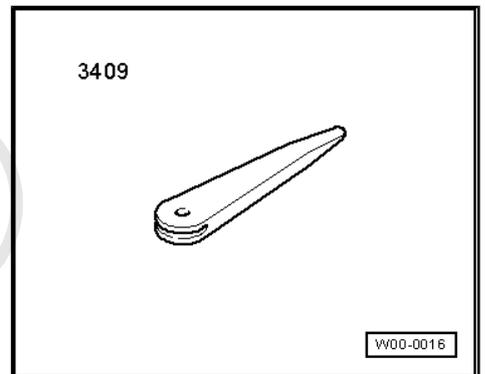
Make sure the trim audibly engages in center console.



2.2.4 Center Console Trim, DSG Transmission

Special tools and workshop equipment required

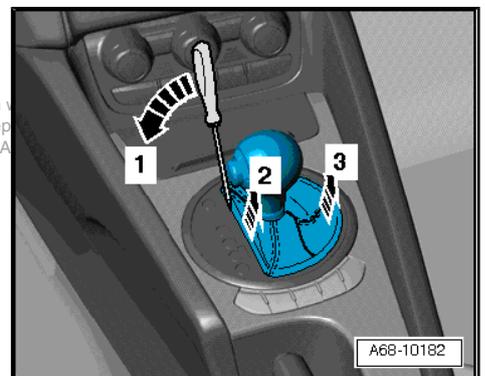
- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



Removing

- Carefully pry out selector lever boot with a small screwdriver at the side -arrow 1-
- Pull selector lever boot up on both sides -arrows 2 and 3-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG.



- Pry center console trim out of center console -arrows- using Trim Removal Wedge -3409- .
- Disconnect electrical connectors.

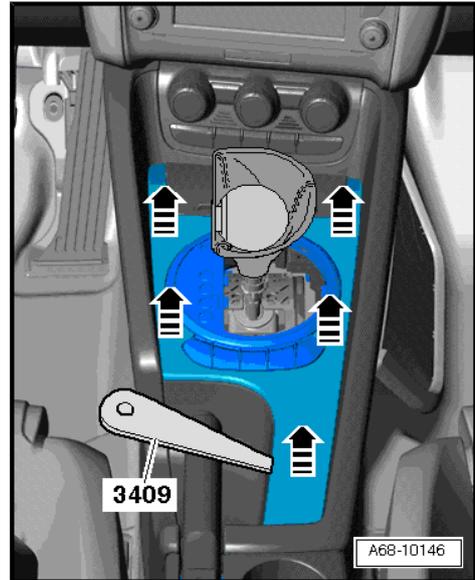
Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.



Note

Make sure the trim audibly engages in center console.



2.2.5 Decorative Frame, Vehicles with Manual Transmission

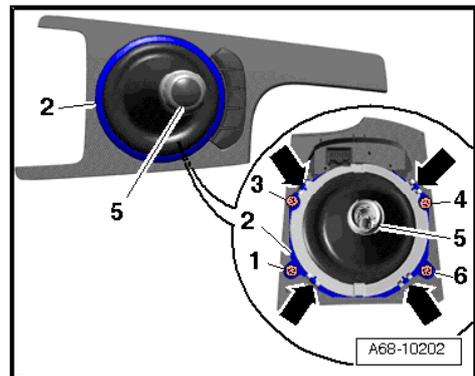
Removing

- Remove center console trim. Refer to ["2.2.3 Center Console Trim, Vehicles with Manual Transmission", page 26](#) .
- Remove the gearshift lever boot -arrows- and gearshift knob -5-.
- Remove bolts -1, 3, 4, 6- and remove decorative frame -2-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to ["1.2.1 Center Console Assembly Overview", page 8](#) .



2.2.6 Decorative Frame, DSG Transmission

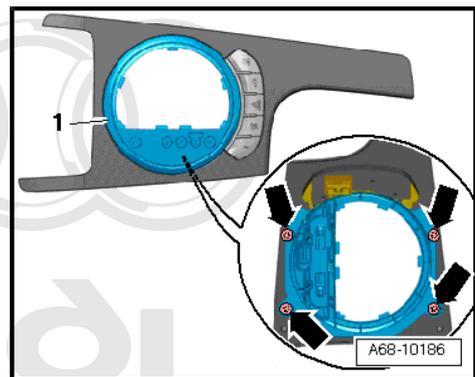
Removing

- Remove center console trim. Refer to ["2.2.4 Center Console Trim, DSG Transmission", page 27](#) .
- Remove bolts -arrows- and remove decorative frame -1- with Selector Lever Transmission Range (TR) Position Display Unit -Y26- .

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to ["1.2.1 Center Console Assembly Overview", page 8](#) .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



2.2.7 Center Console Trim Button Unit

Removing



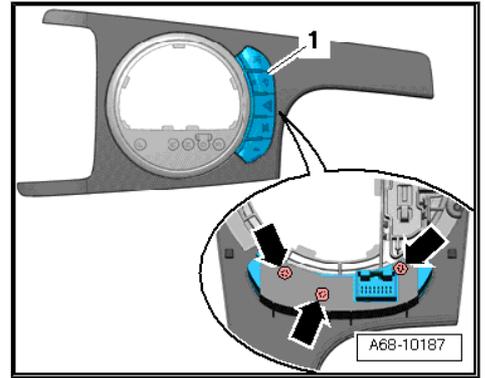
Illustrated on a vehicle with DSG.

- Remove the center console trim: for vehicles with a manual transmission, refer to ["2.2.3 Center Console Trim, Vehicles with Manual Transmission", page 26](#) ; for vehicles with DSG, refer to ["2.2.4 Center Console Trim, DSG Transmission", page 27](#) .
- Remove bolts -arrows- and remove button unit -1-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to ["1.2.1 Center Console Assembly Overview", page 8](#) .

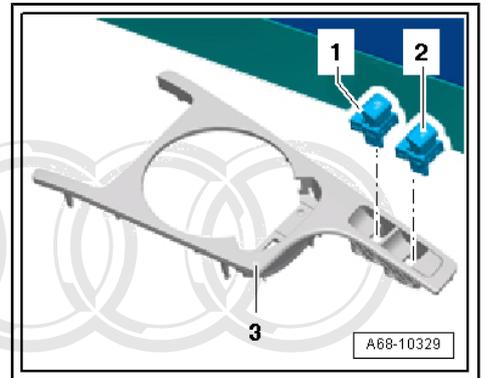


2.2.8 Convertible Top Operation Switch E137 and Wind Deflector Switch (Cabrio) E278

- 1 - Convertible Top Operation Switch -E137-
- 2 - Wind Deflector Switch (Cabrio) -E278-
- 3 - Center console trim



Convertible Top Operation Switch -E137- and Wind Deflector Switch (Cabrio) -E278-, removing and installing, refer to ["Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 96; Removal and Installation"](#) .



2.2.9 Parking Brake Lever Handle Cover

Removing

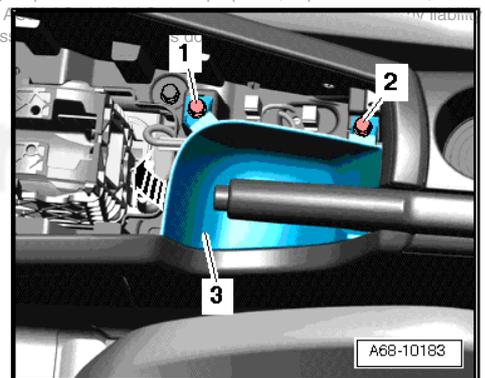
- Remove the center console trim: for vehicles with a manual transmission, refer to ["2.2.3 Center Console Trim, Vehicles with Manual Transmission", page 26](#) ; for vehicles with DSG, refer to ["2.2.4 Center Console Trim, DSG Transmission", page 27](#) .
- Engage parking brake.
- Remove screws -1- and -2-.
- Remove parking brake lever handle cover -3- upward at front side -arrow- and remove it forward from center console.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Make sure the parking brake lever handle cover is inserted correctly in spring clip.

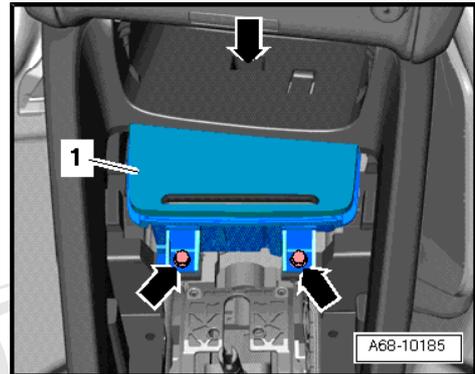
For the correct tightening specifications; refer to ["1.2.1 Center Console Assembly Overview", page 8](#) .



2.2.10 Ashtray

Removing

- Remove Climatronic Control Module -J255- . Refer to ⇒ Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning; Rep. Gr. 87 ; Removal and Installation
- Remove the center console trim: for vehicles with a manual transmission, refer to ⇒ ["2.2.3 Center Console Trim, Vehicles with Manual Transmission", page 26](#) ; for vehicles with DSG, refer to ⇒ ["2.2.4 Center Console Trim, DSG Transmission", page 27](#) .
- Remove bolts -arrows- and carefully remove ashtray -1- toward rear.
- Disconnect cigarette lighter electrical connector on ashtray.



Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to ⇒ ["1.2.1 Center Console Assembly Overview", page 8](#) .

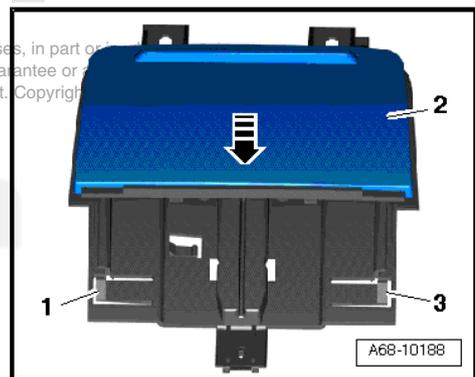
2.2.11 Ashtray Cover

Removing

- Remove ashtray. Refer to ⇒ ["2.2.10 Ashtray", page 30](#) .
- Press left and right retaining tabs -1- and -3- down and slide ashtray cover -2- off ashtray -arrow-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.



2.2.12 Ashtray Cover Trim

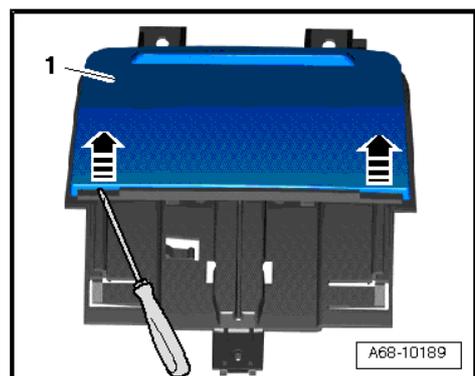
Removing

- Remove ashtray. Refer to ⇒ ["2.2.10 Ashtray", page 30](#) .
- Carefully pry trim -1- out of ashtray cover -arrows- at left and right using a screwdriver.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Make sure the ashtray cover trim engages audibly.



2.2.13 Front Center Console

Removing

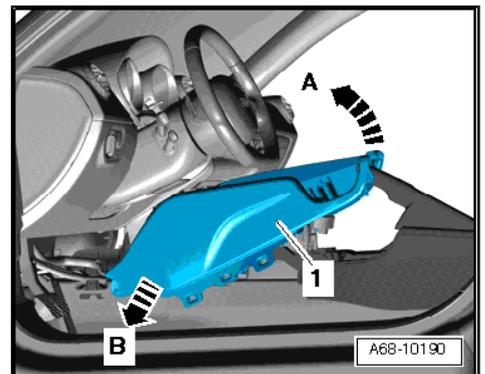
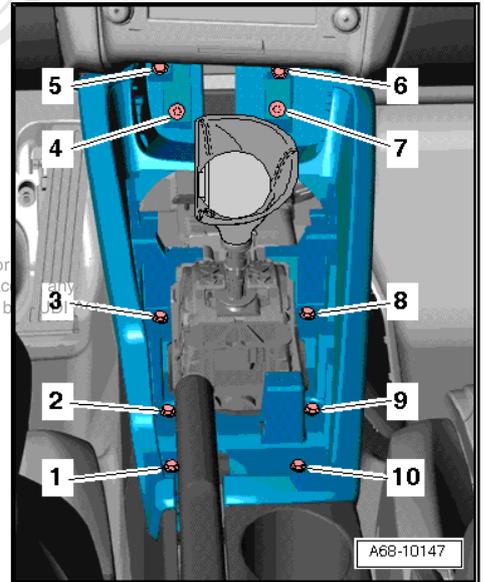
- Remove center console side trim. Refer to ⇒ ["2.2.1 Center Console Side Trim", page 25](#) .
- Remove the center console trim: for vehicles with a manual transmission, refer to ⇒ ["2.2.3 Center Console Trim, Vehicles with Manual Transmission", page 26](#) ; for vehicles with DSG, refer to ⇒ ["2.2.4 Center Console Trim, DSG Transmission", page 27](#) .
- Remove parking brake lever handle cover. Refer to ⇒ ["2.2.9 Parking Brake Lever Handle Cover", page 29](#) .
- Remove ashtray. Refer to ⇒ ["2.2.10 Ashtray", page 30](#) .
- Remove screws -1 to10-.



Note

Illustrated on a vehicle with DSG.

- Pull the parking brake up as far as possible.
- Pull rear of center console up -arrow A- and guide it past the parking brake lever by sliding center console as far forward as possible -arrow B-.
- Remove center console back over selector lever or shift lever.



Installation

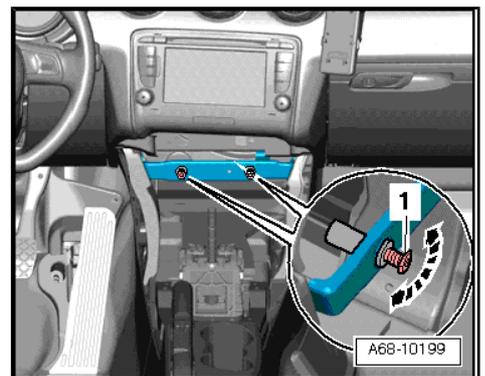
Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Check adjusting element adjustment nut -1- for ease of movement -arrows-.
- Install adjustment nuts all the way, but do not tighten.



Note

When tightening bolts, adjusting element adjustment nuts turn by themselves against the center console mounting points and secure it.

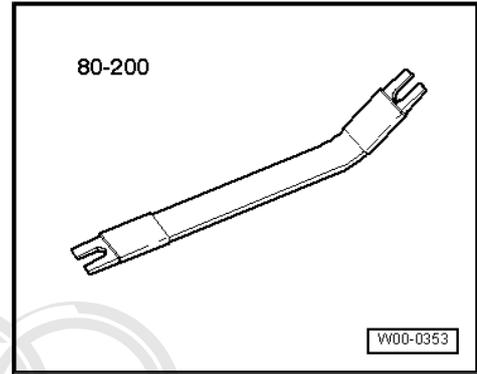


For the correct tightening specifications; refer to ⇒ ["1.2.1 Center Console Assembly Overview", page 8](#) .

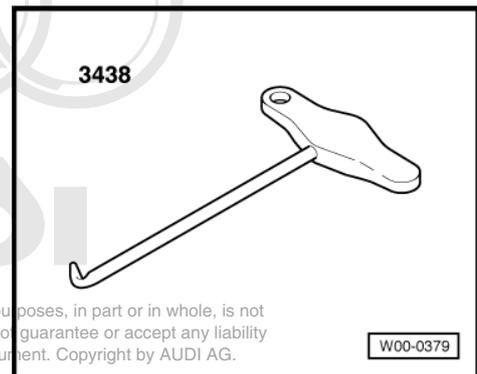
2.2.14 Rear Center Console

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Pry lever -80 - 200-



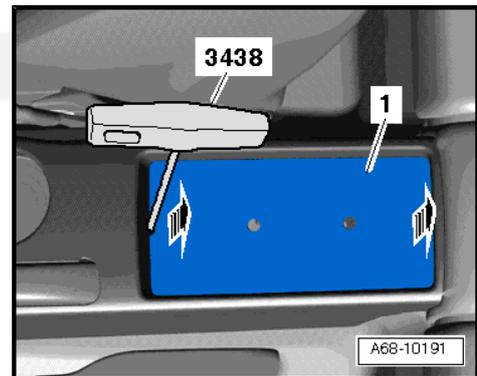
◆ Hook -3438-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

- Remove front center console. Refer to ⇒ ["2.2.13 Front Center Console", page 31](#) .
- If present, remove upholstery bracket. Refer to ⇒ ["2.4.2 Upholstery Bracket", page 35](#) .
- If present, remove Telephone Baseplate -R126- . Refer to ⇒ Communication; Rep. Gr. 91 ; Removal and Installation .
- Remove the liner mat.
- Remove compartment -1- from center console -arrows- using Hook -3438- .
- Disconnect the connector form the AUX socket
- Press clip -arrow- off center console using Pry Lever -80 - 200- .



 **Note**

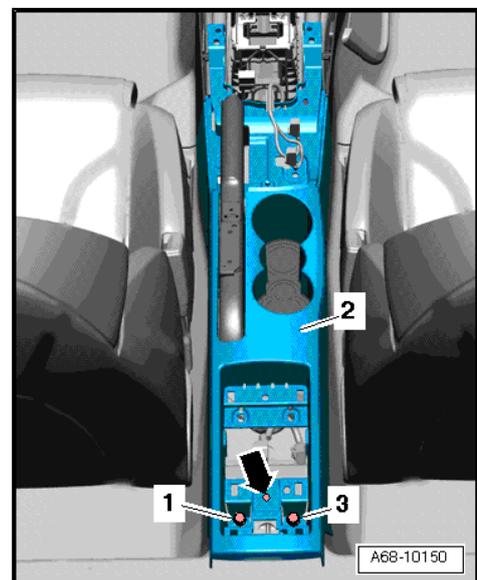
For easier removal of clips, use silicon-free lubricating spray if necessary.

- Remove nuts -1- and -3-.
- Pull center console -2- up and guide it over parking brake lever.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.

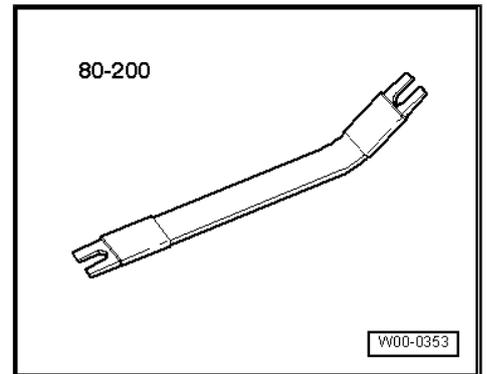
For the correct tightening specifications; refer to ⇒ [page 9](#) .



2.2.15 Center Console Bracket

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Pry lever -80 - 200-



Removing

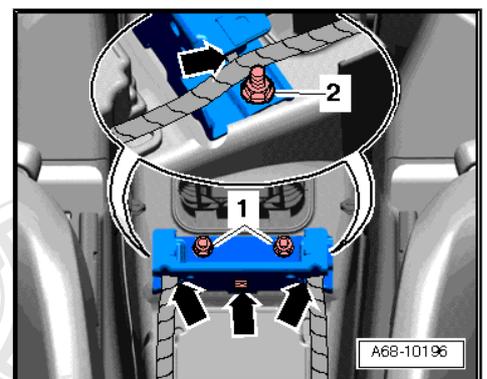
- Remove rear center console. Refer to [⇒ “2.2.13 Front Center Console”, page 31](#) .
- Press clips -arrows- off bracket with Pry Lever -80 - 200- .



Note

For easier removal of clips, use silicon-free lubricating spray if necessary.

- Remove nuts -1- and -2- and remove bracket.



Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to [⇒ page 9](#) .

2.3 Parking Brake Handle Trim

[⇒ “2.3.1 Parking Brake Handle Trim, Vehicles without Center Armrest”, page 33](#)

[⇒ “2.3.2 Parking Brake Handle Trim, Vehicles with Center Armrest”, page 34](#)

[⇒ “2.3.3 Left and Right Parking Brake Trim, Vehicles with Center Armrest”, page 34](#)

2.3.1 Parking Brake Handle Trim, Vehicles without Center Armrest

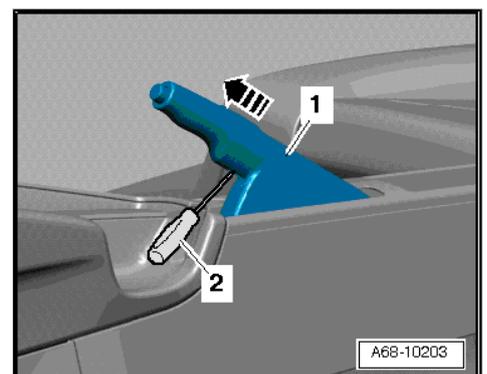
Removing

- Pull the parking brake up as far as possible.
- Release clips through lower opening on parking brake handle with a small screwdriver -2-.
- Remove parking brake handle trim -1- forward -arrow-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Make sure the parking brake handle trim engages audibly.



2.3.2 Parking Brake Handle Trim, Vehicles with Center Armrest

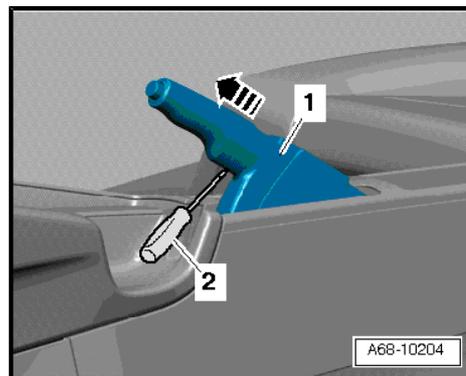
Removing

- Remove upholstery bracket. Refer to ⇒ ["2.4.2 Upholstery Bracket", page 35](#) .
- Pull the parking brake up as far as possible.
- Pierce through seam on parking brake handle at place shown in illustration using a small screwdriver -2-.
- Release clip underneath and remove parking brake handle trim -1- forward -arrow-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Make sure the parking brake handle trim engages audibly.



2.3.3 Left and Right Parking Brake Trim, Vehicles with Center Armrest

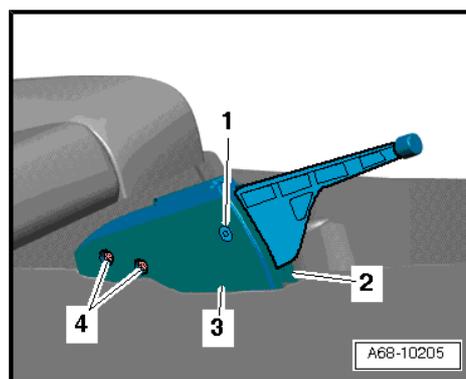
Removing

- Remove rear center console. Refer to ⇒ ["2.2.14 Rear Center Console", page 31](#) .
- Remove parking brake handle trim. Refer to ⇒ ["2.3.2 Parking Brake Handle Trim, Vehicles with Center Armrest", page 34](#) .
- Remove the bolts -4-.
- Pry out cover cap -1- with a screwdriver and remove bolt.
- Remove parking brake lever trim -2 and 3-.

Installation

Installation is reverse of removal, but note the following.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to ⇒ ["1.3.1 Parking Brake Handle Trim Assembly Overview", page 11](#) .



2.4 Center Armrest

⇒ ["2.4.1 Center Armrest Upholstery", page 34](#)

⇒ ["2.4.2 Upholstery Bracket", page 35](#)

2.4.1 Center Armrest Upholstery

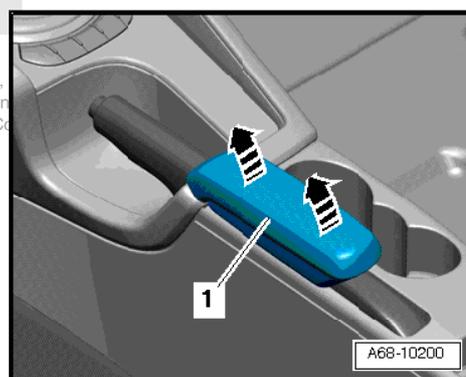
Removing

- Remove center armrest upholstery -1- upward from spring clips -arrows-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Make sure the center armrest upholstery engages audibly in spring clips.



2.4.2 Upholstery Bracket

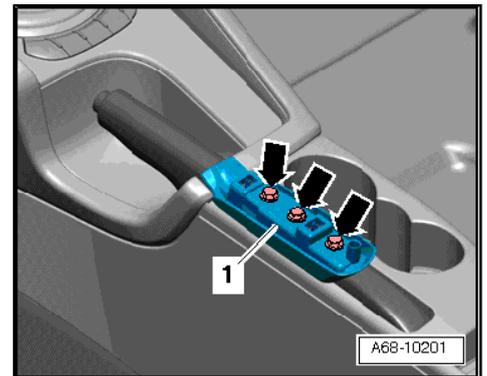
Removing

- Remove center armrest upholstery. Refer to ⇒ [“2.4.1 Center Armrest Upholstery”, page 34](#) .
- Remove screws -arrows- and remove bracket -1-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to ⇒ [“1.4.1 Center Armrest Assembly Overview”, page 12](#) .



2.5 Interior Rearview Mirror

⇒ [“2.5.1 Interior Rearview Mirror”, page 35](#)

2.5.1 Interior Rearview Mirror

Pay attention to the safety precautions when removing or installing an interior rearview mirror, refer to ⇒ [“1.5.1 Interior Rearview Mirror Safety Precautions”, page 13](#) and to the General Information. Refer to ⇒ [“1.5.2 Interior Rearview Mirror General Information”, page 13](#) .



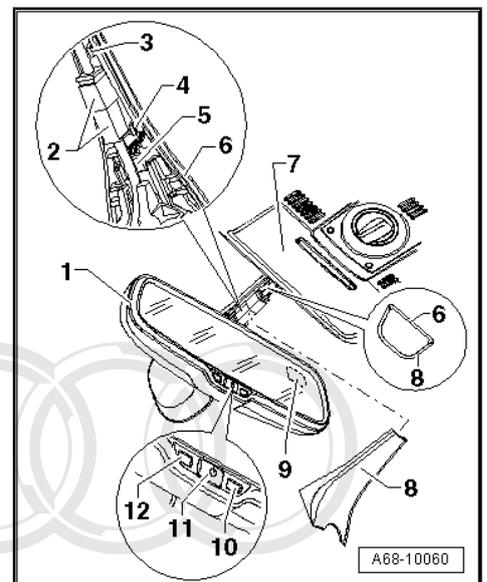
The removal and installation procedure describes an automatic day/night interior rearview mirror -Y7-. The procedure is identical with other versions.

Removing

- Remove the cover -8- from the cable guide -6-.
- Remove connector -5- from Rain/Light Recognition Sensor -G397- .
- Unclip wire from brackets -3- and -4-.

Vehicles with an automatic dimming interior rearview mirror -Y7-

- Disconnect the connector -2-.
- 1 - Interior Rearview Mirror
 7 - Interior light (roof module)
 9 - Compass display
 10 - Automatic dimming interior rearview mirror light sensor
 11 - Buttons with dual functions:
- ◆ Switching automatic dimming function on and off
 - ◆ Digital compass, activating and calibrating



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Procedure for all Vehicles

- Remove the cable guide -1- from the retaining plate -3-.
- Rotate interior rearview mirror -2- approx. 20° counterclockwise.
- Remove the interior rearview mirror -2- from the retaining plate -3-.

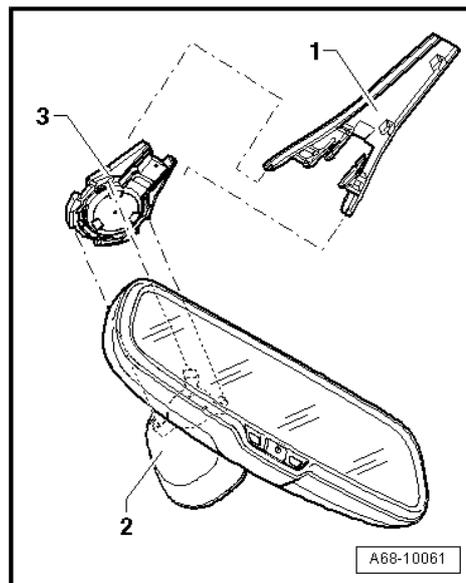


Note

Do not disconnect the interior rearview mirror from the mirror base under any circumstances.

Installation

- Install in reverse order of removal.



Audi

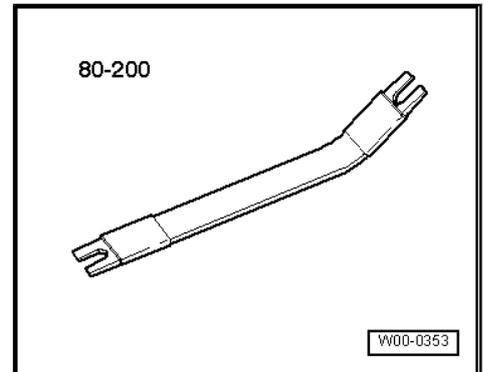
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



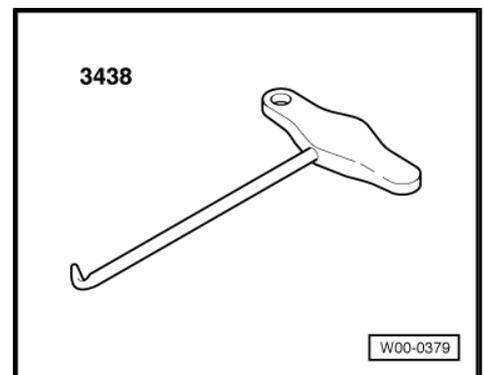
3 Special Tools

Special tools and workshop equipment required

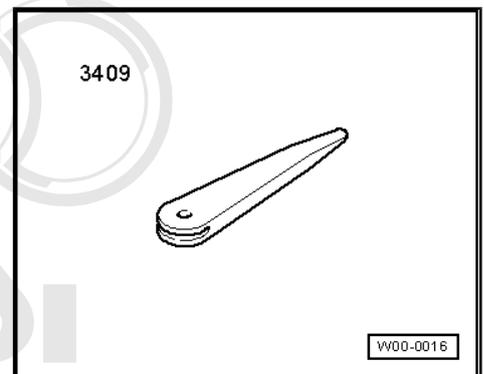
- ◆ Pry lever -80 - 200-



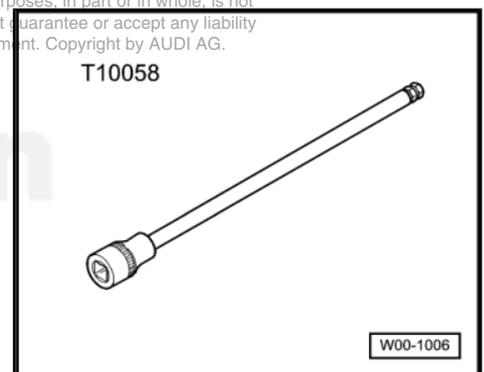
- ◆ Hook -3438-



- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



- ◆ Socket -T10058-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

69 – Passenger Protection, Airbags, Seat Belts

1 General Information

⇒ [“1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures”, page 38](#)

1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures

⇒ [“1.1.1 General Safety Precautions”, page 38](#)

⇒ [“1.1.2 Airbag, Belt Tensioner and Battery Cut-Out Units, Storage, Transporting and Disposal”, page 40](#)

⇒ [“1.1.3 Side Airbag Additional Safety Precautions”, page 41](#)

⇒ [“1.1.4 Side Curtain Airbag Additional Safety Precautions”, page 42](#)

permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

⇒ [“1.1.5 Front Side Airbag Crash Sensors Safety Precautions”, page 42](#)

⇒ [“1.1.6 Passive Occupant Detection Sensor Additional Safety Precautions”, page 44](#)

⇒ [“1.1.7 Passenger Occupant Detection System, Procedure after an Accident”, page 44](#)

⇒ [“1.1.8 Restraint System Components, Removing and Installing after an Accident”, page 44](#)

⇒ [“1.1.9 Airbag Mounting Components, Checking after an Accident”, page 46](#)

⇒ [“1.1.10 Accident without Airbag Deployment”, page 47](#)

⇒ [“1.1.11 Seat Belts, Inspecting”, page 47](#)

⇒ [“1.1.12 Belt Webbing, Checking”, page 47](#)

⇒ [“1.1.13 Automatic Belt Retractor Locking Function, Checking”, page 48](#)

⇒ [“1.1.14 Belt Latch, Inspection”, page 49](#)

⇒ [“1.1.15 Belt Latch, Checking Function”, page 49](#)

⇒ [“1.1.16 Belt Guide Rings and Locking Tongue, Checking”, page 49](#)

⇒ [“1.1.17 Mounting Components and Points, Checking after an Accident”, page 49](#)

⇒ [“1.1.18 Child Seat Anchorage, Checking Function”, page 50](#)

⇒ [“1.1.19 Child Seat Anchorages, Inspecting after an Accident”, page 50](#)

1.1.1 General Safety Precautions



Note

Pyrotechnic components:

- ◆ Airbag units
- ◆ Belt tensioner
- ◆ Belt force limiter (depending on equipment)

◆ Battery cut-off components (depending on equipment)



Caution

- ◆ *Testing, removing, installing and repair work may only be performed by qualified personnel.*
- ◆ *There is no change interval for airbag units.*
- ◆ *Never test with a test light, volt meter or ohm meter.*
- ◆ *The pyrotechnic components may be checked only when they are installed and with a Volkswagen approved vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system.*
- ◆ *When working on pyrotechnic components and on the airbag control module -J234-, the battery ground cable must be disconnected WITH THE IGNITION SWITCHED ON. Then cover the negative pole.*
- ◆ *Wait for 10 seconds after disconnecting the battery.*
- ◆ *Connect the battery with the ignition SWITCHED ON. No one should be sitting inside the vehicle when doing this. Exception: vehicles with the battery inside the passenger compartment. In this case, stay away from the airbags and the safety belts.*
- ◆ *Observe measures after the battery is connected. Refer to → Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27; Removal and Installation.*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components of the restraint system, for example, before disconnecting the electrical harness connector, the relevant person must discharge static electricity. Touching grounded metal parts, for example, touching the door striker, will discharge the static electricity.*
- ◆ *Wash hands after touching ignited restraint system pyrotechnic components.*
- ◆ *Pyrotechnic components may not be opened nor repaired; always use new parts (risk of injury).*
- ◆ *Pyrotechnic components that have fallen onto a hard surface or show signs of damage must not be installed in vehicle.*
- ◆ *Pyrotechnic components should be installed immediately upon removal from shipping package.*
- ◆ *If the work must be stopped for awhile, put the pyrotechnic component back into its shipping package.*
- ◆ *Do not leave the pyrotechnic component out unattended.*
- ◆ *When connecting restraint system pyrotechnic components, only the person performing the work should be in the vehicle.*
- ◆ *Do not use any grease or cleaning solutions on pyrotechnic components.*
- ◆ *Replace the airbag unit if any contaminants such as oil, grease, paint, dye or cleaning solution have penetrated the fabric.*
- ◆ *Pyrotechnic components must not be exposed to temperatures over 212°F (100 °C), even for a short time.*

Unauthorized copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. All rights reserved. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG.

Belt Tensioner, Special Instructions



Caution

- ◆ *Use extreme care when removing and installing belt tensioners. Handling belt tensioner units improperly is very dangerous and could result in serious personal injury.*
- ◆ *Belt tensioners that are mechanically damaged (dents, cracks) must always be replaced.*
- ◆ *The open end of the belt tensioner should never be pointed at anyone.*
- ◆ *When connecting a belt tensioner, all mechanical parts, including those in the three-point seat belt, must be secured correctly. If it is not possible to connect the belt tensioner because of insufficient space, the seat belt must be rolled up completely prior to connection. In this case there is no increased safety risk, if all other safety instructions are followed. In particular, this includes the notes regarding the disconnection of the battery and the static discharging of the technician prior to connection of the belt tensioner.*
- ◆ *Even after a crash, it is possible that the belt tensioner did ignite, but the belt force limiter did NOT ignite. These parts shall be treated like non-ignited parts!*

Special Information Regarding Driver and Front Passenger Airbags

- ◆ Store the driver and front passenger airbag units in the uninstalled state so that the cushioned side faces upward.

When replacing airbag units, following sequence must be followed exactly:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- 1 - Remove the old airbag unit and store with the upholstered side facing up.
- 2 - Remove the new airbag unit from the transport container and store it with the upholstered side facing up.
- 3 - Place the old airbag unit in the transport container immediately.
- 4 - Install the new airbag unit in the vehicle.

1.1.2 Airbag, Belt Tensioner and Battery Cut-Out Units, Storage, Transporting and Disposal

- ◆ Storage must conform to national legislation.
- ◆ Transport must conform to national and international guidelines, whereby packaging, identification and shipping documents are controlled to the greatest detail.
- ◆ Undeployed pyrotechnic components must be disposed of in an orderly manner, conforming to national legislation.
- ◆ Only pyrotechnic components, which have been ignited completely, may be disposed in industrial waste.



WARNING

- ◆ *This does not apply to Wankel pre-load belt tensioners. Handle these as if they were undeployed pyrotechnic components such as airbags, seat belts and pyrotechnic battery disconnect components.*
- ◆ *Workshop equipment cannot determine if Wankel belt tensioners have deployed all pyrotechnic materials.*

1.1.3 Side Airbag Additional Safety Precautions

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written consent or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Caution

- ◆ *We recommend using original equipment seat covers.*
- ◆ *Seat covers or extra covers that are not approved specially for use on Audi seats with side airbags must not be used.*
- ◆ *Do not cut the backrest material in side airbag area.*
- ◆ *When installing, seam in side airbag region must run straight.*
- ◆ *All upholstery clips must be replaced (metal and plastic clips).*
- ◆ *We recommend using original upholstery clips.*
- ◆ *During installation, all upholstery clips must be placed in the same place as when removed.*
- ◆ *If cover is damaged (with rips, burned holes, etc.) in side airbag region, it must be replaced for safety reasons so that airbag deploys correctly.*
- ◆ *Do not repair the backrest cover in the side airbag area (because of special materials and strictly defined seams).*
- ◆ *Always replace the backrest upholstery if the side airbag deploys.*
- ◆ *All components, which were damaged in a crash, must be replaced. If the airbag unit appears to be undamaged, it may be used again.*
- ◆ *If thorax airbag units are replaced, the new thorax airbag number sticker should be removed and placed over the old label on the seat pan.*
- ◆ *Do not poke the cover with an upholstery needle or other sharp objects in the region of the airbag, front passenger seat occupant sensor -G128- and passenger occupant detection system mat.*



Caution

- ◆ *Always use the correct installation position and only install in the location intended in the doors.*
- ◆ *Protect crash sensors from being impacted or struck. Crash sensors that have fallen to the ground must not be used again. Remove the crash sensor when working on the door.*
- ◆ *The crash sensor is calibrated to the volume of air inside the door. If the door is deformed resulting in a reduced air space inside the door, the function of the crash sensor will be affected.*
- ◆ *Keep all contaminants away from crash sensor: do not use compressed air near the crash sensor. Protect the crash sensor from filings or shavings, for example, when installing door speakers later. Do not use cavity sealant or spray oil in the crash sensor area.*
- ◆ *Protections against heat/cold: Avoid using heat, for example by painting or other body work. Do not expose the crash sensors to temperatures below $-40\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$, for example in non-climatized airplane cargo holds.*
- ◆ *Protect crash sensor from moisture when storing and installing.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

The door must seal correctly to ensure the crash sensor functions correctly. Note the following points:

- ◆ All components (for example, cover, speaker, door trim) must be installed correctly.
- ◆ The door trim clips seal the system closed. Replace the clips if necessary.

1.1.6 Passive Occupant Detection Sensor Additional Safety Precautions



Caution

- ◆ *After each repair to the front passenger seat where the seat or backrest cover was »removed«, a basic setting of the passenger occupant detection system control module must be performed.*
- ◆ *Do not bend the passenger occupant detection system mat.*
- ◆ *A leaking mat must be replaced (service kit).*
- ◆ *Do not bend the passenger occupant detection system pressure hose.*
- ◆ *Make sure the components of the passenger occupant detection system do not fall onto hard surfaces, do not come into contact with grease and do not risk damage by resting against sharp objects.*
- ◆ *The mat, the fleece and various covers must be fitted to be free of folds.*
- ◆ *Ensure the seat upholstery and cover are positioned correctly when installing.*
- ◆ *Replace all upholstery clips or clips and make sure they are positioned correctly on the seat.*
- ◆ *The system basic setting can be performed at temperatures between 32 °F and 104 °F (0 °C and 40 °C) with 8.R and 9.* airbags. The temperature must be between 41 °F and 95 °F (5 °C and 35 °C) with 10.* airbags.*
- ◆ *Make sure that no objects are placed on seat when performing basic setting.*
- ◆ *The use of additional seat cushions such as pillows impairs the function of the seat occupant detection system and the operation of the airbag system.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.1.7 Passenger Occupant Detection System, Procedure after an Accident

- ◆ Each time an airbag or passenger belt tensioner deploys, a basic setting must be performed on the seat occupied recognition control module. Refer to Vehicle diagnostic tester.
- ◆ If the seat rail and/or the seat pan was deformed in an accident and must be replaced, replace the passenger occupant detection system with the "passenger occupant detection system service kit". Then a "basic setting" must be performed for the passenger occupant detection system control module. Refer to Vehicle diagnostic tester.

1.1.8 Restraint System Components, Removing and Installing after an Accident

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Vehicle Diagnosis Tester



Note

- ◆ *The airbag control module can be used for up to 2 side airbag and/or belt tensioner deployments with airbag generation 8.* , except »8.R«.*
- ◆ *The airbag control module can be used for up to two side, driver and passenger airbag and/or belt tensioner deployments with airbag generation 9.* , 10.* and 8.R .*
- ◆ *After the third deployment, the malfunction display “Control module defect“ appears.*

Airbag control module must be replaced:

- ◆ With driver and passenger airbag deployment “but not with airbag generation 9.* , 10.* and 8.R“ ⇒ [page 45](#)
- ◆ After three side airbag, driver airbag, passenger airbag or belt tensioner deployments
- ◆ If housing is damaged
- ◆ if there is deformation on tunnel in 200 mm circumference around control module

Always replace the following:

- ◆ All triggered airbag units
- ◆ The battery interrupt igniter -N253-

Also with passenger airbag deployment:

- ◆ Instrument Panel
- ◆ Deformed passenger module supports (cannot be reformed)
- ◆ All sensors for front airbag on front end
- ◆ Remaining cross acceleration sensors if anchorage point is deformed in sensor region

Also with driver airbag deployment:

- ◆ Coil connector with slip ring
- ◆ All sensors for front airbag on front end
- ◆ Remaining cross acceleration sensors if anchorage point is deformed in sensor region

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Also with side airbag deployment:

- ◆ Pressure sensors on deployed side
- ◆ Cross acceleration sensors on deployed side
- ◆ Cover
- ◆ Cushion
- ◆ With a folding rear seat backrest: side cushion (if equipped)
- ◆ Remaining cross acceleration sensors if anchorage point is deformed in sensor region

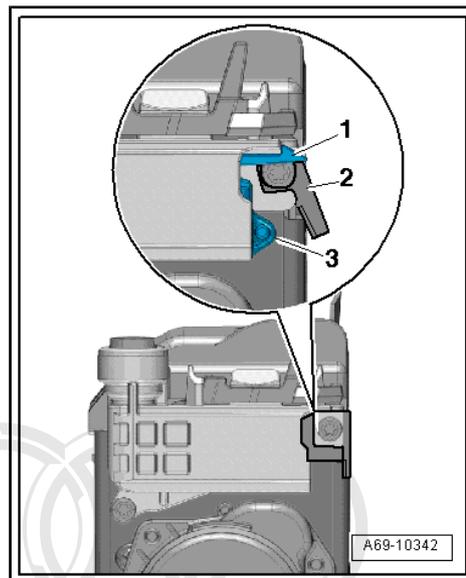
In addition:

- ◆ All belt retractors with deployed belt tensioners
- ◆ All belt retractors with deployed belt force limiters (depending on equipment)
- ◆ Seat belt latches for all automatic belt retractors with deployed seat belt tensioners

- ◆ Seat belt height adjuster (manual and power) for all automatic belt retractors with deployed seat belt tensioners
- Connect the Vehicle Diagnosis Tester if there is a chance the belt tensioner and/or seat belt force limiter deployed.
- In »guided fault finding« under "15 - Airbag", check whether there is a crash entry in the airbag control module.
- Check if the malfunction "Resistance too high" is stored for the belt tensioner and/or belt force limiter. Deployed belt tensioners and/or belt force limiters must meet both criteria. "Requirement: the airbag control module must not have been replaced."

**Note**

- ◆ The error "Resistance too high" may also be caused by an open circuit. If that is the case, there is usually no collision entry.
 - ◆ Depending on the vehicle, the belt tensioner may be deployed while the belt force limiter may »NOT«. If that is the case, follow the guidelines for disposing of pyrotechnic components. Refer to
⇒ ["1.1.2 Airbag, Belt Tensioner and Battery Cut-Out Units, Storage, Transporting and Disposal", page 40](#).
 - ◆ Also check the seat belts. Refer to
⇒ ["1.1.11 Seat Belts, Inspecting", page 47](#).
 - ◆ Deployed belt force limiters can be recognized by the following characteristics:
 - ◆ The pin -1- and tab -3- are protruding out of the belt force limiter housing on the automatic belt retractor.
 - ◆ The tab -2- is no longer vertical but is diagonal toward the outside.
- If parts of the seat belt system are removed due to an accident, replace the belt system bolts.
 - If needed (visual inspection), the following must also be replaced: all faulty components.



1.1.9 Airbag Mounting Components, Checking after an Accident

All damaged securing pieces must be replaced, you cannot reshape components or »make them fit«.

The following components must be checked after every airbag deployment.

With a passenger airbag deployment:

- ◆ Instrument panel center pipe; make sure the front passenger airbag module and supports can be installed without tension. Otherwise, replace the center pipe.
- ◆ Check the glove compartment and replace if damaged.

With a driver airbag deployment:

- ◆ Steering wheel: Remove the steering wheel and place it on the flat surface with the steering wheel rim. The entire rim must rest on the surface. Otherwise replace the steering wheel.
- ◆ Check the steering wheel for smoke residue and replace if there is any.

1.1.10 Accident without Airbag Deployment

- ◆ If the airbag indicator lamp -K75- does not indicate a malfunction, the pyrotechnic components do not need to be replaced. Check the seat belts separately.

1.1.11 Seat Belts, Inspecting



WARNING

After every accident the seat belt system must be inspected systematically! If damage is determined when inspecting the check points, customer must be informed regarding necessity of changing belts.

Inspection Points

- ◆ Check belt webbing
 ⇒ ["1.1.12 Belt Webbing, Checking", page 47](#) .
- ◆ Check the automatic belt retractor (locking function)
 ⇒ ["1.1.13 Automatic Belt Retractor Locking Function, Checking", page 48](#) .
- ◆ Visual inspection of belt buckle
 ⇒ ["1.1.14 Belt Latch, Inspection", page 49](#) .
- ◆ Belt latch function test
 ⇒ ["1.1.15 Belt Latch, Checking Function", page 49](#) .
- ◆ Check belt guide rings and locking tongue
 ⇒ ["1.1.16 Belt Guide Rings and Locking Tongue, Checking", page 49](#) .
- ◆ Check securing components and anchorage points
 ⇒ ["1.1.17 Mounting Components and Points, Checking after an Accident", page 49](#) .
- ◆ Check the function of the child seat anchorage for additional child seats (not for the driver safety belt)
 ⇒ ["1.1.18 Child Seat Anchorage, Checking Function", page 50](#) .



Caution

If customer refuses to have a damaged seat belt replaced, appropriate note should be made in service book.

1.1.12 Belt Webbing, Checking

Procedure

- Pull the belt completely out of the automatic belt retractor or lap belt adjustment tongue.
- Check belt webbing for soiling, wash with mild soap solution if necessary. Refer to operating instructions.



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- If one of the types of damage (1 and 2) shown in the following is detected on a vehicle which has been in an accident - seat belt must be replaced completely with belt buckle.
- If damage as illustrated under points 1, 2 or 3 is determined on vehicle which has not been involved in an accident, it is sufficient to replace damaged belt only.
- 1 - Belt webbing cut, torn or chafed.
- 2 - Webbing loops on belt edge torn.
- 3 - Burn marks from cigarettes or the like.

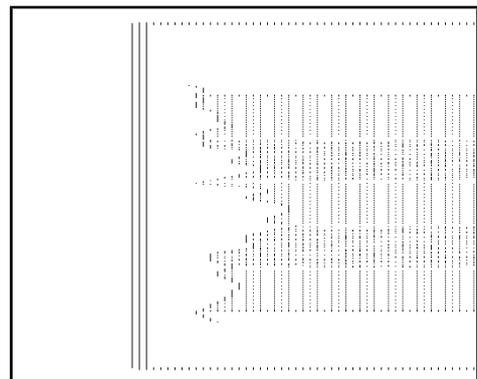
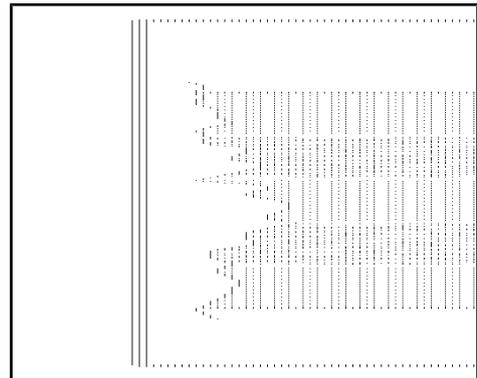
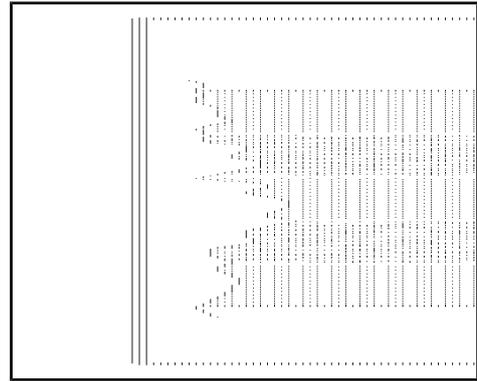
1.1.13 Automatic Belt Retractor Locking Function, Checking

The automatic belt retractor has 2 locking functions.

- ◆ The first locking function is initiated by the belt being jerked out of the belt retractor (belt extraction acceleration).

Test 1

- Pull the belt webbing out of the belt retractor with a firm jerk.
- No locking effect - replace seat belt complete with belt buckle.
- If difficulties are experienced when pulling out or retracting belt, first check whether position of the belt retractor has been altered.
- The second locking function is initiated by change in vehicle velocity (vehicle-dependent locking function).



Test 2



WARNING

For safety reasons, road test should be carried out on traffic-free stretch to ensure that other motorists/pedestrians etc. are not endangered.

- Fasten seat belt.
- Accelerate vehicle to 12 mph (20 km/h) and then perform a full braking maneuver with foot brake.
- Replace seat belt complete with seat belt latch if seat belt is not locked by locking mechanism during braking procedure.

1.1.14 Belt Latch, Inspection

- Inspect belt buckle for cracks and fracturing.
- If damaged, replace seat belt complete with belt buckle.

1.1.15 Belt Latch, Checking Function

Checking Belt Buckle

- Slide the latch tongue into the belt latch until it clicks in place. Pull on the belt webbing strongly to make sure the latch mechanism is engaged.
- Replace seat belt complete with seat belt latch if belt tongue fails even only once to engage properly in seat belt latch during at least 5 tests.

Check Release Mechanism

- Press the button in the belt latch to release the seat belt. The latch tongue must spring out of the belt latch by itself when the belt webbing is slack.
- Perform the test at least five times. If the latch tongue does not spring out even one time, replace the entire seat belt, including the belt latch.

Protected by copyright. Copyright © Audi AG, 2011. All rights reserved. No part of this document may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system, without the prior written permission of Audi AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



WARNING

Under no circumstances may grease be used to eliminate noise or stiffness at belt buckle buttons.

1.1.16 Belt Guide Rings and Locking Tongue, Checking

Plastic-coated fittings face the load (seat belt on during accident) of the belt system parallel to the small grooves (wear created by significant usage, in contrast, is recognizable on the basis of the smooth, stripe-free abrasion).

- Check plastic for deformation, rupture and tearing.
- For groove build-up and/or damage, replace seat belt completely with lock.

1.1.17 Mounting Components and Points, Checking after an Accident

- ◆ Buckle latch deformed (stretched).

- ◆ Height adjustment not functional.
- ◆ Anchorage points (seat, pillar, vehicle floor) distorted or threads damaged.
- If damage is found at components, replace the seat belt completely with lock.
- If parts of the seat belt system are removed due to an accident, replace the belt system mounting bolts.
- Replace anchorage points.

**Note**

In damage is discovered that is not accident-related, for example, wear, replace the particular part which is damaged.

1.1.18 Child Seat Anchorage, Checking Function

To check function, you must install entire belt system, including side trim.

Switching hold function on

- ◆ Pull out seat belt as far as the stop.

Correct function

- ◆ Belt must retract with a chattering sound.
- ◆ If retracting process is stopped, belt cannot be pulled out anymore.

Deactivating

- ◆ Belt retraction to about 100 mm remaining.
- ◆ The hold function must switch off when there is at least 100 mm remaining. The belt will function normally again.

If the seat belt child seat anchorage does not work, replace the seat belt

1.1.19 Child Seat Anchorages, Inspecting after an Accident

Inspection Points

- ◆ Child seat anchors must be checked for damage or deformation after an accident.
- ◆ Child seat anchors welded or bolted into the body or the seat or backrest must not be repaired or straightened.
- ◆ Child seat anchors bolted into the body or the seat or backrest must be replaced if damaged or deformed.
- ◆ Child seat anchors securing screws should be replaced if bracket is damaged.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



2 Description and Operation

⇒ [“2.1 Seat Belts, Coupe”, page 52](#)

⇒ [“2.2 Seat Belts, Roadster”, page 58](#)

⇒ [“2.3 Child Seat Anchorages, LATCH and Top Tether”, page 61](#)

⇒ [“2.4 Airbag, Servicing”, page 64](#)

⇒ [“2.5 Driver Side Airbag, Servicing”, page 67](#)

⇒ [“2.6 Front Passenger Side Airbag, Servicing”, page 68](#)

⇒ [“2.7 Front Side Airbag, Servicing”, page 69](#)

⇒ [“2.8 Knee Airbag, Servicing”, page 70](#)

⇒ [“2.9 Crash Sensor for Airbags, Servicing”, page 72](#)

⇒ [“2.10 Seat Position Sensor”, page 74](#)

⇒ [“2.11 Front Passenger Airbag Passenger Occupant Detection System, Servicing”, page 75](#)

2.1 Seat Belts, Coupe

⇒ [“2.1.1 Seat Belt and Mounting Points Assembly Overview”, page 52](#)

⇒ [“2.1.2 Front Three-Point Seat Belt Assembly Overview”, page 54](#)

⇒ [“2.1.3 Front Belt Latch Anchorage Point Assembly Overview”, page 55](#)

⇒ [“2.1.4 Rear Three-Point Seat Belt Assembly Overview”, page 56](#)

⇒ [“2.1.5 Rear Belt Latch Assembly Overview”, page 57](#)

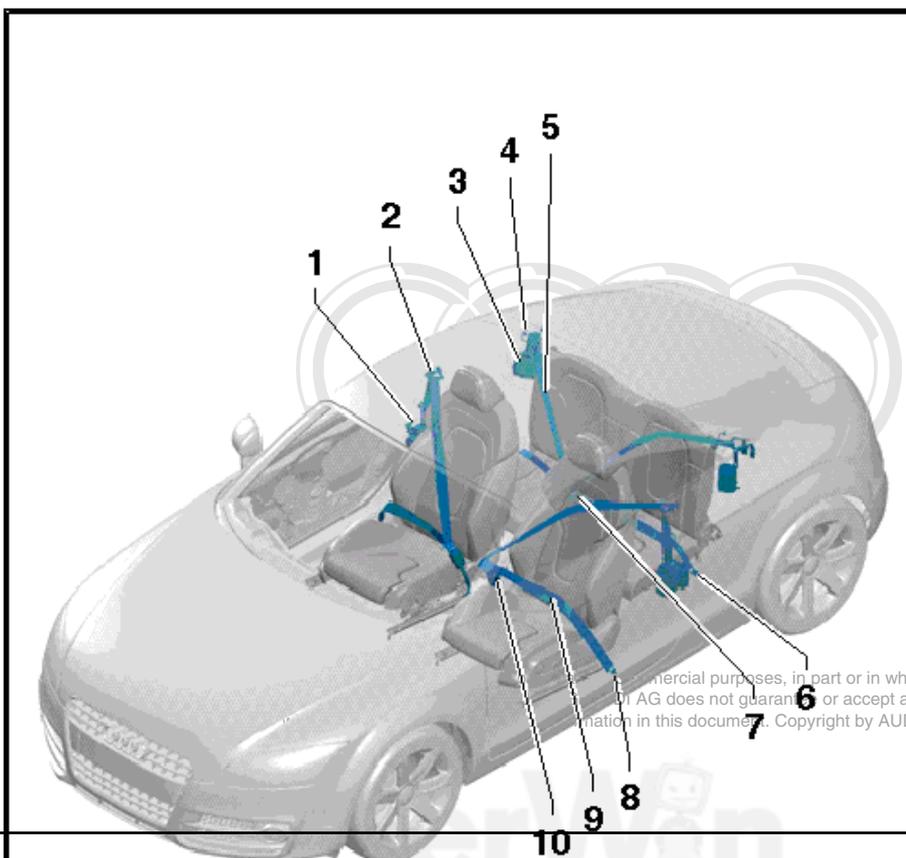
2.1.1 Seat Belt and Mounting Points Assembly Overview

1 - Belt roller/belt tensioner/switchable belt load limiter

- For front three-point seat belt
- Switchable force limiter only for certain countries
- Assembly Overview:
- ◆ Belt roller with belt tensioner
⇒ [“2.1.2 Front Three-Point Seat Belt Assembly Overview”, page 54](#)
- ◆ Belt roller with tensioner and switchable force limiter
⇒ [“2.1.2 Front Three-Point Seat Belt Assembly Overview”, page 54](#)

2 - Belt relay front anchorage point

- Removing, refer to
⇒ [“3.1.1 Three-Point Seat Belt with Belt Tensioner/Force Limiter”, page 77](#)



For commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not guaranteed or accepted any liability information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 - Belt roller

- For rear three-point seat belt
- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ [“2.1.4 Rear Three-Point Seat Belt Assembly Overview”, page 56](#)

4 - Belt relay rear anchorage point

- Removing, refer to ⇒ [“3.1.5 Rear Three-Point Seat Belt”, page 81](#)

5 - Rear three-point seat belt

- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ [“2.1.4 Rear Three-Point Seat Belt Assembly Overview”, page 56](#)

6 - Rear outer belt end fitting

- Removing, refer to ⇒ [“3.1.6 Rear Outer Belt End Fitting”, page 82](#)

7 - Center belt end fitting

- Removing, refer to ⇒ [“2.1.3 Front Belt Latch Anchorage Point Assembly Overview”, page 55](#)

8 - Front outer belt end fitting

- Removing, refer to ⇒ [“3.1.2 Front Outer Belt End Fitting”, page 79](#)

9 - Front three-point seat belt

- Three-point seat belt assembly overview:
- ◆ With belt tensioner, refer to ⇒ [“2.1.2 Front Three-Point Seat Belt Assembly Overview”, page 54](#)
- ◆ With belt tensioner and switchable force limiter, refer to ⇒ [“2.1.2 Front Three-Point Seat Belt Assembly Overview”, page 54](#)

10 - Front seat belt latch securing point

- On front seat
- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ [“2.1.3 Front Belt Latch Anchorage Point Assembly Overview”, page 55](#)
- ◆ Without seat belt fasten sensor, removing and installing, refer to ⇒ [“3.1.4 Front Belt Latch Anchorage Point”, page 80](#)
- ◆ Seat Occupied Recognition System, Passenger Airbag Deactivation, Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“3.1.4 Front Belt Latch Anchorage Point”, page 80](#)
- ◆ Always replace the seat belt latch if the belt tensioner has deployed with the belt on



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin 

2.1.2 Front Three-Point Seat Belt Assembly Overview

1 - Three-point seat belt

- without switchable belt load limiter
- ◆ Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ [“3.1.1 Three-Point Seat Belt with Belt Tensioner/Force Limiter”, page 77](#)
- With switchable force limiter (country-specific)
- ◆ Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ [“3.1.1 Three-Point Seat Belt with Belt Tensioner/Force Limiter”, page 77](#)

2 - Switchable belt load limiter connector

- Versions for specific countries:
- Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ [page 78](#)

3 - Belt tensioner connector

- Removing and installing
⇒ [“3.1.1 Three-Point Seat Belt with Belt Tensioner/Force Limiter”, page 77](#)

4 - Bolt

- 4.5 Nm
- Quantity: 2

5 - Retainer

6 - Belt webbing

7 - Belt guide ring

8 - Bolt

- 45 Nm
- Quantity: 2

9 - Belt anchor

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“3.1.2 Front Outer Belt End Fitting”, page 79](#)

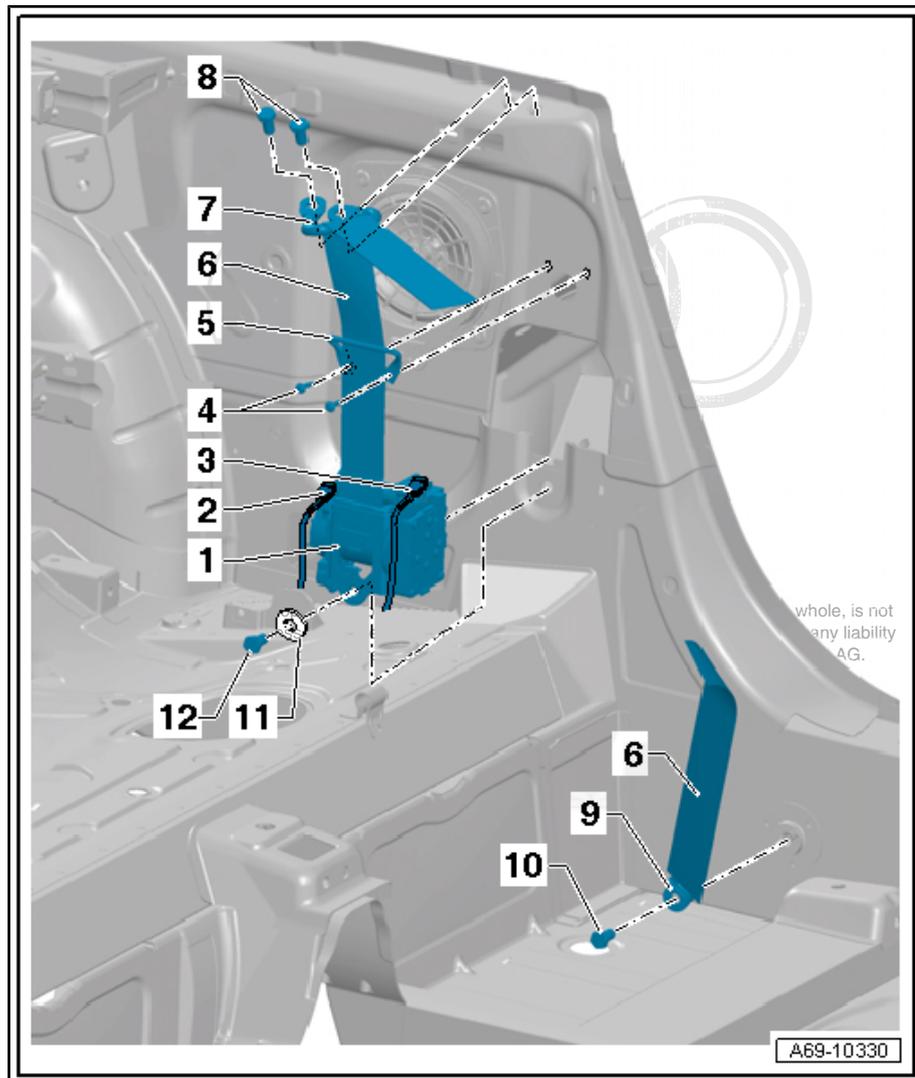
10 - Bolt

- 55 Nm

11 - Washer

12 - Bolt

- 45 Nm



2.1.3 Front Belt Latch Anchorage Point Assembly Overview

1 - Belt latch

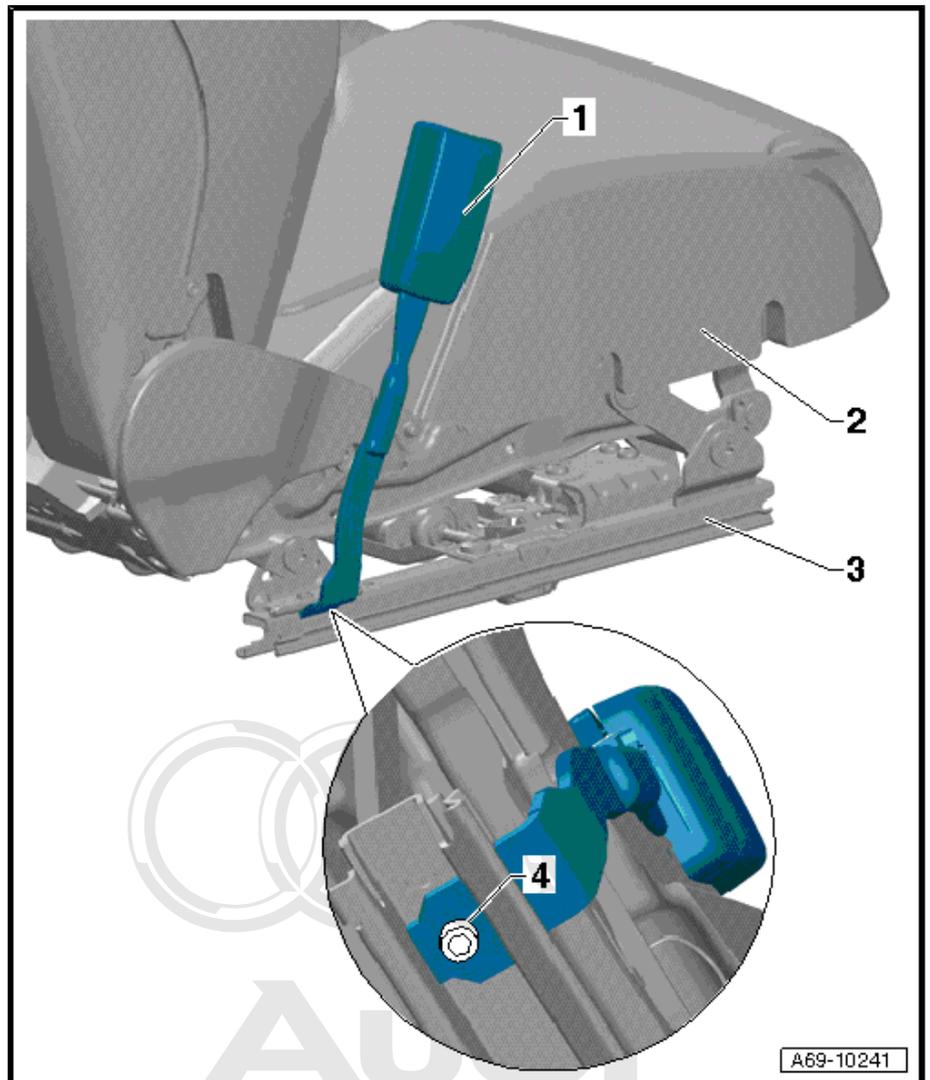
- Belt latch without seat belt fasten sensor, removing and installing, refer to [⇒ "3.1.4 Front Belt Latch Anchorage Point", page 80](#)
- Passenger airbag deactivation seat occupied recognition seat belt latch (for specific countries), removing and installing, refer to [⇒ "3.1.4 Front Belt Latch Anchorage Point", page 80](#) (versions of seat belt latch not shown in illustration)
- Always replace the seat belt latch if the belt tensioner has deployed with the belt on

2 - Front seat

3 - Seat frame

4 - Bolt

- Bucket Seat ONLY, 22 Nm
- All others, 34 Nm
- Replacing



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin

2.1.4 Rear Three-Point Seat Belt Assembly Overview

1 - Cover

- For the automatic belt retractor

2 - Bolt

- 45 Nm

3 - Automatic belt retractor

- Removing and Installing, refer to ["3.1.5 Rear Three-Point Seat Belt", page 81](#)

4 - Bolt

- 45 Nm
- Not available on all versions.

5 - Bolt

- 45 Nm
- Quantity: 2

6 - Belt guide ring

- Depending on the version

7 - Retainer

8 - Bolt

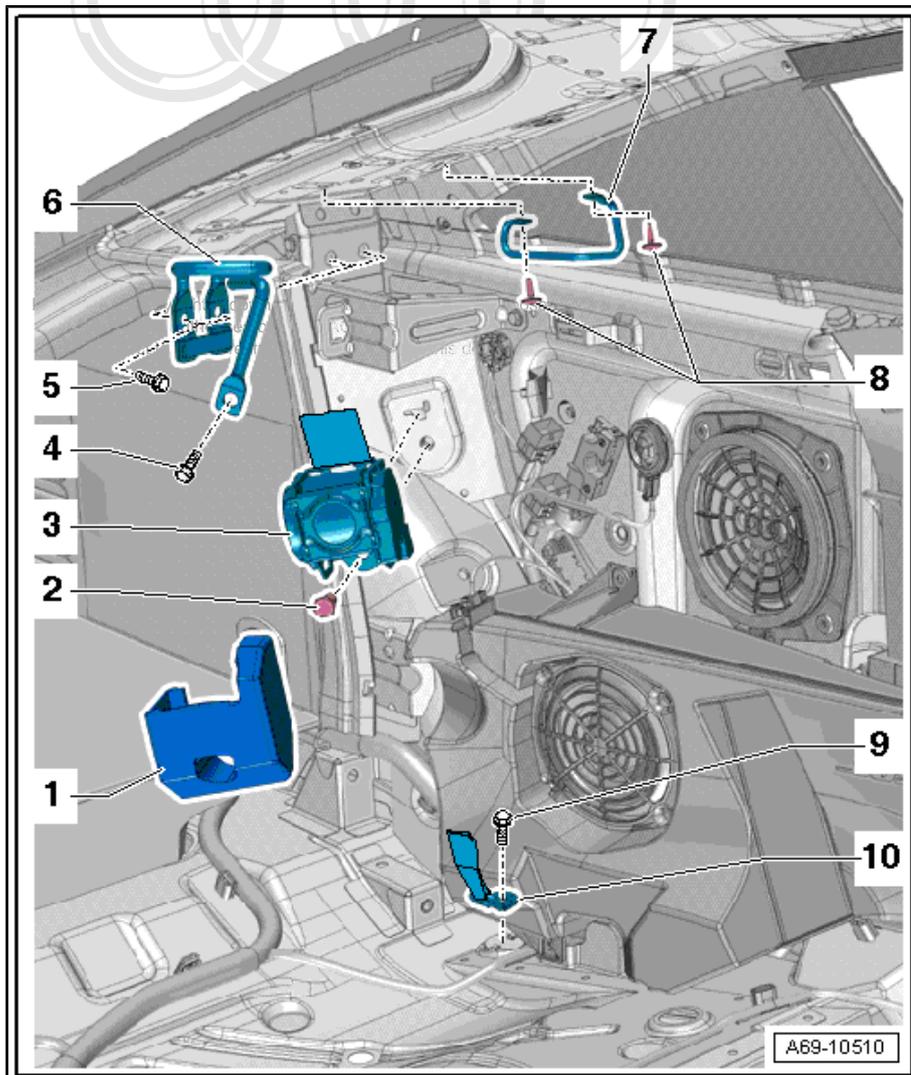
- 4.5 Nm
- Quantity: 2

9 - Bolt

- 55 Nm

10 - Belt anchor

- Removing and Installing, refer to ["3.1.5 Rear Three-Point Seat Belt", page 81](#)



2.1.5 Rear Belt Latch Assembly Overview

1 - Cover

- Not available on all versions.
- Installing ⇒ [page 83](#)

2 - Belt latch

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["3.1.7 Belt Latch", page 83](#)
- Always replace the seat belt latch if the belt tensioner has deployed with the belt on

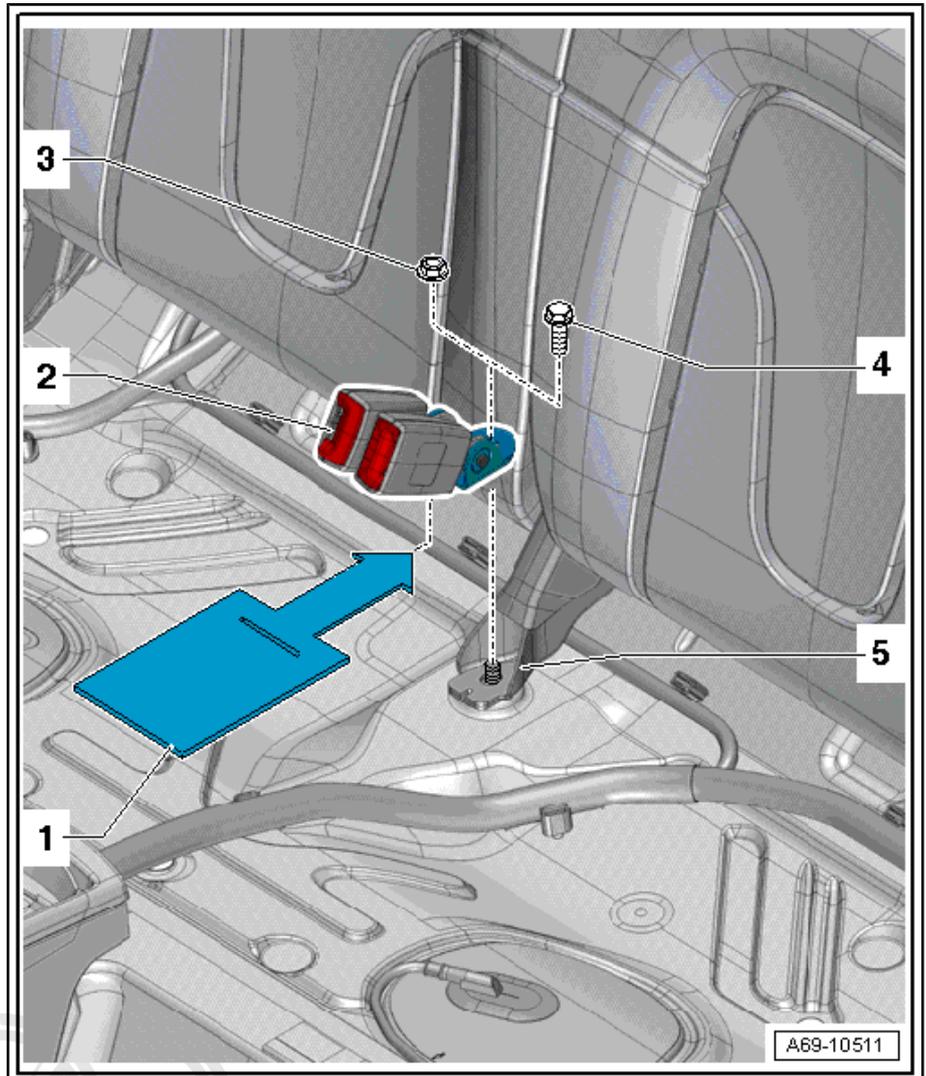
3 - Nut

- Depending on version
- Check the tightening sequence for the 1/2 left/right backrest, refer to ⇒ [page 311](#)
- 55 Nm

4 - Bolt

- Depending on version
- Check the tightening sequence for the 1/2 left/right backrest, refer to ⇒ [page 311](#)
- 55 Nm

5 - Backrest center bearing



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin

2.2 Seat Belts, Roadster

⇒ [“2.2.1 Seat Belt and Mounting Points Assembly Overview”, page 58](#)

⇒ [“2.2.2 Three-Point Seat Belt Assembly Overview”, page 59](#)

⇒ [“2.2.3 Belt Latch Anchorage Point Assembly Overview”, page 60](#)

2.2.1 Seat Belt and Mounting Points Assembly Overview

1 - Belt roller/belt tensioner/ switchable belt load limiter

- For three-point seat belt
- Switchable force limiter only for certain countries
- Assembly Overview:

◆ Belt roller with belt tensioner

⇒ [“2.2.2 Three-Point Seat Belt Assembly Overview”, page 59](#)

◆ Belt roller with tensioner and switchable force limiter

⇒ [“2.2.2 Three-Point Seat Belt Assembly Overview”, page 59](#)

2 - Retaining loop

- For three-point seat belt
- Is secured on seat

3 - Outside belt anchor

- Removing and Installing, refer to

⇒ [“3.2.2 Outer Belt End Fitting”, page 88](#)

4 - Three-point seat belt

- Three-point seat belt assembly overview:

◆ With belt tensioner, refer to

⇒ [“2.2.2 Three-Point Seat Belt Assembly Overview”, page 59](#)

◆ With belt tensioner and switchable force limiter, refer to

⇒ [“2.2.2 Three-Point Seat Belt Assembly Overview”, page 59](#)

5 - Seat Belt Latch Anchorage Point

- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ [“2.2.3 Belt Latch Anchorage Point Assembly Overview”, page 60](#)
- On front seat

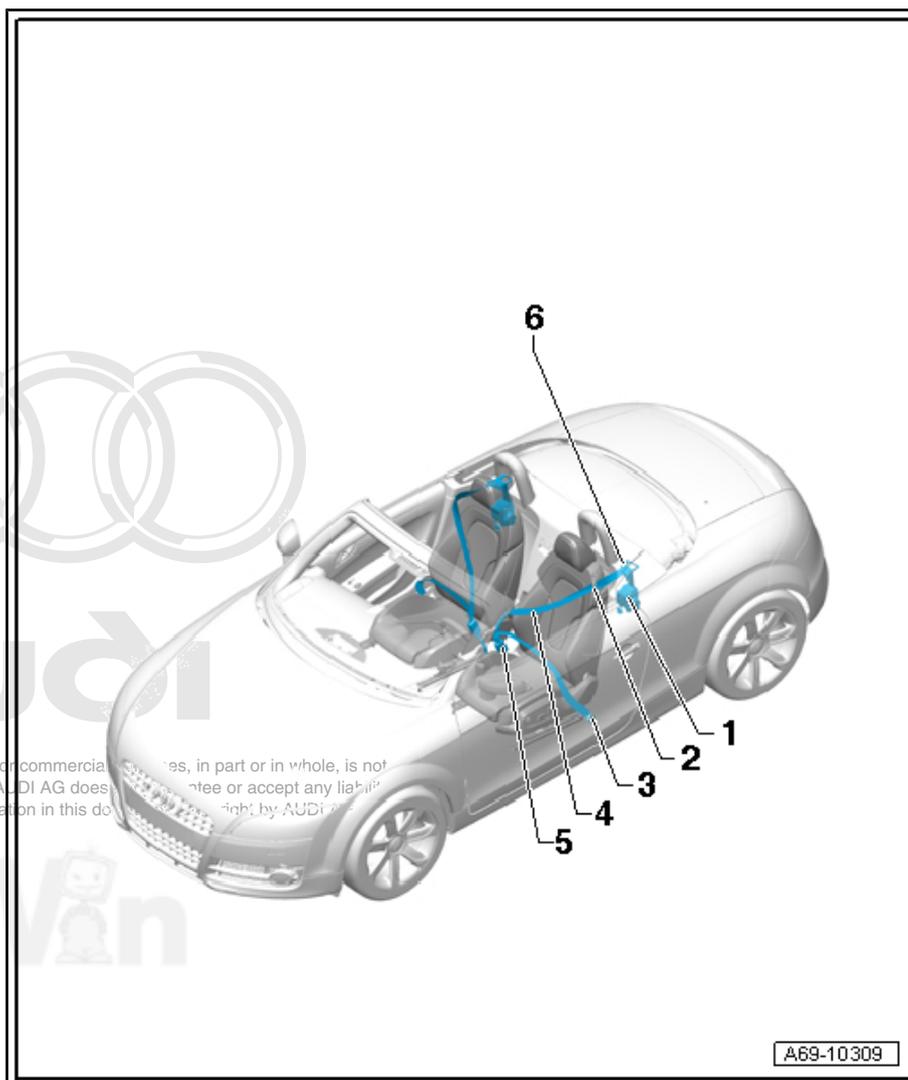
◆ Without seat belt fasten sensor, removing and installing, refer to

⇒ [“3.2.4 Front Belt Latch Anchorage Point”, page 89](#)

◆ Seat Occupied Recognition System, Passenger Airbag Deactivation, Removing and Installing, refer to

⇒ [“3.2.4 Front Belt Latch Anchorage Point”, page 89](#)

- Always replace the seat belt latch if the belt tensioner has deployed with the belt on



6 - Belt guide

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“3.2.3 Belt Guide Anchorage Point”, page 88](#)

2.2.2 Three-Point Seat Belt Assembly Overview

1 - Three-point seat belt

- Without switchable belt load limiter
- ◆ Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“3.2.1 Three-Point Seat Belt with Belt Tensioner/Force Limiter”, page 84](#)
- With switchable force limiter (country-specific)
- ◆ Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“3.2.1 Three-Point Seat Belt with Belt Tensioner/Force Limiter”, page 84](#)

2 - Belt tensioner connector

- Removing and installing, refer to ⇒ [“3.2.1 Three-Point Seat Belt with Belt Tensioner/Force Limiter”, page 84](#)

3 - Belt webbing

4 - Switchable belt load limiter connector

- Versions for specific countries:
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“3.2.1 Three-Point Seat Belt with Belt Tensioner/Force Limiter”, page 84](#)

5 - Coupling

- Left: for switchable belt load limiter
- Right: for the seat belt tensioner
- Clipped into body

6 - Bolt

- 45 Nm

7 - Belt guide

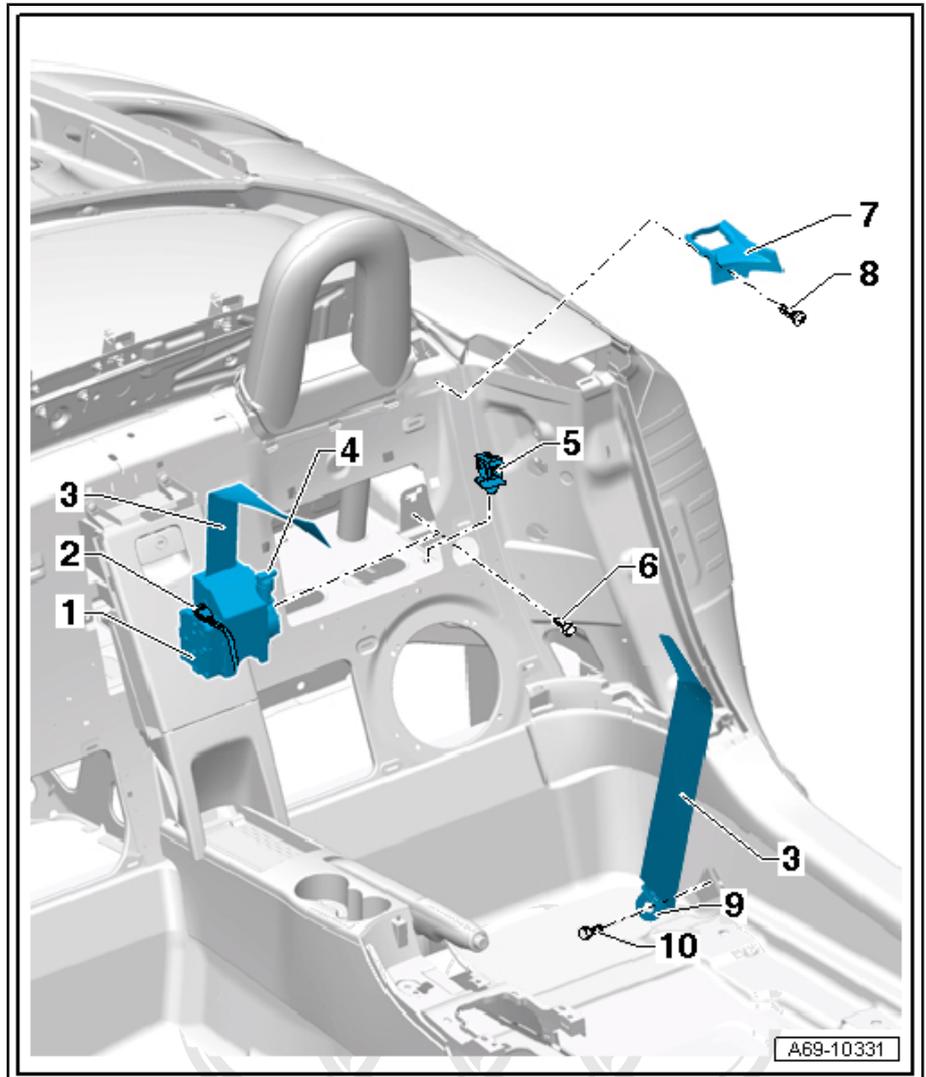
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“3.2.3 Belt Guide Anchorage Point”, page 88](#)

8 - Bolt

- 6 Nm
- Replacing

9 - Belt anchor

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“3.2.2 Outer Belt End Fitting”, page 88](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for errors or omissions in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

10 - Bolt

- 55 Nm

2.2.3 Belt Latch Anchorage Point Assembly Overview

1 - Belt latch

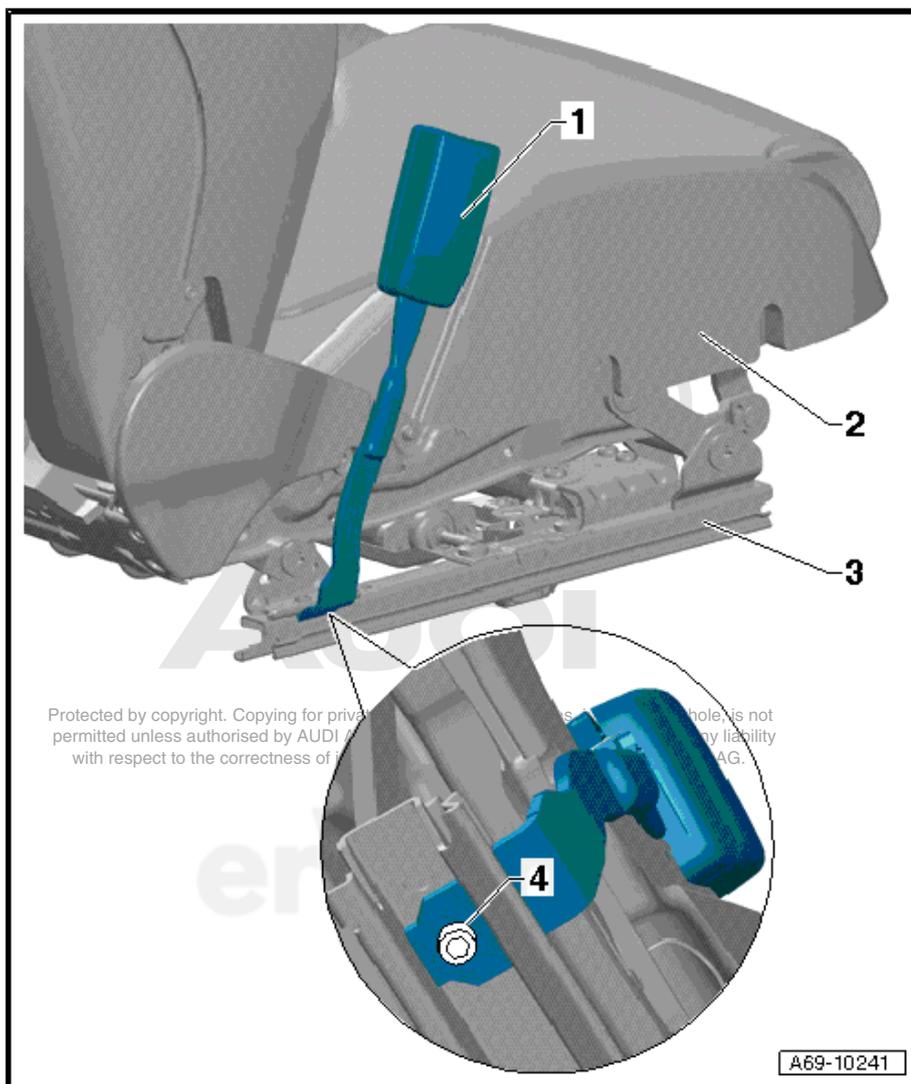
- Belt latch without seat belt fasten sensor, removing and installing, refer to ⇒ ["3.2.4 Front Belt Latch Anchorage Point"](#), page 89
- Passenger airbag deactivation seat occupied recognition seat belt latch (for specific countries), removing and installing, refer to ⇒ ["3.2.4 Front Belt Latch Anchorage Point"](#), page 89 (versions of seat belt latch not shown in illustration)
- Always replace the seat belt latch if the belt tensioner has deployed with the belt on

2 - Seat

3 - Seat frame

4 - Bolt

- Bucket Seat ONLY, 22 Nm
- All others, 34 Nm
- Replacing



2.3 Child Seat Anchorages, LATCH and Top Tether

⇒ [“2.3.1 Front Seat LATCH Child Seat Anchorage Assembly Overview”, page 61](#)

⇒ [“2.3.2 Rear Seat LATCH Child Seat Anchorage Assembly Overview”, page 62](#)

⇒ [“2.3.3 Top Tether Child Seat Anchorages Assembly Overview”, page 63](#)

2.3.1 Front Seat LATCH Child Seat Anchorage Assembly Overview



Note

The surrounding area was not shown in the illustration for clarity purposes.

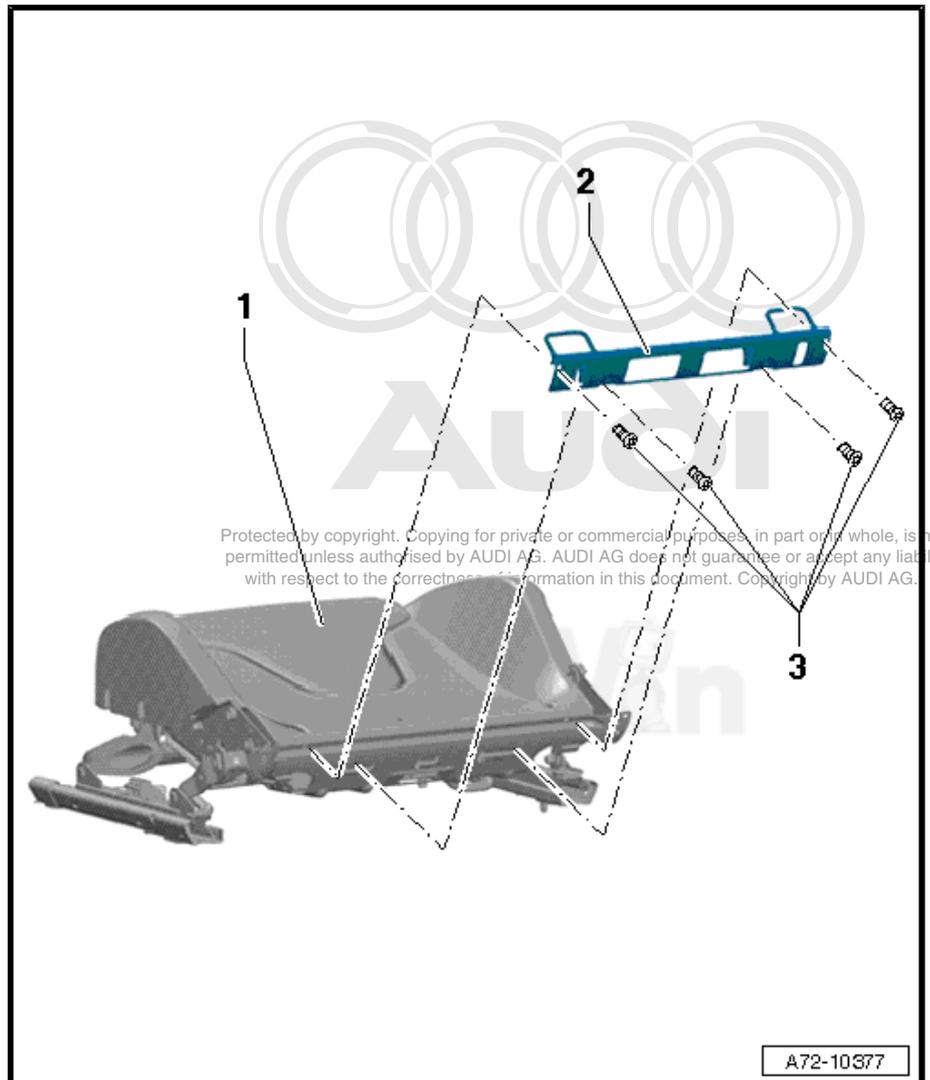
1 - Seat pan

2 - Bracket

- Passenger seat only
- Placed on seat pan and attached
- Check after an accident, refer to
 ⇒ [“1.1.19 Child Seat Anchorages, Inspecting after an Accident”, page 50](#)
- Replace if damaged
- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ [“3.3.1 LATCH Child Seat Anchorage”, page 91](#)

3 - Bolt

- 12 Nm
- Quantity: 4
- Replace if bracket is damaged



2.3.2 Rear Seat LATCH Child Seat Anchorage Assembly Overview

Backrest Child Seat Anchor (LATCH)

1 - Right backrest shell

- Assembly Overview, refer to
 ⇒ ["1.7.7 Backrest Frame and Panel Assembly Overview", page 314](#)
- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.4.12 Backrest Panel", page 419](#)
- Taped on the front side and on the upper edge with two-sided tape
- Rear side cover with adhesive film
- With top tether

2 - Left backrest shell

- Assembly Overview, refer to
 ⇒ ["1.7.7 Backrest Frame and Panel Assembly Overview", page 314](#)
- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.4.12 Backrest Panel", page 419](#)
- Taped on the front side and on the upper edge with two-sided tape
- Rear side cover with adhesive film
- with top tether

3 - Bolt

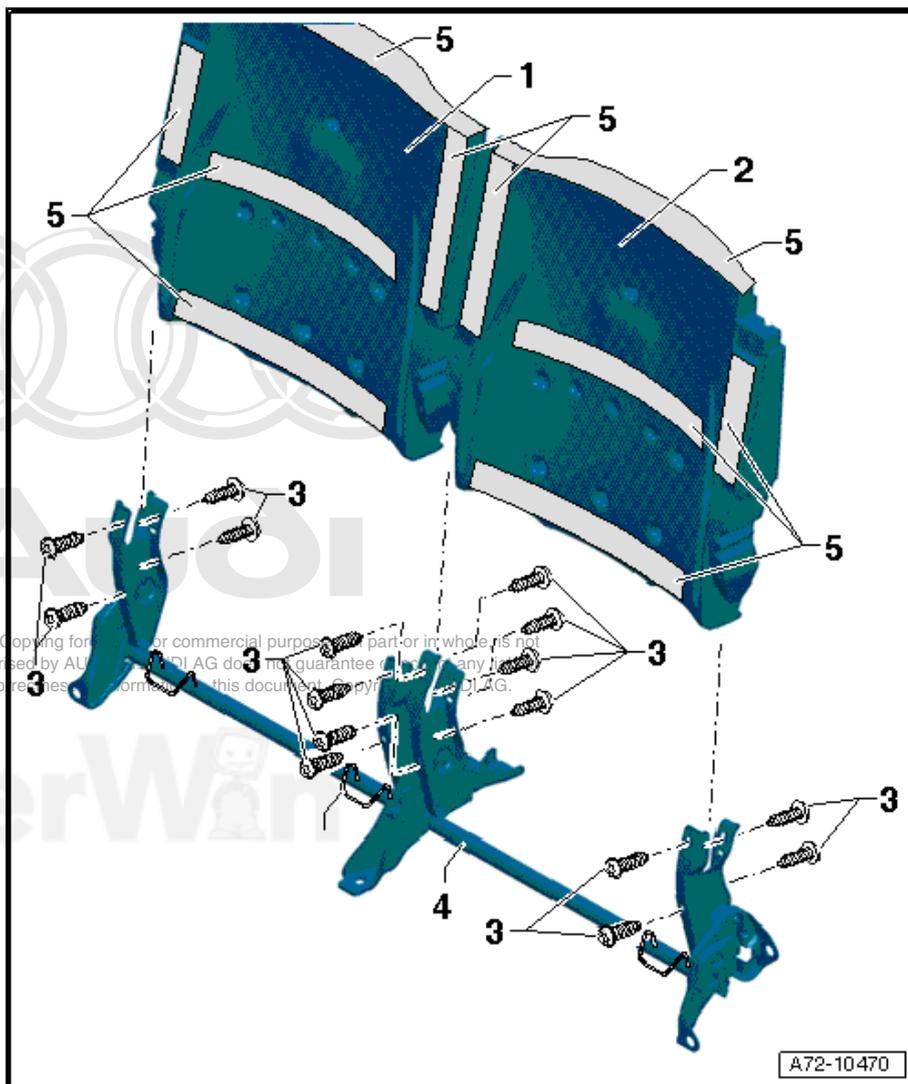
- For the correct tightening specifications, refer to ⇒ ["1.7.7 Backrest Frame and Panel Assembly Overview", page 314](#)
- Quantity: 16

4 - Backrest frame

- To replace backrest frame, remove left and right backrest shell
- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ ["1.7.7 Backrest Frame and Panel Assembly Overview", page 314](#)
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.4.11 Backrest Frame", page 419](#)
- Optional equipment:
 - ◆ With child seat anchor (LATCH)
 - ◆ Without child seat anchor

5 - Double sided adhesive tape

- Attach to front side and upper edge of backrest shell



LATCH Child Seat Anchorage, Removing and Installing

The LATCH child seat anchorage is welded to the backrest frame. To remove and install the child seat anchor, backrest frame must be removed and replaced.

Child seat anchor (LATCH), removing and installing, refer to [⇒ "1.7.7 Backrest Frame and Panel Assembly Overview", page 314](#)

2.3.3 Top Tether Child Seat Anchorages Assembly Overview

1 - Backrest

2 - Inner trim

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "3.3.2 Top Tether Child Seat Anchorage", page 93](#)

3 - Retainer

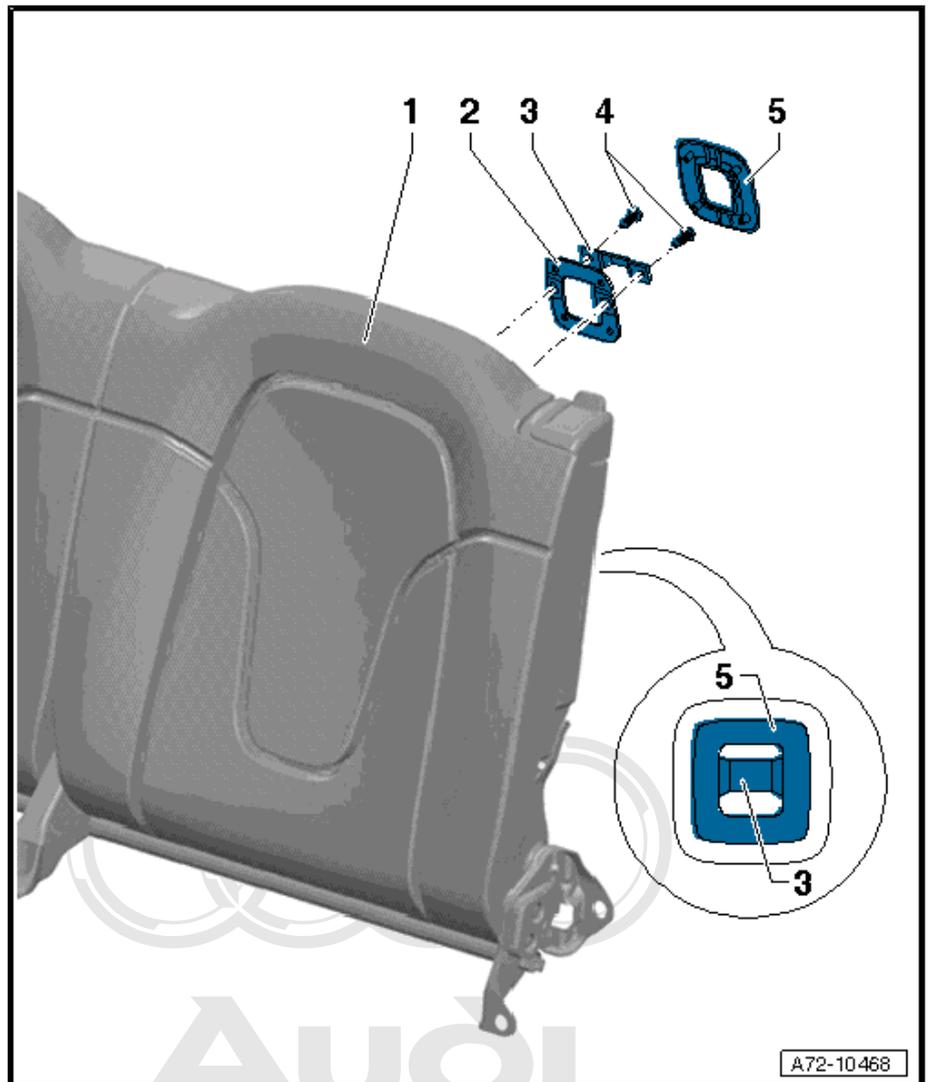
- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "3.3.2 Top Tether Child Seat Anchorage", page 93](#)

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 4 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 4

5 - Outer trim

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "3.3.2 Top Tether Child Seat Anchorage", page 93](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin

2.4 Airbag, Servicing

⇒ [“2.4.1 Airbag Component Location Overview”, page 64](#)

⇒ [“2.4.2 Battery Interrupt Igniter N253 Assembly Overview”, page 65](#)

⇒ [“2.4.3 Airbag Control Module J234 Assembly Overview”, page 66](#)

2.4.1 Airbag Component Location Overview

1 - Front Passenger Airbag - Off- Key Switch -E224-

Not for North American market.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 - Front passenger airbag unit

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“3.6.1 Front Passenger Airbag Unit”, page 102](#)

3 - Front passenger side airbag

- ❑ Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ [“2.7.1 Front Side Airbag Assembly Overview”, page 69](#)
- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“3.7.1 Side Airbag”, page 106](#)

4 - Battery Interrupt Igniter - N253-

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“3.4.2 Battery Interrupt Igniter N253”, page 97](#)

5 - Driver side airbag

- ❑ Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ [“2.7.1 Front Side Airbag Assembly Overview”, page 69](#)
- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“3.7.1 Side Airbag”, page 106](#)

6 - Driver airbag unit

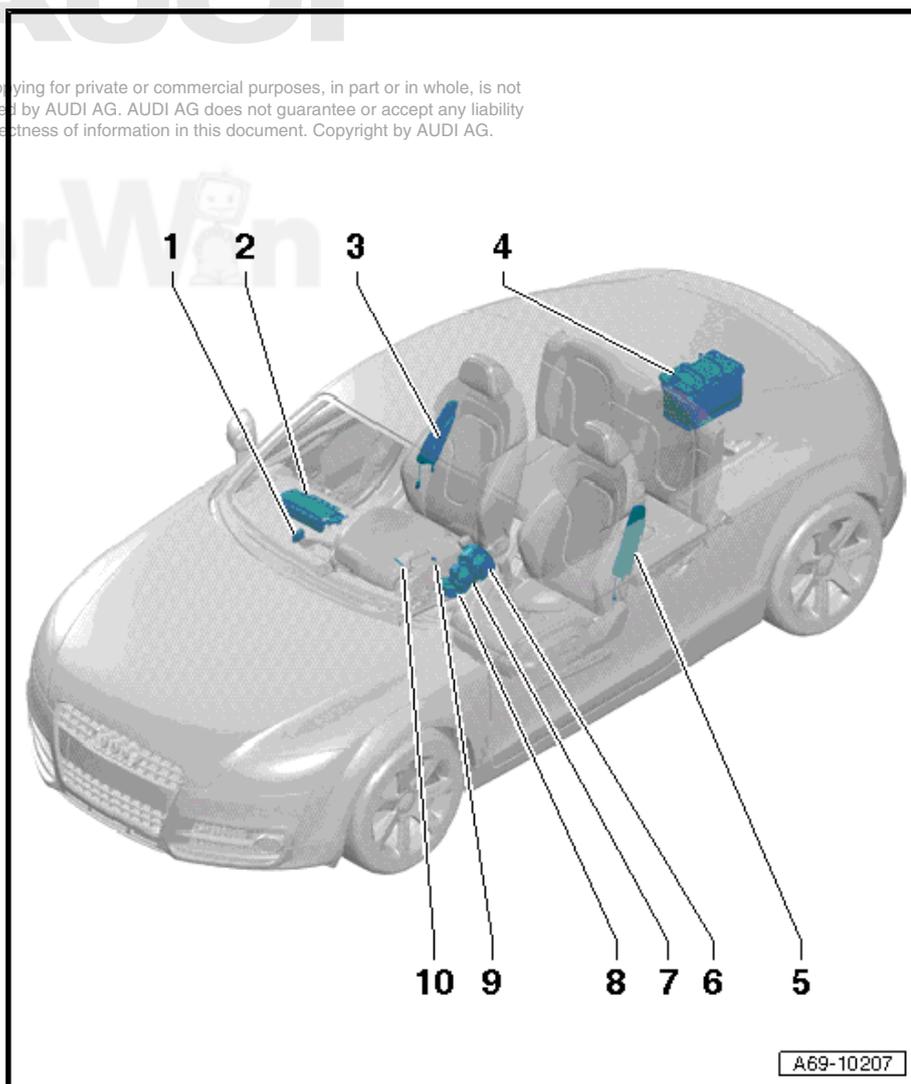
- ❑ Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ [“2.5.1 Driver Side Airbag Unit Assembly Overview”, page 67](#)
- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“3.5.1 Driver Airbag Igniter N95 and Driver Airbag Igniter 2 N250”, page 99](#)

7 - Airbag Spiral Spring/Return Spring With Slip Ring -F138-

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 96 ; Removal and Installation

8 - Airbag Control Module -J234-

- ❑ Installation location: on the center tunnel
- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“3.4.1 Airbag Control Module J234”, page 94](#) .



9 - Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75-

- Installed location: in the instrument cluster, refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 90 ; Removal and Installation

10 - Front passenger airbag -disabled- indicator lamp -K145-

- Installed location: in the radio/navigation unit
- Removing and installing, refer to ⇒ Communication; Rep. Gr. 91 ; Removal and Installation

2.4.2 Battery Interrupt Igniter N253 Assembly Overview

1 - Nut

- Quantity: 2
- 6 Nm

2 - Battery positive terminal

- With additional electrical wires

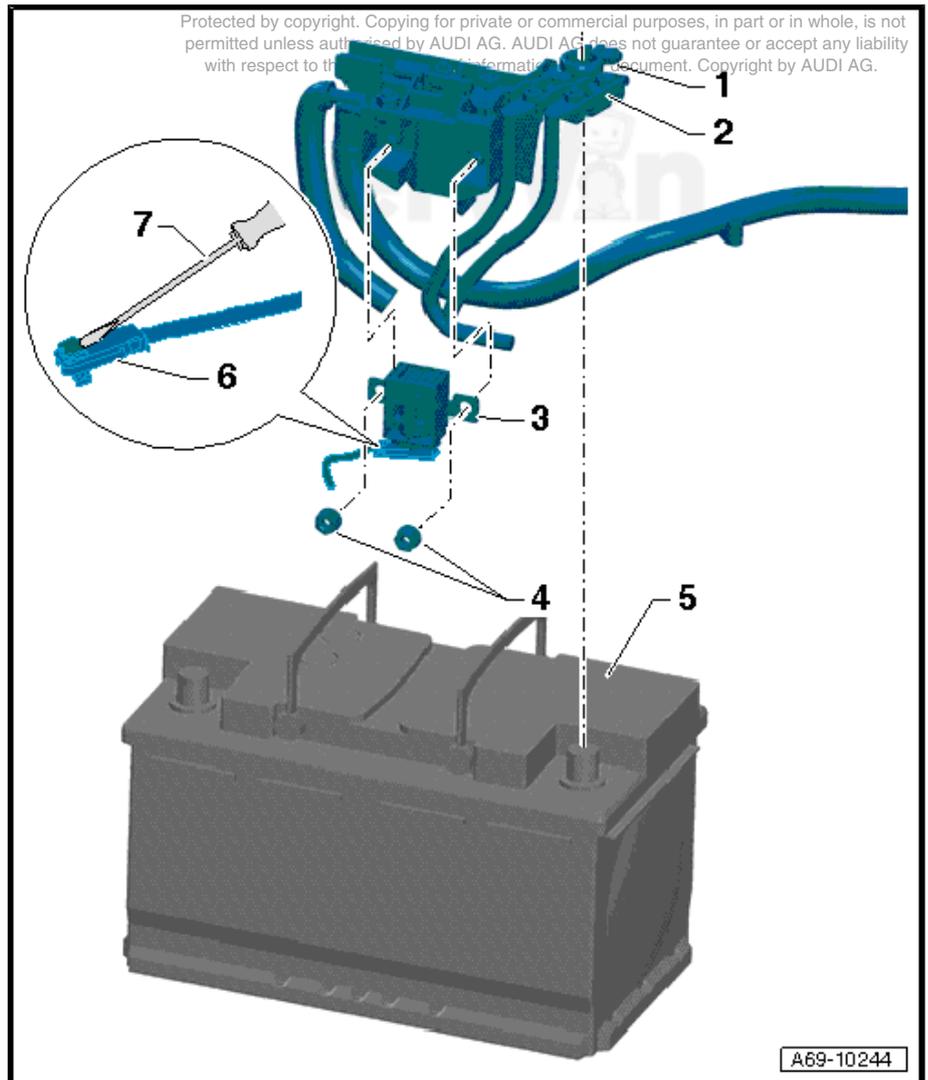
3 - Battery Interrupt Igniter - N253-

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["3.4.2 Battery Interrupt Igniter N253"](#), page 97

4 - Nut

- 15 Nm

5 - Battery



2.4.3 Airbag Control Module J234 Assembly Overview

1 - Nut

- 9 Nm

2 - Airbag Control Module - J234-

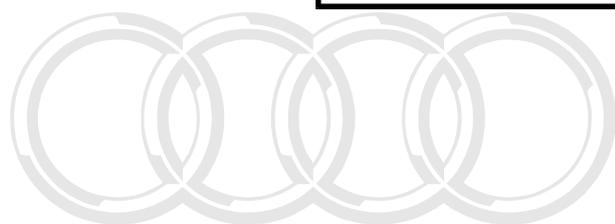
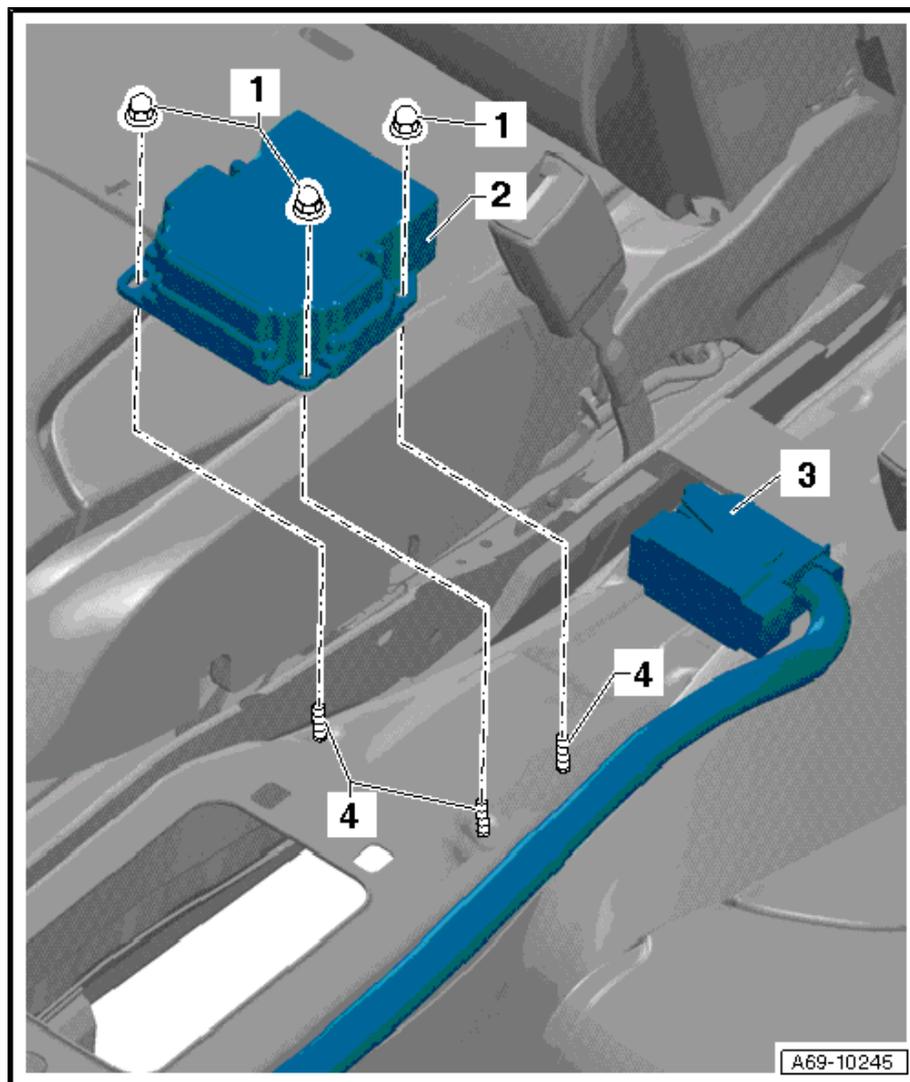
- Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "3.4.1 Airbag Control Module J234", page 94](#)

3 - Connector

- To disconnect securing clip on connector, open and disconnect connector.

4 - Threaded pin

- Quantity: 3



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



2.5 Driver Side Airbag, Servicing

⇒ ["2.5.1 Driver Side Airbag Unit Assembly Overview"](#),
[page 67](#)

2.5.1 Driver Side Airbag Unit Assembly Overview

1 - Airbag Spiral Spring/Return Spring With Slip Ring -F138-

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 94 ; Removal and Installation

2 - Steering wheel

3 - Bolt

4 - Connector

- ❑ For Airbag Spiral Spring/Return Spring With Slip Ring -F138-
- ❑ Replacing, refer to ⇒ ["3.5.2 Airbag Unit Harness Connector"](#), [page 101](#)

5 - Airbag unit



WARNING

Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures"](#), [page 38](#) .

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["3.5.1 Driver Airbag Igniter N95 and Driver Airbag Igniter 2 N250"](#), [page 99](#)

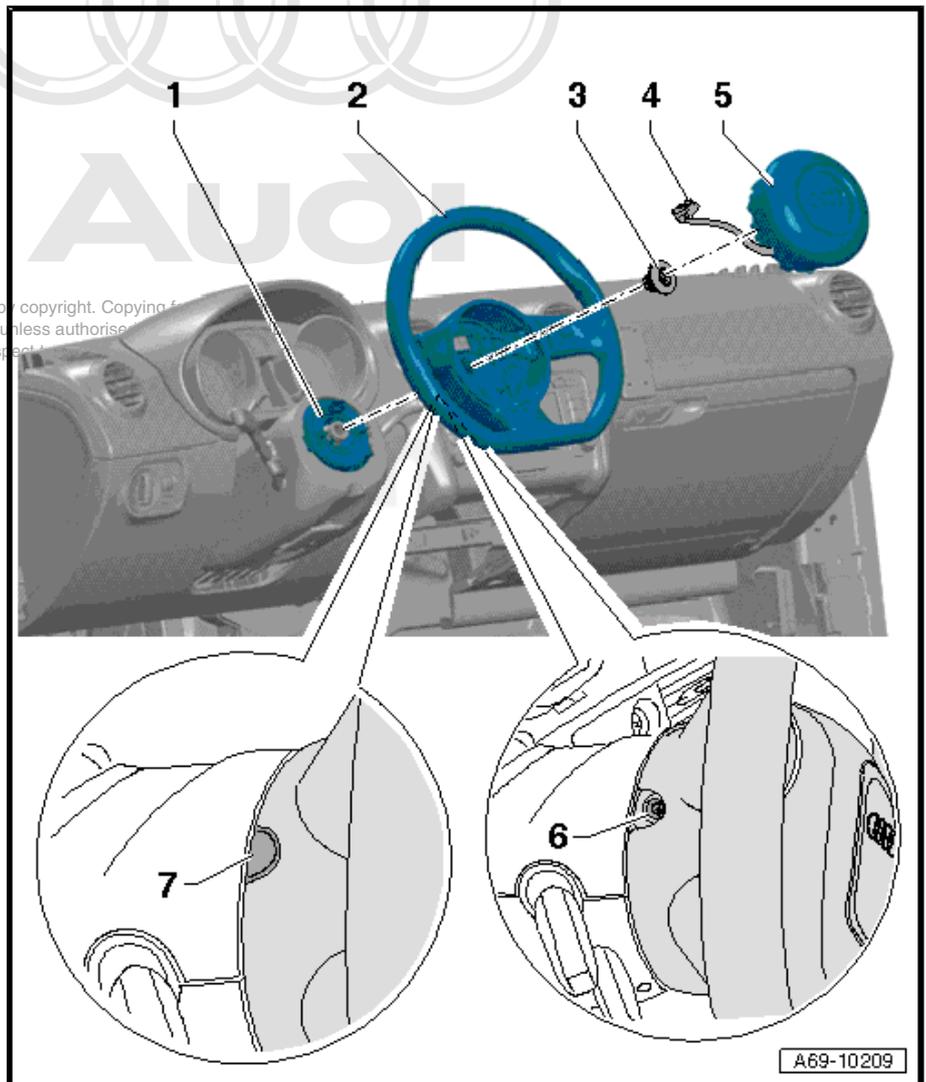
6 - Bolt

- ❑ 7 Nm

7 - Cover cap

- ❑ For the airbag unit mounting bolt
- ❑ Quantity: 2

Protected by copyright. Copying is permitted unless authorised with respect to



A69-10209

2.6 Front Passenger Side Airbag, Servicing

⇒ [“2.6.1 Front Passenger Side Airbag Unit Assembly Overview”, page 68](#)

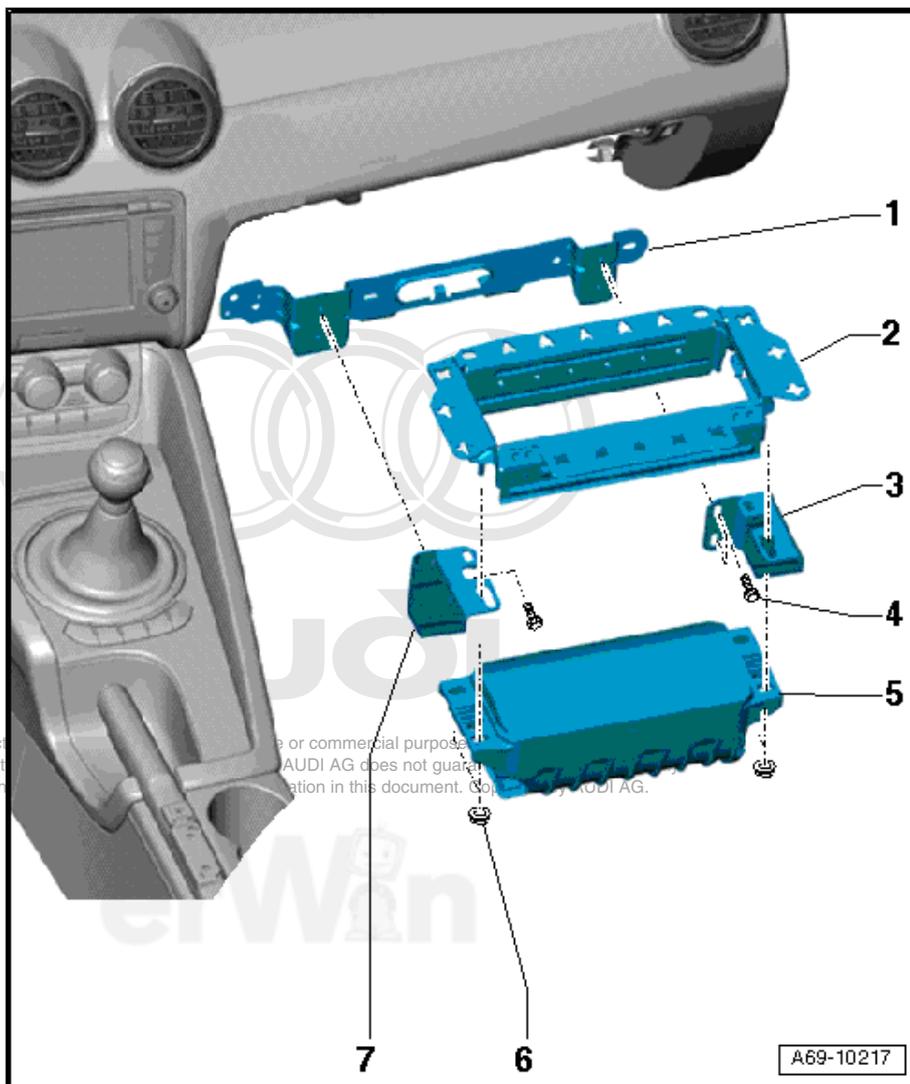
2.6.1 Front Passenger Side Airbag Unit Assembly Overview

- 1 - Airbag unit support
 - Bolted with central tube
- 2 - Airbag unit guide
 - Secured on instrument panel
 - Cannot be replaced separately
- 3 - Right airbag unit bracket
 - Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“3.6.2 Front Passenger Airbag Unit Bracket”, page 105](#)
- 4 - Bolt
 - Replacing
 - 7 Nm
- 5 - Airbag unit

⚠ WARNING

Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ [“1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures”, page 38](#).

Follow the allocation of the airbag unit to the instrument panel. Refer to ⇒ [Electronic parts catalog](#).



- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“3.6.1 Front Passenger Airbag Unit”, page 102](#)
- 6 - Nut
 - Replacing
 - 7 Nm
- 7 - Left airbag unit bracket
 - Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“3.6.2 Front Passenger Airbag Unit Bracket”, page 105](#)

2.7 Front Side Airbag, Servicing

⇒ ["2.7.1 Front Side Airbag Assembly Overview", page 69](#)

2.7.1 Front Side Airbag Assembly Overview

1 - Side Airbag

 **WARNING**
Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to
 ⇒ ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38](#) .
Follow the additional safety precautions when working with the side airbag. Refer to
 ⇒ ["1.1.3 Side Airbag Additional Safety Precautions", page 41](#) .

- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["3.7.1 Side Airbag", page 106](#)
- Inserted in pocket
 »pocket not shown«
- Pocket sewn with cover

2 - Hook

- Quantity: 4
- For securing side airbag to seat frame

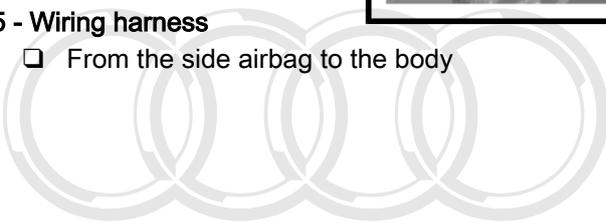
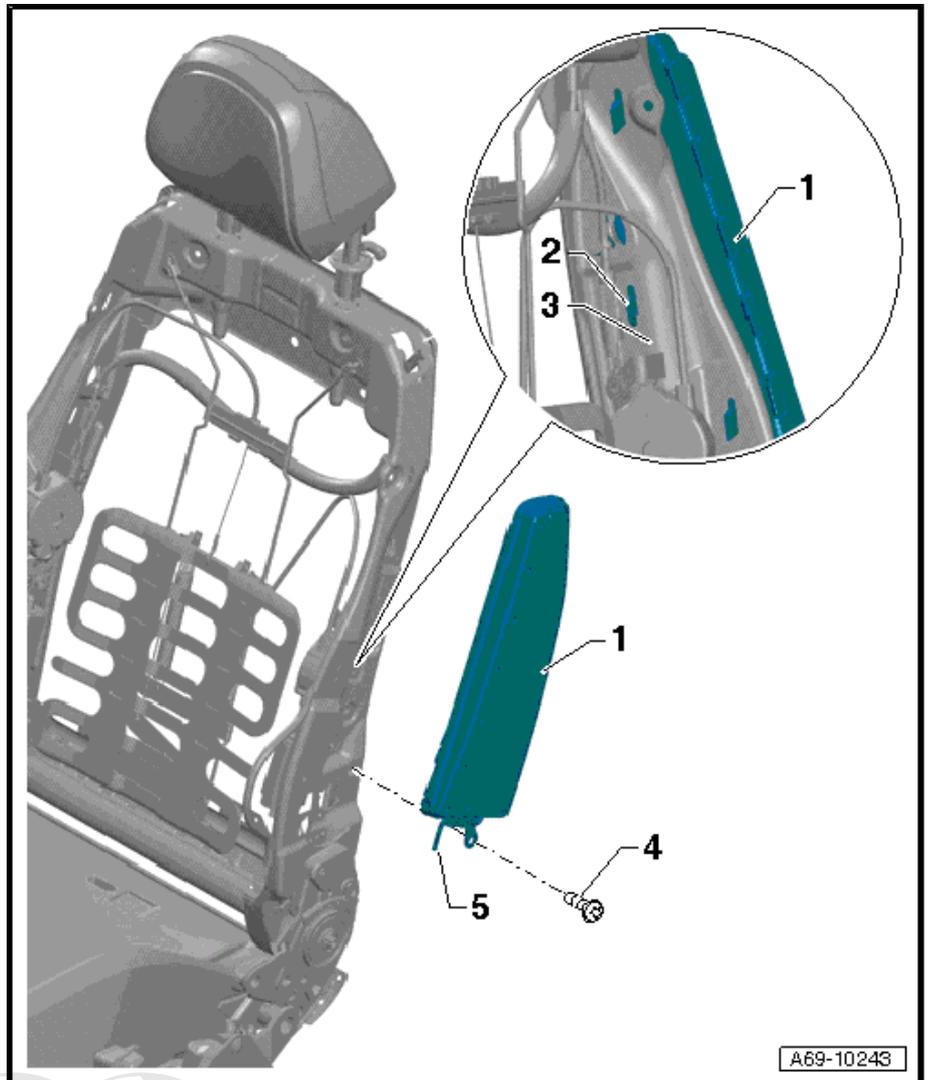
3 - Backrest frame

4 - Bolt

- 10 Nm

5 - Wiring harness

- From the side airbag to the body



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin

2.8 Knee Airbag, Servicing

⇒ [“2.8.1 Front Knee Airbags Overview”, page 70](#)

2.8.1 Front Knee Airbags Overview



WARNING

- ◆ **Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ [“1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures”, page 38](#).**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Knee bar

- Driver side instrument panel cover on vehicles with knee airbag
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“3.8.1 Driver Side Instrument Panel Cover”, page 108](#)

2 - Bolt

- 2.5 Nm
- Quantity: 5

3 - Bolt

- 2.5 Nm
- Quantity: 2
- For knee bar to instrument panel bracket

4 - Bolt

- 2.5 Nm
- Quantity: 2
- For the driver footwell air guide channel to the left ⇒ [Item 9 \(page 70\)](#) and right ⇒ [Item 11 \(page 71\)](#) supports

5 - Driver footwell air guide channel

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [page 109](#)

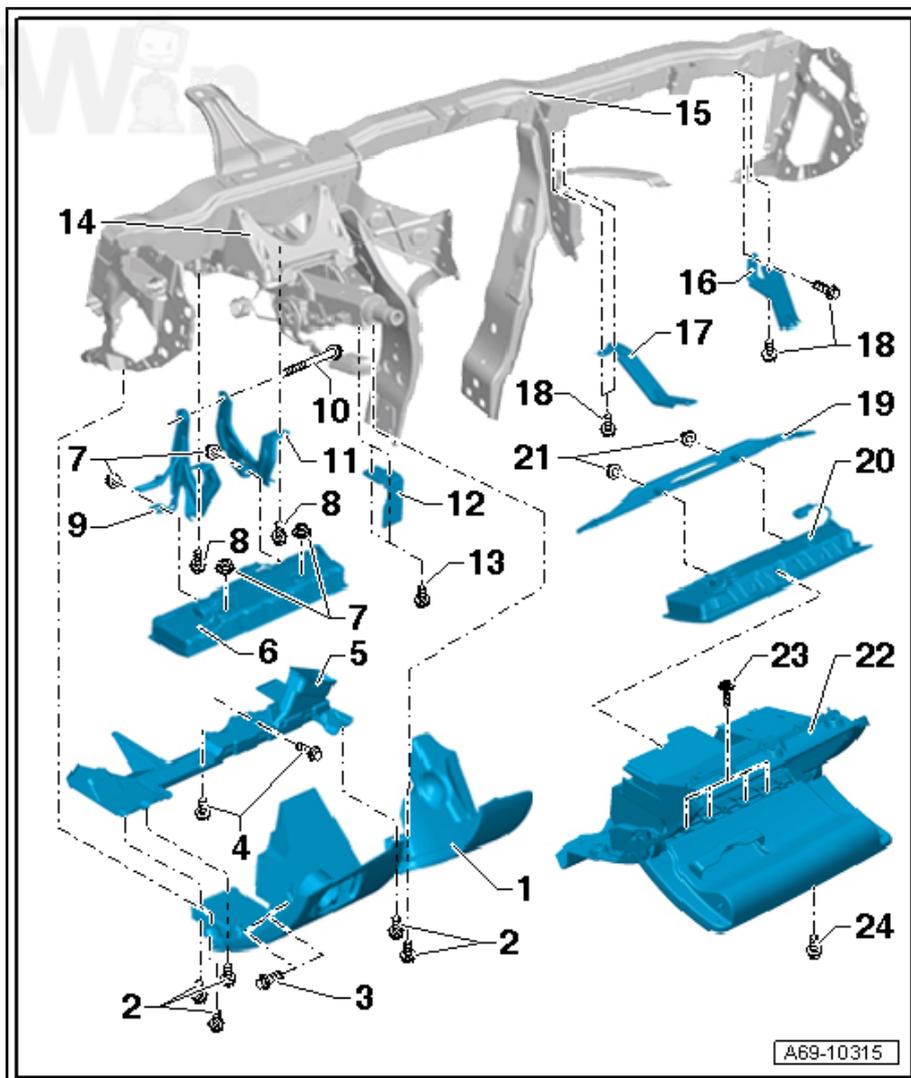
6 - Driver side knee airbag

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“3.8.2 Driver Knee Airbag”, page 108](#)

7 - Nut

- 9 Nm
- Quantity: 4
- For driver side knee airbag to left supports ⇒ [Item 9 \(page 70\)](#) and right supports ⇒ [Item 11 \(page 71\)](#)

8 - Bolt



9 - Left support

- Driver side
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“3.8.3 Left and Right Driver Knee Airbag Supports”, page 110](#)

10 - Bolt

11 - Right support

- Driver side
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“3.8.3 Left and Right Driver Knee Airbag Supports”, page 110](#)

12 - Angle bracket

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“3.8.4 Angled Bracket above Driver Knee Airbag”, page 112](#)

13 - Bolt

- 9 Nm
 - Quantity: 2
 - For angled bracket to central tube
- Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the express authorisation by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

14 - Bracket

- For steering column

15 - Central Tube

16 - Right support

- Passenger side
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“3.8.7 Left and Right Passenger Knee Airbag Supports”, page 117](#)

17 - Left support

- Passenger side
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“3.8.7 Left and Right Passenger Knee Airbag Supports”, page 117](#)

18 - Bolt

- 9 Nm
- Quantity: 4

19 - lower support

- Installed inside the glove compartment
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [page 116](#)

20 - Passenger side knee airbag

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“3.8.6 Passenger Knee Airbag”, page 115](#)

21 - Nut

- 9 Nm
- for knee airbag ⇒ [Item 20 \(page 71\)](#) to lower support

22 - Glove compartment

- for vehicles with knee airbags
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“3.8.6 Passenger Knee Airbag”, page 115](#)

23 - Bolt

- 3 Nm
- Quantity: 4
- For attaching the knee airbag ⇒ [Item 20 \(page 71\)](#) to the glove compartment

24 - Bolt

- 2.5 Nm
- Quantity: 7
- For attaching the glove compartment to the central tube

2.9 Crash Sensor for Airbags, Servicing

⇒ [“2.9.1 Crash Sensor Component Location Overview”, page 72](#)

2.9.1 Crash Sensor Component Location Overview

Vehicles with 1 Crash Sensor for Front Airbag

1 - Front Airbag Crash Sensor -G190-

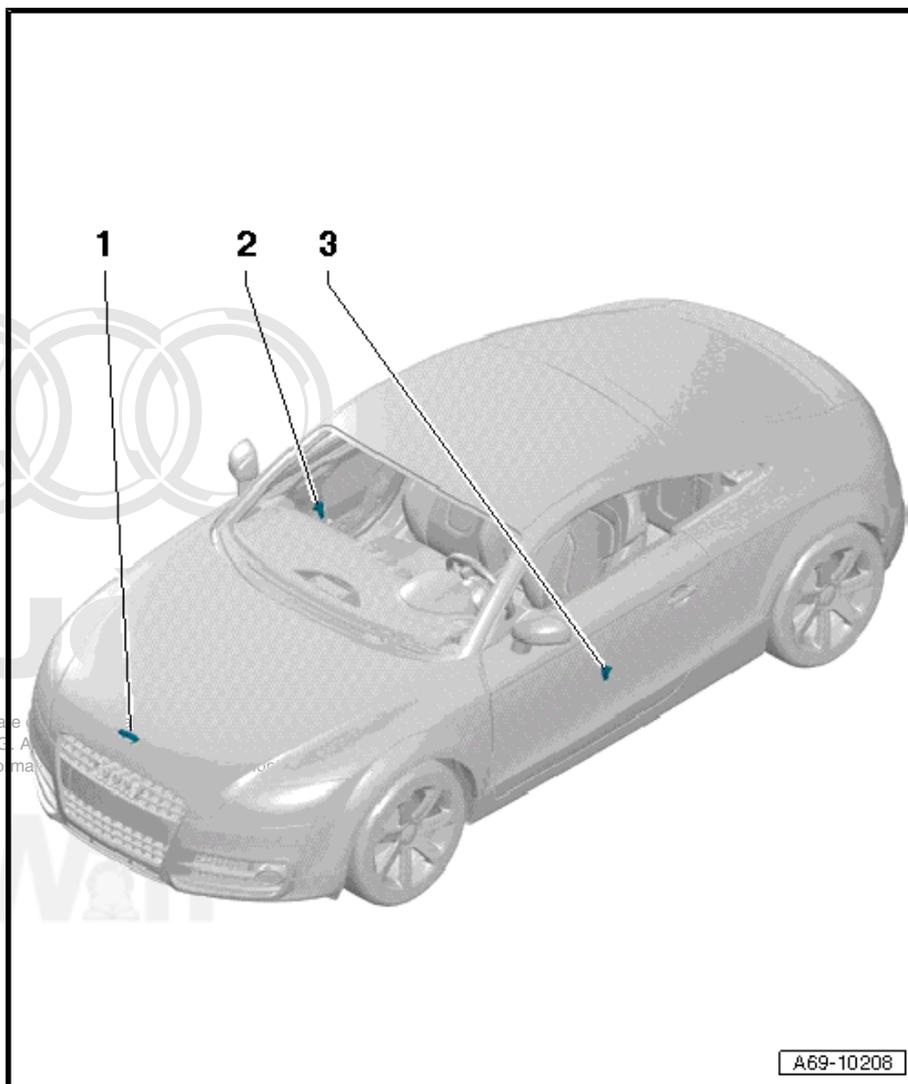
- 9 Nm
- Installed location: at top of lock carrier
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“3.9.1 Front Airbag Crash Sensor”, page 119](#)

2 - Passenger-side side airbag crash sensor -G180-

- 5 Nm
- Installed location: inside the front door
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“3.9.2 Side Airbag Crash Sensor”, page 121](#)
- Safety precautions for working with front side airbag crash sensors (pressure sensors) ⇒ [“1.1.5 Front Side Airbag Crash Sensors Safety Precautions”, page 42](#)

3 - Driver side airbag crash sensor -G179-

- 5 Nm
- Installed location: inside the front door
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“3.9.2 Side Airbag Crash Sensor”, page 121](#)
- Safety precautions for working with front side airbag crash sensors (pressure sensors) ⇒ [“1.1.5 Front Side Airbag Crash Sensors Safety Precautions”, page 42](#)



Vehicles with 2 Crash Sensors for Front Airbag

1 - Passenger front airbag crash sensor -G284-

- 9 Nm
- Installed location: at top of lock carrier
- Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "3.9.1 Front Airbag Crash Sensor", page 119](#)

2 - Driver front airbag crash sensor -G283-

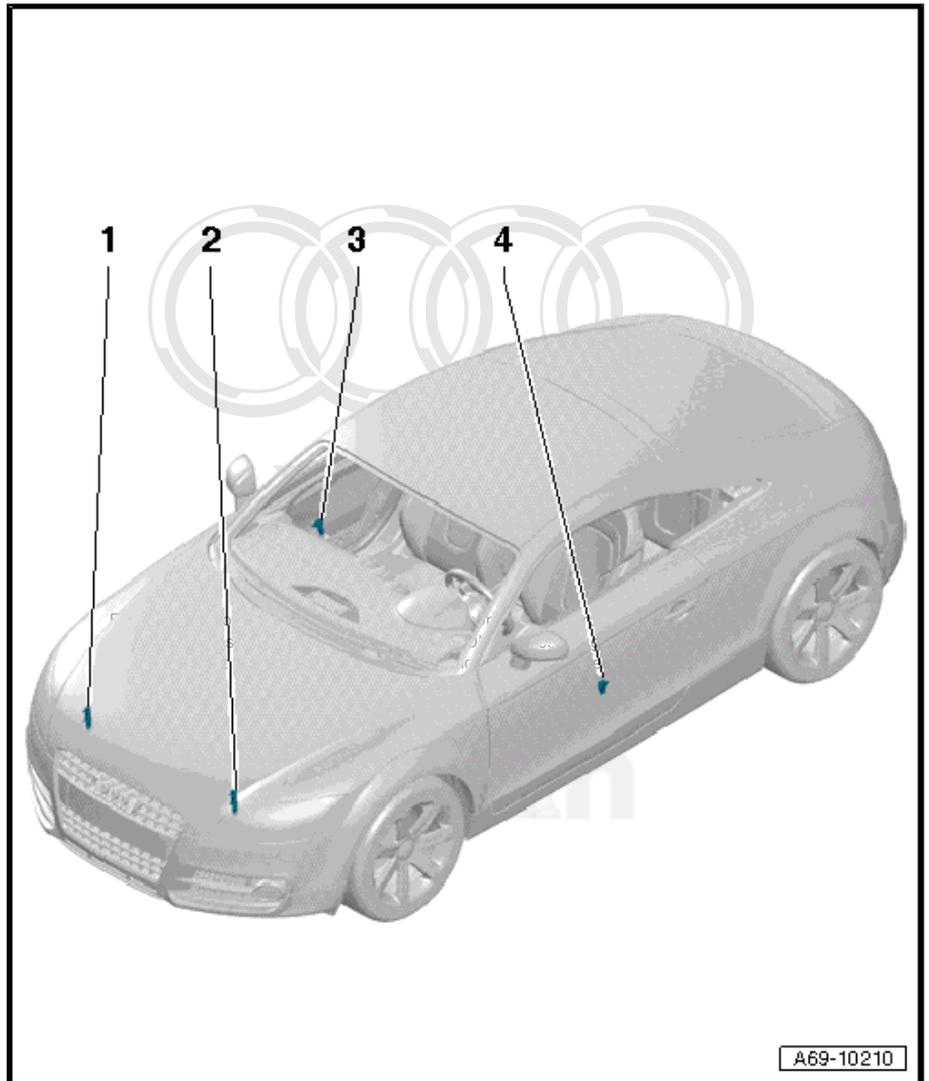
- 9 Nm
- Installed location: at top of lock carrier
- Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "3.9.1 Front Airbag Crash Sensor", page 119](#)

3 - Passenger-side side airbag crash sensor -G180-

- 5 Nm
- Installed location: inside the front door
- Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "3.9.2 Side Airbag Crash Sensor", page 121](#)
- Safety precautions for working with front side airbag crash sensors (pressure sensors) [⇒ "1.1.5 Front Side Airbag Crash Sensors Safety Precautions", page 42](#)

4 - Driver side airbag crash sensor -G179-

- 5 Nm
- Installed location: inside the front door
- Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "3.9.2 Side Airbag Crash Sensor", page 121](#)
- Safety precautions for working with front side airbag crash sensors (pressure sensors) [⇒ "1.1.5 Front Side Airbag Crash Sensors Safety Precautions", page 42](#)



2.10 Seat Position Sensor

⇒ ["2.10.1 Seat Position Sensor Assembly Overview", page 74](#)

2.10.1 Seat Position Sensor Assembly Overview



Note

The seat position sensor is the same in all seat versions.

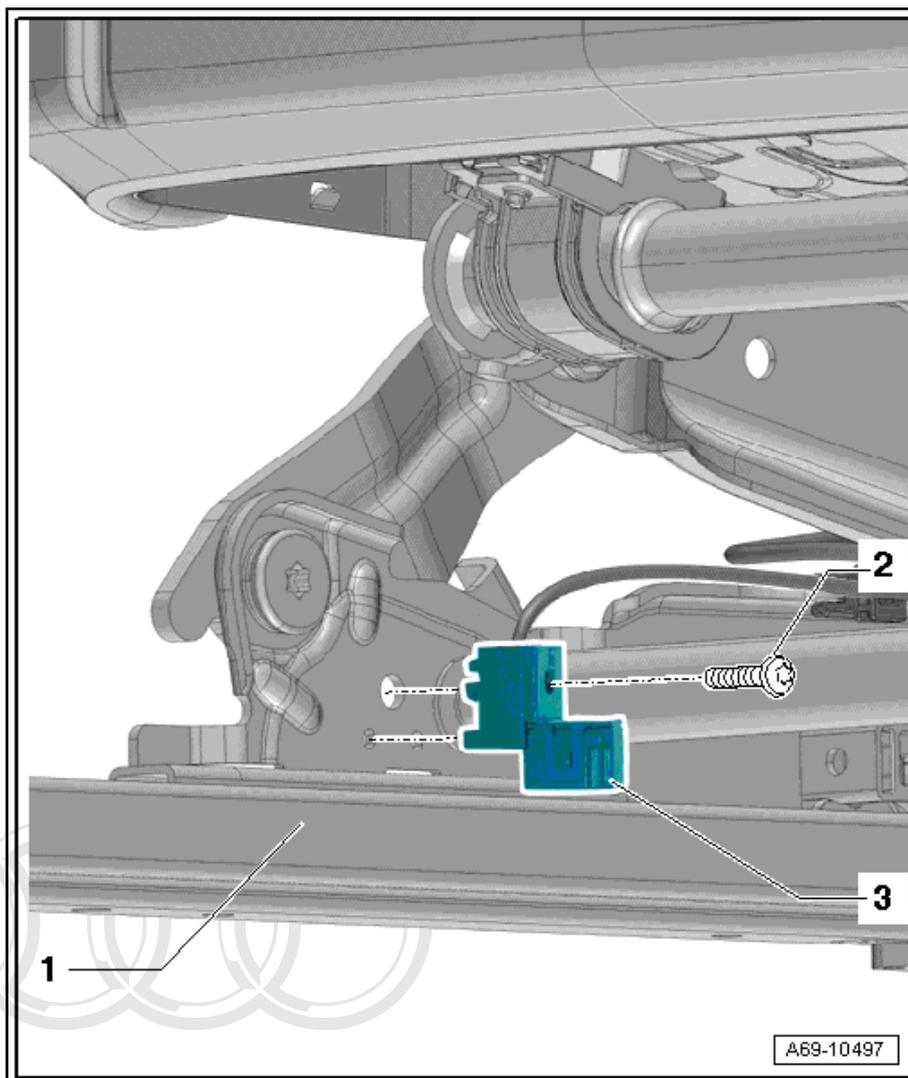
1 - Seat pan lower frame

2 - Bolt

- 1.3 Nm

3 - Driver seat position sensor
-G553-

- Installed depending on the date of manufacture
- Removing and Installing, refer to ["3.11.1 Seat Position Sensor", page 125](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



2.11 Front Passenger Airbag Passenger Occupant Detection System, Servicing

⇒ ["2.11.1 Front Passenger Airbag Deactivation Passenger Occupant Detection System Assembly Overview"](#), page 75

2.11.1 Front Passenger Airbag Deactivation Passenger Occupant Detection System Assembly Overview



WARNING

- ◆ *Follow the additional safety precautions for working on the passenger airbag deactivation passenger occupant detection system. Refer to*
 ⇒ ["1.1.6 Passive Occupant Detection Sensor Additional Safety Precautions"](#), page 44 .
- ◆ *Follow the procedure for the passenger airbag deactivation passenger occupant detection system after a crash. Refer to*
 ⇒ ["1.1.7 Passenger Occupant Detection System, Procedure after an Accident"](#), page 44 .
- ◆ *The replacement part (service kit) for the passenger occupant detection system (for specific countries) is already precalibrated and must not be separated under any circumstances. Refer to*
 ⇒ ["3.12.1 Passive Occupant Detection System"](#), page 127 .



WARNING

The passenger occupant detection system service kit is precalibrated and must not be disconnected. The service kit consists of:

- ◆ *Seat Occupied Recognition Control Module -J706-*
- ◆ *Seat Occupied Recognition Pressure Sensor -G452-*
- ◆ *Passive Occupant Detection System Mat*
- ◆ *Seat cushion*
- ◆ *Wiring harness between the seat occupied recognition control module -J706- and the seat occupied recognition pressure sensor -G452- .*

1 - Seat Occupied Recognition Control Module -J706-

- Must not be disconnected and replaced separately under any circumstances
- Replacing is only possible with the entire service kit
⇒ ["3.12.1 Passive Occupant Detection System"](#), page 127

2 - Bolt

- 2.5 Nm
- Quantity: 2

3 - Connector on Seat Occupied Recognition Control Module -J706-

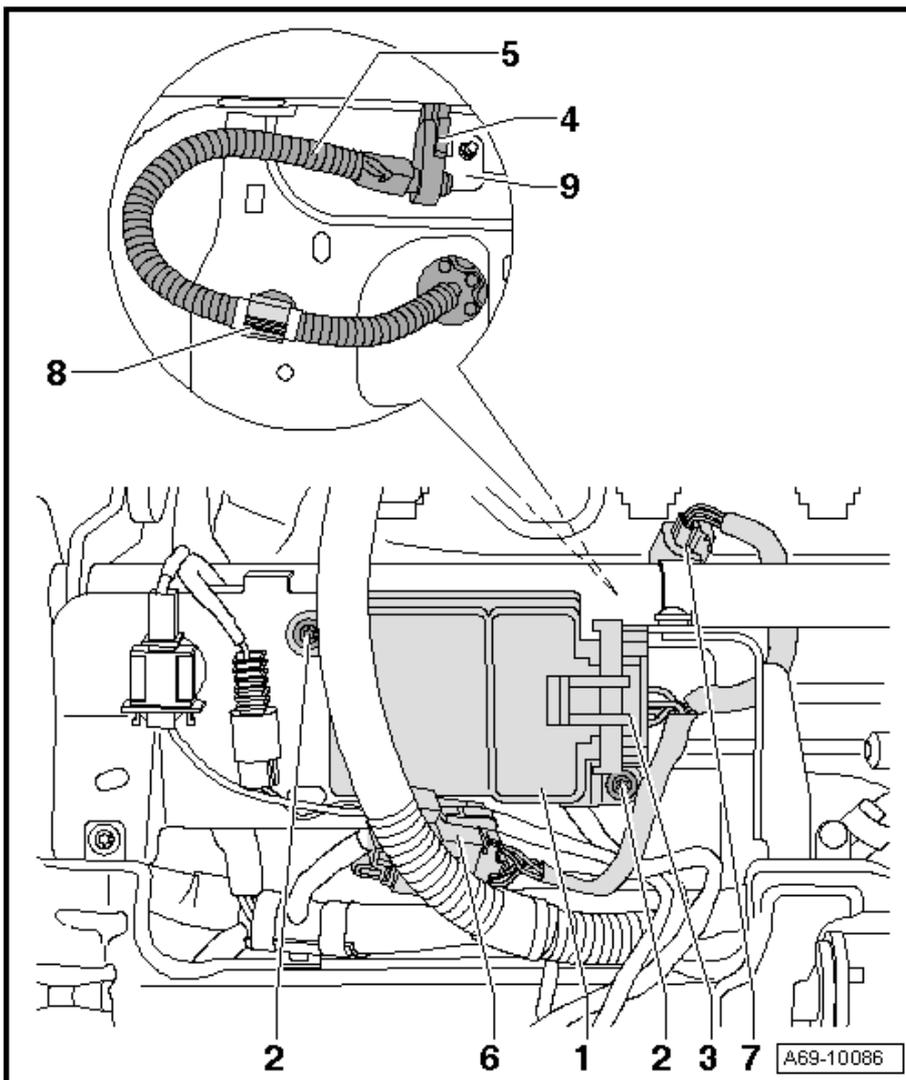
- Must not be separated under any circumstances.

4 - Seat Occupied Recognition Pressure Sensor -G452-

- Must not be disconnected and replaced separately under any circumstances
- Replacing is only possible with the entire service kit
⇒ ["3.12.1 Passive Occupant Detection System"](#), page 127

5 - Pressure hose**6 - Connector between service kit and seat wiring harness****7 - Connector on Seat Occupied Recognition Pressure Sensor -G452-**

- Must not be separated under any circumstances.

8 - Guide clip**9 - Retaining bracket**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 Removal and Installation

- ⇒ [“3.1 Seat Belts, Coupe”, page 77](#)
- ⇒ [“3.2 Seat Belts, Roadster”, page 84](#)
- ⇒ [“3.3 Child Seat Anchorages, LATCH and Top Tether”, page 91](#)
- ⇒ [“3.4 Airbag, Servicing”, page 94](#)
- ⇒ [“3.5 Driver Side Airbag, Servicing”, page 99](#)
- ⇒ [“3.6 Front Passenger Side Airbag, Servicing”, page 102](#)
- ⇒ [“3.7 Front Side Airbag, Servicing”, page 106](#)
- ⇒ [“3.8 Knee Airbag, Servicing”, page 108](#)
- ⇒ [“3.9 Crash Sensor for Airbags, Servicing”, page 119](#)
- ⇒ [“3.10 Belt Fastening Detection”, page 123](#)
- ⇒ [“3.11 Seat Position Sensor”, page 125](#)
- ⇒ [“3.12 Front Passenger Passenger Occupant Detection System, Servicing”, page 127](#)

3.1 Seat Belts, Coupe

- ⇒ [“3.1.1 Three-Point Seat Belt with Belt Tensioner/Force Limiter”, page 77](#)
- ⇒ [“3.1.2 Front Outer Belt End Fitting”, page 79](#)
- ⇒ [“3.1.3 Belt Relay Anchorage Point”, page 80](#)
- ⇒ [“3.1.4 Front Belt Latch Anchorage Point”, page 80](#)
- ⇒ [“3.1.5 Rear Three-Point Seat Belt”, page 81](#)
- ⇒ [“3.1.6 Rear Outer Belt End Fitting”, page 82](#)
- ⇒ [“3.1.7 Belt Latch”, page 83](#)

3.1.1 Three-Point Seat Belt with Belt Tensioner/Force Limiter

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

 **WARNING**

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to*
 ⇒ [“1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures”, page 38](#) .
- ◆ *Follow all regulations when disposing of pyrotechnic components. Refer to*
 ⇒ [“1.1.2 Airbag, Belt Tensioner and Battery Cut-Out Units, Storage, Transporting and Disposal”, page 40](#) .

- Switch off the ignition.
- Disconnect battery ground cable. Refer to ⇒ [Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27](#) ; Removal and Installation .
- Remove the front outer belt end fitting. Refer to ⇒ [“3.1.2 Front Outer Belt End Fitting”, page 79](#) .
- Remove side trim. Refer to ⇒ [“2.4.7 Rear Side Trim”, page 213](#) .

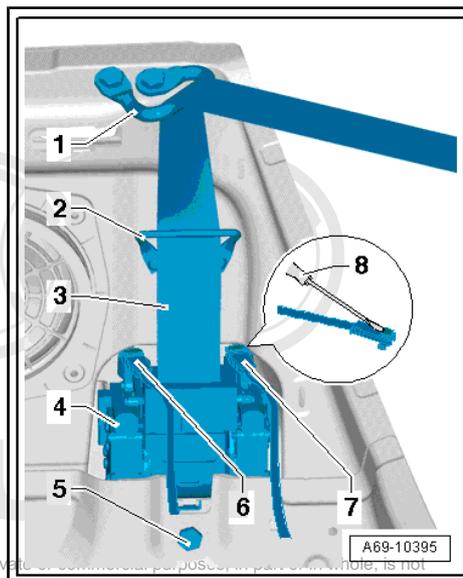
- Remove subwoofer (optional equipment) on left side. Refer to
 => Communication; Rep. Gr. 91 ; Removal and Installation .
- Remove belt relay anchorage point -1-.
- Thread belt webbing -3- out of bracket -2-.



WARNING

- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, when disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*

- Release electrical connector -7- on belt tensioner with a screwdriver -8-.
- Disconnect electrical connector on belt tensioner.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or non-commercial purposes is permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Vehicles with a Switchable Force Limiter (country-specific)

- Release electrical connector -6- on belt load limiter with a screwdriver -8-.
- Disconnect electrical connector on belt load limiter.

Procedure for all Vehicles

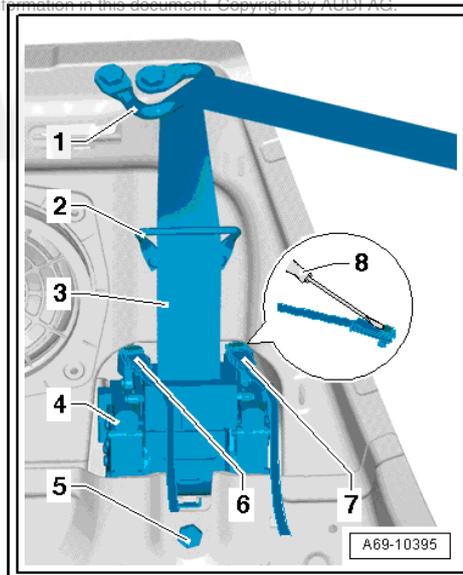
- Remove bolt -5-.
- Remove three-point seat belt -4- from mount.

Installation



WARNING

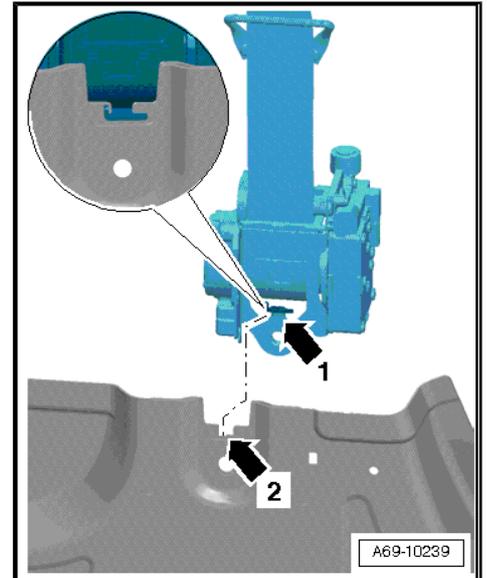
- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to => "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .*
- ◆ *Before handling belt tensioners (for example, when connecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*
- ◆ *Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.*



Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Insert belt tensioner with anti-twist mechanism -arrow 1- in mount -arrow 2-.
- After installing the passenger side three-point seat belt, check the child seat belt function (country-specific). Refer to [⇒ "1.1.18 Child Seat Anchorage, Checking Function", page 50](#) .
- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to [⇒ "2.1.2 Front Three-Point Seat Belt Assembly Overview", page 54](#) .



3.1.2 Front Outer Belt End Fitting

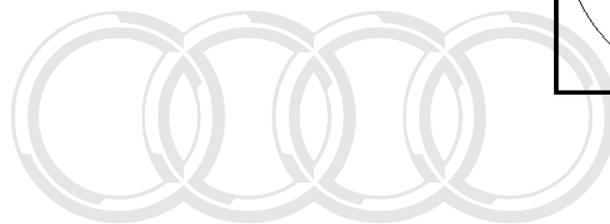
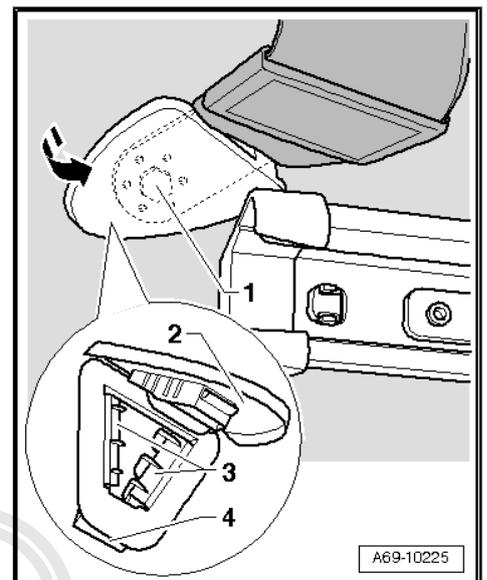
Removing

- Slide front seat forward as far as stop.
- Pull the cover -2- in direction of -arrow- and open it.
- Remove cover -2- upward out of floor covering.
- Remove bolt -1-.

Installation

- Install bolt -1-.
- When installing, slide tab -4- under floor covering.
- Press tabs -3- under floor covering by closing cover -2-.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to [⇒ "2.1.2 Front Three-Point Seat Belt Assembly Overview", page 54](#) .



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



3.1.3 Belt Relay Anchorage Point

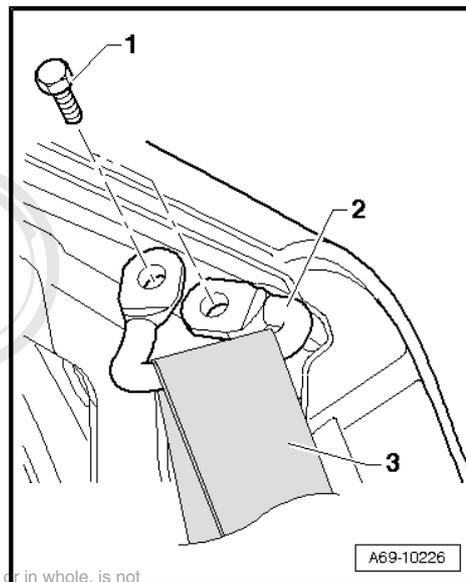
Removing

- Remove rear side trim. Refer to [⇒ "1.4.7 Rear Side Trim Assembly Overview", page 150](#).
- Remove bolts -1- and remove belt relay -2-.
- Thread belt webbing -3- out of belt relay -2-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to [⇒ "2.1.2 Front Three-Point Seat Belt Assembly Overview", page 54](#).



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.1.4 Front Belt Latch Anchorage Point

Removing

- Adjust the front seat all the way back and up to the stop.
- Remove the front seat:
 - ◆ Manual Front Seats, Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.1.1 Front Seat", page 315](#)
 - ◆ Power Front Seats, Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.2.1 Front Seat", page 337](#)
 - ◆ Bucket Seat, Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.3.1 Seat", page 392](#)

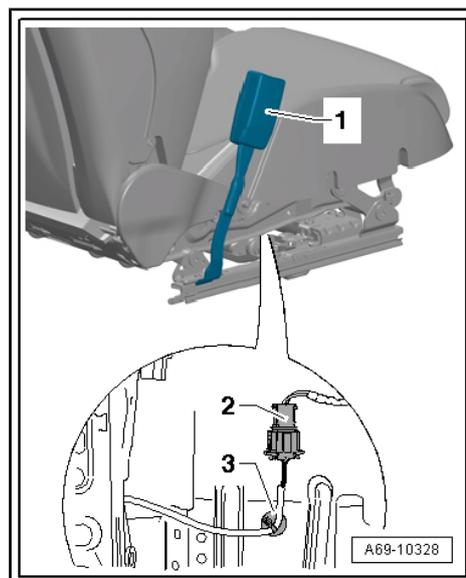
Vehicles with Passenger Airbag Deactivation Passenger Occupant Detection System



WARNING

Replace the passenger occupant detection system seat belt latch each time the passenger belt tensioner deploys.

- Disconnect the connector -2-.
- 1 - passenger occupant detection system passenger airbag deactivation seat belt latch (for certain countries)
- Unclip cable tie clip -3-.



Procedure for all Vehicles

- Remove bolt -2- and remove seat belt latch -1-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

Vehicles with Passenger Airbag Deactivation Passenger Occupant Detection System (for certain countries)

- If the seat belt latch of the passenger occupant detection system for front passenger airbag deactivation is replaced, fill out the system registration sheet with the serial number and bar code label from the new seat belt latch and send it to the importer.

Procedure for all Vehicles

- Replace the seat belt latch bolt.



Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.

- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

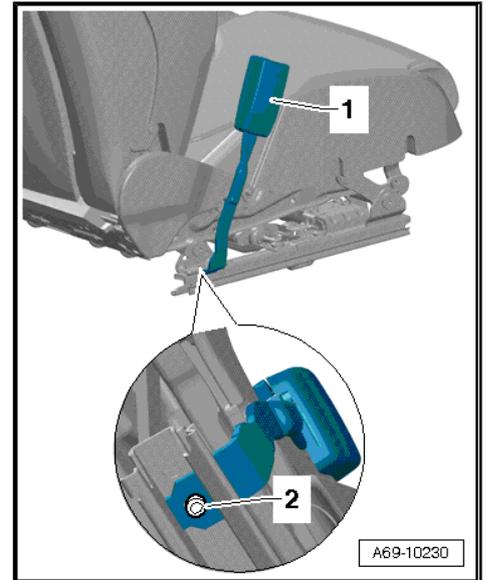
For the correct tightening specifications; refer to

⇒ ["2.1.3 Front Belt Latch Anchorage Point Assembly Overview", page 55](#) .

3.1.5 Rear Three-Point Seat Belt

Removing

- Remove side trim. Refer to ⇒ ["2.4.7 Rear Side Trim", page 213](#) .
- Remove subwoofer (optional equipment) on left side. Refer to ⇒ Communication; Rep. Gr. 91 ; Removal and Installation .
- Remove the rear outer belt end fitting. Refer to ⇒ ["3.1.6 Rear Outer Belt End Fitting", page 82](#) .



- Thread belt webbing -1- out of bracket -2- and belt relay -3-.
- Pull cover -5- down.
- Remove bolt -6- and remove three-point seat belt -4-.

Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

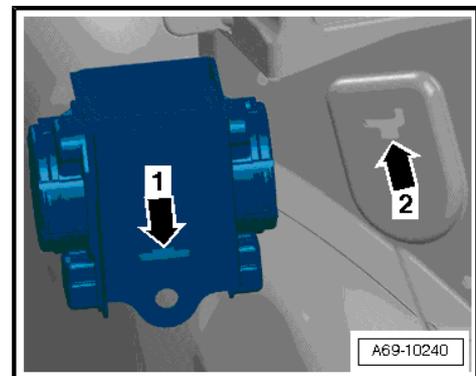
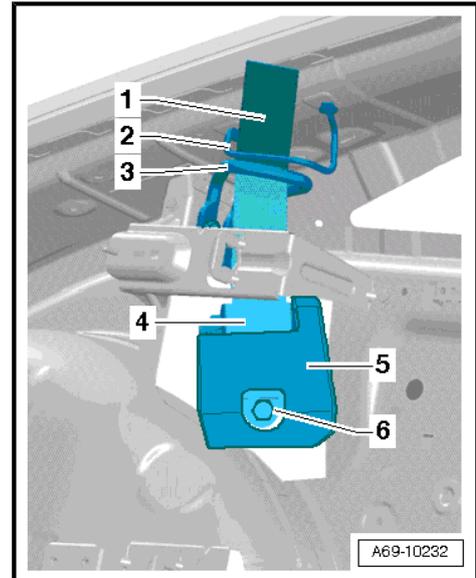
erWin

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Insert three-point seat belt with anti-twist mechanism -arrow 1- in mount -arrow 2-.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to [⇒ "2.1.4 Rear Three-Point Seat Belt Assembly Overview", page 56](#).



3.1.6 Rear Outer Belt End Fitting

Removing

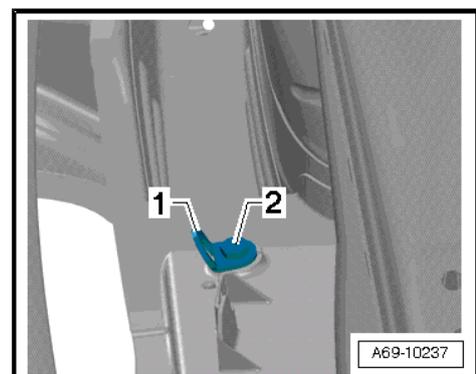
- Remove side trim. Refer to [⇒ "2.4.7 Rear Side Trim", page 213](#).
- Remove subwoofer (optional equipment) on left side. Refer to [⇒ Communication; Rep. Gr. 91; Removal and Installation](#).
- Remove bolt -2- from belt anchor -1-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Position belt anchor with nut on floor assembly pins so end of belt webbing faces toward inner side of vehicle.

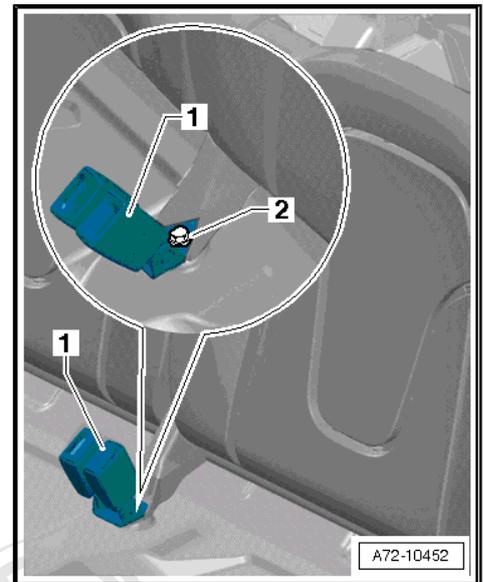
For the correct tightening specifications; refer to [⇒ "2.1.4 Rear Three-Point Seat Belt Assembly Overview", page 56](#).



3.1.7 Belt Latch

Removing

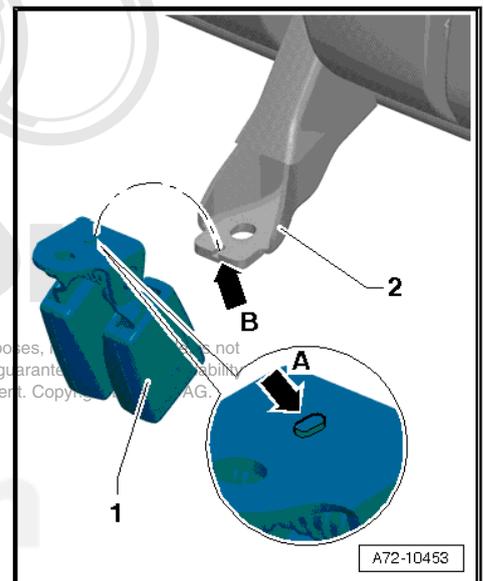
- Remove the seat bench. Refer to [⇒ "2.4.1 Bench Seat", page 406](#) .
- Remove the bolt or nut -2-.
- Remove seat belt latch -1-.



Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

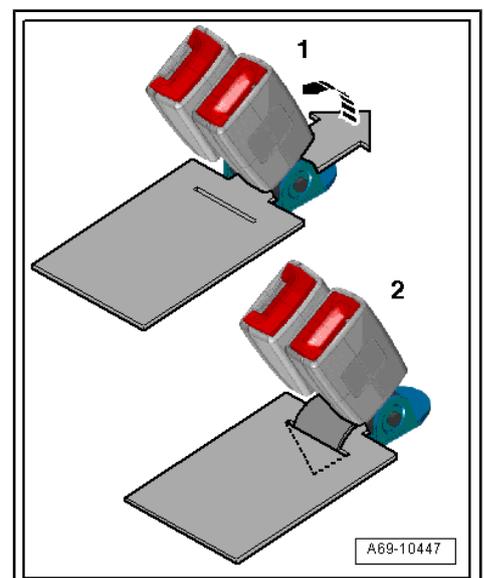
- Make sure the anti-twist mechanism -arrow A- on bottom side of seat belt latch -1- is insert in opening -arrow B- on center bearing -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole or in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the accuracy and reliability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © 2007 Audi AG.

- Pull the tongue on the cover under the axle for the seat belt latch and swivel it upward -1-.
- If equipped, insert the tongue on the cover into the slit and lock it -2-.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to [⇒ "2.1.5 Rear Belt Latch Assembly Overview", page 57](#) .



3.2 Seat Belts, Roadster

⇒ [“3.2.1 Three-Point Seat Belt with Belt Tensioner/Force Limiter”, page 84](#)

⇒ [“3.2.2 Outer Belt End Fitting”, page 88](#)

⇒ [“3.2.3 Belt Guide Anchorage Point”, page 88](#)

⇒ [“3.2.4 Front Belt Latch Anchorage Point”, page 89](#)

3.2.1 Three-Point Seat Belt with Belt Tensioner/Force Limiter

Removing



WARNING

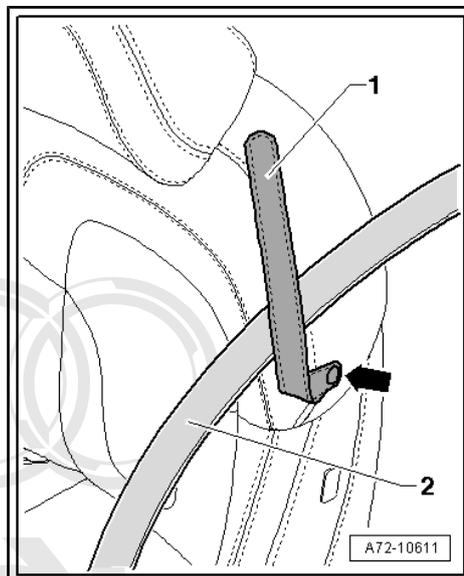
- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ [“1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures”, page 38](#).*
- ◆ *Follow all regulations when disposing of pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ [“1.1.2 Airbag, Belt Tensioner and Battery Cut-Out Units, Storage, Transporting and Disposal”, page 40](#).*

- Move both seats forward and fold backrests forward.
- Switch off the ignition.
- Disconnect battery ground cable. Refer to ⇒ [Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation](#).
- Open retaining loop -1- by loosening push button -arrow-.
- Remove seat belt -2- from retaining loop.
- Remove the belt end fitting. Refer to ⇒ [“3.2.2 Outer Belt End Fitting”, page 88](#).
- Remove rear bulkhead cover. Refer to ⇒ [“2.5.10 Rear Bulkhead Cover”, page 233](#).
- Remove the rear lid trim panel sideways. Refer to ⇒ [“2.5.8 Side Rear Panel Trim Panel”, page 231](#).
- If storage compartments are installed in left and right of rear bulkhead, they must be removed. Refer to ⇒ [“1.5.11 Left and Right Storage Compartments Assembly Overview”, page 170](#).



WARNING

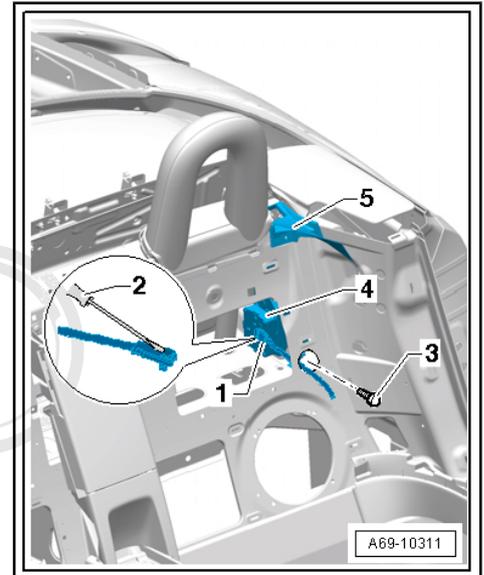
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, when disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must “discharge static electricity”. For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Driver Side

- Release electrical connector -1- on belt tensioner with a screwdriver -2-.
- Disconnect electrical connector on belt tensioner.

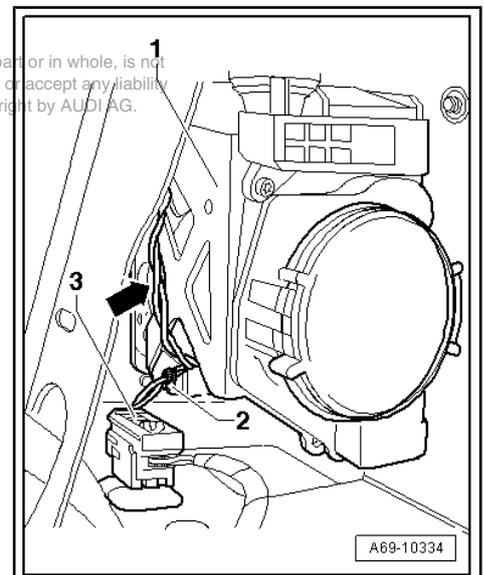


Vehicles with a Switchable Force Limiter (country-specific)

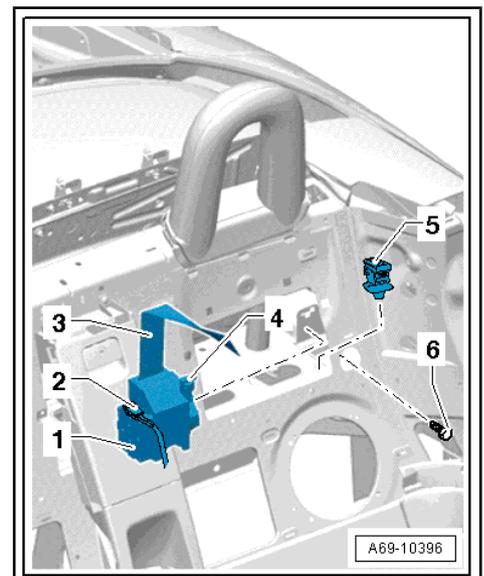


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Never loosen the cable tie -2- that secures the wire from the pyrotechnic belt tensioner or from the switchable load limiter -arrow- to the coupling -3-.

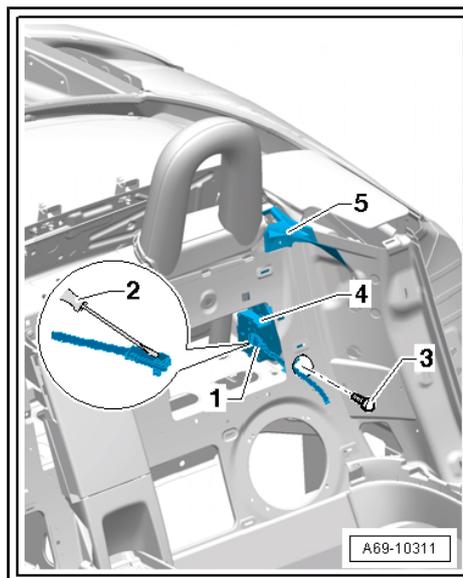


- Disconnect belt load limiter connector from coupling -5-.



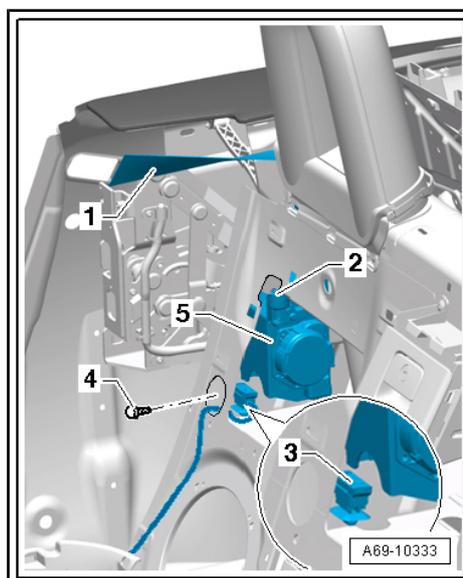
Procedure for all Vehicles

- Remove bolt -3-.
- Remove three-point seat belt -4- from body mount.
- Guide belt webbing out of belt guide -5-.



Passenger Side

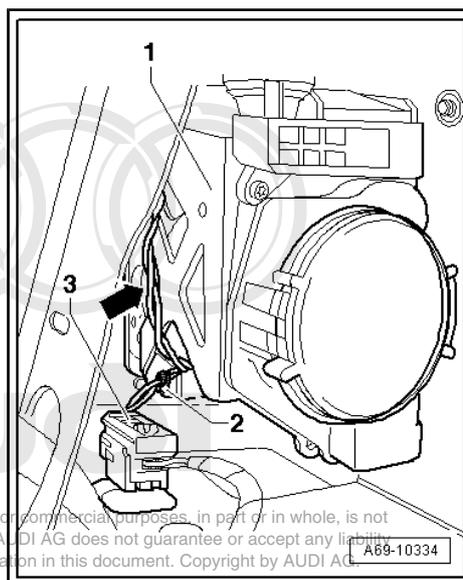
- Disconnect belt tensioner electrical connector on coupling -3-.



Vehicles with a Switchable Force Limiter (country-specific)

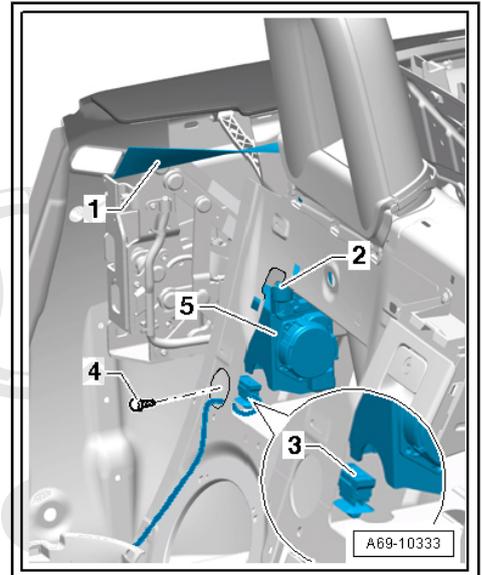
 **Note**

Never loosen the cable tie -2- that secures the wire from the pyrotechnic belt tensioner or from the switchable load limiter -arrow- to the coupling -3-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Disconnect connector -2- from switchable belt load limiter.



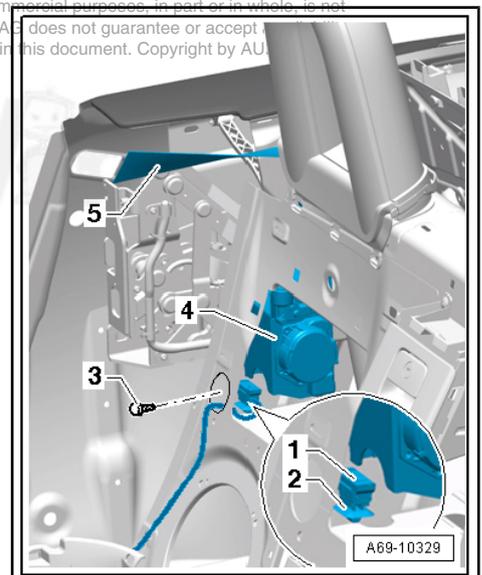
Procedure for all Vehicles

- Remove bolt -3-.
- Remove three-point seat belt -4- from body mount.
- Guide belt webbing -5- out of belt guide.

Installation

WARNING

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*

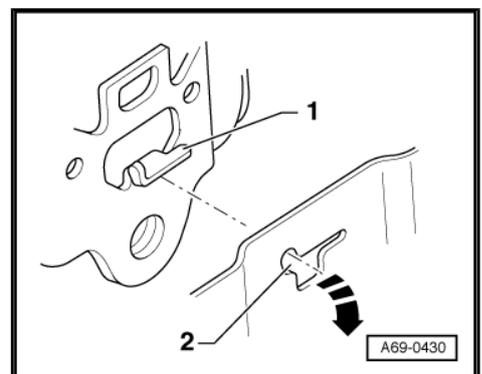


Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Insert belt roller/belt tensioner/belt load limiter with anti-twist mechanism -1- in direction of -arrow- into mount -2- on body.

Note

Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.



- Make sure the electrical wire -arrow- to coupling -3- is also secured to belt roller housing -1- with cable ties -2-.



Caution

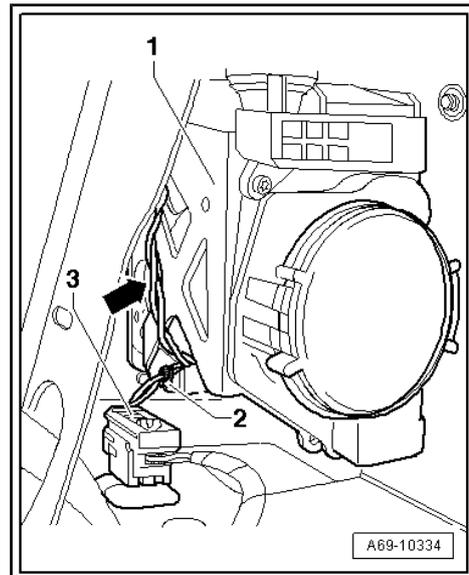
If the additional fastener on the belt roller housing is missing, the wire to the roller can be rubbed and lead to a malfunction of the pyrotechnic belt tensioner or switchable belt load limiter.

- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.



- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again.
- After installing the passenger side three-point seat belt, check the child seat belt function (country-specific). Refer to ⇒ ["1.1.18 Child Seat Anchorage, Checking Function", page 50](#) .

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to ⇒ ["2.2.2 Three-Point Seat Belt Assembly Overview", page 59](#) .

3.2.2 Outer Belt End Fitting

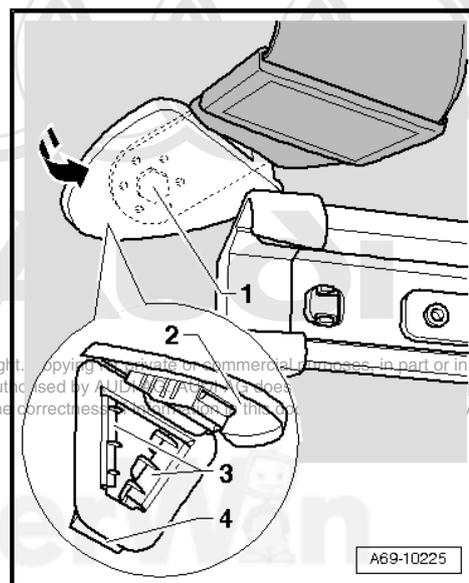
Removing

- Move seat forward and fold backrest forward.
- Pull the cover -2- in direction of -arrow- and open it.
- Remove cover -2- upward out of floor covering.
- Remove bolt -1-.

Installation

- Install bolt -1-.
- When installing, slide tab -4- under floor covering.
- Press tabs -3- under floor covering by closing cover -2-.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to ⇒ ["2.2.2 Three-Point Seat Belt Assembly Overview", page 59](#) .



Protected by copyright. Copying, reproducing or using in any form, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Audi AG. Audi AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of the information in this document. © Audi AG.

3.2.3 Belt Guide Anchorage Point

Removing

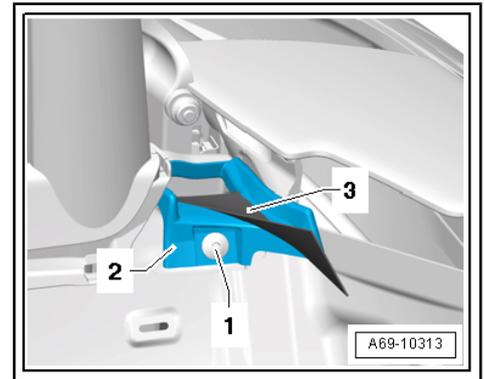
- Remove the belt end fitting. Refer to ⇒ ["3.2.2 Outer Belt End Fitting", page 88](#) .

- Remove rear bulkhead cover. Refer to [⇒ "2.5.10 Rear Bulkhead Cover", page 233](#) .
- Remove bolts -2- and remove belt guide -1-.
- Thread belt webbing -3- out of belt guide -2-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to [⇒ "2.2.2 Three-Point Seat Belt Assembly Overview", page 59](#) .



3.2.4 Front Belt Latch Anchorage Point

Removing

- Adjust seat all the way back and up as far as stops.
- Remove the front seat:
 - ◆ Manual Front Seats, Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.1.1 Front Seat", page 315](#)
 - ◆ Power Front Seats, Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.2.1 Front Seat", page 337](#)
 - ◆ Bucket Seat, Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.3.1 Seat", page 392](#)

Vehicles with Passenger Airbag Deactivation Passenger Occupant Detection System (for certain countries)



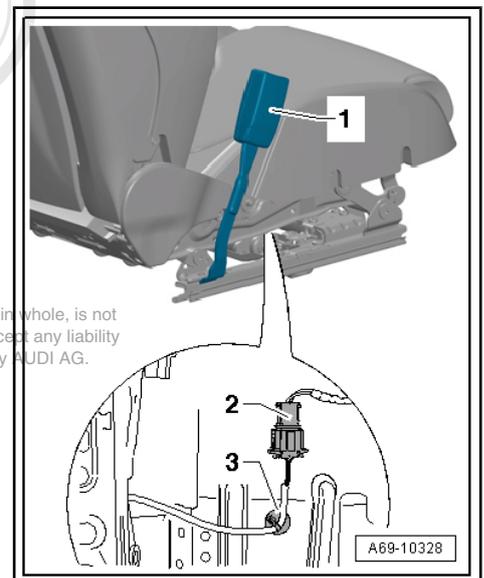
WARNING

Replace the passenger occupant detection system seat belt latch each time the passenger belt tensioner deploys.

- Disconnect the connector -2-.

1 - passenger occupant detection system passenger airbag deactivation seat belt latch (for certain countries)

- Unclip cable tie clip -3-.



Procedure for all Vehicles

- Remove bolt -2- and remove seat belt latch -1-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

Vehicles with Passenger Airbag Deactivation Passenger Occupant Detection System (for certain countries)

- If the seat belt latch of the passenger occupant detection system for front passenger airbag deactivation is replaced, fill out the system registration sheet with the serial number and bar code label from the new seat belt latch and send it to the importer.

Procedure for all Vehicles

- Replace the seat belt latch bolt.



Note

Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Switch on ignition.



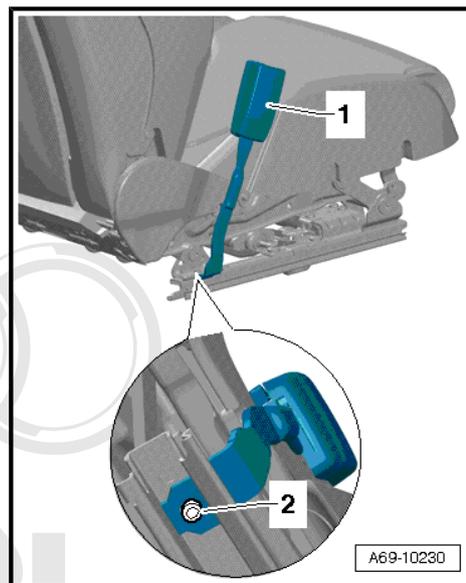
WARNING

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again. Refer to Vehicle diagnostic tester.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to

⇒ ["2.2.3 Belt Latch Anchorage Point Assembly Overview"](#), page 60 .



3.3 Child Seat Anchorages, LATCH and Top Tether

⇒ [“3.3.1 LATCH Child Seat Anchorage”, page 91](#)

⇒ [“3.3.2 Top Tether Child Seat Anchorage”, page 93](#)

3.3.1 LATCH Child Seat Anchorage

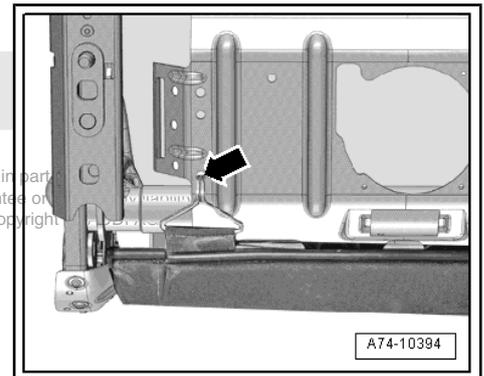
Removing

 **WARNING**

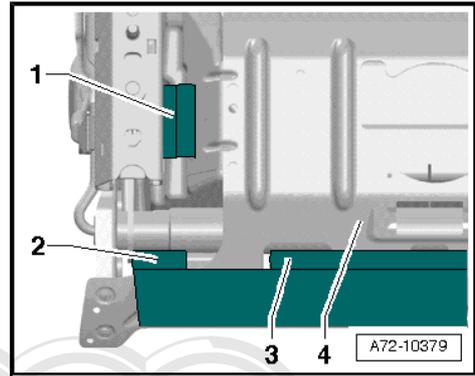
- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ [“1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures”, page 38](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling airbag units (for example, when disconnecting the harness connector), the person handling them must “discharge static electricity”. For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*

- Remove the front passenger seat:
 - ◆ Manual front seat, refer to ⇒ [“2.1.1 Front Seat”, page 315](#)
 - ◆ Power front seat, refer to ⇒ [“2.2.1 Front Seat”, page 337](#) .
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136- . Refer to ⇒ [“1.3 Installing Front Seat On VAS 6136”, page 250](#) .
- Remove backrest:
 - ◆ Manual front seat, refer to ⇒ [“2.1.12 Front Backrest”, page 327](#)
 - ◆ Power front seat, refer to ⇒ [“2.2.9 Front Backrest”, page 352](#) .
- Unhook the tension clip -arrow- on the left and right sides, if equipped.

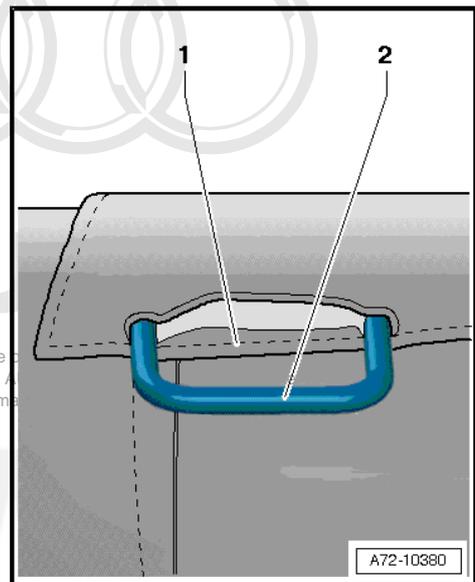
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or assume any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © 2007 Audi AG



- Disengage retaining strips -1-, -2- and -3- on back of seat pan -4-.



- Remove cover forward from LATCH brackets.
Make sure the cover does not tear at LATCH bracket opening.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private use is permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. All rights reserved with respect to the correctness of information.

- Remove bolts -3- (quantity: 4).

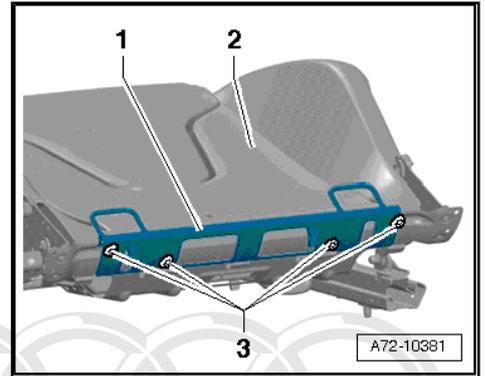
 **Note**

To provide a better overview, upholstery is shown without cover in illustration.

- Remove bracket -1- upward from seat pan -2-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:



 **WARNING**

- ◆ **Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to**
 ⇒ **"1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .**
- ◆ **Before handling airbag units (for example, when connecting the harness connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

 **Note**

Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.

- Switch on ignition.

 **WARNING**

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

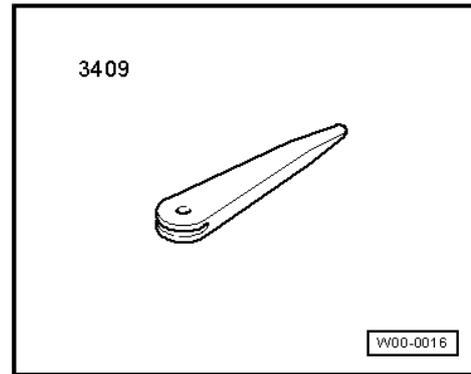
- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again. Refer to Vehicle diagnostic tester.

For the correct tightening specifications, refer to
 ⇒ **"2.3.1 Front Seat LATCH Child Seat Anchorage Assembly Overview", page 61**

3.3.2 Top Tether Child Seat Anchorage

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



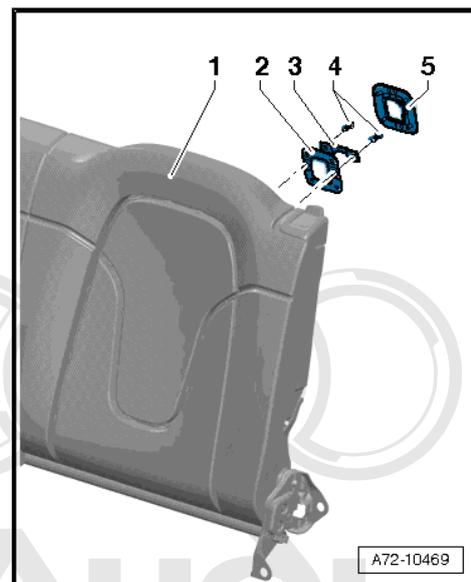
Removing

- Unclip outer trim -5- using Trim Removal Wedge -3409- .
- Remove the bolts -4-.
- Remove bracket -3-.
- Remove inner trim -2- from backrest -1-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to
 ⇒ ["2.3.3 Top Tether Child Seat Anchorages Assembly Overview"](#),
[page 63](#) .



3.4 Airbag, Servicing

⇒ ["3.4.1 Airbag Control Module J234"](#), [page 94](#)

⇒ ["3.4.2 Battery Interrupt Igniter N253"](#), [page 97](#)

3.4.1 Airbag Control Module J234

Removing

 **WARNING**

◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to*
 ⇒ ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures"](#), [page 38](#) .

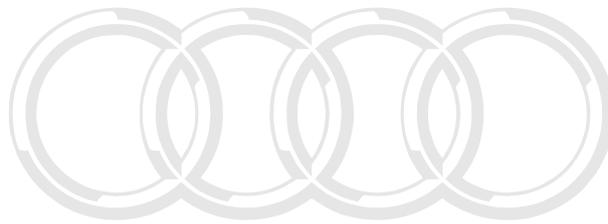
- Switch off the ignition.
- Clamp off ground wire at battery with ignition switched off. Refer to ⇒ [Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27](#) ; Removal and Installation .
- Remove front center console. Refer to
 ⇒ ["2.2.13 Front Center Console"](#), [page 31](#) .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



WARNING

- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin 

- Open securing clip at connector -1-.
- Remove connector -1-.
- Remove nuts -3- (quantity: 3) from threaded pins.
- Remove Airbag Control Module -J234- -2- from threaded pins.

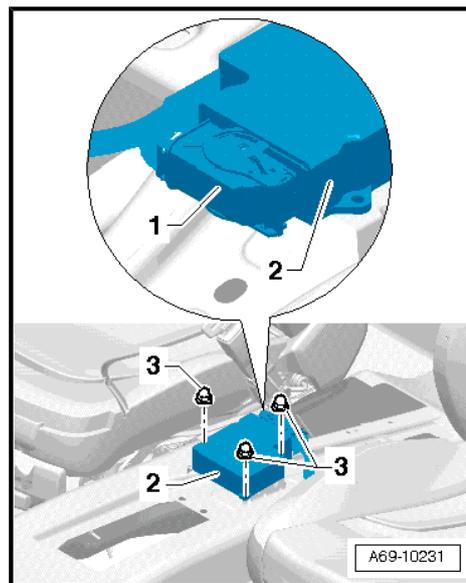
Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:



WARNING

- ◆ **Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .**
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.**



Note

Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.

- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.



Note

- ◆ **After replacing control module, it must be coded.**
- ◆ **The airbag control module -J234- ground connection is achieved via the housing with the body.**

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to ⇒ "2.4.3 Airbag Control Module J234 Assembly Overview", page 66 .

3.4.2 Battery Interrupt Igniter N253

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures"](#), page 38 .*
- ◆ *Follow all regulations when disposing of pyrotechnic components. Refer to ["1.1.2 Airbag, Belt Tensioner and Battery Cut-Out Units, Storage, Transporting and Disposal"](#), page 40 .*



Note

- ◆ *If the airbag indicator lamp -K75- illuminates after a collision, check for stored collision data using the vehicle diagnostic tester. If data is present, check if the fault resistance too high (error 001) is stored in the DTC memory for the battery interrupt igniter -N253-. If it is, replace the battery interrupt igniter -N253- .*
 - ◆ *The battery interrupt igniter -N253- interrupts the circuit when an airbag deploys. Always replace the battery interrupt igniter -N253- after an airbag deploys.*
- Turn off the ignition and remove the key.
- Remove cover from luggage compartment floor.
- Disconnect the battery ground (GND) strap. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .

- Disconnect battery positive strap -1- and remove it with auxiliary fuse panel cover.
- Remove nuts -2-.
- Remove Battery Interrupt Igniter -N253- -5-.

**WARNING**

- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*

- Release electrical connector -3- on Battery Interrupt Igniter -N253- using a screwdriver -4-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

**WARNING**

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*

**Note**

Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.

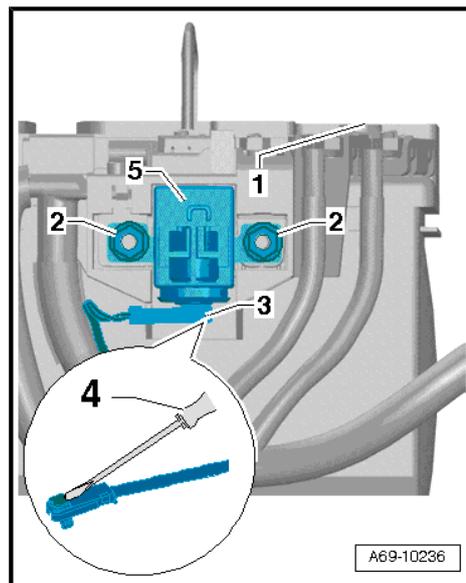
- Switch on ignition.

**WARNING**

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- Finally, check the DTC memory for the airbag control module using the vehicle diagnostic tester and perform the required work steps if necessary.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to ⇒ "2.4.2 Battery Interrupt Igniter N253 Assembly Overview", page 65 .



3.5 Driver Side Airbag, Servicing

⇒ ["3.5.1 Driver Airbag Igniter N95 and Driver Airbag Igniter 2 N250", page 99](#)

⇒ ["3.5.2 Airbag Unit Harness Connector", page 101](#)

3.5.1 Driver Airbag Igniter N95 and Driver Airbag Igniter 2 N250

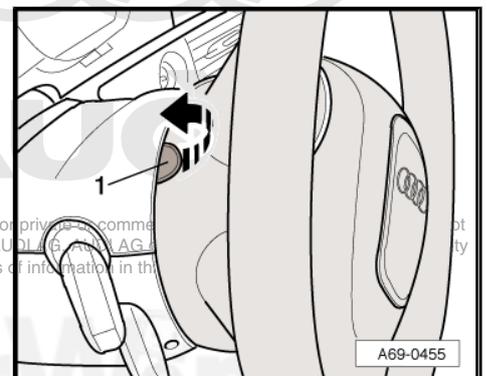
Removing

- Position the steering wheel so that it is as far rearward and up as possible, using the full adjustment range of the steering column adjuster.

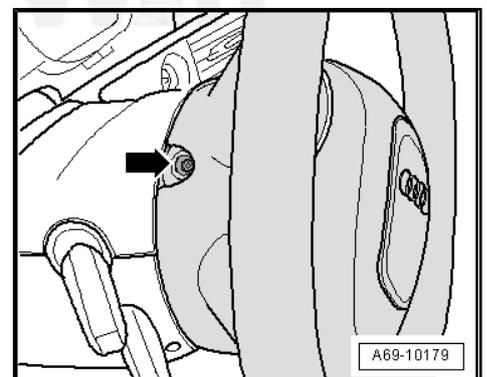
 **WARNING**

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38](#).*
- ◆ *Follow all regulations when disposing of pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ ["1.1.2 Airbag, Belt Tensioner and Battery Cut-Out Units, Storage, Transporting and Disposal", page 40](#).*

- Switch off the ignition.
- Disconnect battery ground cable. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- Remove cover cap -1- left and right from backside of steering wheel -arrow-.



- Remove screw -arrow- at left and right on back side of steering wheel.
- Bring steering wheel to center position (wheels straight).
- Pull the driver airbag unit from the steering wheel a bit.



 **WARNING**

- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*

- Pull the connector lock -4- up to the stop -arrow- to disconnect the connector -2-.
- Remove airbag unit -1- from the steering wheel.
- If applicable, disconnect electrical connection -3-.
- Set the airbag unit down so that the padding faces upward.

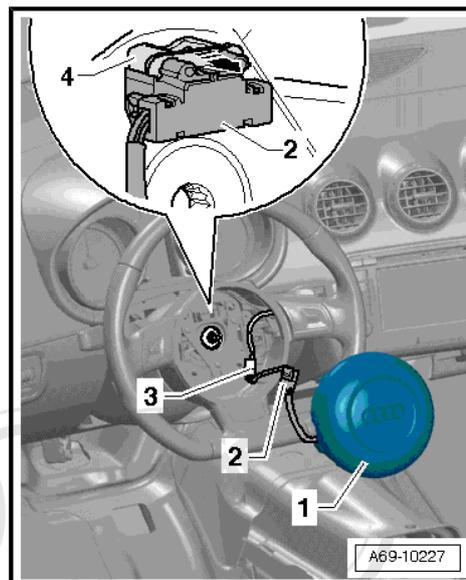
Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:



WARNING

- ◆ **Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .**
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.**

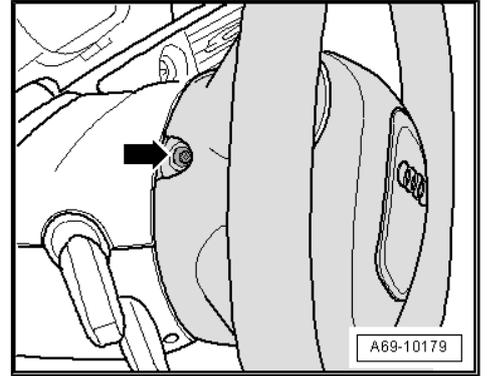


Note

- ◆ **Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.**
- ◆ **Make sure the wires do not get caught.**
- Connect the spiral spring connector with the airbag unit coupling on the return spring with the slip ring.
- Position the airbag unit in the steering wheel.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Tighten the 2 screws -arrow- for securing the airbag unit approximately 2 turns.
- Press horn about 3 times to achieve even gap dimension.
- Do not touch the airbag unit anymore.
- Tighten screws -arrow-.
- Press cover cap into cut-out on steering wheel.
- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .

After installing the airbag unit, the following steps must be carried out.

- Finally, check the airbag control module DTC memory and erase it so that faults can be saved when disconnecting the harness connector. Refer to vehicle diagnostic tester.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to ⇒ **“2.5.1 Driver Side Airbag Unit Assembly Overview”, page 67** .

3.5.2 Airbag Unit Harness Connector

Use, reproduction or distribution for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ **“1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures”, page 38** .*

- Remove the driver airbag unit. Refer to ⇒ **“3.5.1 Driver Airbag Igniter N95 and Driver Airbag Igniter 2 N250”, page 99** .



WARNING

- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must “discharge static electricity”. For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*

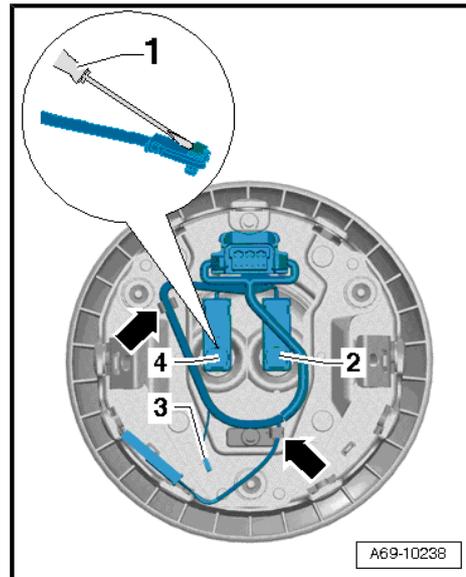
- Disconnect electrical connections -2- and -4- on airbag with screwdriver -1-.
- Remove connector -3-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

WARNING

- ◆ **Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .**
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.**



Note

Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.

- Install the driver airbag unit. Refer to ⇒ [page 100](#) .

3.6 Front Passenger Side Airbag, Servicing

⇒ [page 102](#)

⇒ [page 105](#)

⇒ [page 105](#)

3.6.1 Front Passenger Airbag Unit

Removing

WARNING

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for errors or omissions.

- ◆ **Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .**
- ◆ **Follow all regulations when disposing of pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1.2 Airbag, Belt Tensioner and Battery Cut-Out Units, Storage, Transporting and Disposal", page 40 .**
- ◆ **Follow the allocation of the airbag unit to the instrument panel ⇒ *Electronic parts catalog* .**

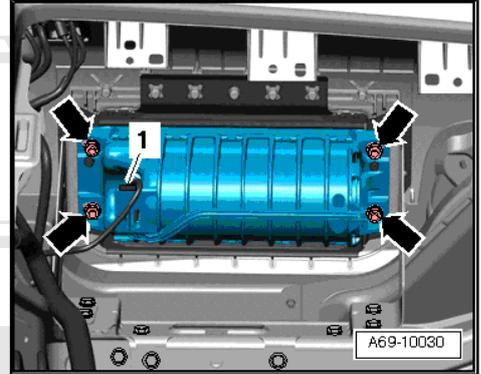
- Switch off the ignition.
- Disconnect battery ground cable. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- Remove the glove compartment. Refer to ⇒ ["2.1.8 Glove Compartment", page 23](#) .



WARNING

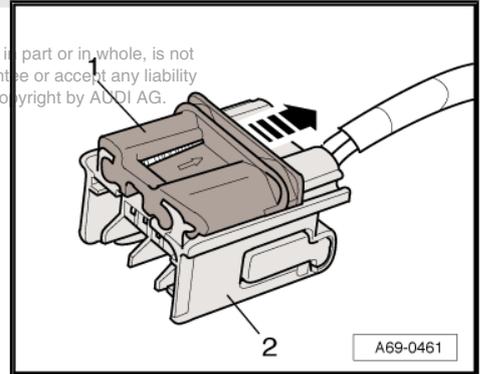
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*

- Disconnect the connector -1-.



- Press securing catch -1- in -direction of arrow- until connector disengages.
- Remove electrical connector -2-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Remove nuts -arrows-
- Remove the airbag unit in a downward direction.
- Set the airbag unit down so that the padding faces upward.

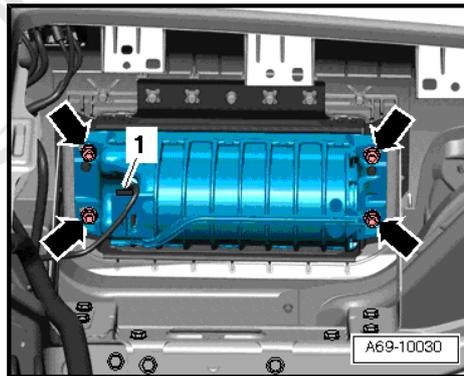
Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:



WARNING

- ◆ **Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components; Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38.**
- ◆ **Follow the allocation of the airbag unit to the instrument panel. Refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalog .**
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.**



Note

- ◆ *Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.*
- ◆ *Make sure the wires do not get caught.*
- Replace the airbag securing components after airbag deployment.



WARNING

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Switch on ignition.
- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to ⇒ "2.6.1 Front Passenger Side Airbag Unit Assembly Overview", page 68 .

3.6.2 Front Passenger Airbag Unit Bracket

Removing

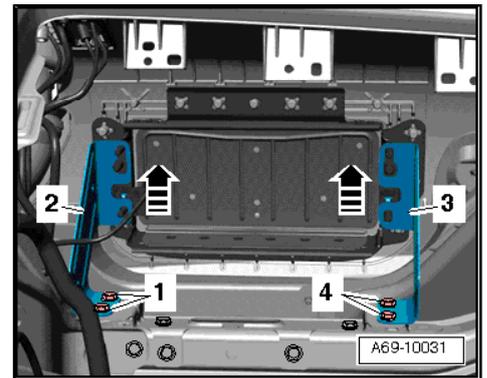
- Remove the front passenger airbag unit. Refer to ⇒ [“3.6.1 Front Passenger Airbag Unit”, page 102](#) .
- Remove screws -1- and -4-.
- Disengage bracket -2- and -3- at airbag unit guide in direction of -arrow-.
- Remove the bracket for the airbag unit.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Install the front passenger airbag unit . Refer to ⇒ [“3.6.1 Front Passenger Airbag Unit”, page 102](#) .

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to ⇒ [“2.6.1 Front Passenger Side Airbag Unit Assembly Overview”, page 68](#) .



3.6.3 Front Passenger Airbag -Disabled- Indicator Lamp K145

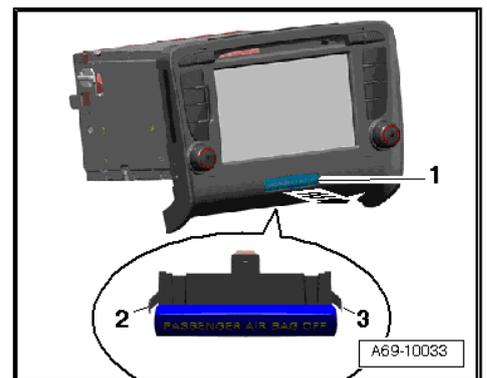
Removing

- Remove radio or navigation system. Refer to ⇒ Communication; Rep. Gr. 91 ; Removal and Installation .
- Release left and right retaining springs -2- and -3- and slide Front Passenger Airbag Disabled Indicator Lamp -K145- item 1- out -arrow-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Press indicator light into housing until it engages audibly.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



3.7 Front Side Airbag, Servicing

⇒ [“3.7.1 Side Airbag”, page 106](#)

3.7.1 Side Airbag

Removing



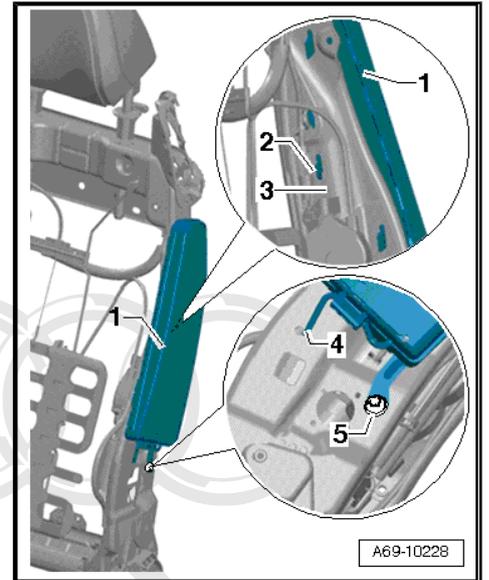
WARNING

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to*
⇒ [“1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures”, page 38](#) .
- ◆ *Follow the additional safety precautions when working with the side airbag. Refer to*
⇒ [“1.1.3 Side Airbag Additional Safety Precautions”, page 41](#) .
- ◆ *Follow all regulations when disposing of pyrotechnic components. Refer to*
⇒ [“1.1.2 Airbag, Belt Tensioner and Battery Cut-Out Units, Storage, Transporting and Disposal”, page 40](#) .
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must “discharge static electricity”. For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*

- Remove the manually adjustable front seat. Refer to
⇒ [“2.1.1 Front Seat”, page 315](#) , for power front seats, refer to
⇒ [“2.2.1 Front Seat”, page 337](#) .
- Mount the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136- on the engine/ transmission holder -VAS 6095- and then secure the front seat on the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136- . Refer to
⇒ [“1.3 Installing Front Seat On VAS 6136”, page 250](#) .
- Remove the front backrest. For a manually adjustable front seat, refer to ⇒ [“2.1.12 Front Backrest”, page 327](#) ; for a power front seat, refer to ⇒ [“2.2.9 Front Backrest”, page 352](#) .
- Remove backrest cover panel. Refer to
⇒ [“2.1.13 Backrest Cover”, page 331](#) .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Remove padding from backrest until screw -5- is reached. Refer to ⇒ ["2.1.3 Backrest Cover and Upholstery", page 432](#) .
- Remove wiring harness -4- from corrugated pipe. Refer to ⇒ ["2.1.12 Front Backrest", page 327](#) .
- Remove wiring harness -4- from remaining corrugated pipe.
- Disengage wiring harness from bracket.
- Remove the bolt -5-.
- Disengage the side airbag -1- from the backrest frame -3- using the hook -2-.
- Remove side airbag from pocket.
- Guide wiring harness back and remove side airbag from seat.



Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

 **WARNING**

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*

 **Note**

Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.

- Switch on ignition.

 **WARNING**

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to ⇒ ["2.7.1 Front Side Airbag Assembly Overview", page 69](#) .

3.8 Knee Airbag, Servicing

⇒ [“3.8.1 Driver Side Instrument Panel Cover”, page 108](#)

⇒ [“3.8.2 Driver Knee Airbag”, page 108](#)

⇒ [“3.8.3 Left and Right Driver Knee Airbag Supports”, page 110](#)

⇒ [“3.8.4 Angled Bracket above Driver Knee Airbag”, page 112](#)

⇒ [“3.8.5 Glove Compartment, Vehicles with Knee Airbag”, page 112](#)

⇒ [“3.8.6 Passenger Knee Airbag”, page 115](#)

⇒ [“3.8.7 Left and Right Passenger Knee Airbag Supports”, page 117](#)

3.8.1 Driver Side Instrument Panel Cover

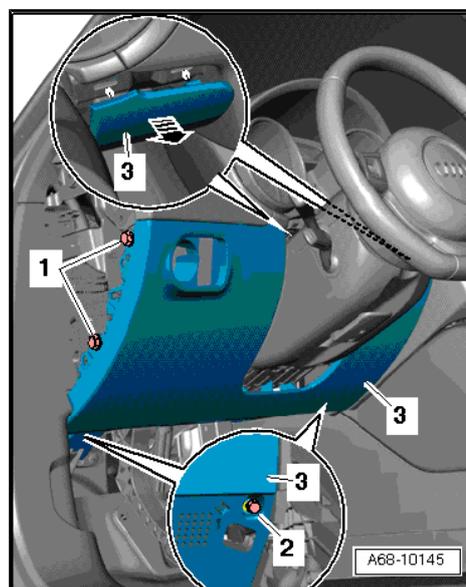
Removing

- Remove the headlamp switch. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 96 ; Removal and Installation .
- Remove side instrument panel cover
⇒ [“2.2.1 Instrument Panel Side Cover”, page 193](#) .
- Remove bolts -1- (quantity: 2) and -2- (quantity: 5).
- Unclip knee bar -3- from instrument panel at upper edge using a small screwdriver -arrow-.
- Remove knee bar.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.

For the correct tightening specifications, refer to
⇒ [“2.8.1 Front Knee Airbags Overview”, page 70](#)



3.8.2 Driver Knee Airbag

Removing

- Move driver's seat all the way back and put backrest at a 45° angle.
- Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



WARNING

- ◆ **Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to**
⇒ [“1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures”, page 38](#) .
- ◆ **Follow all regulations when disposing of pyrotechnic components. Refer to**
⇒ [“1.1.2 Airbag, Belt Tensioner and Battery Cut-Out Units, Storage, Transporting and Disposal”, page 40](#) .

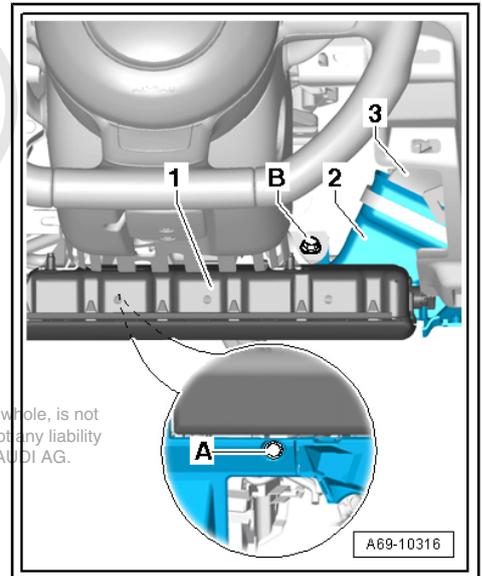
- Switch off the ignition.
- Clamp off ground wire at battery with ignition switched off. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .

- Remove knee bar (driver side instrument panel cover). Refer to ⇒ ["3.8.1 Driver Side Instrument Panel Cover"](#), page 108 .
- Unclip 16-Pin Connector -T16- (for the Data Link Connector).
- Remove bolts -A- (below knee airbag -1-) and -B- (above knee airbag).
- Remove the driver footwell air guide channel -2- from the front passenger footwell air guide channel -3-.

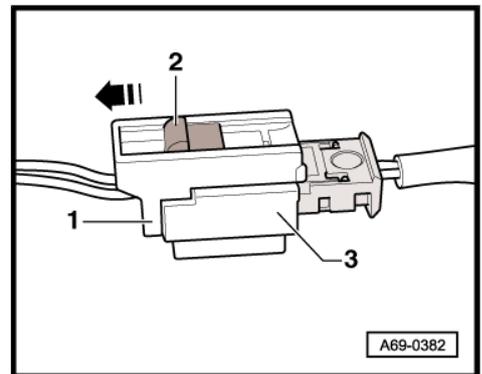
 **WARNING**

◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Disconnect knee airbag connector (yellow).
- Pull retainer -2- in direction of -arrow- and disconnect connectors -1- and -3-.



- Remove nuts -2- from left -3- and right supports -4-.
- Loosen nuts -5- approximately 3 turns and remove driver side knee airbag -1- toward rear.
- Set the airbag unit -1- down so that the padding is facing up.

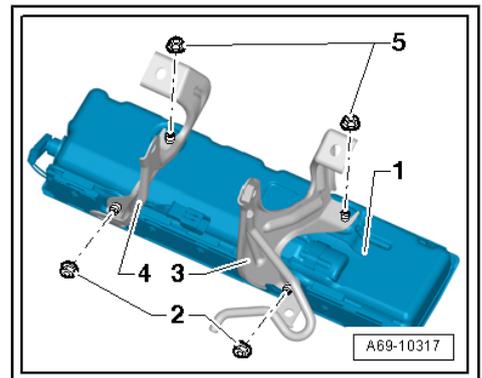
Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

 **WARNING**

◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures"](#), page 38 .*

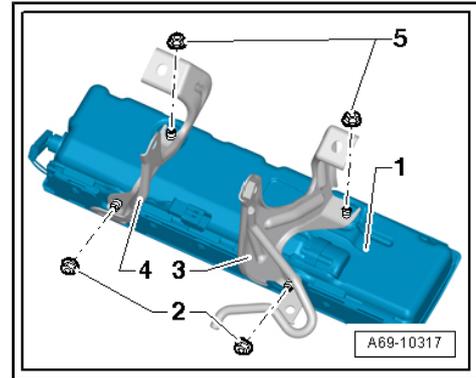
◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*



- Slide knee airbag -1- on left -3- and right -4- supports as far as stop.
- First tighten nuts -2- and then nuts -5- to tightening specification.

**Note**

- ◆ *Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.*
- ◆ *Make sure the wires do not get caught.*
- Replace the airbag securing components after airbag deployment.

**WARNING**

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Switch on ignition.
- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ [Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation](#) .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again ⇒ [Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051](#).

For the correct tightening specification refer to ⇒ ["2.8.1 Front Knee Airbags Overview", page 70](#)

3.8.3 Left and Right Driver Knee Airbag Supports

Removing

**WARNING**

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38](#) .*

- Remove driver side knee airbag. Refer to ⇒ ["3.8.2 Driver Knee Airbag", page 108](#) .

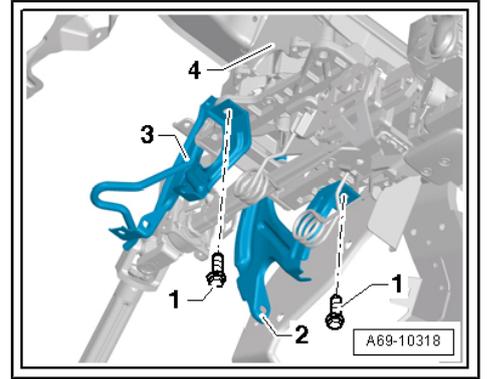
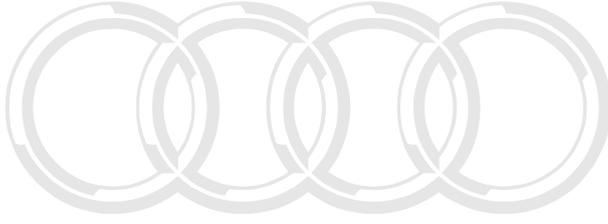


Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability in respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin

- Remove bolts -1- for right -2- and left -3- supports from mounting bracket/steering column -4-.



- Then remove the supports -1- and -2- from the brace and mounting bracket/steering column -4-. Remove bolt -3-.

Installation

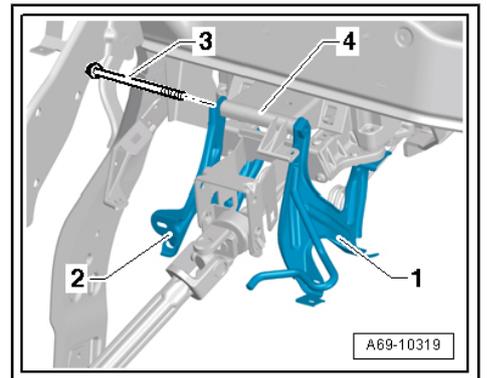
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:



WARNING

- ◆ **Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .**
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.**



- Install driver side knee airbag. Refer to ⇒ "3.8.2 Driver Knee Airbag", page 108 .



Note

- ◆ *Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.*
- ◆ *Make sure the wires do not get caught.*
- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

For the correct tightening specification refer to ⇒ "2.8.1 Front Knee Airbags Overview", page 70

3.8.4 Angled Bracket above Driver Knee Airbag

Removing

- Move driver's seat all the way back and put backrest at a 45° angle.
- Remove knee bar (driver side instrument panel cover). Refer to ⇒ ["3.8.1 Driver Side Instrument Panel Cover", page 108](#).
- Remove bolts -2- and remove angled bracket -1-.



Note

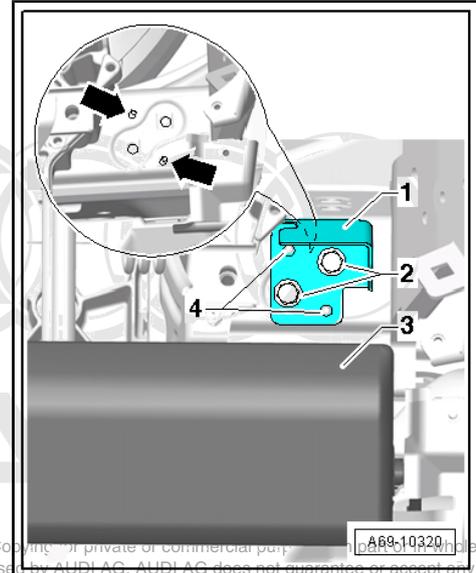
Be careful of knee airbag -3- when removing and installing angled bracket.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Insert angled bracket -1- with holes -4- in mounts -arrows- on central tube. Bend on angled bracket must face toward rear.

For the correct tightening specifications, refer to ⇒ ["2.8.1 Front Knee Airbags Overview", page 70](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes without the written permission of Audi AG is not permitted unless authorised by Audi AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG.

3.8.5 Glove Compartment, Vehicles with Knee Airbag

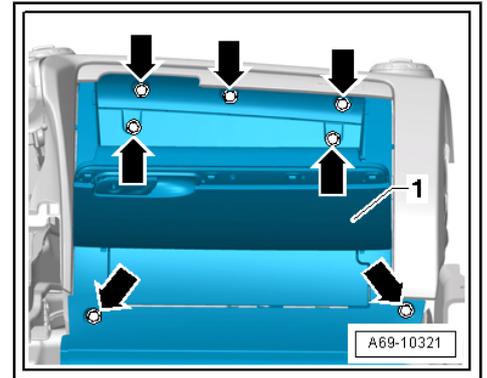
Removing

- Move passenger's seat all the way back and put backrest at a 45° angle.

- Open the glove compartment lid -1-.

 **Note**

If glove compartment cover does not open, it can be opened via the emergency release. Refer to ["2.1.5 Glove Compartment Cover Emergency Release, Activating", page 20](#).



 **WARNING**

- ◆ **Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38](#).**

- Switch off the ignition.
- Clamp off ground wire at battery with ignition switched off. Refer to ["Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation"](#).
- If present, remove CD changer. Refer to ["Communication; Rep. Gr. 91 ; Removal and Installation"](#).
- Remove the bolts -arrows-.
- Remove the glove compartment just far enough until it is possible to disconnect the connectors.

 **WARNING**

- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.**

- Disconnect the connector on the central connector.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Disconnect knee airbag connector (yellow).
- Pull retainer -2- in direction of -arrow- and disconnect connectors -1- and -3-.

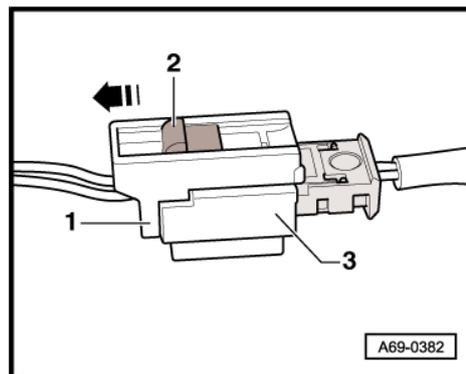
Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:



WARNING

- ◆ **Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .**
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.**



Note

- ◆ *Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.*
- ◆ *Make sure the wires do not get caught.*
- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

For the correct tightening specifications, refer to ⇒ "2.8.1 Front Knee Airbags Overview", page 70

3.8.6 Passenger Knee Airbag

Removing

 **WARNING**

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures"](#), page 38 .*
- ◆ *Follow all regulations when disposing of pyrotechnic components. Refer to ["1.1.2 Airbag, Belt Tensioner and Battery Cut-Out Units, Storage, Transporting and Disposal"](#), page 40 .*

- Remove the glove compartment. Refer to ["3.8.5 Glove Compartment, Vehicles with Knee Airbag"](#), page 112 .
- Remove the rubber mat -1- from the groove -arrow- inside the glove compartment -3-.

 **Note**

After removing the rubber mat -1-, knee air bag mounting bolts -2- are accessible.

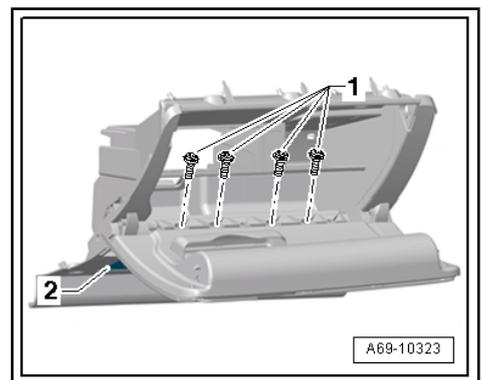
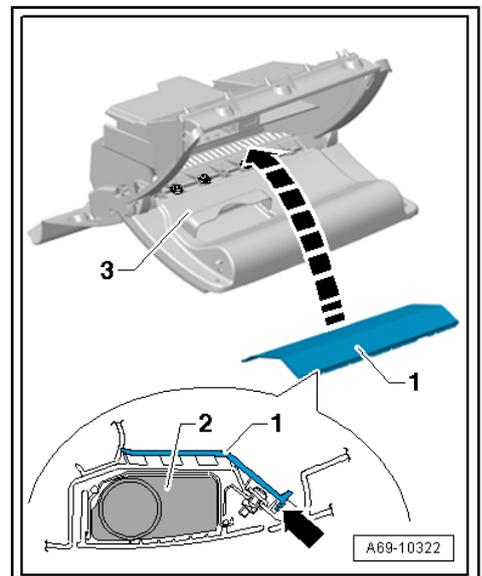


Audi

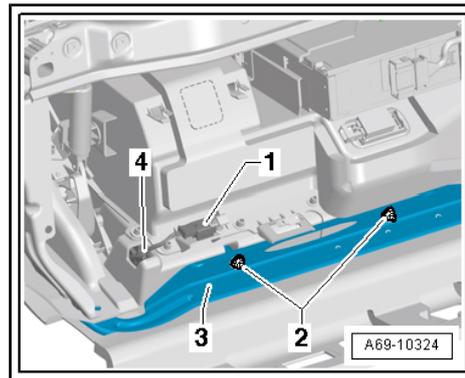
- Remove the bolts 1 from the knee airbag 2 inside the glove compartment.

Preparation and repair work on the vehicle must be carried out in accordance with the instructions in the workshop manual. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin



- Then remove knee airbag nuts -2- on lower support -3-.
- Remove knee airbag from the glove compartment. Guide the airbag connector -1- through the opening -4- inside the glove compartment.
- Set the airbag unit down so that the padding faces upward.



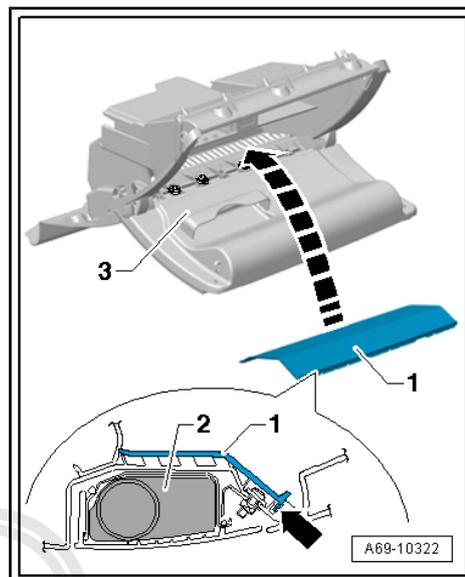
Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

! WARNING

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*

- After installing knee airbag -2-, install the rubber mat -1- in glove compartment -3- in -direction of arrow-. Rubber mat must be clipped into groove -arrow-.
- Install the glove compartment. Refer to ⇒ "3.8.5 Glove Compartment, Vehicles with Knee Airbag", page 112 .



i Note

- ◆ *Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.*
- ◆ *Make sure the wires do not get caught.*

- Switch on ignition.

! WARNING

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051

For the correct tightening specification refer to ⇒ "2.8.1 Front Knee Airbags Overview", page 70

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.8.7 Left and Right Passenger Knee Airbag Supports

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ **Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .**

- Remove the glove compartment. Refer to ⇒ "3.8.5 Glove Compartment, Vehicles with Knee Airbag", page 112 .

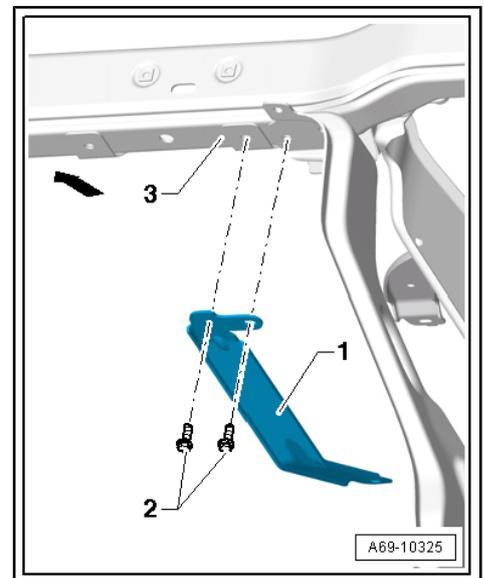
Passenger Side Left Support:

- Remove bolts -2- for left support -1- on central tube -3-.
- Remove left support.



Note

The arrow points to the direction of travel.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Passenger Side Right Support:

- Remove bolts -2- for right support -1- on central tube -3-.
- Remove right support.



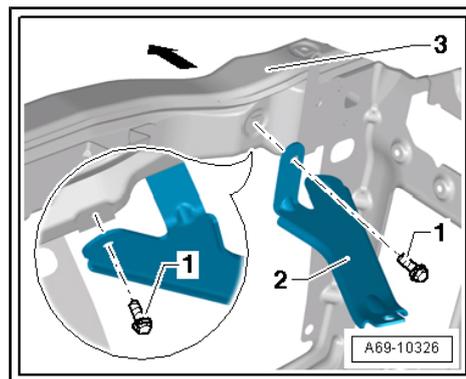
Note

The arrow points to the direction of travel.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- First tighten bolts -1- for right support -2- on central tube -3- by hand. Then tighten bolts to the specification.



WARNING

- ◆ Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ [“1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures”, page 38](#).
- ◆ Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must “discharge static electricity”. For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.

- Install the glove compartment. Refer to ⇒ [“3.8.5 Glove Compartment, Vehicles with Knee Airbag”, page 112](#).



Note

- ◆ Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.
- ◆ Make sure the wires do not get caught.
- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

For the correct tightening specification refer to ⇒ [“2.8.1 Front Knee Airbags Overview”, page 70](#)

3.9 Crash Sensor for Airbags, Servicing

⇒ [“3.9.1 Front Airbag Crash Sensor”, page 119](#)

⇒ [“3.9.2 Side Airbag Crash Sensor”, page 121](#)

3.9.1 Front Airbag Crash Sensor

Removing

 **WARNING**

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ [“1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures”, page 38](#) .*
- ◆ *Follow the safety precautions for front side airbag crash sensors (pressure sensors). Refer to ⇒ [“1.1.5 Front Side Airbag Crash Sensors Safety Precautions”, page 42](#) .*

There is a risk of getting injured by an automatic engine start for vehicles with the start/stop system.

- ◆ *For vehicles with an activated start/stop system (recognized by a signal in the instrument cluster), the engine can be started automatically if need be.*
- ◆ *Therefore make sure that the start/stop system is deactivated when working on the vehicle (turn off the ignition, turn on the ignition when necessary).*

- Open the hood.
- Clamp off ground wire at battery with ignition switched off. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .

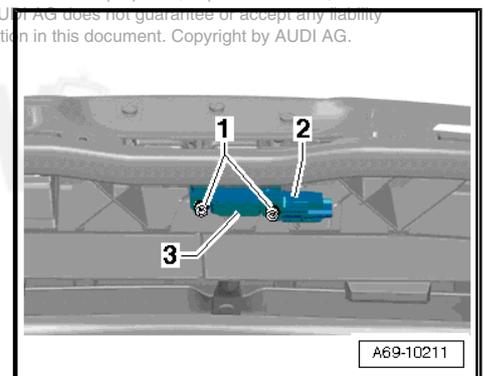
 **WARNING**

- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must “discharge static electricity”. For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Vehicles with 1 Front Airbag Crash Sensor

- Disconnect electrical connector -2- on front airbag crash sensor -3-.
- Remove bolts -1- (quantity: 2).
- Remove front airbag crash sensor -3-.



Vehicles with 2 Front Airbag Crash Sensors

- Disconnect electrical connector -4- on respective front airbag crash sensor -2-.
- Remove bolts -1- (quantity: 2) on respective front airbag crash sensor -2-.
- Remove respective front airbag crash sensor -2- from lock carrier -3-.

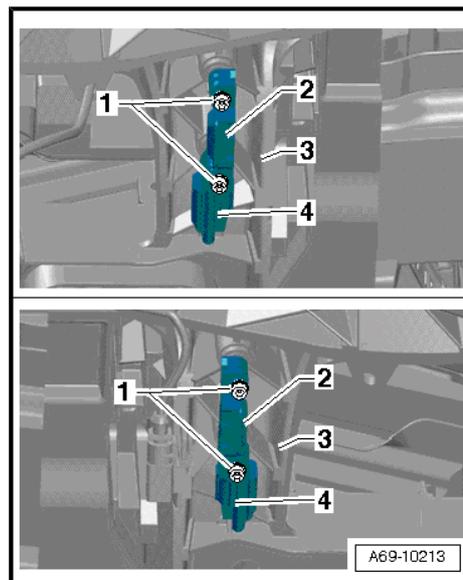
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:



WARNING

- ◆ Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ **"1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures"**, page 38 .
- ◆ Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.



Note

Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.

- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .



Note

If the airbag malfunction indicator lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, check the DTC memory, erase it and check it again ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

For the correct tightening specifications refer to ⇒ **"2.9.1 Crash Sensor Component Location Overview"**, page 72 .

3.9.2 Side Airbag Crash Sensor

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .*
- ◆ *Follow the safety precautions for front side airbag crash sensors (pressure sensors). Refer to ⇒ "1.1.5 Front Side Airbag Crash Sensors Safety Precautions", page 42 .*

- Clamp off ground wire at battery with ignition switched off. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .

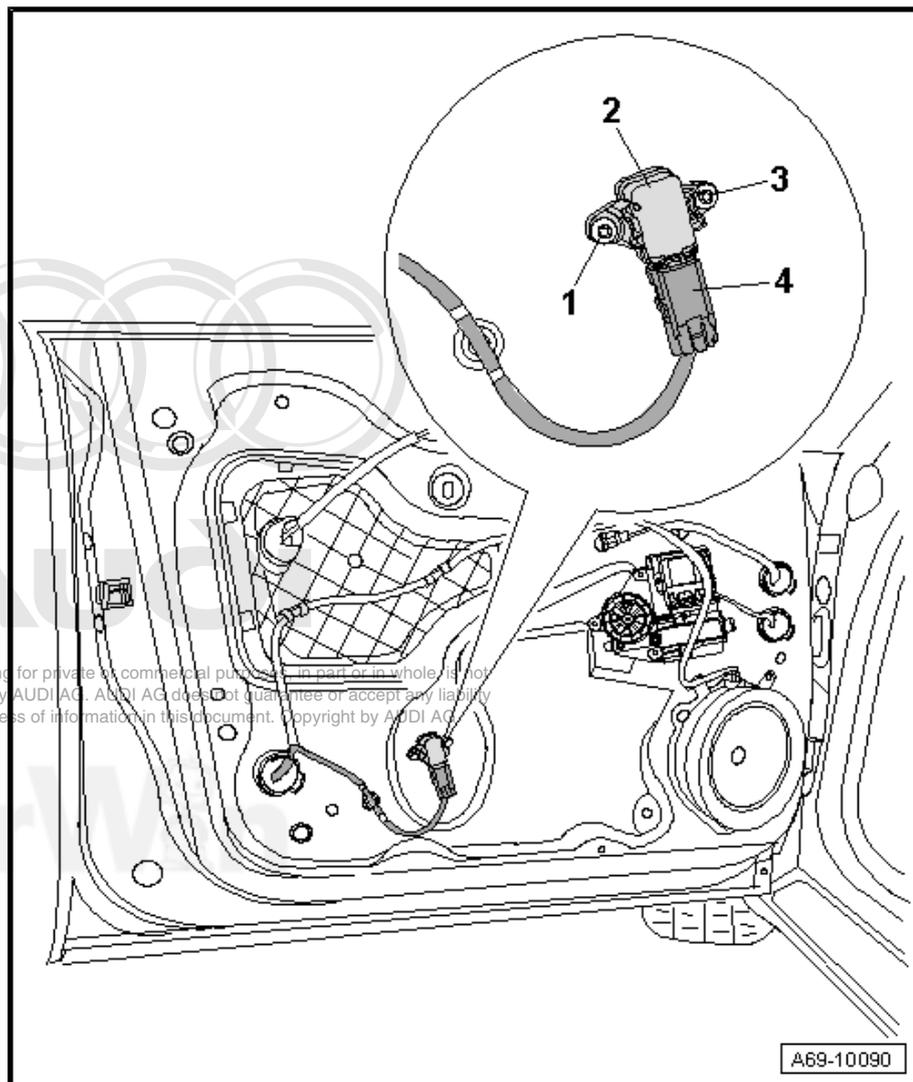
- Remove the door trim panel. Refer to ⇒ "2.1.5 Door Trim", page 187 .



WARNING

- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*

- Disconnect electrical connector -4- on side airbag crash sensor.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes in part or in whole is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Remove bolts -1- and -3- on side airbag crash sensor.
- Remove respective side airbag crash sensor -2-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:



WARNING

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures"](#), page 38 .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*

 **Note**

- ◆ *For proper crash sensor (pressure sensor) function, ensure door does not leak.*
 - ◆ *All components (for example, cover, speaker, door trim) must be installed correctly.*
 - ◆ *The door trim clips seal the system. Replace the clips, if necessary.*
 - ◆ *Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.*
- Switch on ignition.

 **WARNING**

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .

 **Note**

If the airbag malfunction indicator lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, check the DTC memory, erase it and check it again ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to ⇒ **“2.9.1 Crash Sensor Component Location Overview”, page 72** .

3.10 Belt Fastening Detection

⇒ **“3.10.1 Front Passenger Seat Occupant Sensor G128”, page 123**

3.10.1 Front Passenger Seat Occupant Sensor G128

 **Note**

The front passenger seat occupant sensor -G128- is only installed in the front seat.

Removing

 **WARNING**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

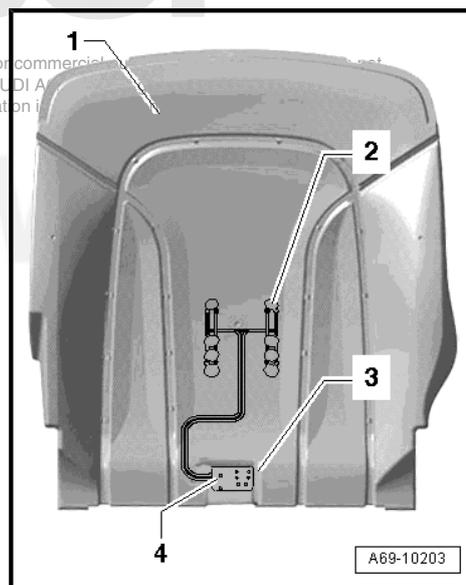
- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ **“1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures”, page 38** .*

- Remove the front seat on the passenger side:
- ◆ Manual front seat: ⇒ [“2.1.1 Front Seat”, page 315](#)
- ◆ Power front seat: ⇒ [“2.2.1 Front Seat”, page 337](#) .
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136- ⇒ [“1.3 Installing Front Seat On VAS 6136”, page 250](#) .
- Separate cover from upholstery (seat pan):
- ◆ Manual front seat:
⇒ [“2.1.2 Seat Pan Cover, Separating from Upholstery”, page 431](#)
- ◆ Power front seat:
⇒ [“2.1.2 Seat Pan Cover, Separating from Upholstery”, page 431](#) .

**Note**

Remove padding only until Front Passenger Seat Occupied Sensor -G128- -2- has been freed up!

- Remove Front Passenger Seat Occupied Sensor -G128- connector -2-.
- Carefully remove Front Passenger Seat Occupied Sensor -G128- -2- from seat padding -1-.

**Installation**

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Position circuit board -4- from front passenger seat occupant sensor -G128- -2- in cut-out -3- in seat padding -1-.
- Align Front Passenger Seat Occupied Sensor -G128- -2- on seat padding -1- as shown in illustration.

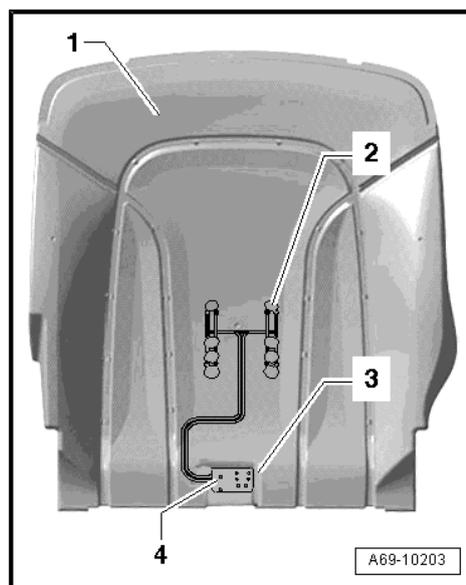
**Caution**

The new Front Passenger's Seat Occupied Sensor -G128- should be installed in the same location on the seat upholstery as the old seat occupied sensor.

- Remove protective foil and adhere Front Passenger Seat Occupied Sensor -G128- -2- to seat padding -1-.

**Note**

Ensure Front Passenger Seat Occupied Sensor -G128- is not covered by seat heater element heating coils.



3.11 Seat Position Sensor

⇒ [“3.11.1 Seat Position Sensor”, page 125](#)

3.11.1 Seat Position Sensor

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to*
⇒ [“1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures”, page 38](#) .
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must “discharge static electricity”. For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*

- Remove the driver seat:
 - ◆ Manual front seat: ⇒ [“2.1.1 Front Seat”, page 315](#)
 - ◆ Power front seat: ⇒ [“2.2.1 Front Seat”, page 337](#) .
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136- .
Refer to
⇒ [“1.3 Installing Front Seat On VAS 6136”, page 250](#) .

Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin 

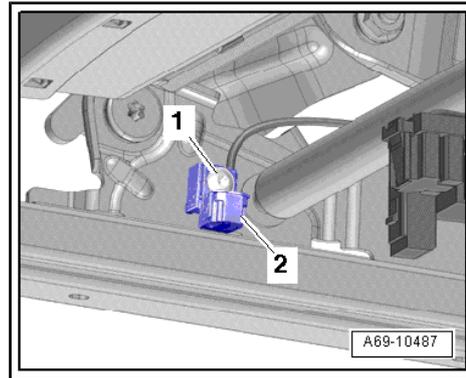
- Remove the bolt -1-.
- Unclip the seat position sensor -2- from the seat pan lower frame.
- Disconnect the wire from the seat position sensor and free it up.
- Remove the seat position sensor with the wires from the seat pan lower frame.

Installation



WARNING

- ◆ **Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to**
⇒ ***"1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures"*, page 38** .
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.**



Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:



Note

Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.



WARNING

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect the battery ground cable with the ignition turned on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to
⇒ ***"2.10.1 Seat Position Sensor Assembly Overview"*, page 74** .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.12 Front Passenger Passenger Occupant Detection System, Servicing

⇒ [“3.12.1 Passive Occupant Detection System”, page 127](#)

3.12.1 Passive Occupant Detection System



WARNING

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to*
 ⇒ [“1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures”, page 38](#) .



WARNING

The passenger occupant detection system service kit is pre-calibrated and must not be disconnected. The service kit consists of:

- ◆ *Seat Occupied Recognition Control Module -J706-*
- ◆ *Seat Occupied Recognition Pressure Sensor -G452-*
- ◆ *Passive Occupant Detection System Mat*
- ◆ *Seat cushion*
- ◆ *Wiring harness between the seat occupied recognition control module -J706- and the seat occupied recognition pressure sensor -G452- .*



Note

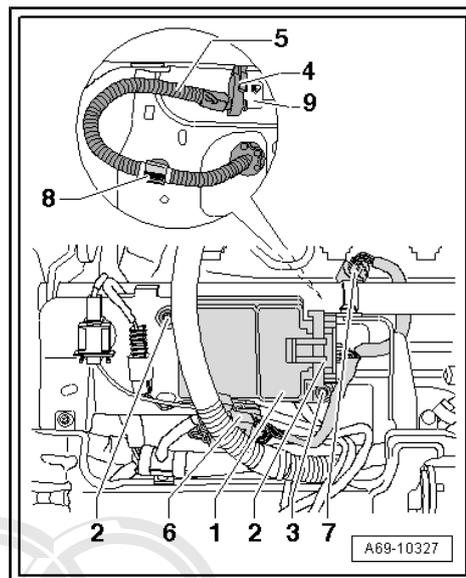
The passive occupant detection system is only installed on the front passenger seat.

Removing

- Disconnect battery ground cable. Refer to ⇒ [Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation](#)
- Remove passenger seat:
 - ◆ Manually Adjustable Front Seat, Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.1.1 Front Seat”, page 315](#)
 - ◆ Power Front Seat, Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.2.1 Front Seat”, page 337](#)
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136- . Refer to ⇒ [“1.3 Installing Front Seat On VAS 6136”, page 250](#) .
- Remove backrest:
 - ◆ Manually Adjustable Front Backrest, Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.1.12 Front Backrest”, page 327](#)
 - ◆ Power Front Backrest, Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.2.9 Front Backrest”, page 352](#)

Service Kit, Removing

- Disconnect the connector -6-.
- Remove bolts -2- (quantity: 2)
- Remove cover with upholstery from seat pan. Refer to [⇒ "2.1.1 Seat Pan Cover and Upholstery", page 429](#) .



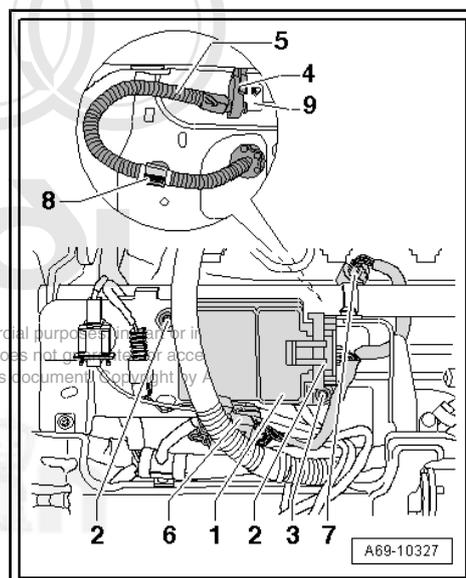
- Open the guide clip -8-.



Caution

Connectors -3- and -7- must not be separated.

- Slide Seat Occupied Recognition Pressure Sensor -G452- -4- sideways from clip -9-.



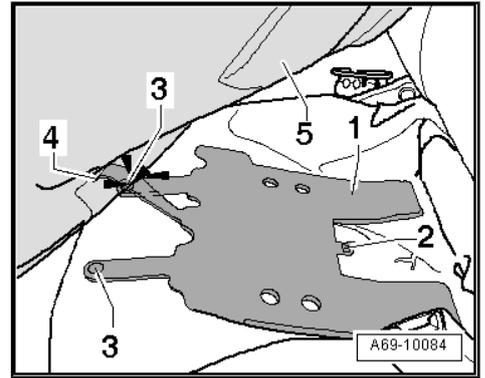
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes without permission is prohibited. Audi AG does not grant any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG.

- Fold the cushion -5- upward.

 **Note**

- ◆ *The cushion is included as part of the service kit.*
- ◆ *Clip -4- must not be separated.*
- ◆ *The hard foam insert in the crease is not included in the service kit.*

- Remove clips -2- and -3- (quantity: 2).
- Carefully pull seat occupied recognition mat -1- with upholstery -5- upward while guiding Seat Occupied Recognition Pressure Sensor -G452- and Seat Occupied Recognition Control Module -J706- through seat pan without disconnecting connectors



 **WARNING**

The pressure hose and the Seat Occupied Recognition Mat -1- must not be kinked under any circumstances during repairs.

- Remove the complete service kit.

Installation

 **WARNING**

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures"](#), page 38.*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*

Service kit, installing

Note

*The hard foam insert in the cover is not part of the service kit.
Reuse the insert that is already in the seat cover.*

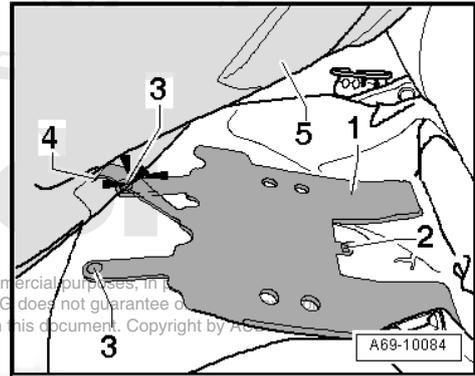
- Guide Seat Occupied Recognition Pressure Sensor -G452- and Seat Occupied Recognition Control Module -J706- from above through seat pan without disconnecting connectors.



WARNING

The pressure hose and the Seat Occupied Recognition Mat -1- must not be kinked under any circumstances during repairs.

- Pull the cover between the seat pan and passenger occupant detection system mat -1- so that it is smooth and free of creases.
- Secure the Seat Occupied Recognition Mat -1- with the clips -2- and -3- (quantity: 2).



- Secure Seat Occupied Recognition Pressure Sensor -G452-4-.
- Tighten Seat Occupied Recognition Control Module -J706- with bolts -2- (quantity: 2).
- Connect connector -6-.
- Install cover with upholstery on seat pan. Refer to [⇒ "2.1.1 Seat Pan Cover and Upholstery", page 429](#) .

Further installation is performed in the reverse order of removal.

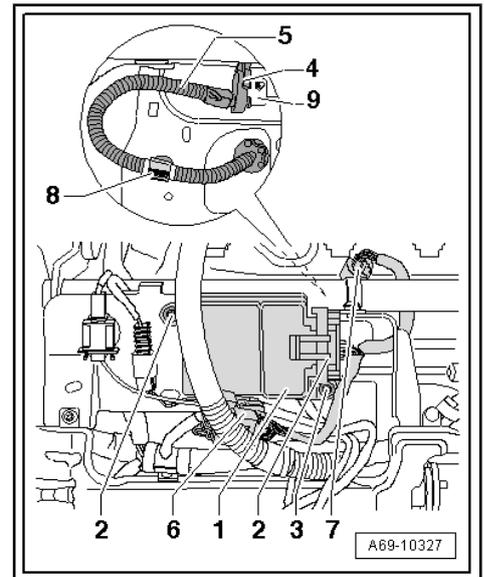
 **Note**

Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.

- Switch on ignition.

 **WARNING**

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.



- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.
- When installing a new service kit, the following program should be run under "Airbag" in guided fault finding after installing the passenger's seat:
- ◆ Seat Occupied Recognition Control Module -J706- basic setting

For the correct tightening specification refer to [⇒ "2.11.1 Front Passenger Airbag Deactivation Passenger Occupant Detection System Assembly Overview", page 75](#)

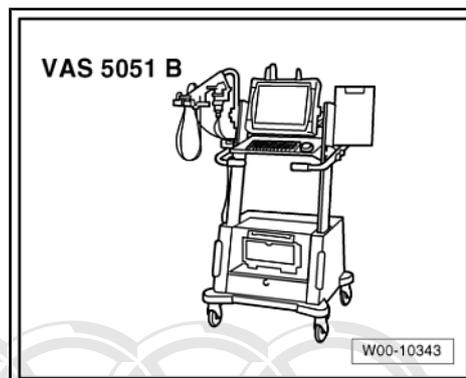
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



4 Special Tools

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Vehicle Diagnosis, Testing and Information System - VAS 5051B-



- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

70 – Interior Trim

1 Description and Operation

⇒ [“1.1 Door Trim”, page 133](#)

⇒ [“1.2 Instrument Panel”, page 135](#)

⇒ [“1.3 Central Tube”, page 139](#)

⇒ [“1.4 Trim, Coupe”, page 143](#)

⇒ [“1.5 Trim, Roadster”, page 158](#)

⇒ [“1.6 Roof Trim, Coupe”, page 182](#)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.1 Door Trim

⇒ [“1.1.1 Door Trim Assembly Overview”, page 133](#)

1.1.1 Door Trim Assembly Overview

1 - Window regulator switch

- Driver side: power window control head in driver door -E512-
- Front passenger side: front passenger door window regulator switch -E107-
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 96 ; Removal and Installation

2 - Switch mount

- For the window regulator switch
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.1.11 Window Regulator Switch Mount”, page 192](#)

3 - Pull handle

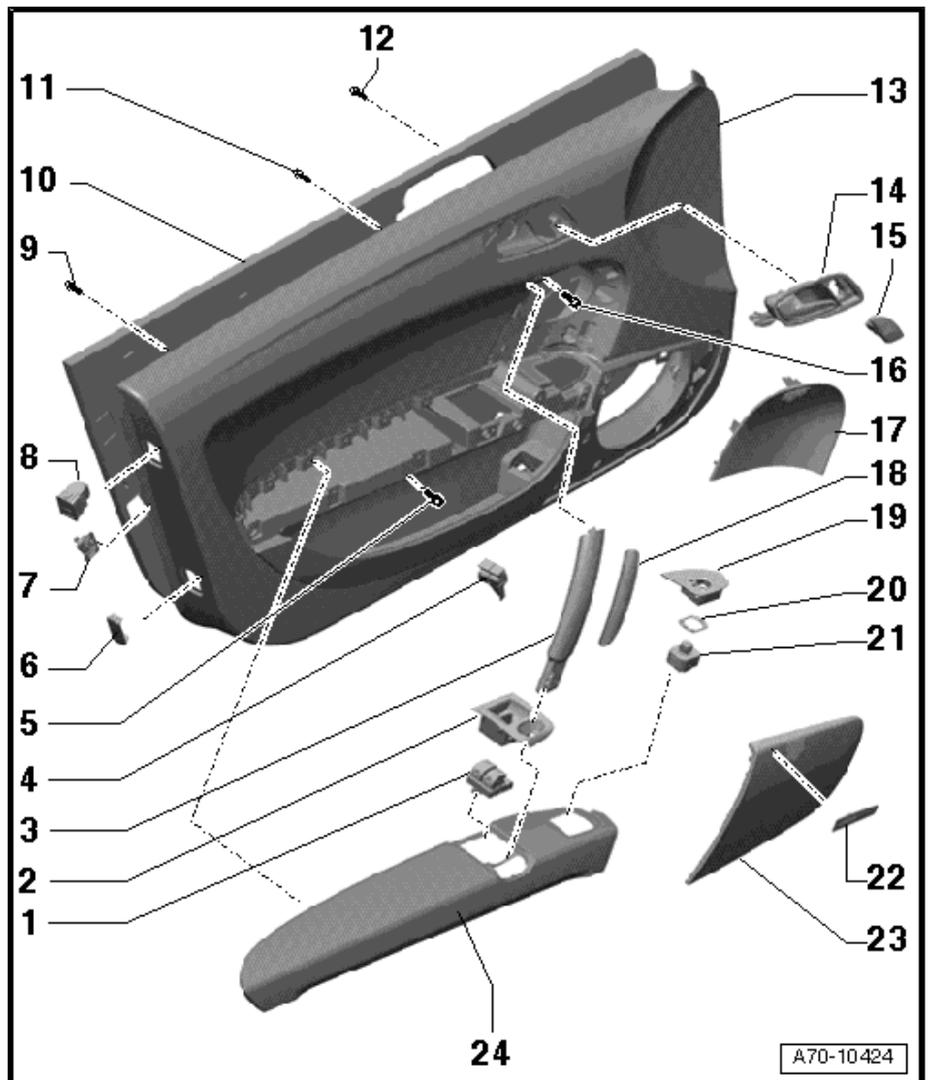
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.1.8 Pull Handle”, page 191](#)

4 - Rear Lid Remote Control Lock Switch -E233- and Fuel Tank Lid Unlock Button -E319-

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 96 ; Removal and Installation

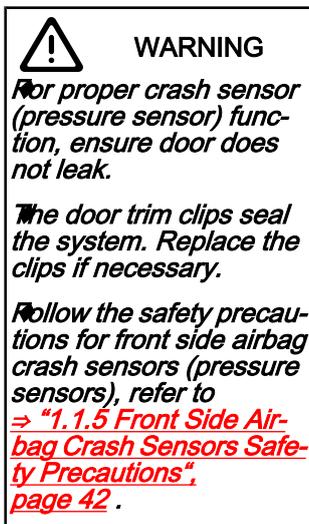
5 - Bolt

- For door trim
- Tightening specification - 2.8 Nm



6 - Passive rear reflector**7 - Clip with seal**

- For door trim

**8 - Passenger Compartment Monitoring Switch -E183- / Alarm System -Off- Switch -E217-**

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 96 ; Removal and Installation

9 - Bolt

- For armrest
- Tightening specification - 1.3 Nm

10 - Insulation**11 - Bolt**

- For pull handle
- Tightening specification - 3.3 Nm

12 - Bolt

- For inside door release mechanism
- Tightening specification - 1.3 Nm

13 - Door Trim

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.1.5 Door Trim", page 187](#)

14 - Interior door mechanism

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.1.7 Inside Door Release Mechanism", page 190](#)

15 - Driver interior locking switch -E150- (central locking button)

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 96 ; Removal and Installation

16 - Bolt

- For door trim
- Tightening specification - 2.8 Nm

17 - Mid-range speaker trim

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.1.1 Mid-Range Speaker Trim", page 185](#)

18 - Pull handle trim

- Depending on version
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.1.4 Pull Handle Trim", page 186](#)

19 - Switch mount

- For the mirror adjustment switch
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.1.10 Mirror Adjustment Switch Mount", page 192](#)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

20 - Symbol trim

21 - Mirror Adjustment Switch -E43-

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 96 ; Removal and Installation

22 - Trim panel

- Only with BOSE sound system
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.1.3 BOSE Sound System Trim”, page 186](#)

23 - Bass speaker trim

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.1.2 Bass Speaker Trim”, page 186](#)

24 - Armrest

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.1.9 Armrest”, page 191](#)

1.2 Instrument Panel

⇒ [“1.2.1 Instrument Panel Overview”, page 135](#)

⇒ [“1.2.2 Instrument Panel Assembly Overview”, page 137](#)

1.2.1 Instrument Panel Overview

1 - Center Console

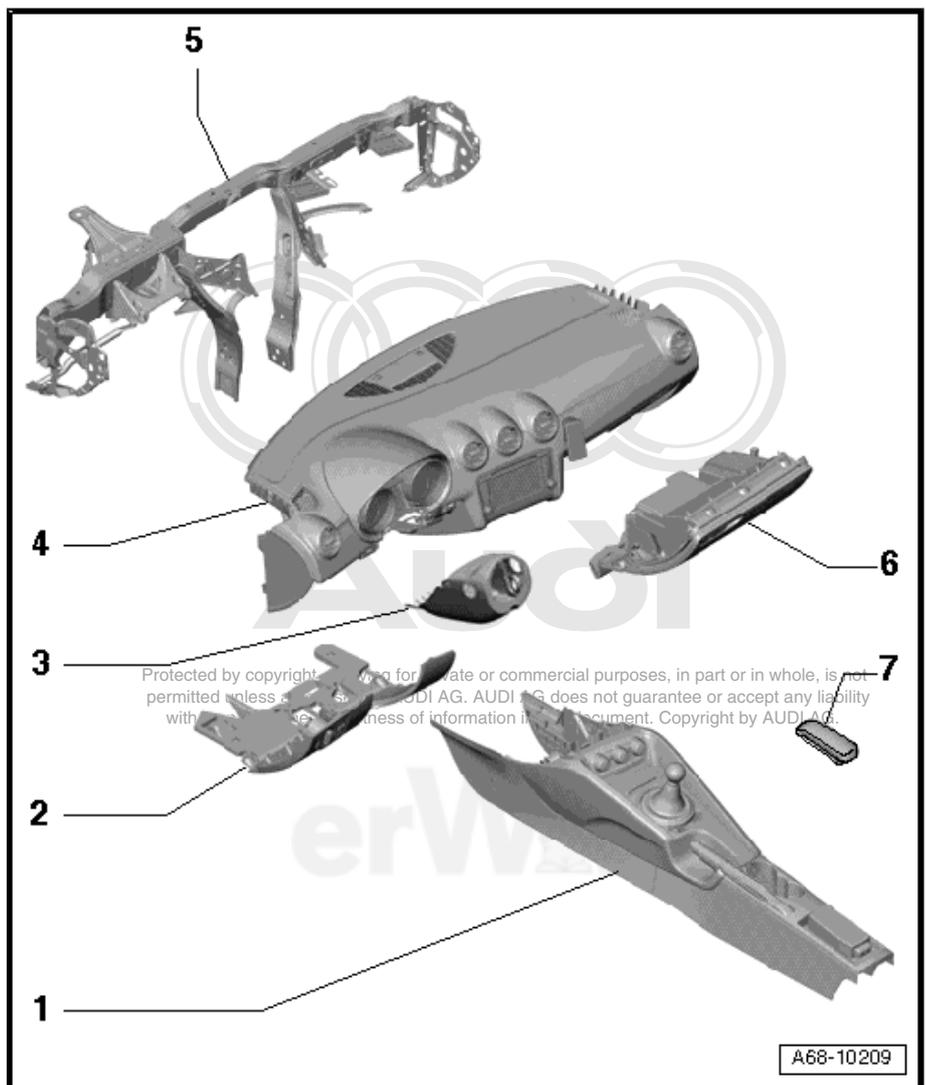
- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ [“1.2.1 Center Console Assembly Overview”, page 8](#)
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.2.13 Front Center Console”, page 31](#)

2 - Driver side instrument panel cover

- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ [“1.1.2 Driver Side Instrument Panel Cover Assembly Overview”, page 5](#)
- Driver side instrument panel cover, removing and installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.1.1 Driver Side Instrument Panel Cover”, page 18](#)

3 - Steering column switch trim

- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ [“1.1.3 Steering Column Switch Trim Assembly Overview”, page 6](#)
- Upper steering column switch trim, removing and installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.1.3 Upper Steering Column Switch Trim”, page 19](#)
- Lower steering column switch trim, removing and installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.1.4 Lower Steering Column Switch Trim”, page 20](#)



4 - Instrument Panel



- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ ["1.2.2 Instrument Panel Assembly Overview"](#), page 137
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.2.8 Instrument Panel"](#), page 196

5 - Central Tube

- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ ["1.3.1 Central Tube Assembly Overview"](#), page 139
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.3.1 Central Tube"](#), page 200

6 - Glove compartment

- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ ["1.1.4 Glove Compartment Assembly Overview"](#), page 7
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.1.8 Glove Compartment"](#), page 23

7 - Center armrest upholstery

- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ ["1.4.1 Center Armrest Assembly Overview"](#), page 12
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.4.1 Center Armrest Upholstery"](#), page 34
- Upholstery bracket, removing and installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.4.2 Upholstery Bracket"](#), page 35

This document is property of Audi AG. It is not permitted to be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system, without the prior written permission of Audi AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG.

1.2.2 Instrument Panel Assembly Overview

1 - Side instrument panel vent

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ [“2.2.2 Instrument Panel Vent”, page 193](#)

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 3.5 Nm

3 - Instrument Panel



WARNING

Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to

⇒ [“1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures”, page 38](#).

Follow the allocation of the airbag unit to the instrument panel. Refer to ⇒ [Electronic parts catalog](#).

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ [“2.2.8 Instrument Panel”, page 196](#)

4 - Instrument cluster cover

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ [“2.2.6 Instrument Cluster Cover”, page 195](#)

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 1 Nm

6 - Center defroster vent

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.2.10 Center Defroster Vent”, page 200](#)

7 - Speaker

8 - Sunlight Photo Sensor -G107- /cover cap

9 - Center speaker trim

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.2.4 Center Speaker Trim”, page 194](#)

10 - Central Locking -SAFE- Indicator Lamp -K133-

11 - Nut

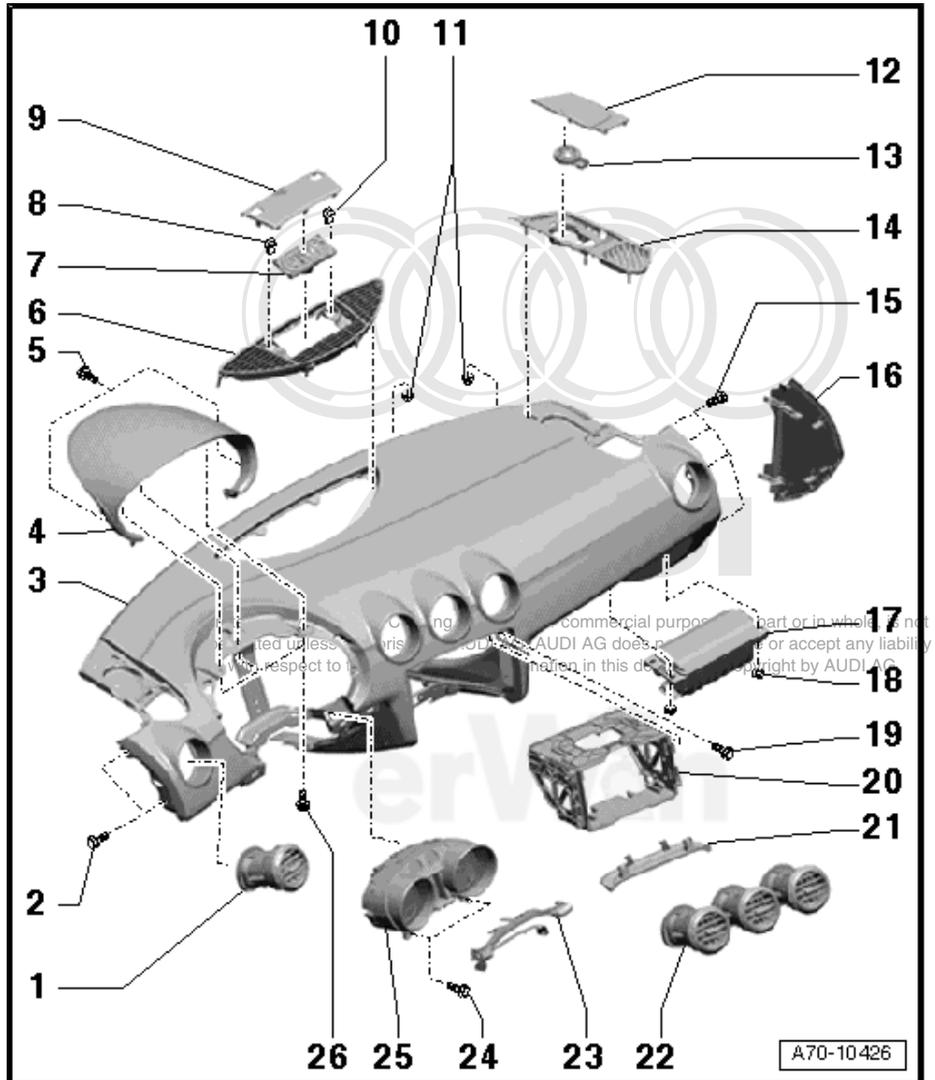
- ❑ 0.5 Nm



Note

12 - Side speaker trim

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.2.3 Side Speaker Trim”, page 194](#)



13 - Speaker**14 - Side defroster vent**

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.2.9 Side Defroster Vents”, page 199](#)

15 - Bolt

- 3.5 Nm

16 - Side instrument panel cover

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.2.1 Instrument Panel Side Cover”, page 193](#)

17 - Front passenger airbag unit

| |
|---|
|  WARNING <i>Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ “1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures”, page 38 .</i> <i>Follow the allocation of the airbag unit to the instrument panel. Refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalog .</i> |
|---|

- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ [“2.6.1 Front Passenger Side Airbag Unit Assembly Overview”, page 68](#)
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“3.6.1 Front Passenger Airbag Unit”, page 102](#)

18 - Nut

- Replacing
- 7 Nm

19 - Bolt

- 2.5 Nm

20 - Installation frame

- for radio or navigation system
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.2.7 Radio and Navigation System Frame”, page 196](#)

21 - Gap cover

- for center console
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.2.5 Center Console Gap Cover”, page 195](#)

22 - Center instrument panel vent

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.2.2 Instrument Panel Vent”, page 193](#)

23 - Gap cover

- for instrument cluster
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.1.2 Instrument Cluster Gap Cover”, page 19](#)

24 - Bolt

- 2.5 Nm

25 - Instrument Cluster**26 - Bolt**

- 2.5 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.3 Central Tube

⇒ ["1.3.1 Central Tube Assembly Overview", page 139](#)

1.3.1 Central Tube Assembly Overview

Part 1 (Driver Side)

1 - Nut

- Quantity: 2
- Replacing
- 20 Nm

2 - Instrument panel bracket

3 - Threaded pin

- 23 Nm

4 - Bolt

- Quantity: 2
- 20 Nm

5 - Bolt

6 - Lower brace

- with balancing element

7 - Bolt

- 20 Nm

8 - Bolt

9 - Upper brace

10 - Bolt

- Quantity: 3
- 20 Nm

11 - Central Tube

- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.3.1 Central Tube", page 200](#)

12 - Bolt

- Quantity: 2
- 9 Nm

13 - Left center section bracket

14 - Left support

15 - Intermediate plate

16 - Bolt

- Quantity: 3
- 9 Nm

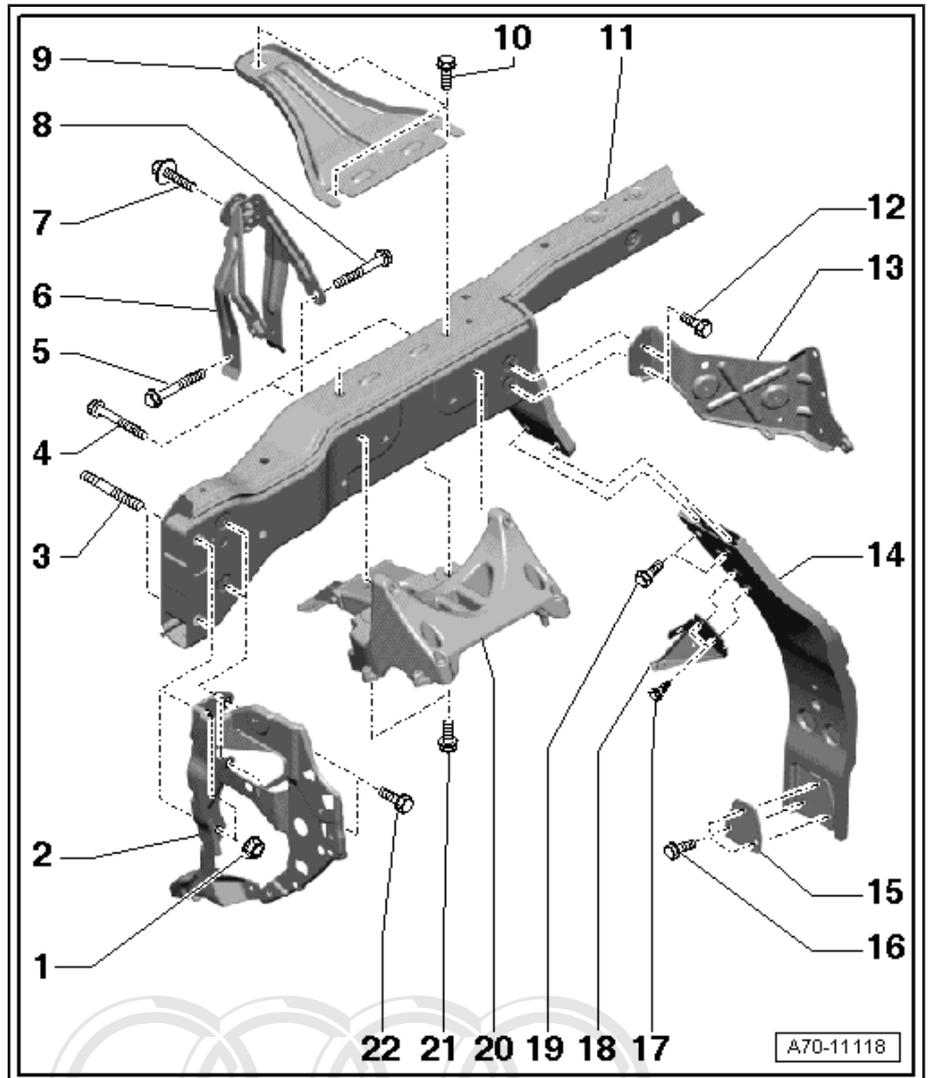
17 - Bolt

- Quantity: 2
- 3.5 Nm

18 - Driver side instrument panel cover mounting bracket

19 - Bolt

- Quantity: 2



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- 9 Nm

20 - Steering column mounting bracket

21 - Bolt

- Quantity: 2
- 20 Nm

22 - Bolt

- Quantity: 2
- 9 Nm

Part 2 (Passenger Side)

1 - Right support

2 - Bolt

- Quantity: 2
- 9 Nm

3 - Centering bracket

- with plastic bearing

4 - Bolt

- 9 Nm

5 - Central Tube

- Removing and Installing, refer to

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

[2.3.1. Central Tube](#), [page 200](#)

6 - Threaded pin

- 23 Nm

7 - Nut

- Replacing
- 20 Nm

8 - Instrument panel bracket

9 - Bolt

- 9 Nm

10 - Bolt

- 9 Nm

11 - Bolt

- Quantity: 2
- 9 Nm

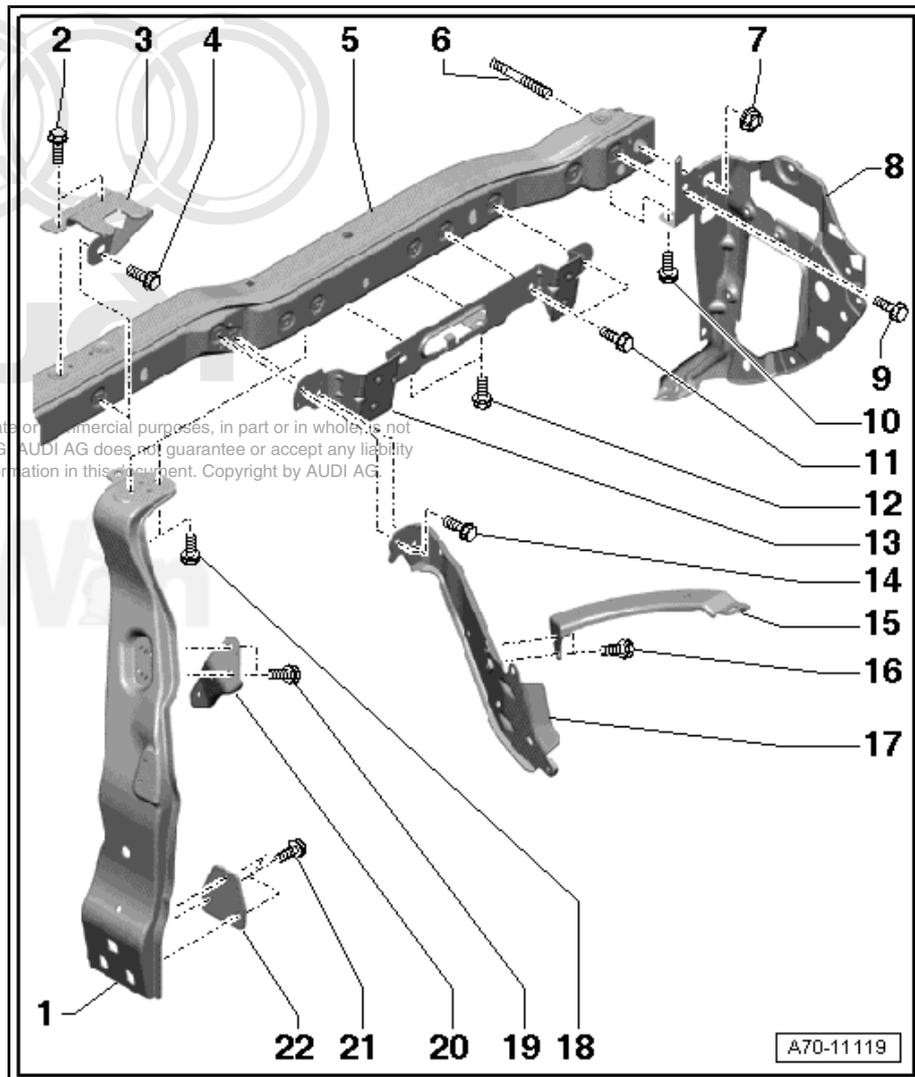
12 - Bolt

- Quantity: 2
- 9 Nm

13 - Support for the front passenger airbag unit

14 - Bolt

- Quantity: 2
- 9 Nm



15 - Instrument panel support

16 - Bolt

- Quantity: 2
- 3.5 Nm

17 - Right center section bracket

18 - Bolt

- Quantity: 2
- 9 Nm

19 - Bolt

- Quantity: 2
- 3.5 Nm

20 - Glove compartment bracket

21 - Bolt

- Quantity: 3
- 9 Nm

22 - Intermediate plate

Cable guide to central tube

-1- 4.5 Nm

Left Relay and Fuse Carrier Mounting Frame to Central Tube

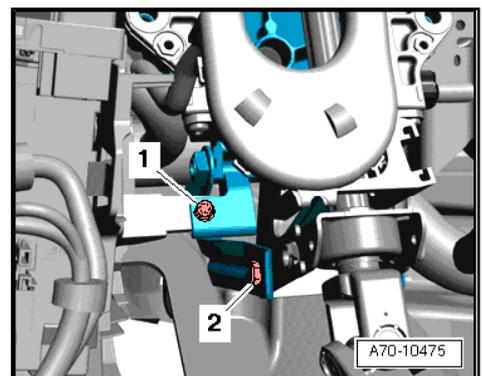
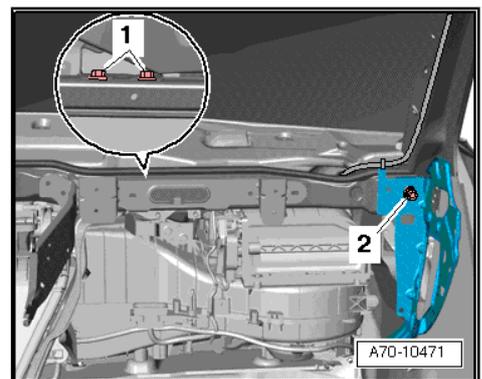
-1- 4.5 Nm



Audi

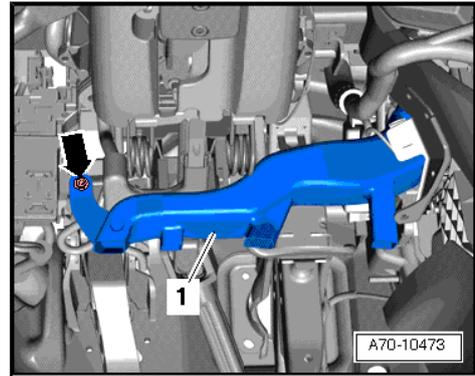
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin



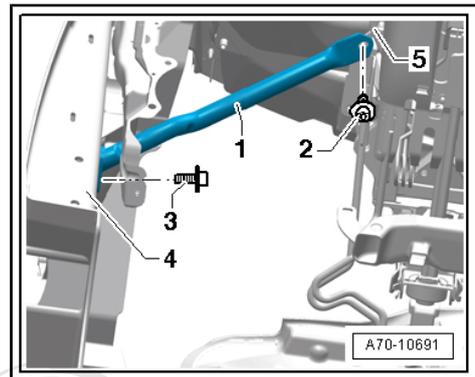
Air Duct to Central Tube

For the correct tightening specifications, refer to => Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning; Rep. Gr. 87 ; Removal and Installation



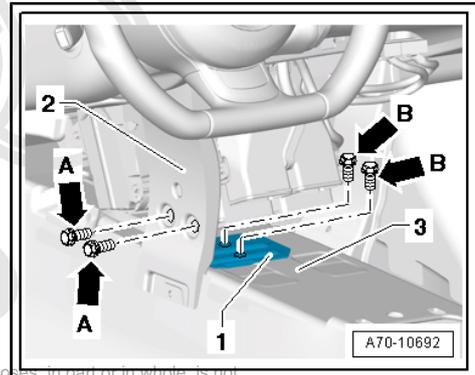
Brace between A-Pillar and Mounting Bracket/Steering Column, Roadster

- 1 - Brace
- 2 - Bolt - 9 Nm
- 3 - Bolt - 9 Nm
- 4 - A-pillar
- 5 - Steering column mounting bracket



Reinforcement, Tunnel Support, Roadster

- 1 - Tunnel support reinforcement
- 2 - Left support
- 3 - Front tunnel
- Arrow A- bolts (M6, 20 mm long) - 9 Nm
- Arrow B- bolts (M6, 12 mm long) - 9 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1.4 Trim, Coupe

⇒ [“1.4.1 Trim Overview”, page 143](#)

⇒ [“1.4.2 Upper A-Pillar Trim Assembly Overview”, page 145](#)

⇒ [“1.4.3 Lower A-Pillar Trim Assembly Overview”, page 146](#)

⇒ [“1.4.4 Footrest Cover and Bracket Assembly Overview”, page 147](#)

⇒ [“1.4.5 Sill Panel Assembly Overview”, page 148](#)

⇒ [“1.4.6 C-Pillar Trim Assembly Overview”, page 149](#)

⇒ [“1.4.7 Rear Side Trim Assembly Overview”, page 150](#)

⇒ [“1.4.8 Rear Roof Panel Trim Assembly Overview”, page 151](#)

⇒ [“1.4.9 Floor Covering Assembly Overview”, page 152](#)

⇒ [“1.4.10 Rear Lid Trim Assembly Overview”, page 153](#)

⇒ [“1.4.11 Rear Shelf Assembly Overview”, page 154](#)

⇒ [“1.4.11 Rear Shelf Assembly Overview”, page 154](#)

⇒ [“1.4.13 Luggage Compartment Side Trim Assembly Overview”, page 156](#)

⇒ [“1.4.14 Luggage Compartment Floor Mat Assembly Overview”, page 157](#)

1.4.1 Trim Overview

1 - Roof panel trim

- Assembly Overview, refer to
 ⇒ [“1.4.8 Rear Roof Panel Trim Assembly Overview”, page 151](#)

2 - Rear side trim

- Assembly Overview, refer to
 ⇒ [“1.4.7 Rear Side Trim Assembly Overview”, page 150](#)

3 - Upper A-pillar trim

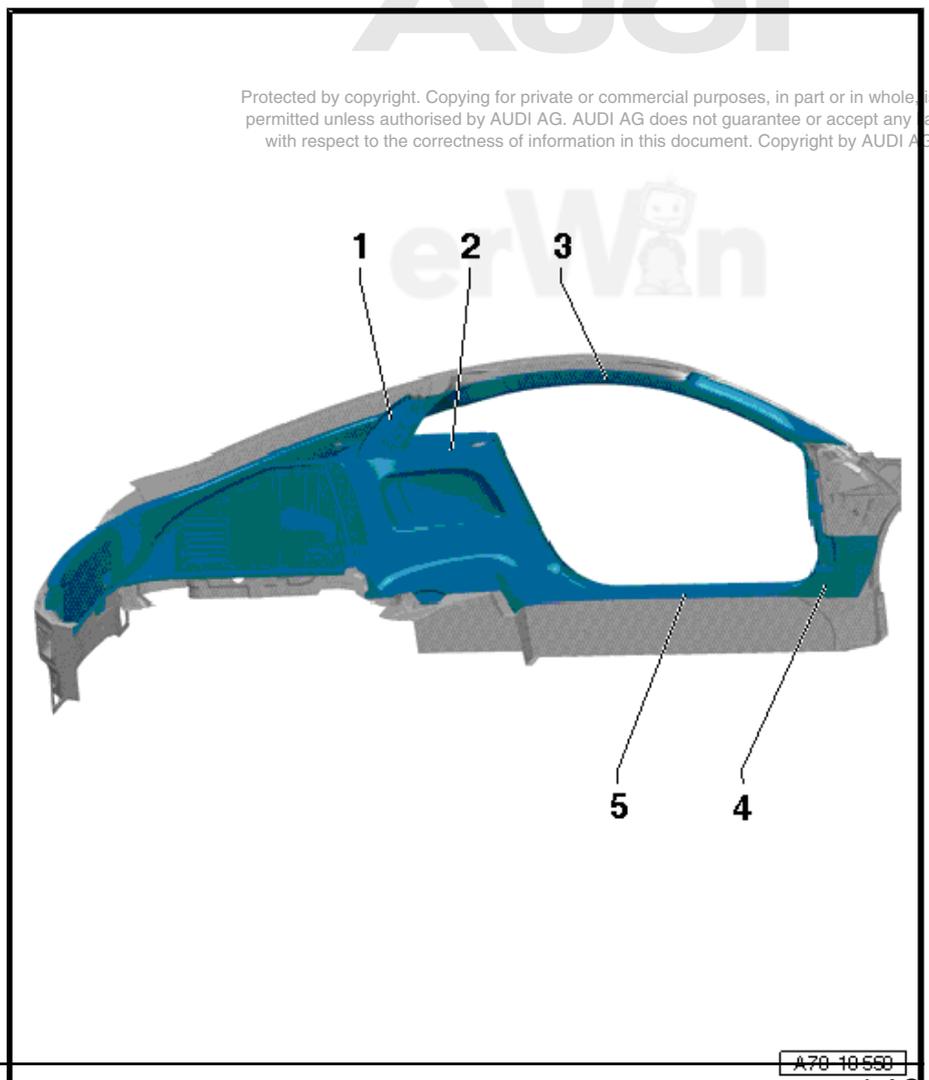
- Assembly Overview, refer to
 ⇒ [“1.4.2 Upper A-Pillar Trim Assembly Overview”, page 145](#)

4 - A-pillar lower trim

- Assembly Overview, refer to
 ⇒ [“1.4.3 Lower A-Pillar Trim Assembly Overview”, page 146](#)

5 - Sill panel strip

- Assembly Overview, refer to
 ⇒ [“1.4.5 Sill Panel Assembly Overview”, page 148](#)



Luggage Compartment Trim Panel Assembly Overview

1 - Rear cross panel trim

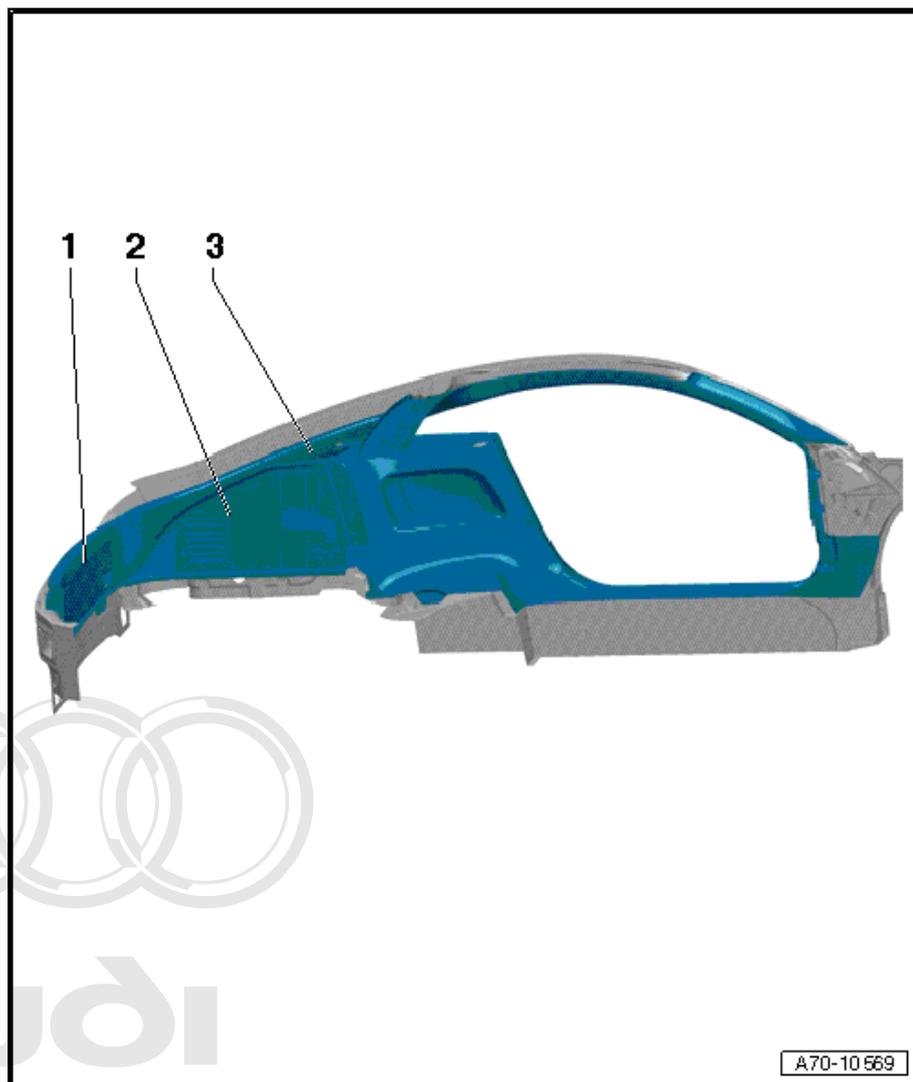
- Assembly Overview, refer to
⇒ ["1.4.12 Rear Lid End Panel Trim Assembly Overview", page 155](#)

2 - Luggage compartment side trim

- Assembly Overview, refer to
⇒ ["1.4.13 Luggage Compartment Side Trim Assembly Overview", page 156](#)

3 - C-pillar trim

- Assembly Overview, refer to
⇒ ["1.4.6 C-Pillar Trim Assembly Overview", page 149](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin

1.4.2 Upper A-Pillar Trim Assembly Overview

1 - Upper A-pillar trim

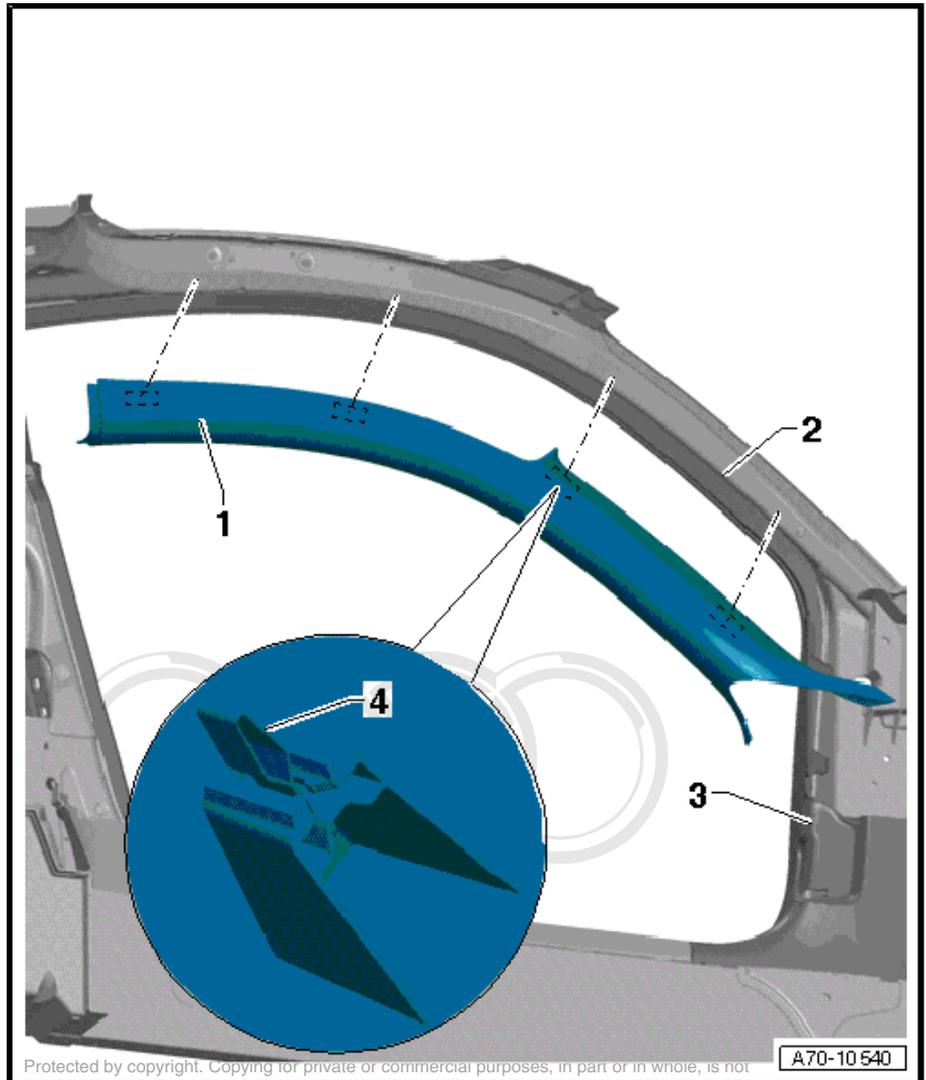
- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.4.1 A-Pillar Upper Trim", page 206](#)

2 - Door seal

3 - A-pillar lower trim

4 - Clips

- ❑ Quantity: 4
- ❑ Replace if damaged or deformed



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

A70-10540

erWin

1.4.3 Lower A-Pillar Trim Assembly Overview

1 - A-pillar lower trim

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.4.2 Lower A-Pillar Trim", page 207](#)

2 - Hood release lever

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.4.2 Lower A-Pillar Trim", page 207](#)

3 - Clips

- ❑ Quantity: 3
- ❑ Replace if damaged or deformed

4 - Bolt

- ❑ Quantity: 2
- ❑ 12 Nm

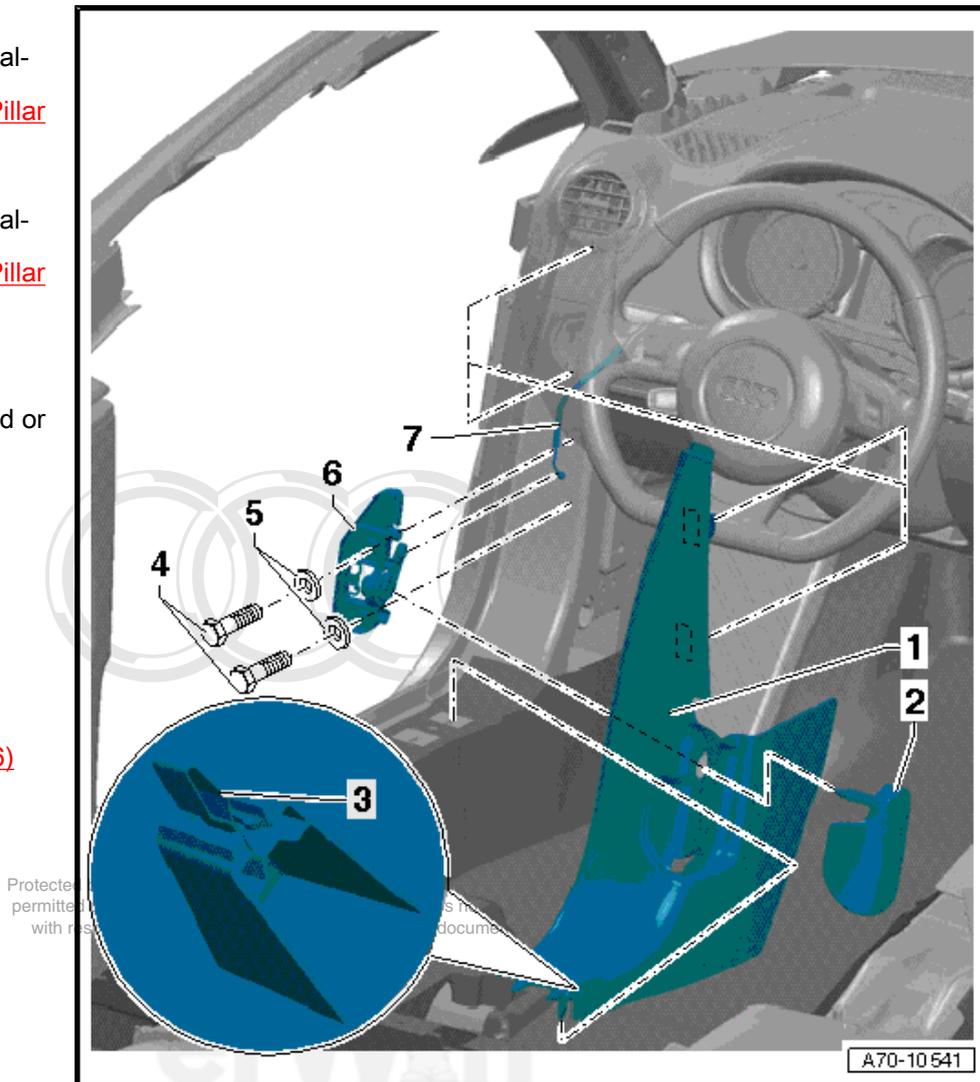
5 - Washer

- ❑ Quantity: 2

6 - Mount

- ❑ for operating lever
⇒ [Item 2 \(page 146\)](#)

7 - Lid lock cable



1.4.4 Footrest Cover and Bracket Assembly Overview

1 - Footrest cover

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.4.3 Foot Rest Cover"](#), page 209

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm

3 - Threaded clip

- ❑ Insert it in the footrest

4 - Footrest bracket

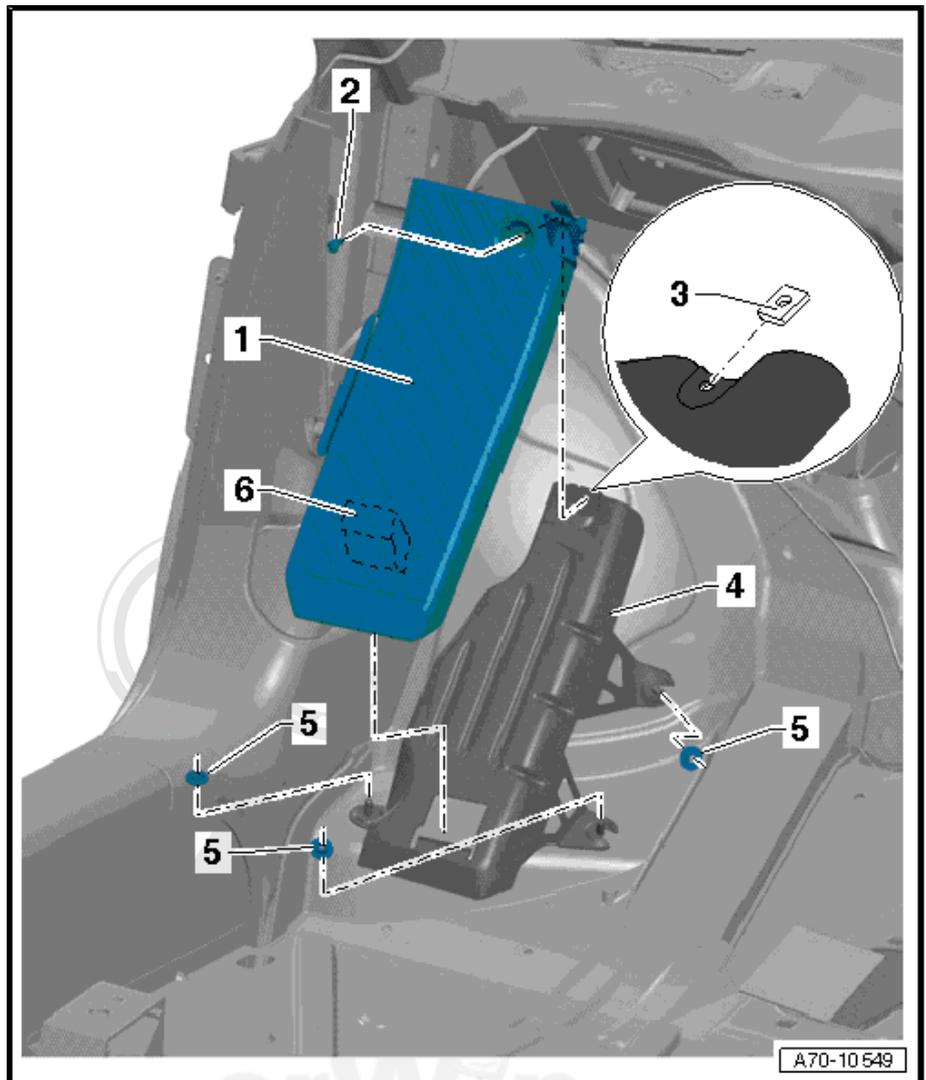
- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.4.3 Foot Rest Cover"](#), page 209

5 - Nut

- ❑ Quantity: 3
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

6 - Tab

- ❑ Is joined firmly with the footrest cover



1.4.5 Sill Panel Assembly Overview

1 - Sill panel strip

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to ["2.4.5 Sill Panel Trim"](#), page 210

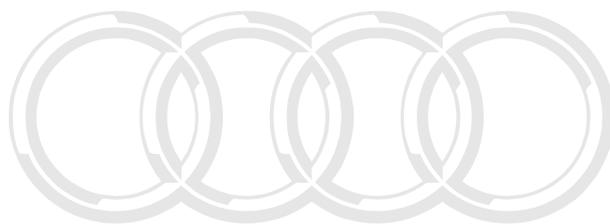
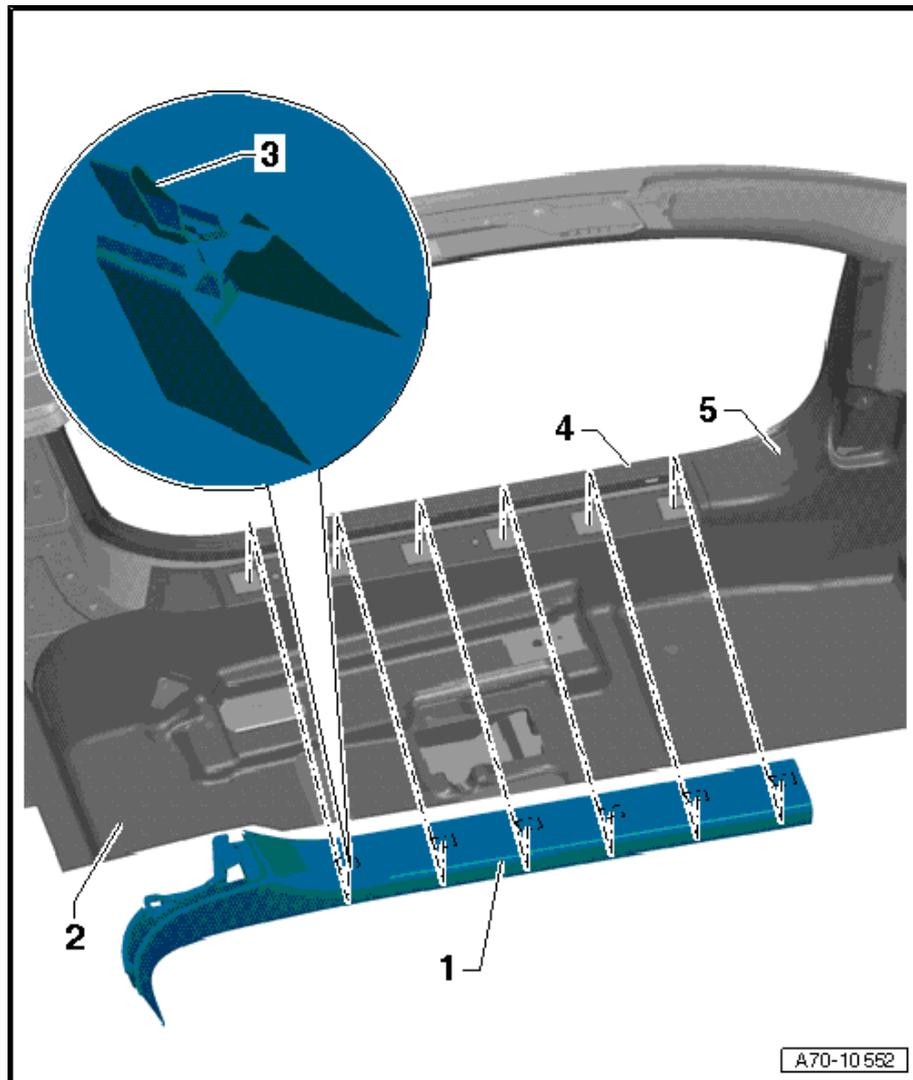
2 - Carpet

3 - Clips

- ❑ Quantity: 6
- ❑ Replace if damaged or deformed

4 - Door seal

5 - A-pillar lower trim



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1.4.6 C-Pillar Trim Assembly Overview

1 - C-pillar trim

- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.4.6 C-Pillar Trim"](#),
 page 211

2 - Expanding clip

3 - Spring clamp

- Quantity: 3
- Replace if damaged or deformed

4 - Spring clamp

- with hooks
- replace on vehicles without a keyhole
- replace if damaged or deformed on vehicles with a keyhole

5 - Upper A-pillar trim

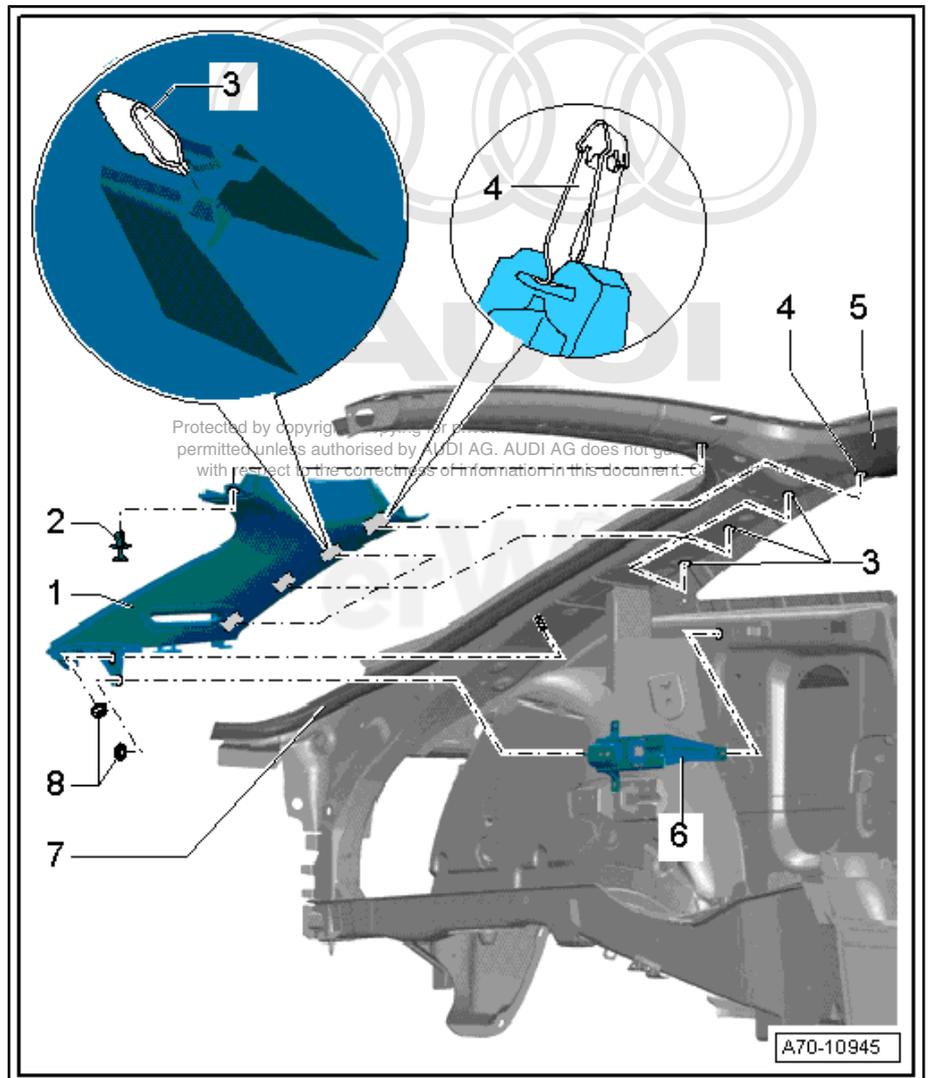
6 - Bracket

- For the C-pillar trim, the rear side trim panel and the luggage compartment side trim panel
- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.4.9 C-Pillar, Rear Side Trim Panel and Luggage Compartment Side Trim Panel Brackets"](#), page 216
- Bracket bolts tightening specification
 ⇒ ["1.4.7 Rear Side Trim Assembly Overview"](#), page 150

7 - Rear lid seal

8 - Nut

- Quantity: 2
- 3.5 Nm



1.4.7 Rear Side Trim Assembly Overview

1 - Rear side trim

- Country-specific after July 2011: with trim, refer to [⇒ page 151](#)
- Rear side trim, removing and installing, refer to [⇒ "2.4.7 Rear Side Trim", page 213](#)
- Country-specific after July 2011: Install rear side trim, refer to [⇒ "2.4.8 Rear Side Trim Panel, after July 2011, Installing", page 215](#)

2 - Clip mounts

- Quantity: 3
- Replace if damaged

3 - Retaining clip

- Quantity: 3
- Inserted in body Protected by copyright. Reproduction is permitted unless otherwise stated with respect to the content.
- Replace if damaged

4 - Luggage compartment side trim

5 - Lower bracket

- Riveted to the body

6 - Bolt

- Quantity: 3
- 8 Nm

7 - Upper bracket

- For the C-pillar trim, the rear side trim panel and the luggage compartment trim panel
- Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.4.9 C-Pillar, Rear Side Trim Panel and Luggage Compartment Side Trim Panel Brackets", page 216](#)

8 - Door seal

9 - C-pillar trim

10 - Bolt

- 1 Nm

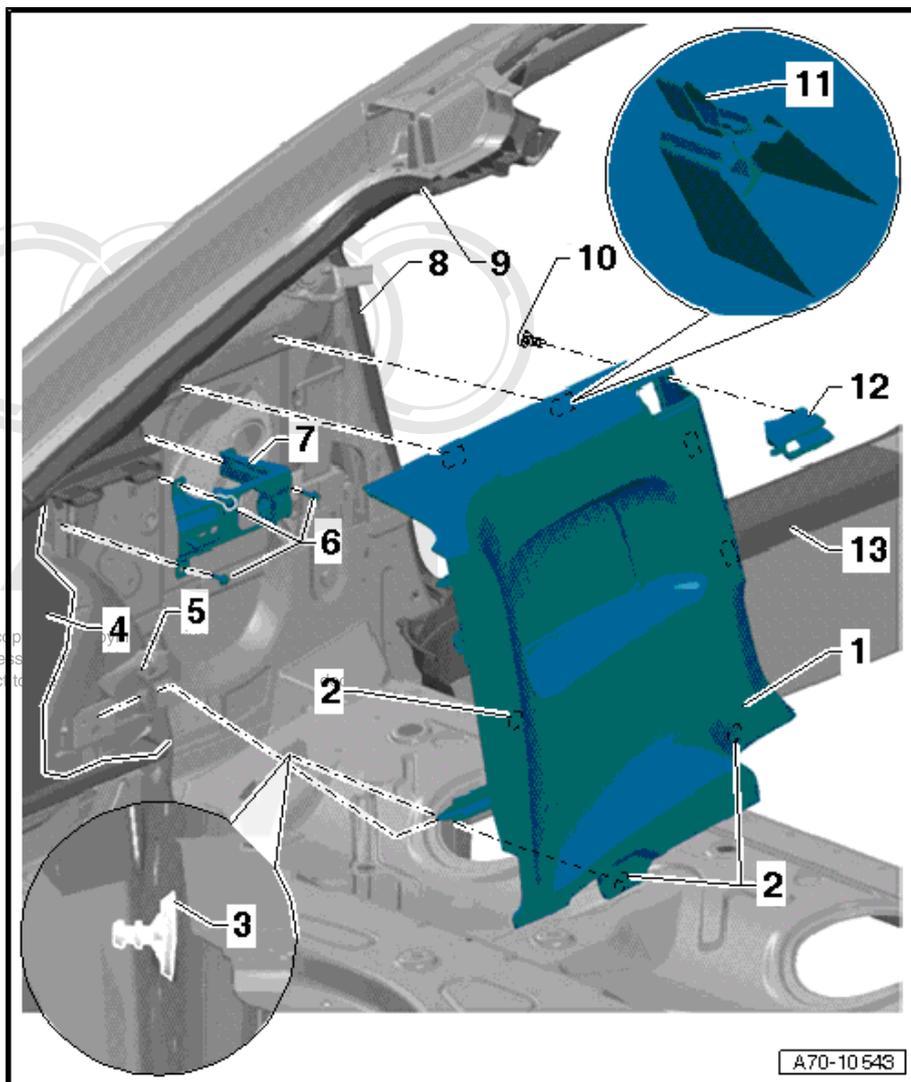
11 - Clips

- Quantity: 4
- Replace if damaged or deformed

12 - Belt extraction panel

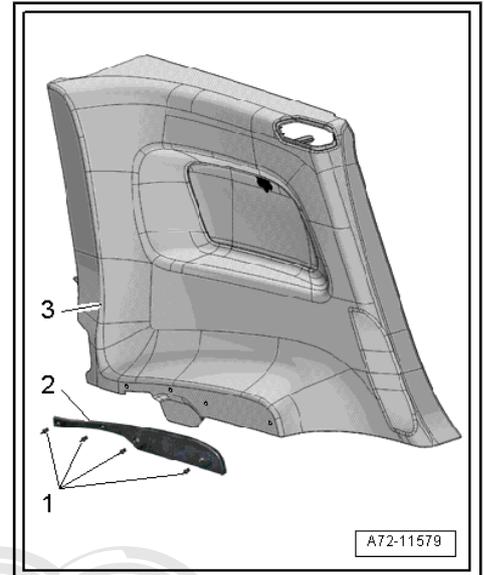
- Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.4.10 Belt Extraction Panel", page 217](#)

13 - Sill panel strip



Country-Specific after July 2011: Rear Side Trim Panel with Trim

- 1 - Expanding clip
- 2 - Trim
- 3 - Rear side trim



1.4.8 Rear Roof Panel Trim Assembly Overview

1 - Roof panel trim

- Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.4.11 Roof Panel Trim", page 217](#)

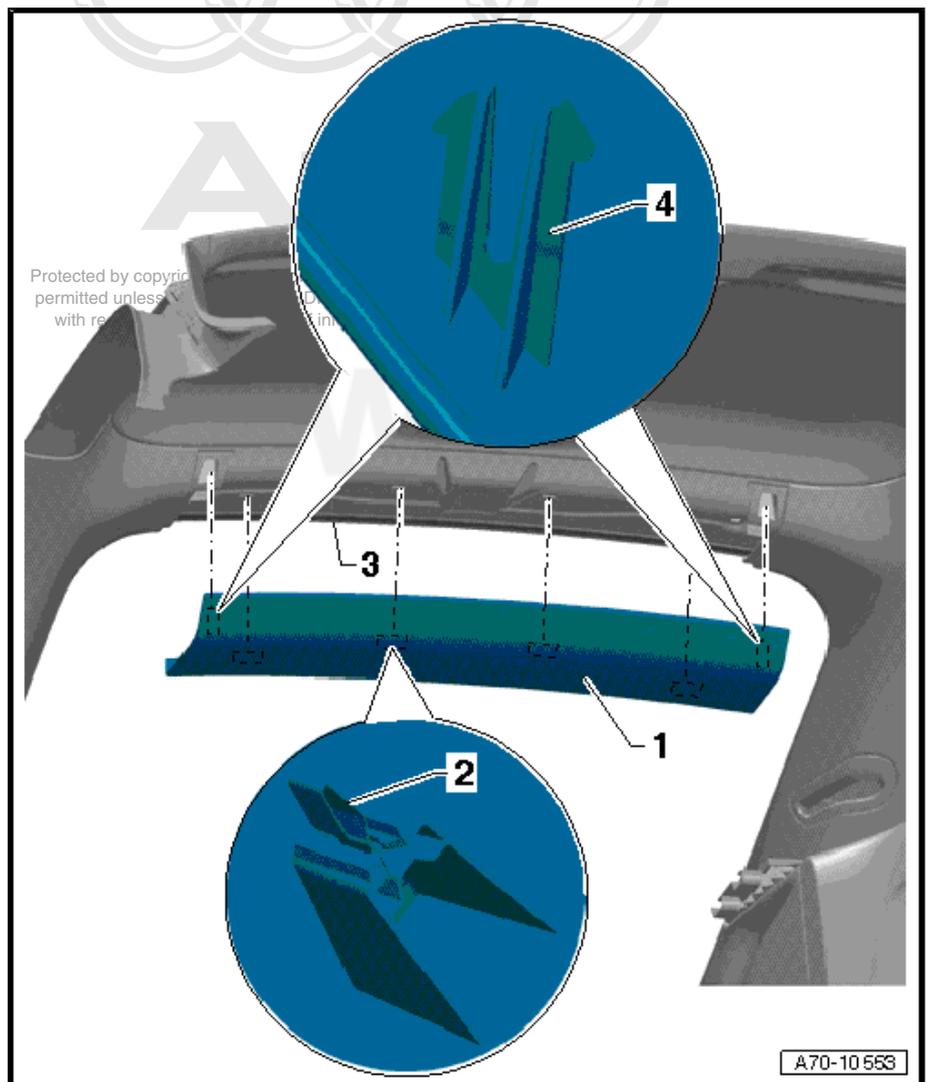
2 - Clips

- Quantity: 2
- Replace if damaged or deformed

3 - Rear lid seal

4 - Locking lugs

- Quantity: 2



1.4.9 Floor Covering Assembly Overview

1 - Carpet

- One piece
- Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.4.12 Floor Covering", page 218](#)

2 - Expanding clip

- Quantity: 8

3 - Omega clips

- Quantity: 2
- Welded to body
- Cannot be replaced
- For securing the bench seat and the carpet

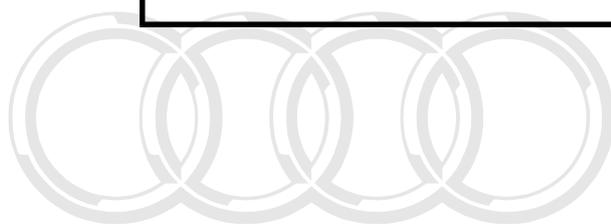
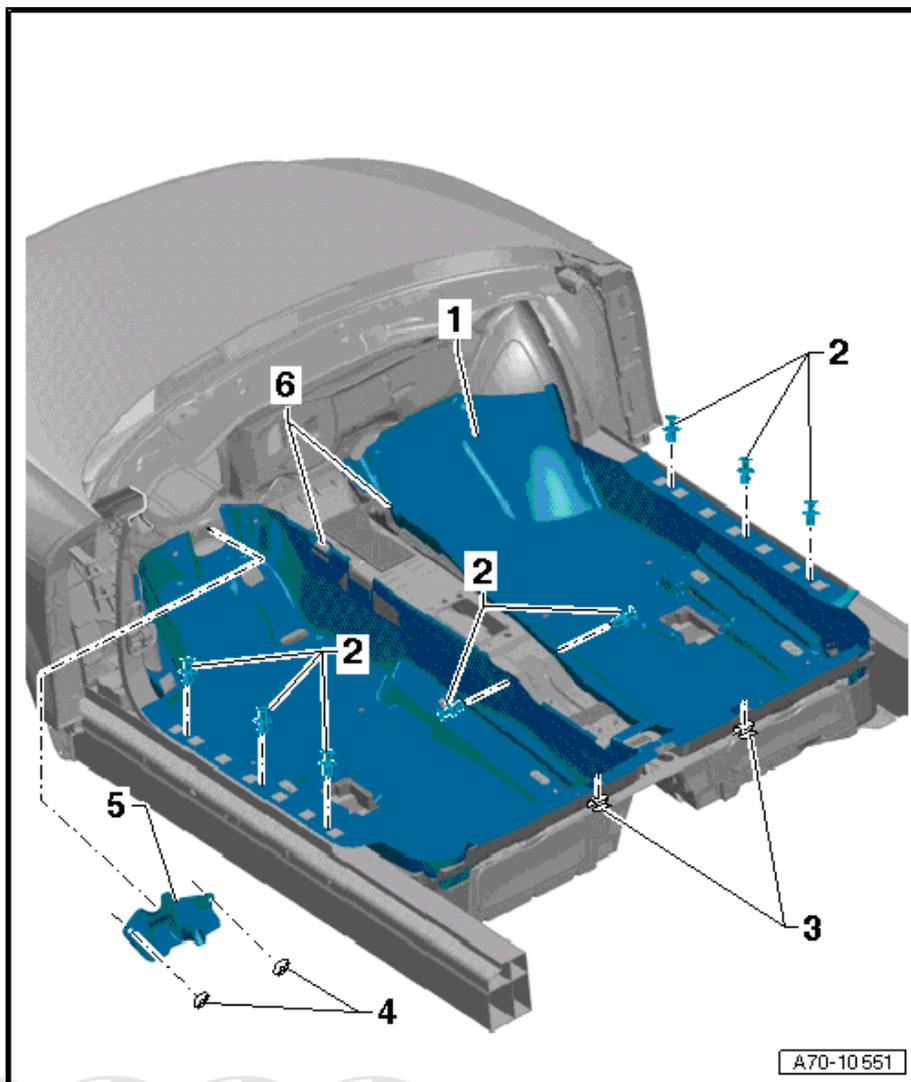
4 - Push button

- Quantity: 2

5 - Cover for the steering column universal joint

6 - Bracket

- For securing the carpet



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1.4.10 Rear Lid Trim Assembly Overview

1 - Lower rear lid trim

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.4.14 Lower Rear Lid Trim", page 220](#)

2 - Cover

- ❑ For rear lid emergency release

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.8 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2

4 - Clips

- ❑ Quantity: 4 for lower rear lid trim
- ❑ Quantity: 10 for upper rear lid trim
- ❑ Replace if damaged or deformed

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.8 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2

6 - Ball head pin

- ❑ Is delivered as a replacement part with upper rear lid trim

7 - Upper rear lid trim

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.4.13 Upper Rear Lid Trim", page 219](#)

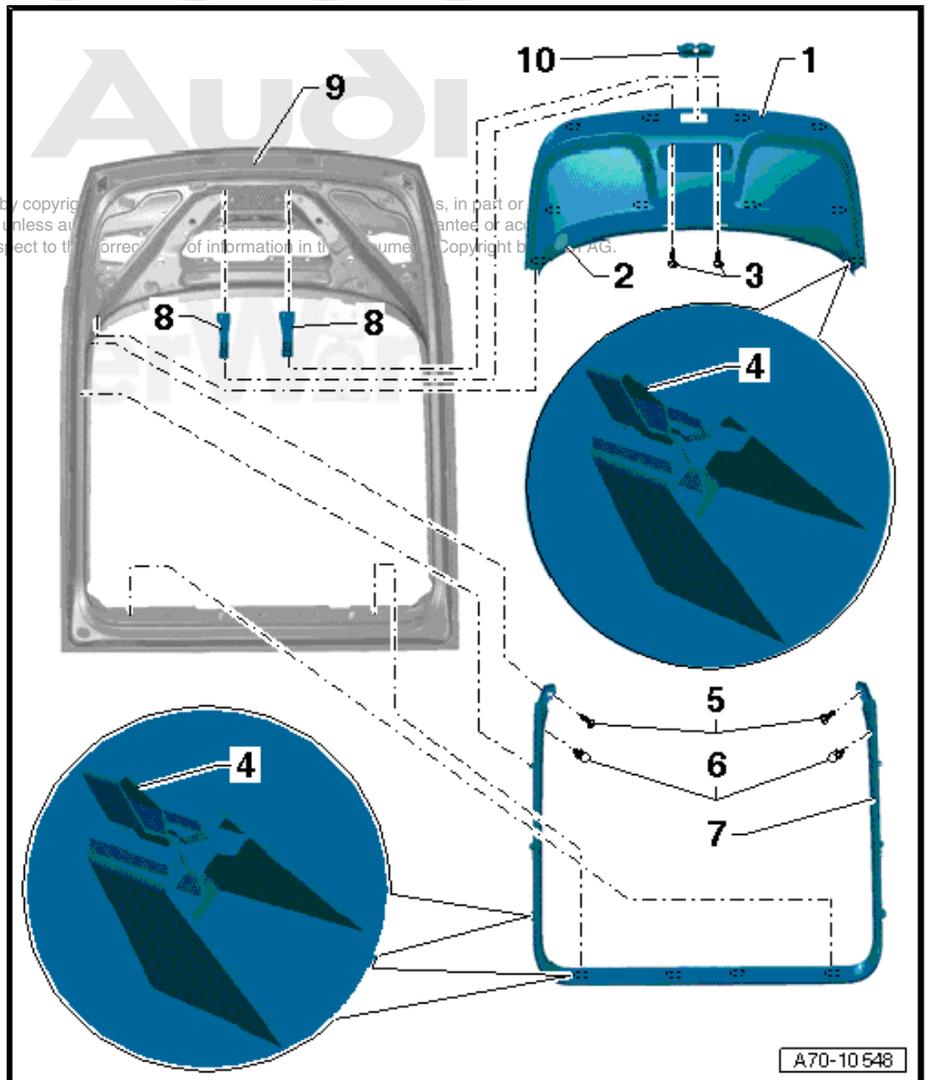
8 - Support

- ❑ Is engaged in the rear lid and bolted to lower rear lid trim

9 - Rear lid

10 - Rear lid lock trim

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.4.15 Rear Lid Lock Trim", page 221](#)



1.4.11 Rear Shelf Assembly Overview

1 - Front of the rear shelf

- ❑ Attached into the C-pillar trim
- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.4.16 Front Rear Shelf", page 221](#)

2 - C-pillar trim

3 - Rear shelf rear section

- ❑ Engage in lower rear lid trim
- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.4.17 Rear Shelf Rear Section", page 221](#)

4 - Lower rear lid trim

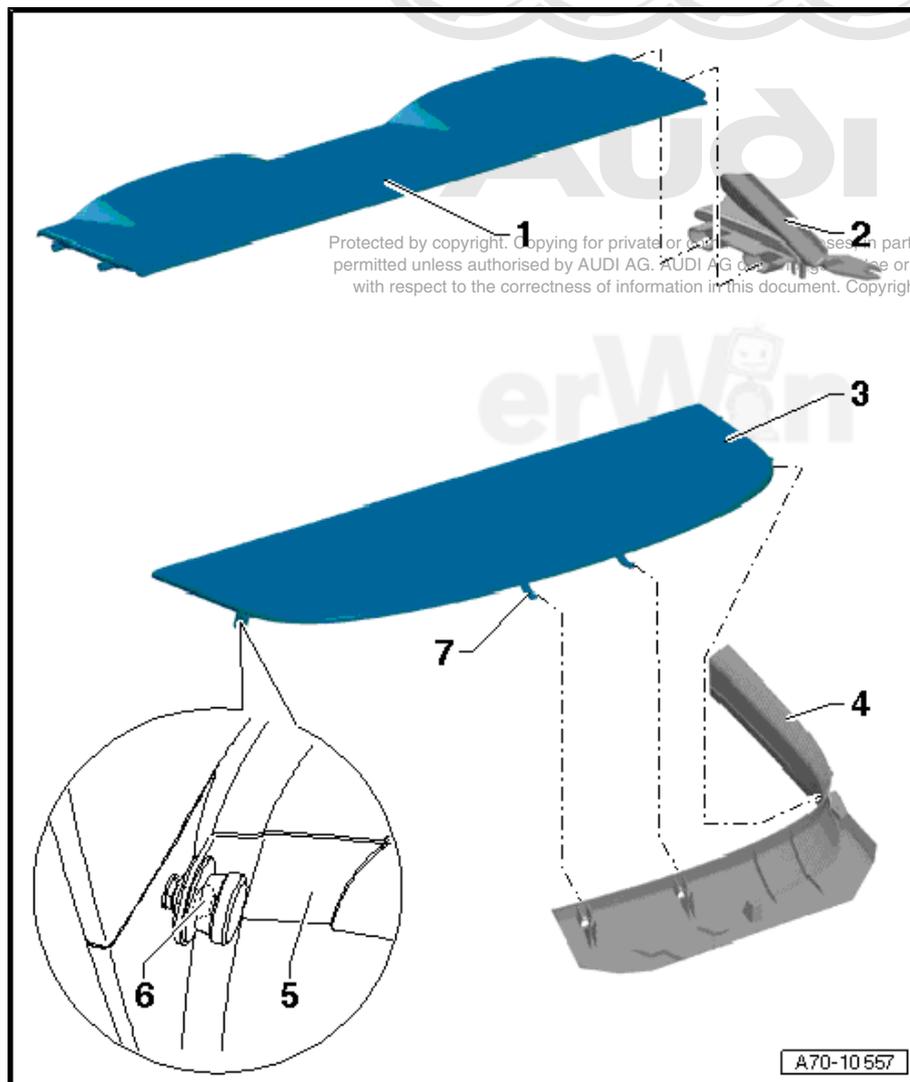
5 - Bracket

6 - Retaining clip

- ❑ Bolted into upper rear lid trim

7 - Bracket

- ❑ Engage in lower rear lid trim



1.4.12 Rear Lid End Panel Trim Assembly Overview

1 - Rear cross panel trim

- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.4.18 Rear Cross Panel Trim", page 222](#)

2 - Rear lid seal

3 - Pin

- Quantity: 2
- secured to body

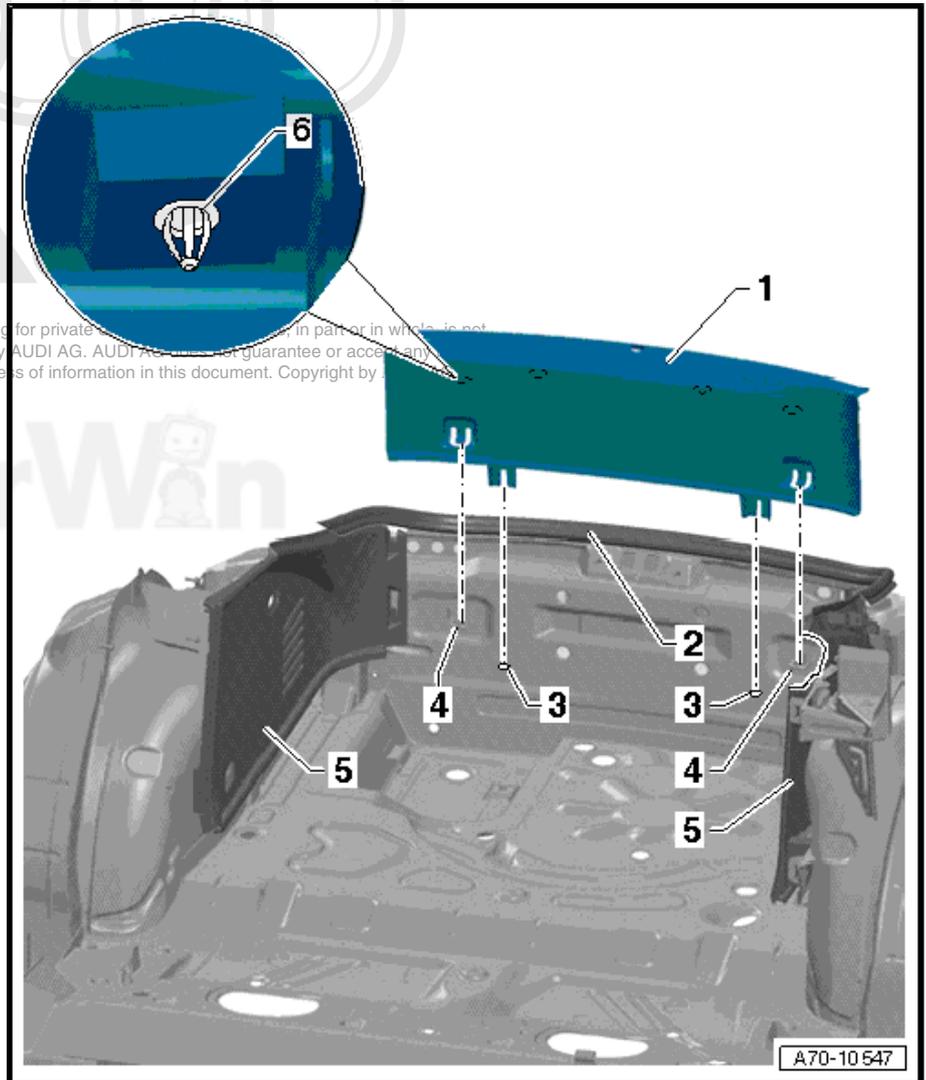
4 - Eye

- Quantity: 2
- Secured to body

5 - Luggage compartment side trim

6 - Clip

- Quantity: 4
- Replace if damaged or deformed



1.4.13 Luggage Compartment Side Trim Assembly Overview

1 - Luggage compartment side trim

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.4.19 Luggage Compartment Side Trim", page 222](#)

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 4 Nm

3 - Tie-down eye

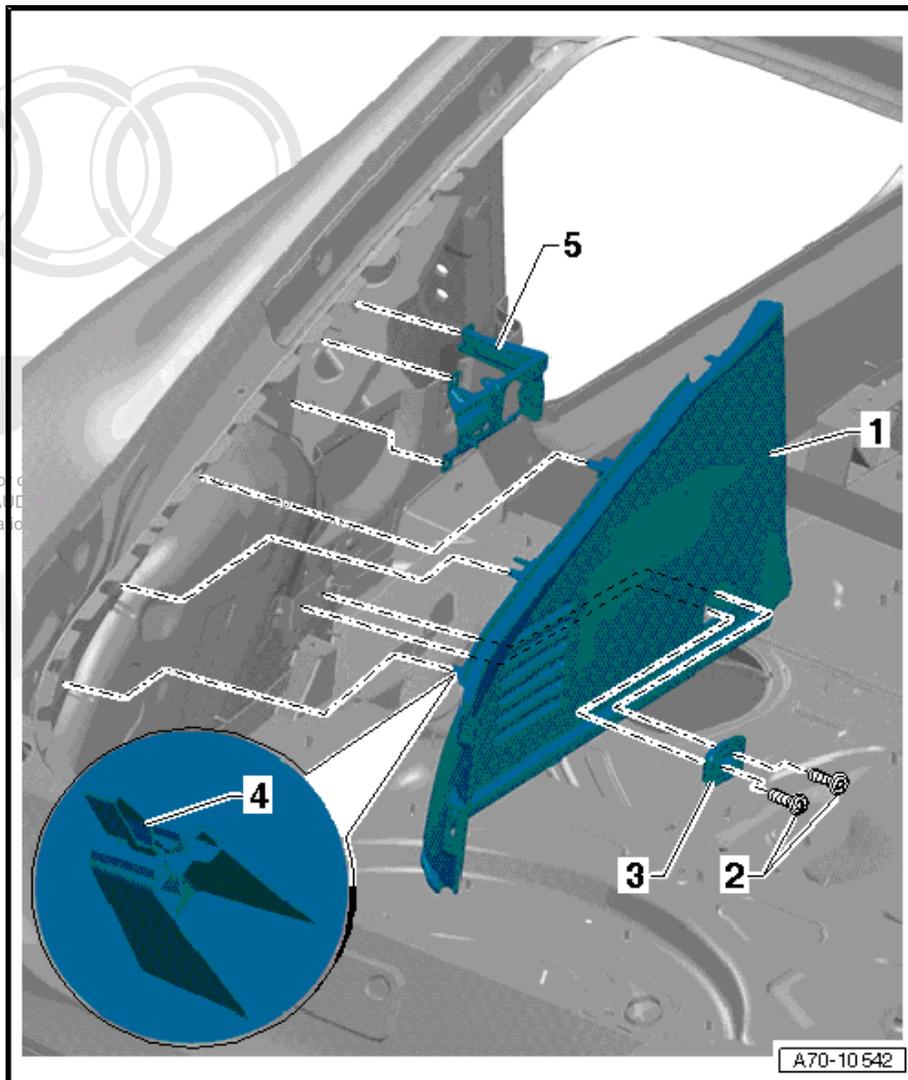
- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.4.20 Tie-Downs", page 223](#)

4 - Clips

- ❑ Quantity: 4
- ❑ Replace if damaged or deformed

5 - Bracket

- ❑ For the C-pillar trim, the rear side trim panel and the luggage compartment trim panel
- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.4.9 C-Pillar, Rear Side Trim Panel and Luggage Compartment Side Trim Panel Brackets", page 216](#)
- ❑ Bracket bolts tightening specification
⇒ ["1.4.7 Rear Side Trim Assembly Overview", page 150](#)



1.4.14 Luggage Compartment Floor Mat Assembly Overview

1 - Rear cross panel trim

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.4.21 Luggage Compartment Liner", page 223](#)

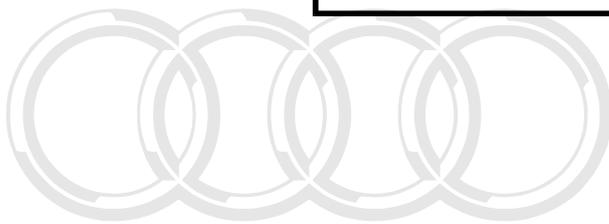
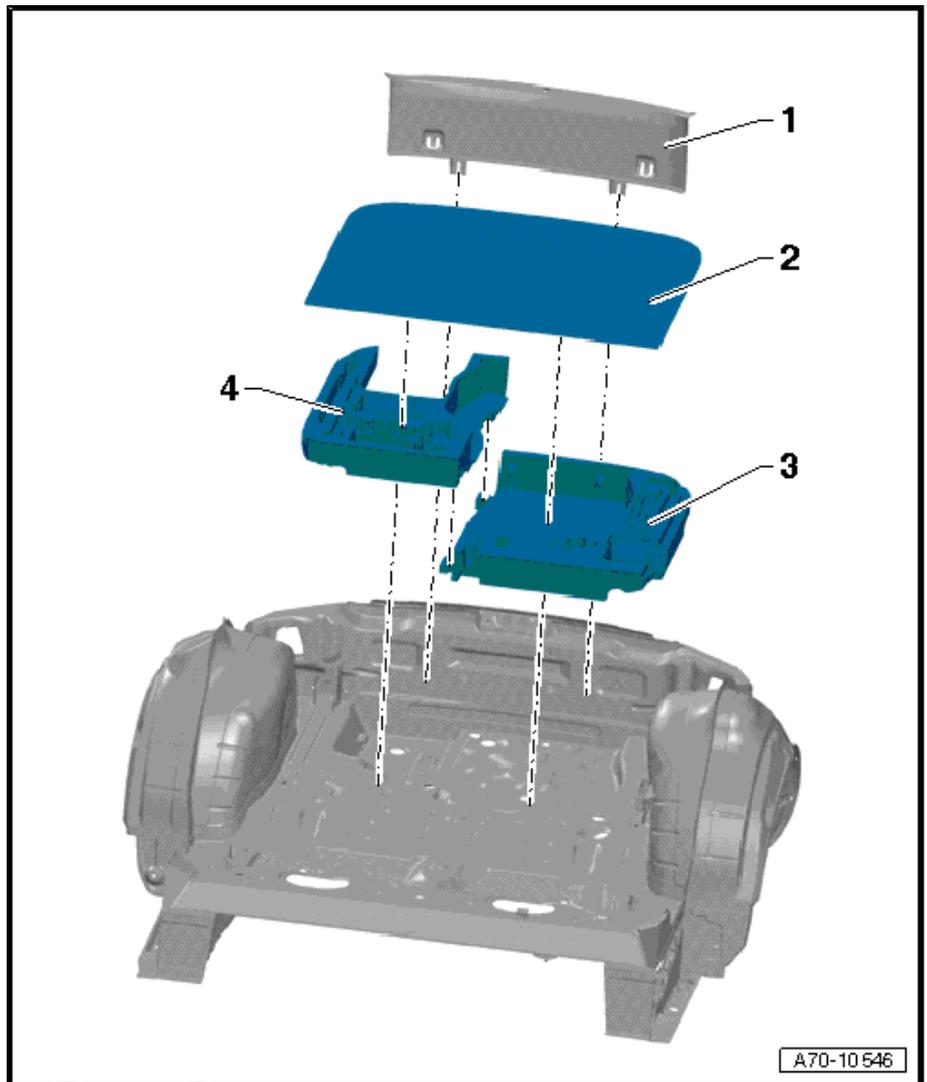
2 - Luggage compartment floor covering

3 - Left foam insert

- ❑ For tire filler bottle and compressor

4 - Right foam insert

- ❑ For vehicle tool kit



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin 

1.5 Trim, Roadster

- ⇒ [“1.5.1 Interior Trim Overview”, page 158](#)
- ⇒ [“1.5.2 End Plate Cover Assembly Overview”, page 161](#)
- ⇒ [“1.5.3 Windshield Frame Trim Assembly Overview”, page 162](#)
- ⇒ [“1.5.4 Sun Visor Assembly Overview”, page 163](#)
- ⇒ [“1.5.5 Upper A-Pillar Trim Assembly Overview”, page 164](#)
- ⇒ [“1.5.6 Lower A-Pillar Trim Assembly Overview”, page 165](#)
- ⇒ [“1.5.7 Footrest Cover and Bracket Assembly Overview”, page 166](#)
- ⇒ [“1.5.8 Sill Panel Assembly Overview”, page 167](#)
- ⇒ [“1.5.9 Floor Covering Assembly Overview”, page 168](#)
- ⇒ [“1.5.10 Side Rear Panel Trim Assembly Overview”, page 169](#)
- ⇒ [“1.5.11 Left and Right Storage Compartments Assembly Overview”, page 170](#)
- ⇒ [“1.5.12 Center Storage Compartment Assembly Overview”, page 171](#)
- ⇒ [“1.5.13 Rear Bulkhead Cover Assembly Overview”, page 172](#)
- ⇒ [“1.5.14 Rollover Protection Trim Assembly Overview”, page 173](#)
- ⇒ [“1.5.15 Wind Deflector Assembly Overview”, page 174](#)
- ⇒ [“1.5.16 Rear Convertible Top Compartment Trim Assembly Overview”, page 174](#)
- ⇒ [“1.5.17 Luggage Compartment Floor Mat Assembly Overview”, page 176](#)
- ⇒ [“1.5.18 Rear Lid End Panel Trim Panel Assembly Overview”, page 177](#)
- ⇒ [“1.5.19 Luggage Compartment Side Trim Assembly Overview”, page 178](#)
- ⇒ [“1.5.20 Front and Upper Luggage Compartment Trim Panels Assembly Overview”, page 178](#)
- ⇒ [“1.5.21 Lower Center Storage Compartment Assembly Overview”, page 180](#)
- ⇒ [“1.5.22 Rear Lid Trim Assembly Overview”, page 181](#)

1.5.1 Interior Trim Overview



Note

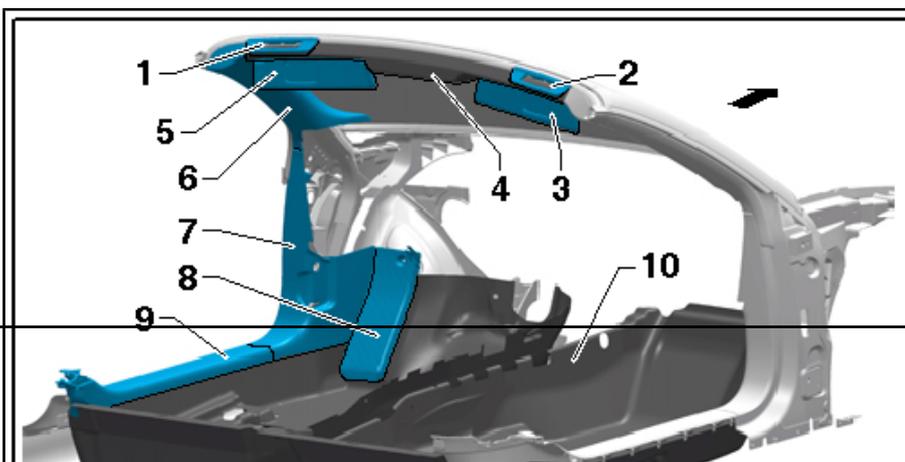
The -arrow- points to the direction of travel.

1 - Left end plate cover

- Assembly Overview, refer to
⇒ [“1.5.2 End Plate Cover Assembly Overview”, page 161](#)

2 - Right end plate cover

- Assembly Overview, refer to



fer to ⇒ [“1.5.2 End Plate Cover Assembly Overview”, page 161](#)

3 - Right sun visor

- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ [“1.5.4 Sun Visor Assembly Overview”, page 163](#)

4 - Windshield frame trim

- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ [“1.5.3 Windshield Frame Trim Assembly Overview”, page 162](#)

5 - Left sun visor

- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ [“1.5.4 Sun Visor Assembly Overview”, page 163](#)

6 - Upper A-pillar trim

- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ [“1.5.5 Upper A-Pillar Trim Assembly Overview”, page 164](#)

7 - A-pillar lower trim

- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ [“1.5.6 Lower A-Pillar Trim Assembly Overview”, page 165](#)

8 - Footrest cover

- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ [“1.5.7 Footrest Cover and Bracket Assembly Overview”, page 166](#)

9 - Sill panel strip

- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ [“1.5.8 Sill Panel Assembly Overview”, page 167](#)

10 - Carpet

- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ [“1.5.9 Floor Covering Assembly Overview”, page 168](#)

11 - Left rear panel trim panel

- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ [“1.5.10 Side Rear Panel Trim Assembly Overview”, page 169](#)

12 - Center storage compartment

- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ [“1.5.12 Center Storage Compartment Assembly Overview”, page 171](#)

13 - Right rear panel trim panel

- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ [“1.5.10 Side Rear Panel Trim Assembly Overview”, page 169](#)

14 - Rear bulkhead cover

- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ [“1.5.13 Rear Bulkhead Cover Assembly Overview”, page 172](#)

15 - Wind deflector

- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ [“1.5.15 Wind Deflector Assembly Overview”, page 174](#)
- Front convertible compartment trim, removing and installing
 ⇒ [“2.5.14 Front Convertible Top Compartment Trim”, page 236](#)
- Rear convertible top compartment trim, removing and installing
 ⇒ [“1.5.16 Rear Convertible Top Compartment Trim Assembly Overview”, page 174](#)



Note

16 - Rollover protection trim

- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ [“1.5.14 Rollover Protection Trim Assembly Overview”, page 173](#)

Luggage Compartment Trim Panel Assembly Overview

1 - Luggage compartment floor covering

- Assembly Overview, refer to
⇒ [“1.5.17 Luggage Compartment Floor Mat Assembly Overview”, page 176](#)

2 - Rear cross panel trim

- Assembly Overview, refer to
⇒ [“1.5.18 Rear Lid End Panel Trim Panel Assembly Overview”, page 177](#)

3 - Luggage compartment side trim

- left vehicle side
- Assembly Overview, refer to
⇒ [“1.5.19 Luggage Compartment Side Trim Assembly Overview”, page 178](#)

4 - Upper luggage compartment trim panel

- Assembly Overview, refer to
⇒ [“1.5.20 Front and Upper Luggage Compartment Trim Panels Assembly Overview”, page 178](#)

5 - Front luggage compartment trim panel

- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ [“1.5.20 Front and Upper Luggage Compartment Trim Panels Assembly Overview”, page 178](#)

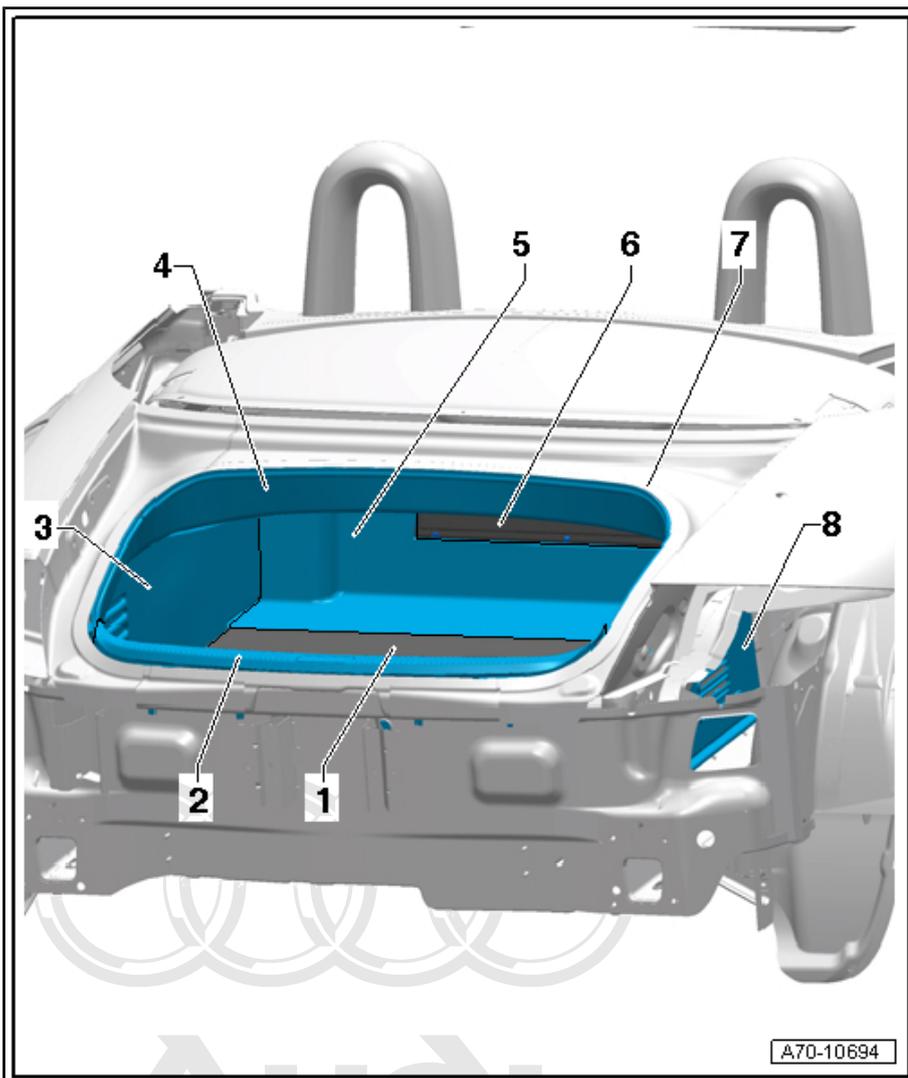
6 - Lower center storage compartment

- Assembly Overview, refer to
⇒ [“1.5.21 Lower Center Storage Compartment Assembly Overview”, page 180](#)

7 - Rear lid seal

8 - Luggage compartment side trim

- Right vehicle side
- Assembly Overview, refer to
⇒ [“1.5.19 Luggage Compartment Side Trim Assembly Overview”, page 178](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for errors or omissions. © Audi AG 2011.

1.5.2 End Plate Cover Assembly Overview

Note

- ◆ *The -arrow- points to the direction of travel.*
- ◆ *To remove and install end plate cover, convertible top must be open.*

1 - Left end plate cover

- Removing: can be removed from end plate by hand
- Installing: clip into the windshield frame

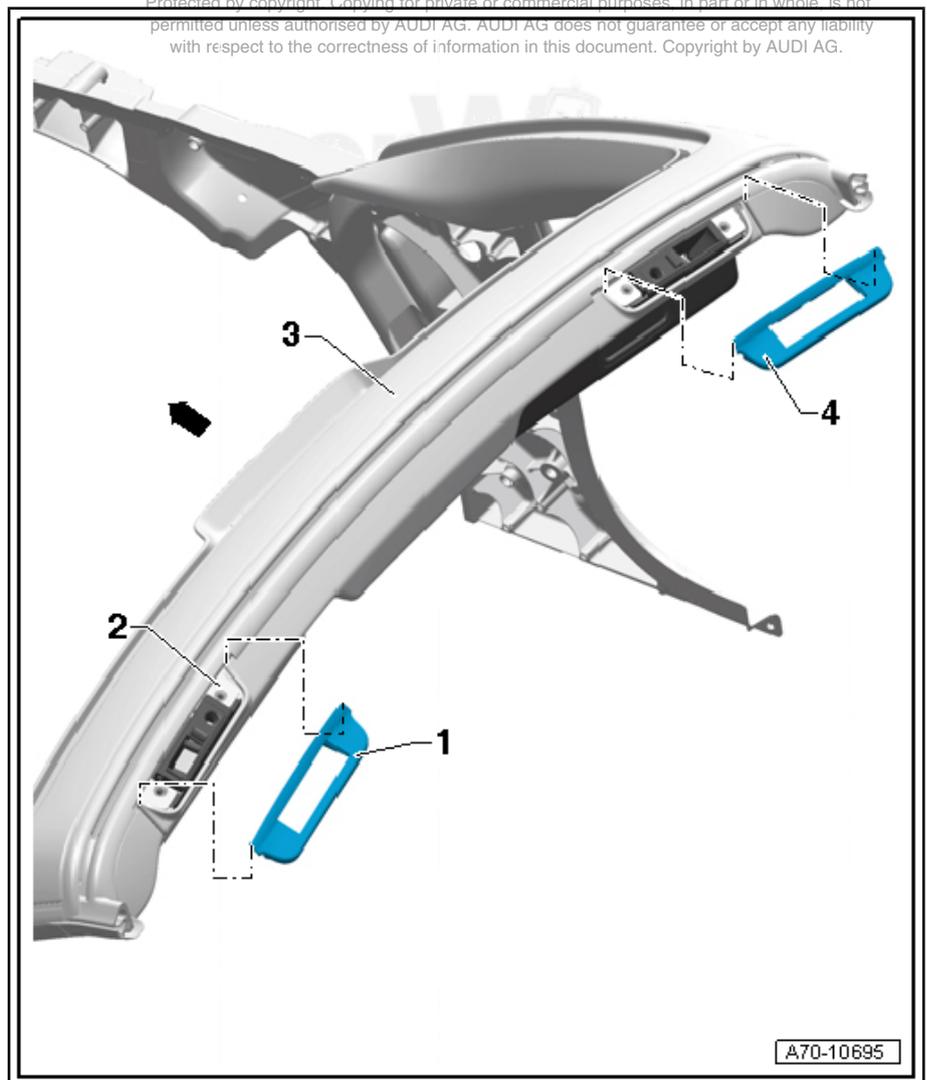
2 - End plate

- For convertible top

3 - Windshield frame

4 - Right end plate cover

- Removing: can be removed from end plate by hand
- Installing: clip into the windshield frame



1.5.3 Windshield Frame Trim Assembly Overview



Note

The -arrow- points to the direction of travel.

1 - Windshield frame trim

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.5.1 Windshield Frame Trim", page 224](#)

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 3.5 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2
- ❑ Replacing

3 - Buffer

4 - Windshield frame

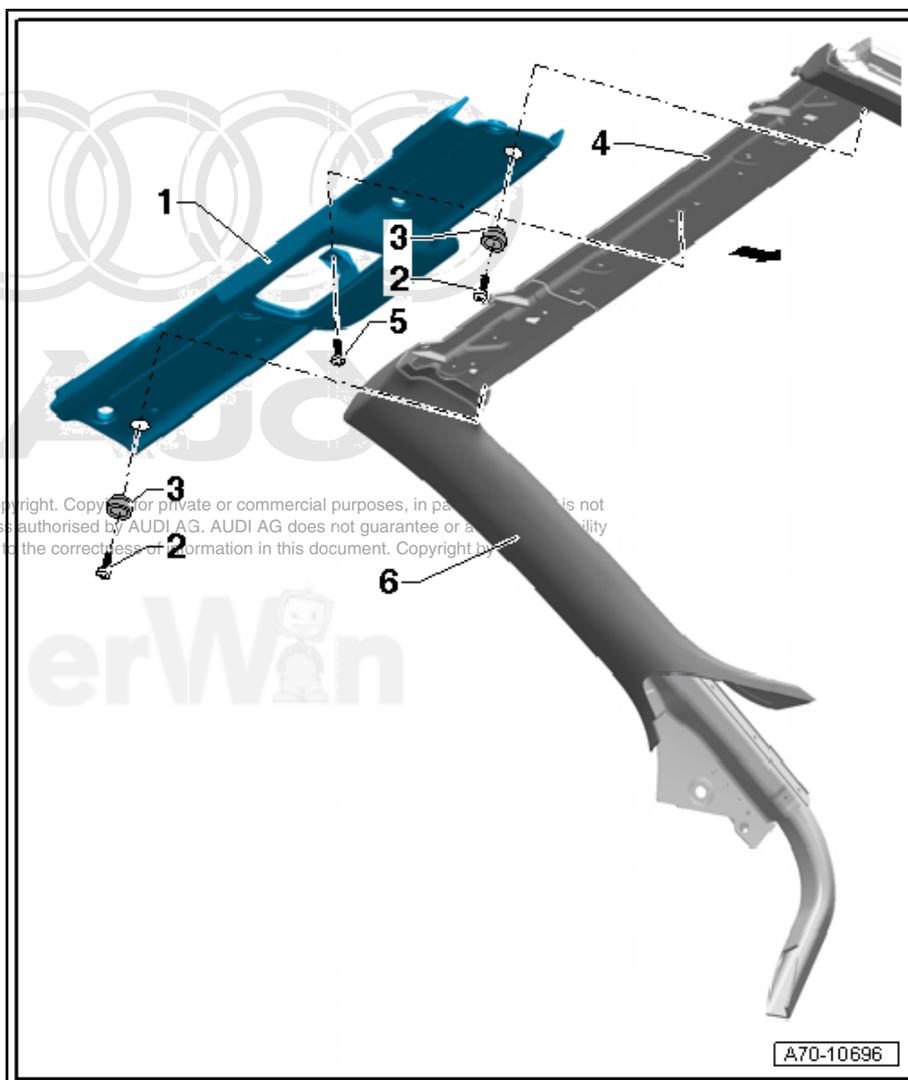
5 - Bolt

- ❑ 2.0 Nm

- ❑ Is accessible after removing Front Interior Light -W1-

6 - Upper A-pillar trim

- ❑ Must be installed before installing the windshield frame trim



1.5.4 Sun Visor Assembly Overview

1 - Sun visor

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ page 240](#)

2 - Cover

- ❑ Quantity: 2

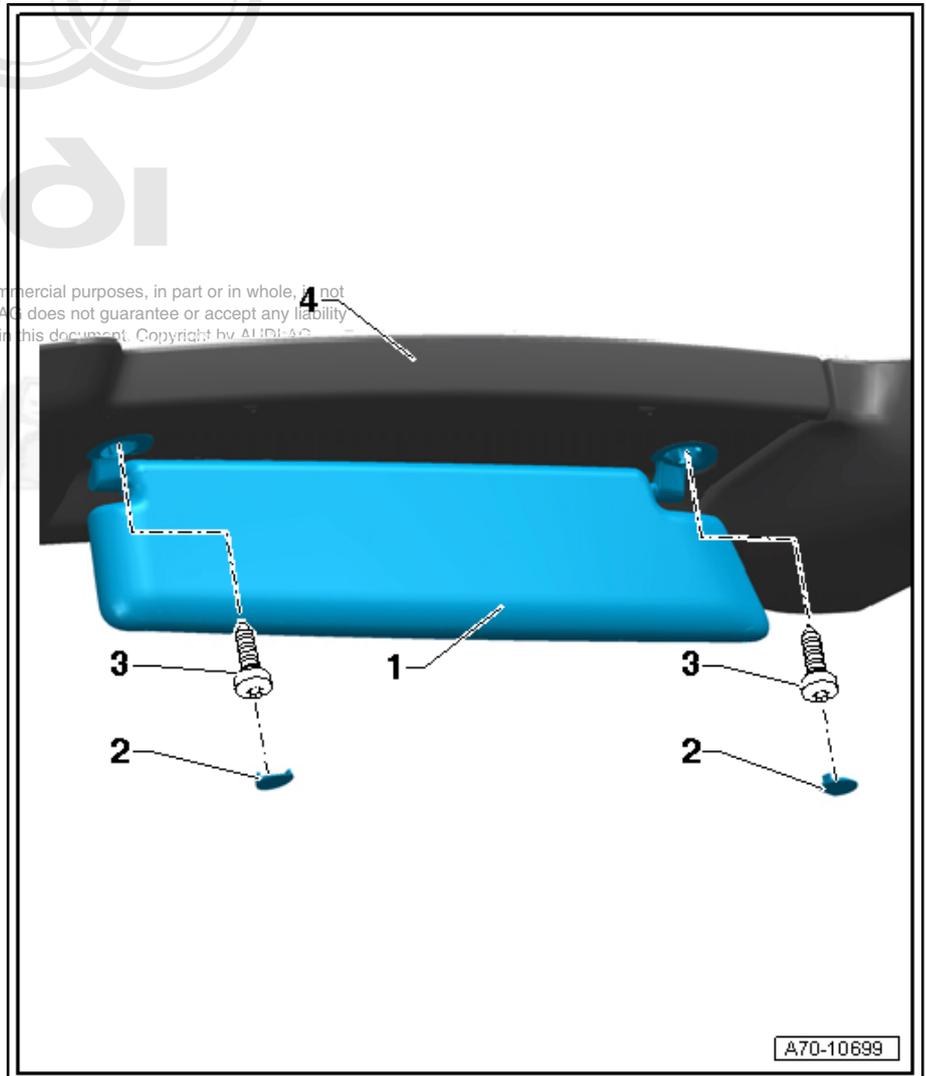
3 - Bolt

- ❑ 3.5 Nm

4 - Replacing

4 - Windshield frame trim

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the written permission of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1.5.5 Upper A-Pillar Trim Assembly Overview

1 - Upper A-pillar trim

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.5.2 A-Pillar Upper Trim", page 225](#)

2 - Windshield frame

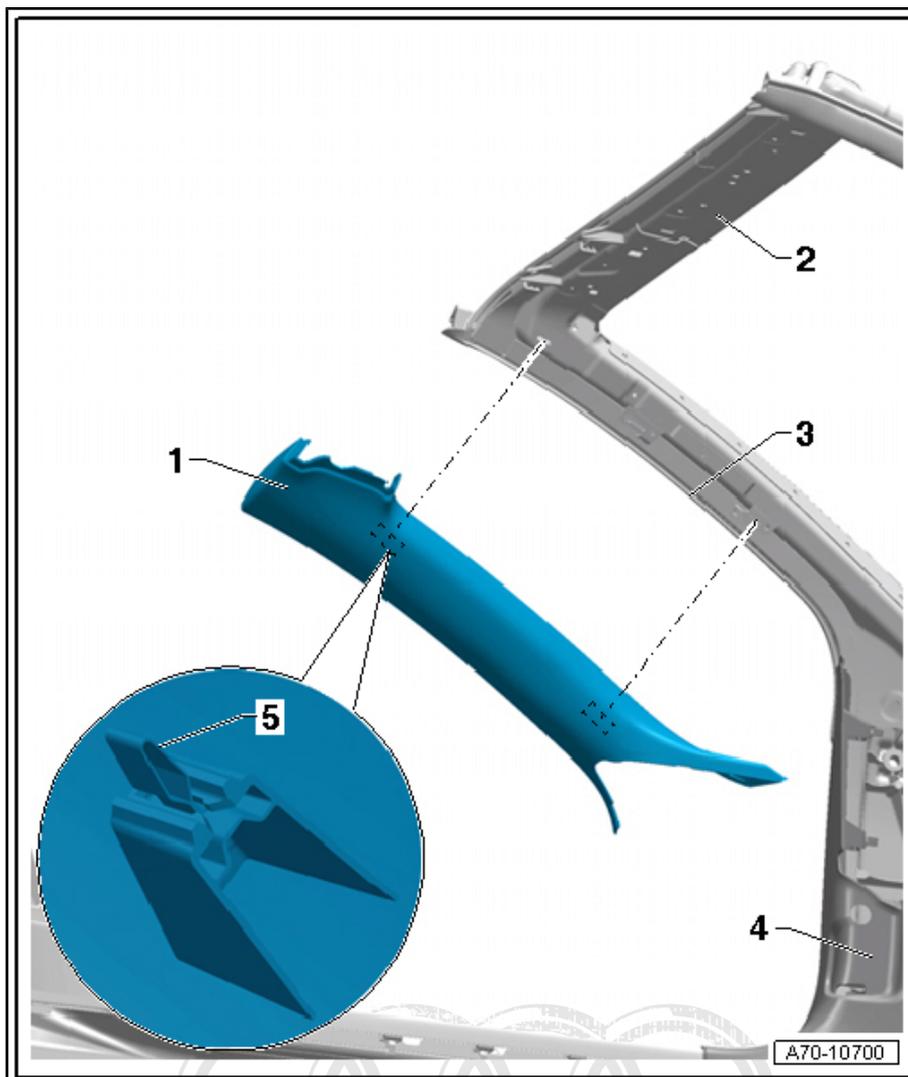
- ❑ The windshield frame trim must be removed. Refer to
⇒ ["1.5.3 Windshield Frame Trim Assembly Overview", page 162](#).

3 - Door seal

4 - A-pillar lower trim

5 - Clips

- ❑ Replace if damaged or deformed
- ❑ There may be 2 or 3 clamps. If there are 3 clamps, the third is approximately in the middle of both of the clamps shown.



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin

1.5.6 Lower A-Pillar Trim Assembly Overview

1 - A-pillar lower trim

- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.5.3 Lower A-Pillar Trim", page 226](#)

2 - Hood release lever

- For hood
- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.5.3 Lower A-Pillar Trim", page 226](#)

3 - Clips

- Quantity: 3
- Replace if damaged or deformed

4 - Bolt

- 12 Nm
- Quantity: 2

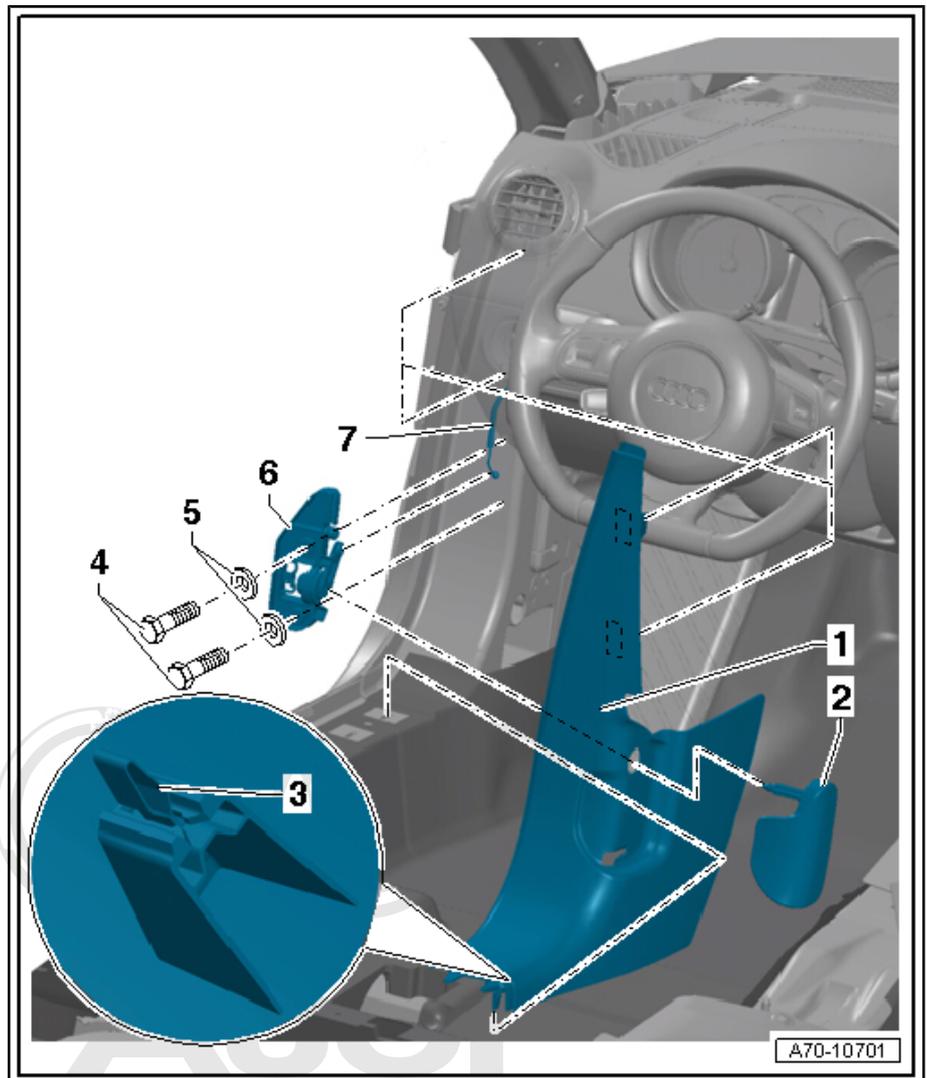
5 - Washer

- Quantity: 2

6 - Mount

- For operating lever
 ⇒ [Item 2 \(page 165\)](#)

7 - Lid lock cable



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin

1.5.7 Footrest Cover and Bracket Assembly Overview

1 - Footrest cover

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.5.4 Foot Rest Cover"](#), page 228

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 3.5 Nm

3 - Threaded clip

- ❑ Insert it in the footrest

4 - Footrest bracket

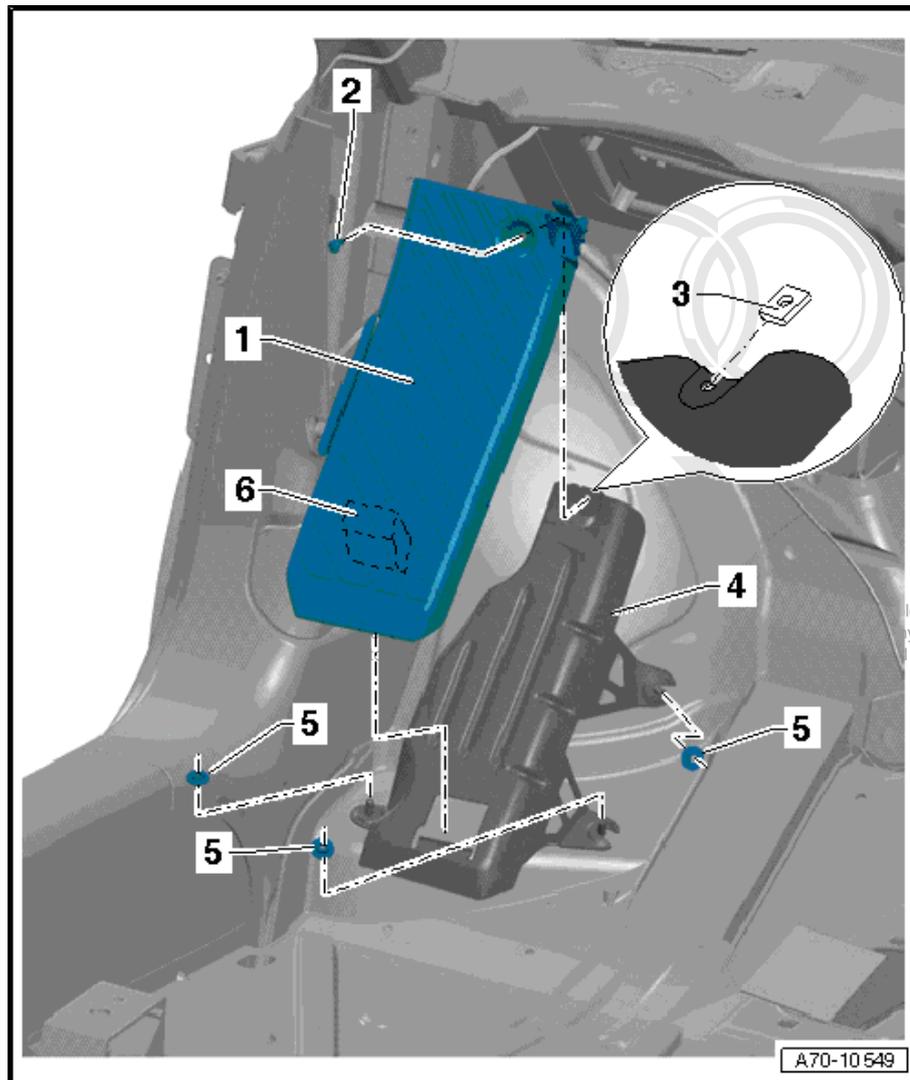
- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.5.5 Foot Rest Mount"](#), page 229

5 - Nut

- ❑ 3.5 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 3

6 - Tab

- ❑ Is joined firmly with the footrest cover



le is not
y liability
/AG.

1.5.8 Sill Panel Assembly Overview

1 - Sill panel strip

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.5.6 Sill Panel", page 229](#)

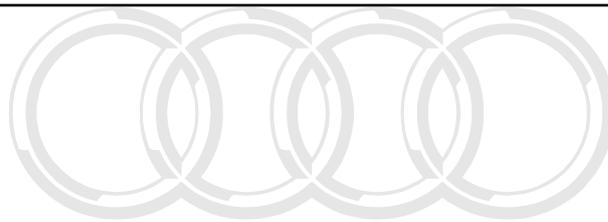
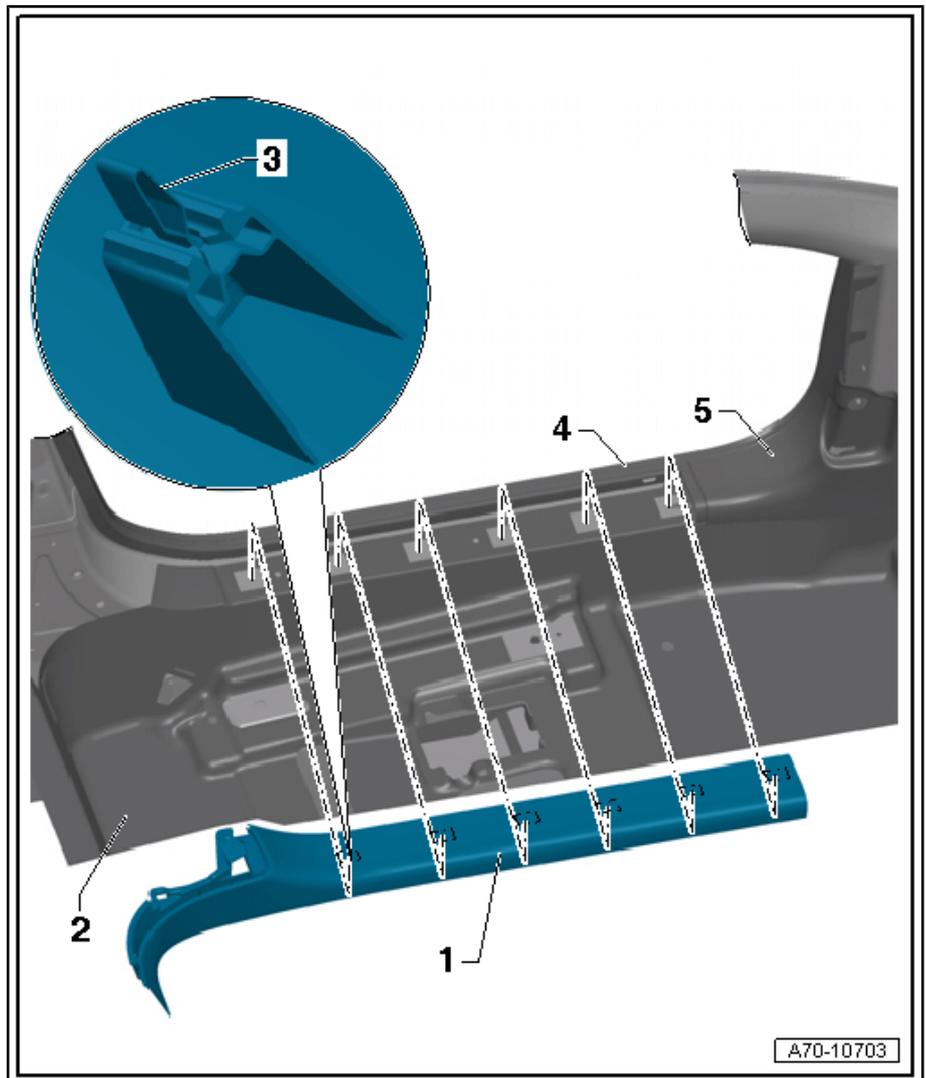
2 - Carpet

3 - Clips

- ❑ Quantity: 6
- ❑ Replace if damaged or deformed

4 - Door seal

5 - A-pillar lower trim



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin 

1.5.9 Floor Covering Assembly Overview

1 - Carpet

- ❑ One piece
- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.5.7 Floor Covering", page 230](#)

2 - Expanding clip

- ❑ Quantity: 8

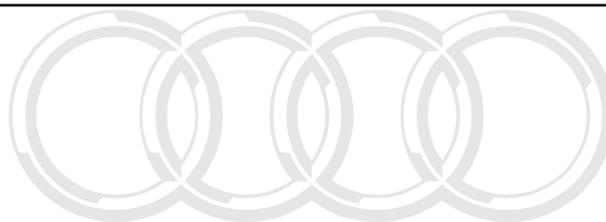
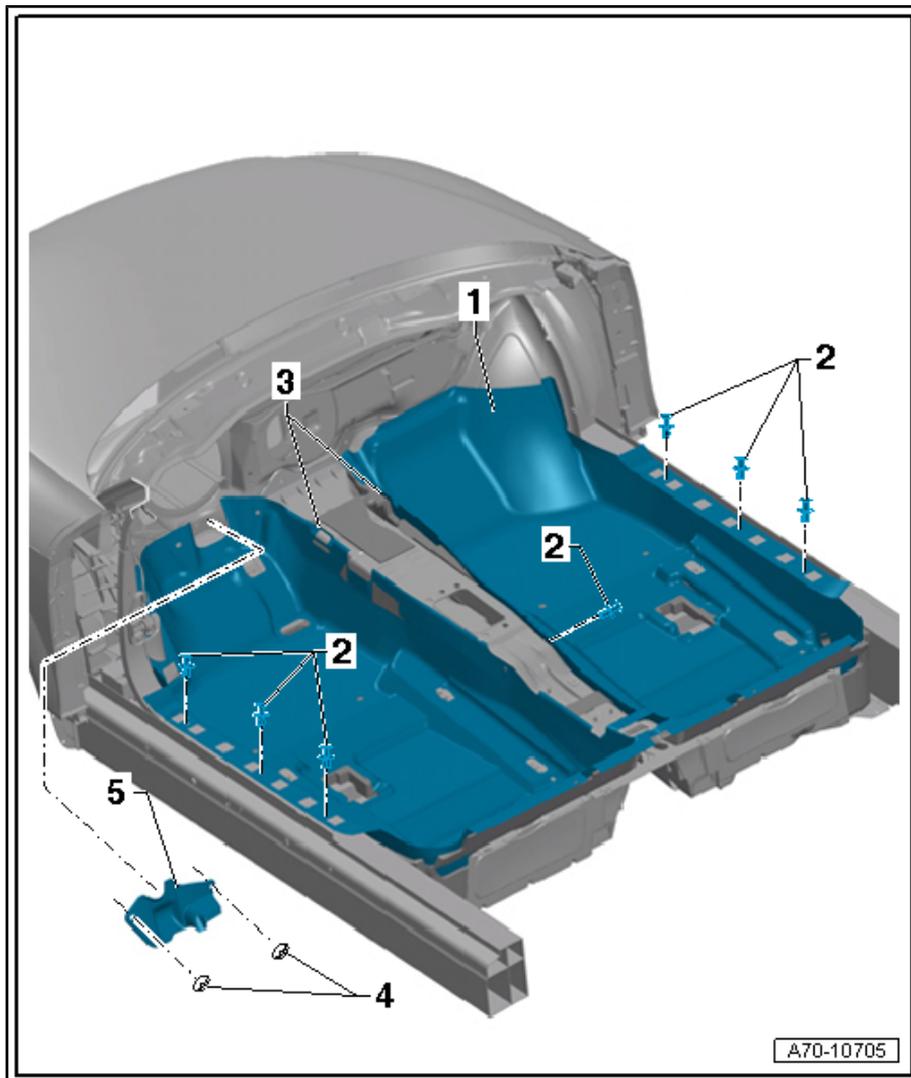
3 - Bracket

- ❑ For securing the carpet

4 - Button or nut

- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Quantity: 2
- ❑ 2 Nm

5 - Cover for the steering column universal joint



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.5.10 Side Rear Panel Trim Assembly Overview

1 - Side rear panel trim panel

- Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.5.8 Side Rear Panel Trim Panel", page 231](#)

2 - Cover

- For left [⇒ Item 4 \(page 169\)](#) and right [⇒ Item 10 \(page 169\)](#) storage compartments
- not installed on all vehicles, note corresponding equipment

3 - Cover

- Clipped into the side rear panel trim panel
- Note corresponding equipment

4 - Left storage compartment

- Not installed on all vehicles, note corresponding equipment
- Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "1.5.11 Left and Right Storage Compartments Assembly Overview", page 170](#)

5 - Sill panel strip

6 - Carpet

- Must be installed before installing the side rear panel trim panel

7 - Cover

- Is clipped into center storage compartment
- Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.5.8 Side Rear Panel Trim Panel", page 231](#)

8 - Cover

- For center storage compartment
- Must be opened to remove and installing the side rear panel trim panel

9 - Center storage compartment

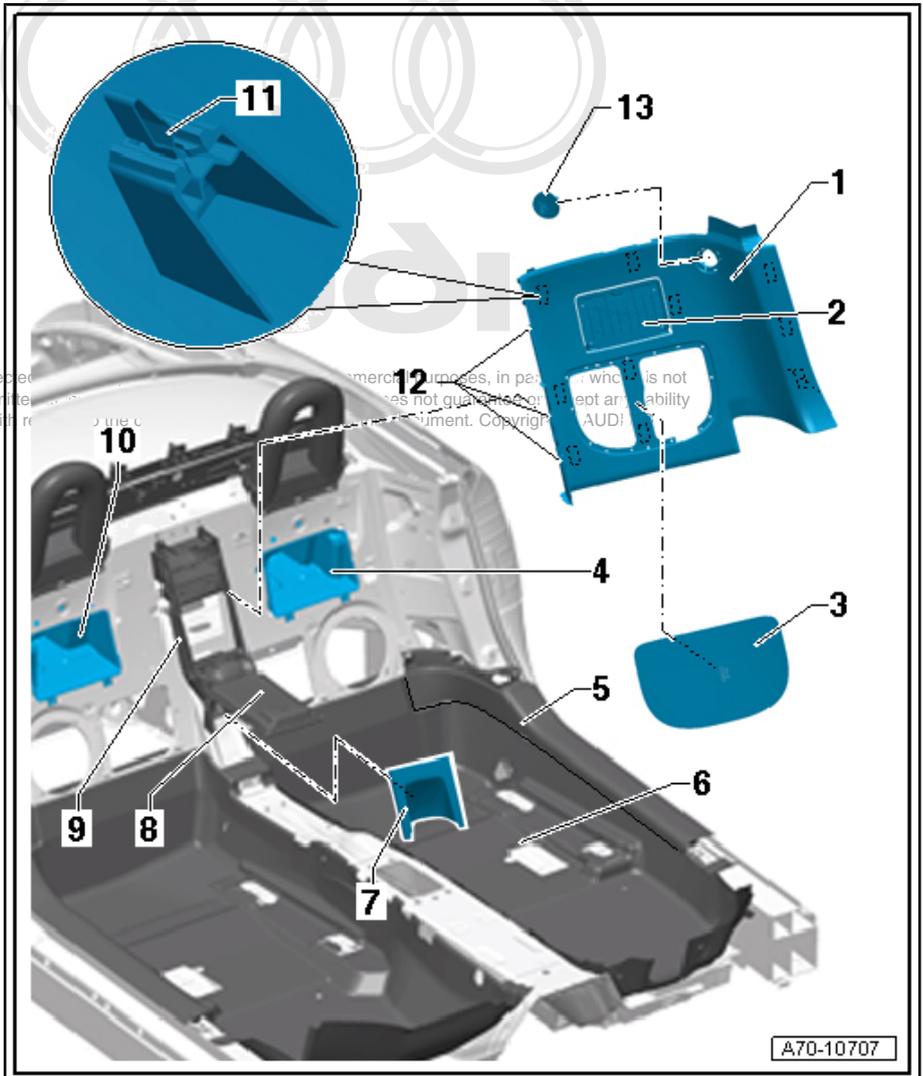
- Must be installed before installing the side rear panel trim panel

10 - Right storage compartment

- Not installed on all vehicles, note corresponding equipment
- Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "1.5.11 Left and Right Storage Compartments Assembly Overview", page 170](#)

11 - Clips

- Quantity: 11
- Replace if damaged or deformed



12 - Locking tabs

- On the side rear panel trim panel
- Lock in center storage compartment

13 - Cover

- For Left Rear Treble Speaker -R14- or Right Rear Treble Speaker -R16-

1.5.11 Left and Right Storage Compartments Assembly Overview

1 - Left storage compartment

- Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ page 240](#)

2 - Bolt

- 2 Nm

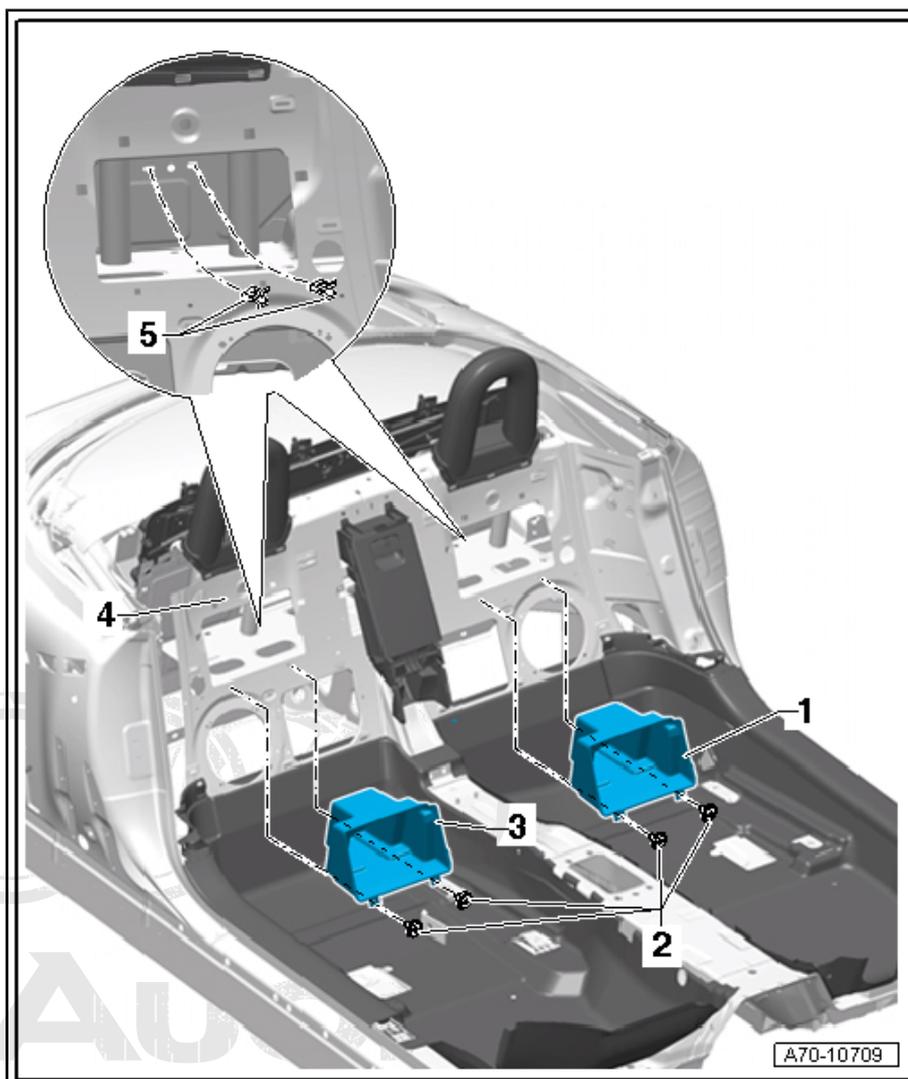
3 - Right storage compartment

- Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ page 240](#)

4 - Rear bulkhead

5 - Clips

- Insert in rear bulkhead



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.5.12 Center Storage Compartment Assembly Overview

1 - Center storage compartment

- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.5.9 Center Storage Compartment"](#),
 page 232

2 - Bolt

- 2 Nm
- Quantity: 5

3 - Organizer pocket

4 - Bracket

- Not installed on all vehicles, note corresponding equipment

5 - Bolt

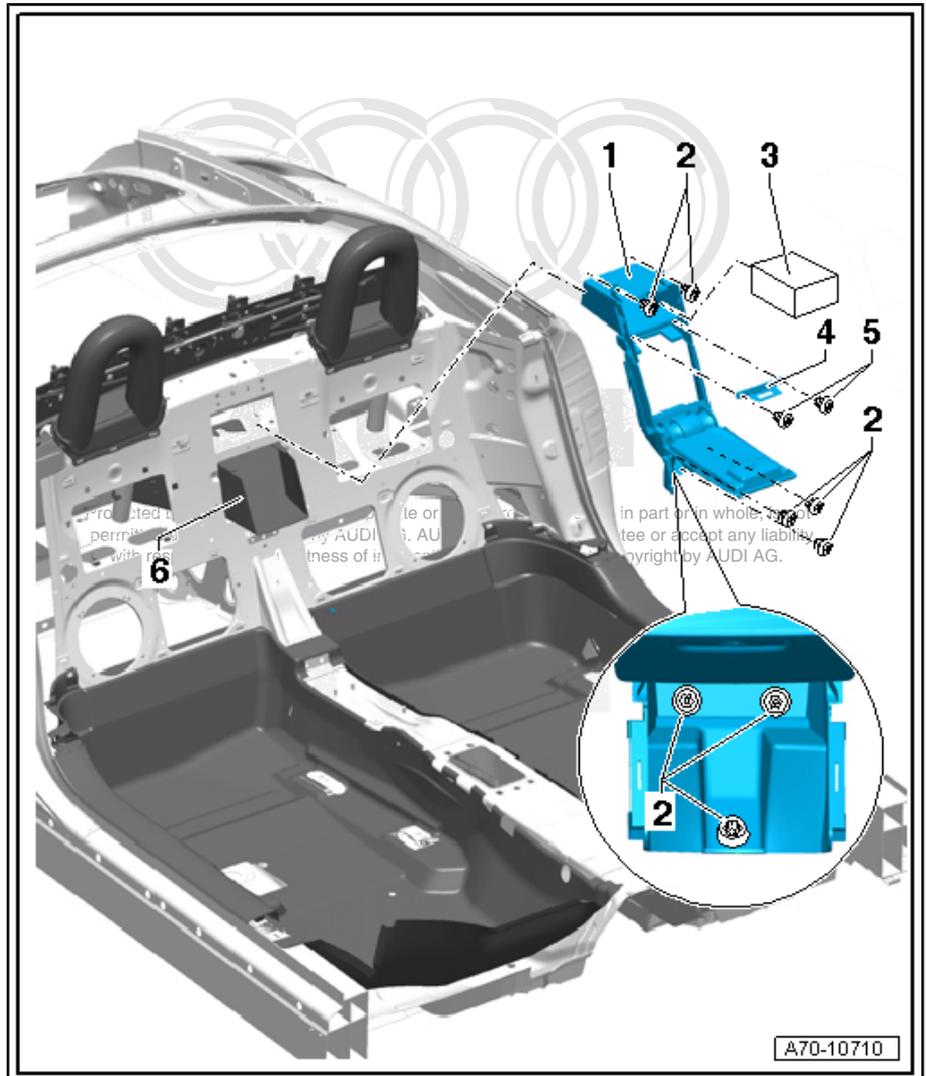
- 4 Nm
- Quantity: 2
- For bracket
 ⇒ [Item 4 \(page 171\)](#) to
 body



Note

6 - Lower center storage compartment

- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.5.17 Lower Center Storage Compartment"](#),
 page 238



A70-10710

1.5.13 Rear Bulkhead Cover Assembly Overview

1 - Rear bulkhead cover

- Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.5.10 Rear Bulkhead Cover", page 233](#)

2 - Seat belt

3 - Rollover protection trim

- Must be installed before installing rear bulkhead cover

4 - Linkage removal flap

- For convertible top
- Is closed when in basic position

5 - Left rear panel trim panel

- Must be installed before installing rear bulkhead cover

6 - Clips

- Quantity: 6
- Install into the rollover protection trim
- Must be installed before installing rear bulkhead cover

7 - Right rear panel trim panel

- Must be installed before installing rear bulkhead cover

8 - Wind deflector

- Only the wind deflector support is installed on some vehicles [⇒ Item 2 \(page 174\)](#), note corresponding equipment

9 - Clips

- Quantity: 6
- Press into rear bulkhead cover
- Must engage with wind deflector of wind deflector support [⇒ Item 8 \(page 172\)](#) when installing rear bulkhead cover

10 - Clips

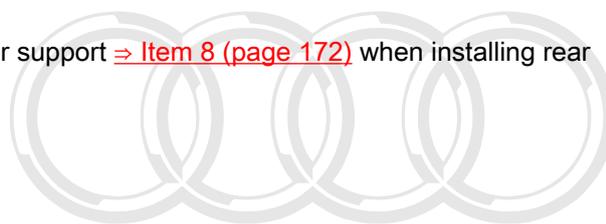
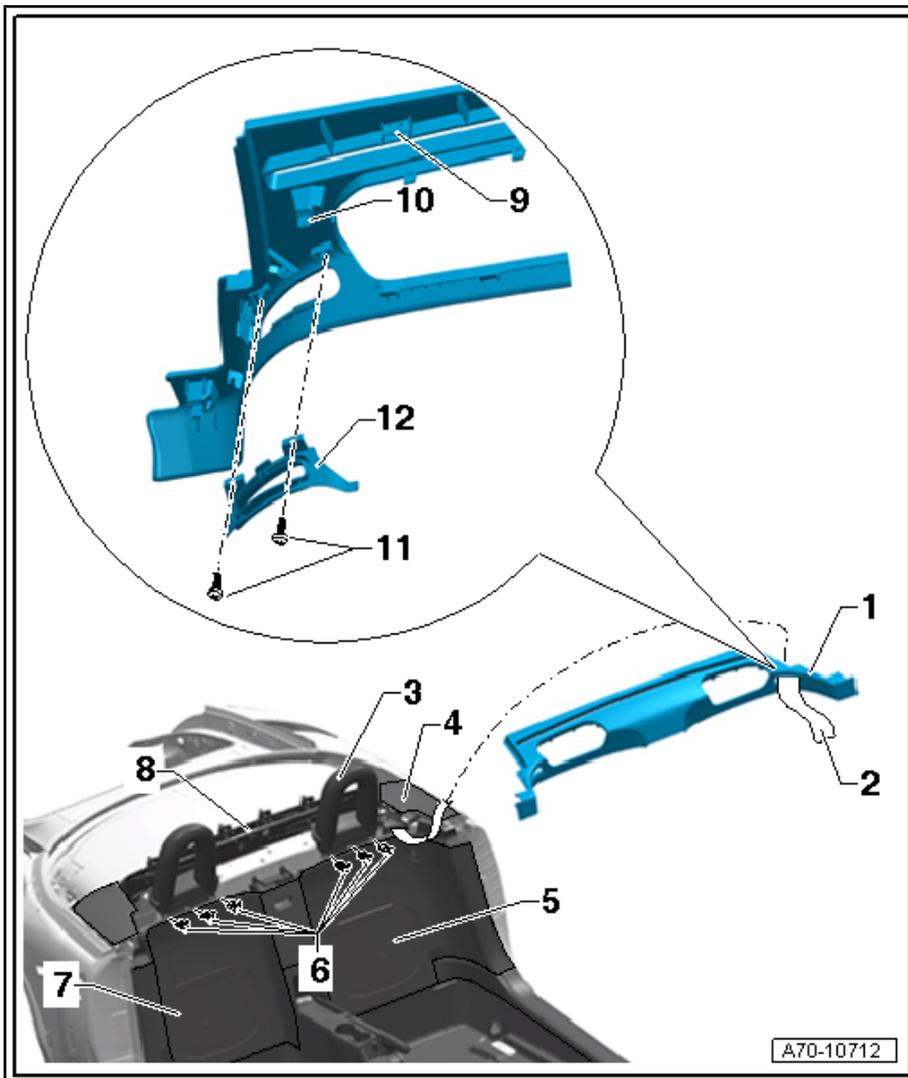
- Insert in rear bulkhead cover

11 - Bolt

- 0.6 Nm

12 - Belt extraction panel

- Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ page 241](#)



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1.5.14 Rollover Protection Trim Assembly Overview

1 - Rollover protection trim front section

- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.5.11 Anti-roll Bar Trim", page 234](#)

2 - Clips

- Press into the opening in the rollover protection trim front section and in the body

3 - Rollover protection bracket

4 - Rollover protection trim rear section

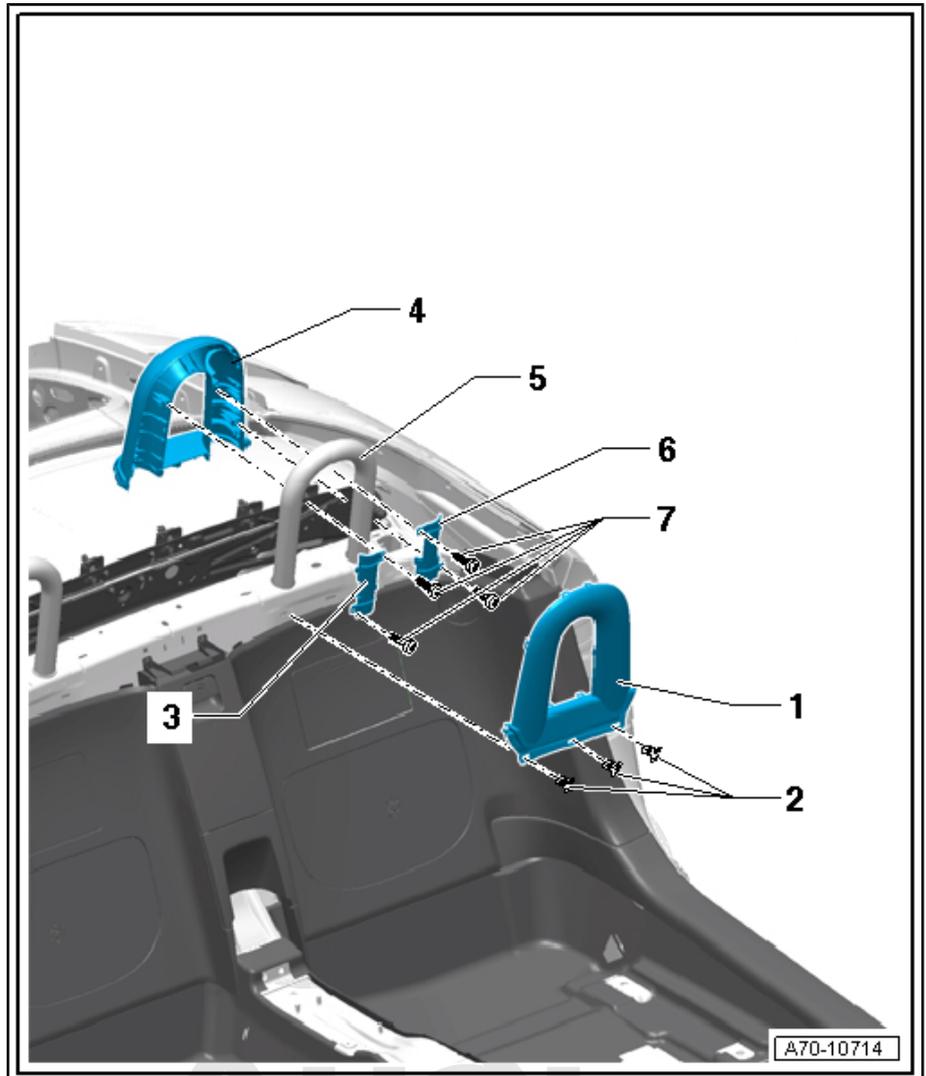
- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.5.11 Anti-roll Bar Trim", page 234](#)

5 - Rollover protection

6 - Rollover protection bracket

7 - Bolt

- Replacing
- 3 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin

1.5.15 Wind Deflector Assembly Overview

1 - Wind deflector

- ❑ Only the wind deflector support is installed on some vehicles
⇒ [Item 2 \(page 174\)](#), note corresponding equipment
- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.5.12 Wind Deflector or Mount"](#), [page 235](#)

2 - Wind deflector support

3 - Washer

- ❑ Must be installed between window and insulation component
⇒ [Item 4 \(page 174\)](#)
⇒ [Item 5 \(page 174\)](#)

4 - Bolt

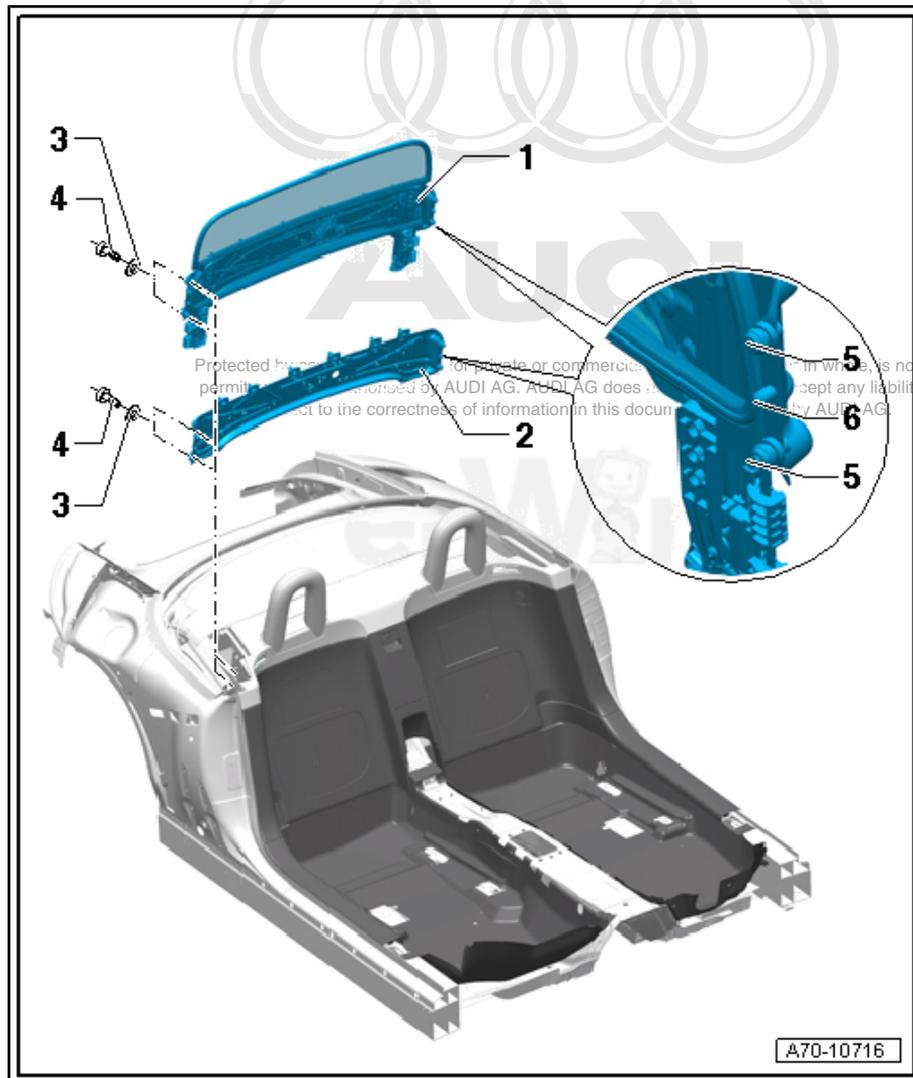
- ❑ 7 Nm

5 - Insulation component

- ❑ Insert in wind deflector or wind deflector support

6 - Central screws

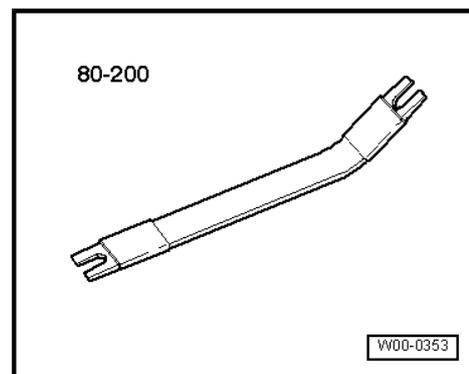
- ❑ Insert in body



1.5.16 Rear Convertible Top Compartment Trim Assembly Overview

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Pry lever -80 - 200-

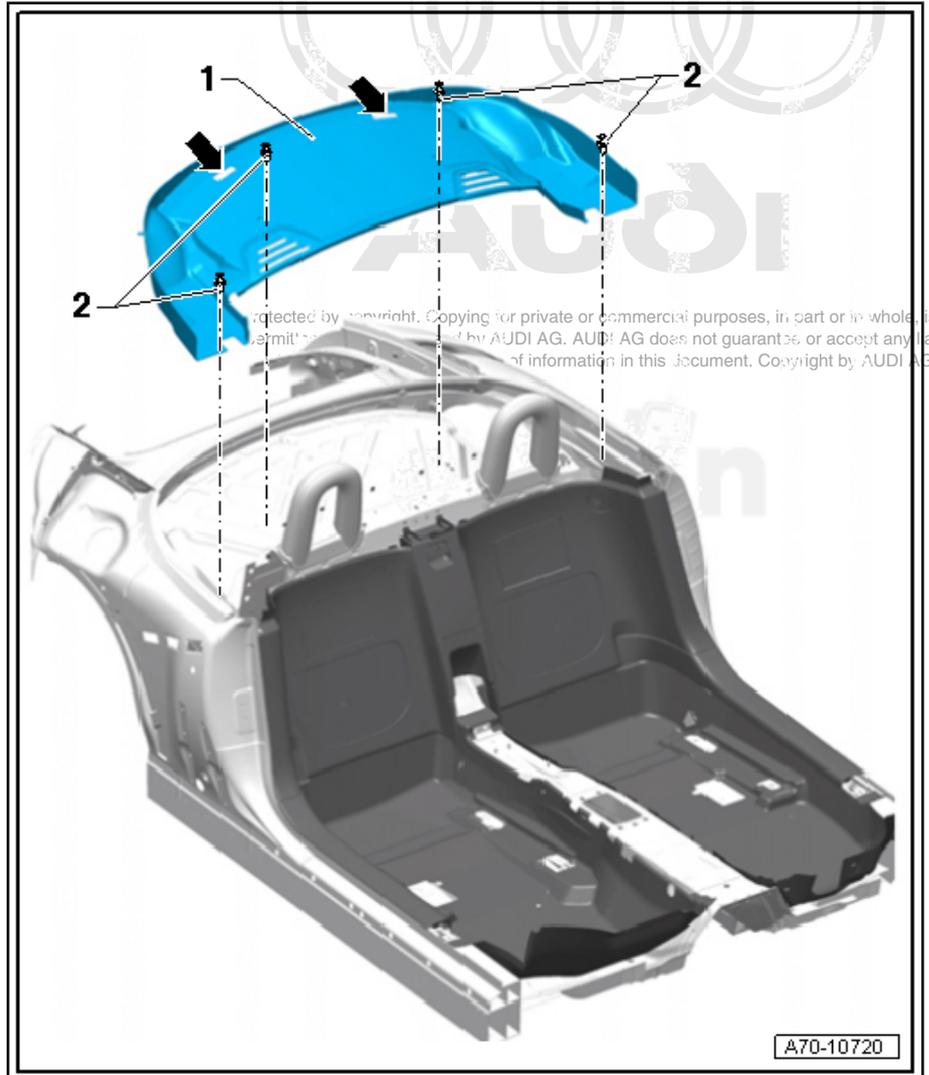


1 - Rear convertible top compartment trim

- ❑ With openings -arrows- for straps/convertible top
- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ page 241](#)

2 - Expanding clip

- ❑ Quantity: 4



1.5.17 Luggage Compartment Floor Mat Assembly Overview



The -arrow- points to the direction of travel.

1 - Luggage compartment floor covering

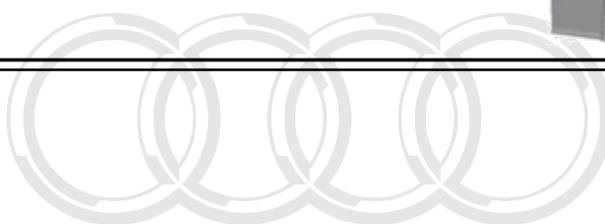
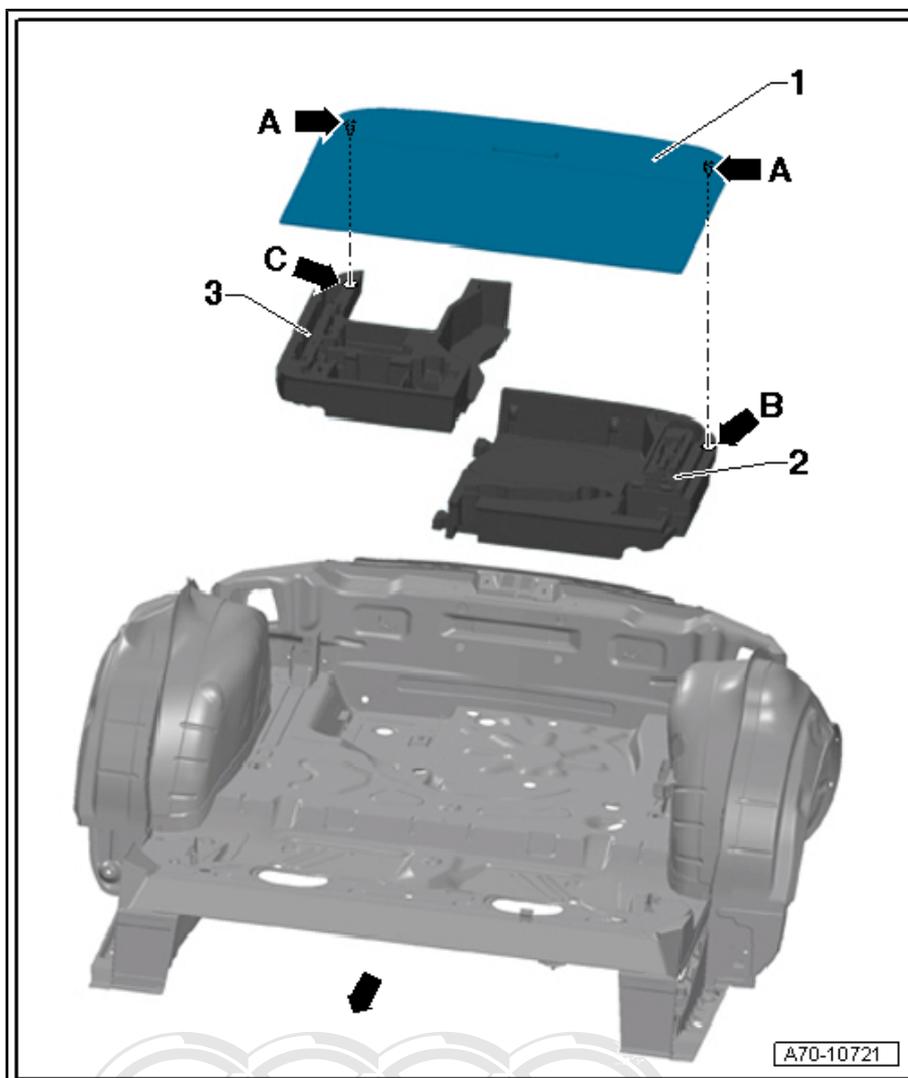
- With pins -A arrows-
- Removing and Installing, refer to [=> page 241](#)

2 - Left foam insert

- For tire filler bottle and compressor
- with recess -arrow B- for luggage compartment floor mat pins -arrow A-

3 - Right foam insert

- For vehicle tool kit
- With recess -arrow C- for luggage compartment floor mat pins -arrow A-



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1.5.18 Rear Lid End Panel Trim Panel Assembly Overview

Note

The -arrow- points to the direction of travel.

1 - Rear cross panel trim

- Removing and Installing, refer to
 => ["2.5.15 Rear Cross Panel Trim", page 237](#)

2 - Rear lid seal

3 - Pin

- Quantity: 2
- Secured to body

4 - Eye

- Quantity: 2
- Secured to body

5 - Left luggage compartment side trim panel

- Must be installed before installing the rear lid end panel trim panel

6 - Right luggage compartment side trim panel

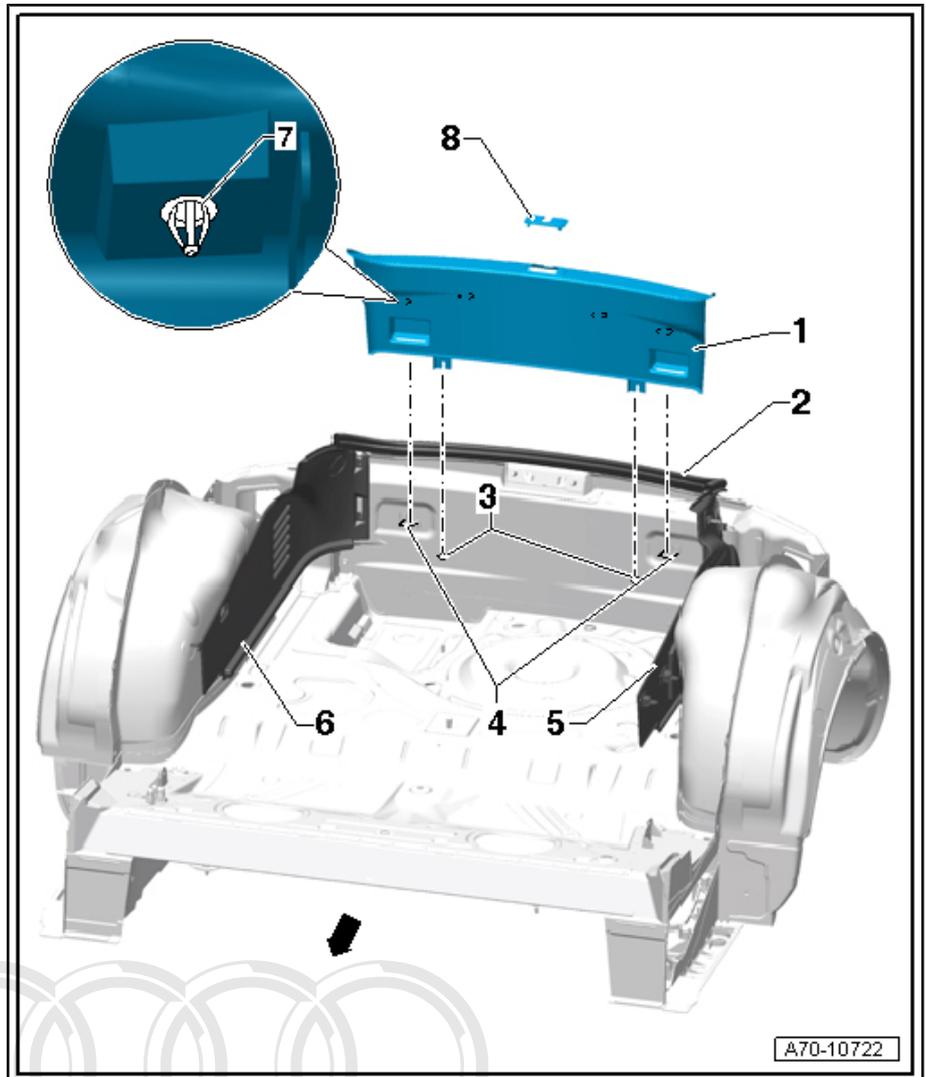
- Must be installed before installing the rear lid end panel trim panel

7 - Clip

- Quantity: 4
- Replace if damaged or deformed

8 - Cover

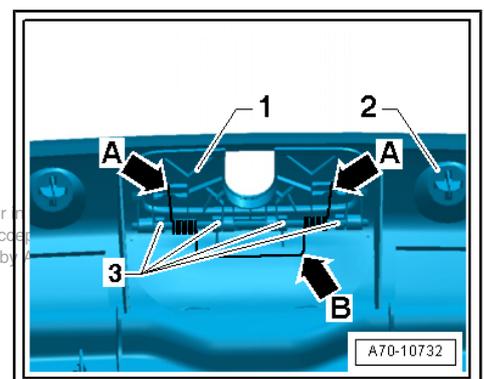
- For the rear lid end panel trim panel
- Removing and Installing, refer to
 => [page 177](#)



Rear Lid End Panel Trim Panel Cover

- Remove the cover -1- from the retainers -3- in the rear lid end panel trim panel -2-.
- Make sure the upper point of the -arrows A- spring supports the cover and the bracket -arrow B- on the rear lid end panel trim panel.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG.



1.5.19 Luggage Compartment Side Trim Assembly Overview

1 - Luggage compartment side trim

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.5.16 Luggage Compartment Side Trim", page 237](#)

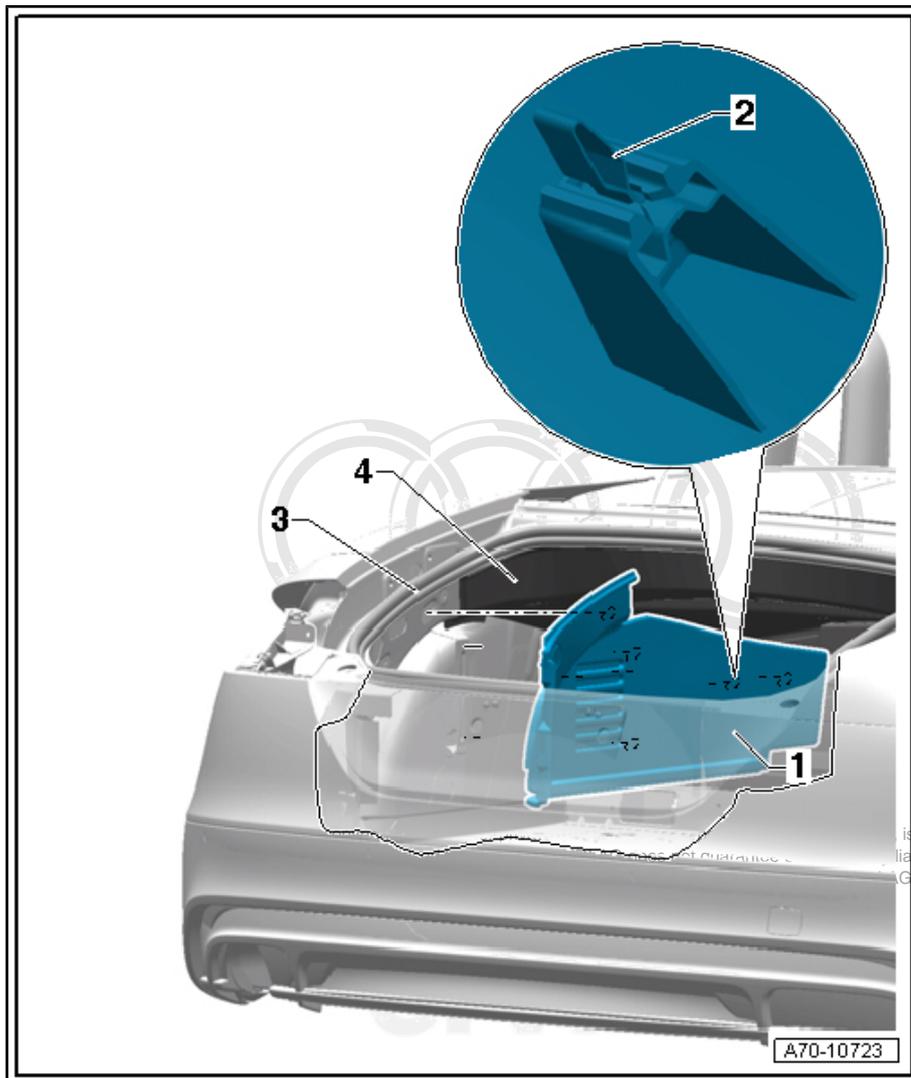
2 - Clips

- ❑ Replace if damaged or deformed

3 - Rear lid seal

4 - Upper luggage compartment trim panel

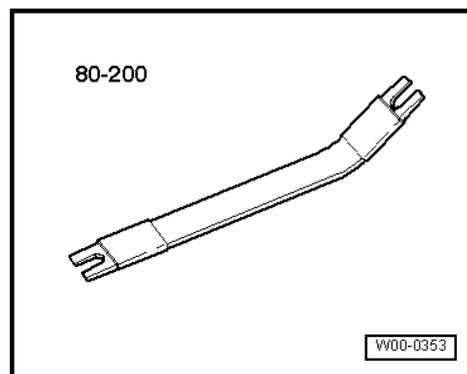
- ❑ Must be installed before installation of the luggage compartment side trim



1.5.20 Front and Upper Luggage Compartment Trim Panels Assembly Overview

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Pry lever -80 - 200-



1 - Upper luggage compartment trim panel

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ page 241](#)

2 - Expanding clip

- ❑ For the upper luggage compartment trim panel
- ❑ Quantity: 5
- ❑ Remove with Pry Lever -80 - 200-

3 - Front luggage compartment trim panel

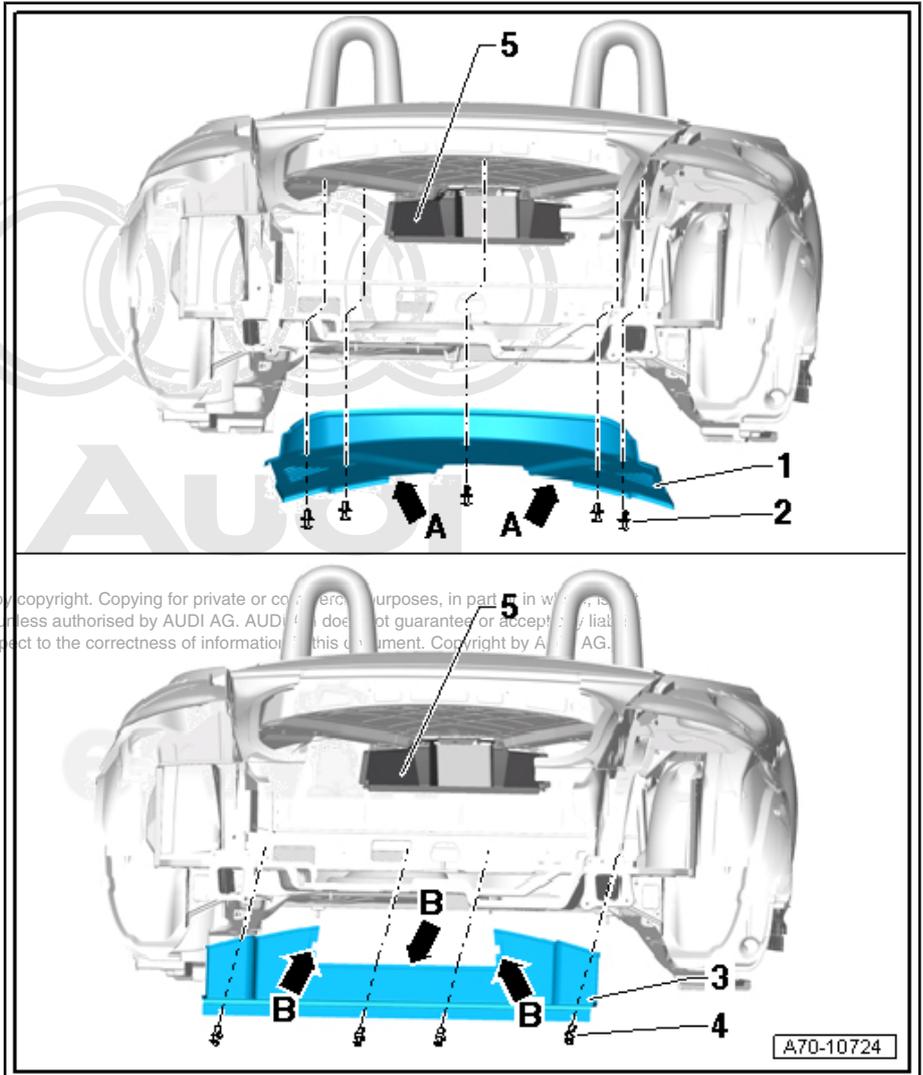
- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ page 242](#)

4 - Expanding clip

- ❑ For the front luggage compartment trim panel
- ❑ Quantity: 4
- ❑ Remove with Pry Lever -80 - 200-

5 - Lower center storage compartment

- ❑ if lower center storage compartment is installed:
- ◆ The upper luggage compartment trim panel must be clamped behind the storage compartment in the area of -arrows A-
- ◆ The front luggage compartment trim panel must be clamped behind the storage compartment in the area of -arrows B-



1.5.21 Lower Center Storage Compartment Assembly Overview

1 - Cover

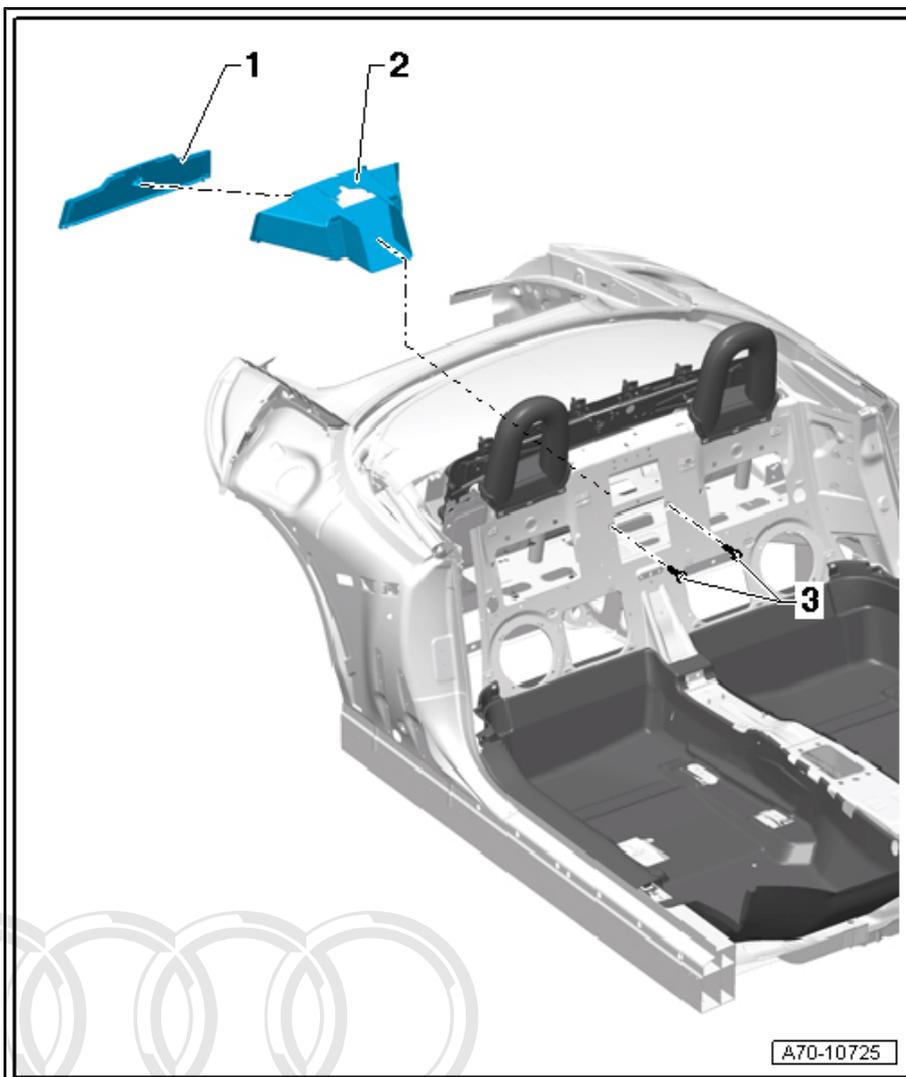
- ❑ for lower center storage compartment

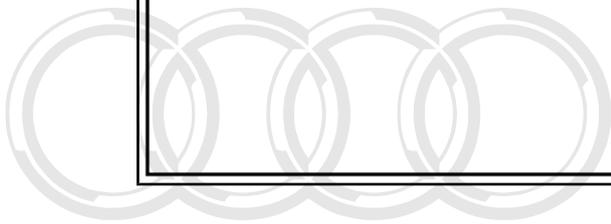
2 - Lower center storage compartment

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.5.17 Lower Center Storage Compartment", page 238](#)

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2




Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.


erWin

1.5.22 Rear Lid Trim Assembly Overview

1 - Rear lid

2 - Rear lid lock trim

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.5.19 Rear Lid Lock Trim"](#), page 240

3 - Rear lid trim

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.5.18 Rear Lid Trim"](#), page 239

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.8 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2

5 - Clips

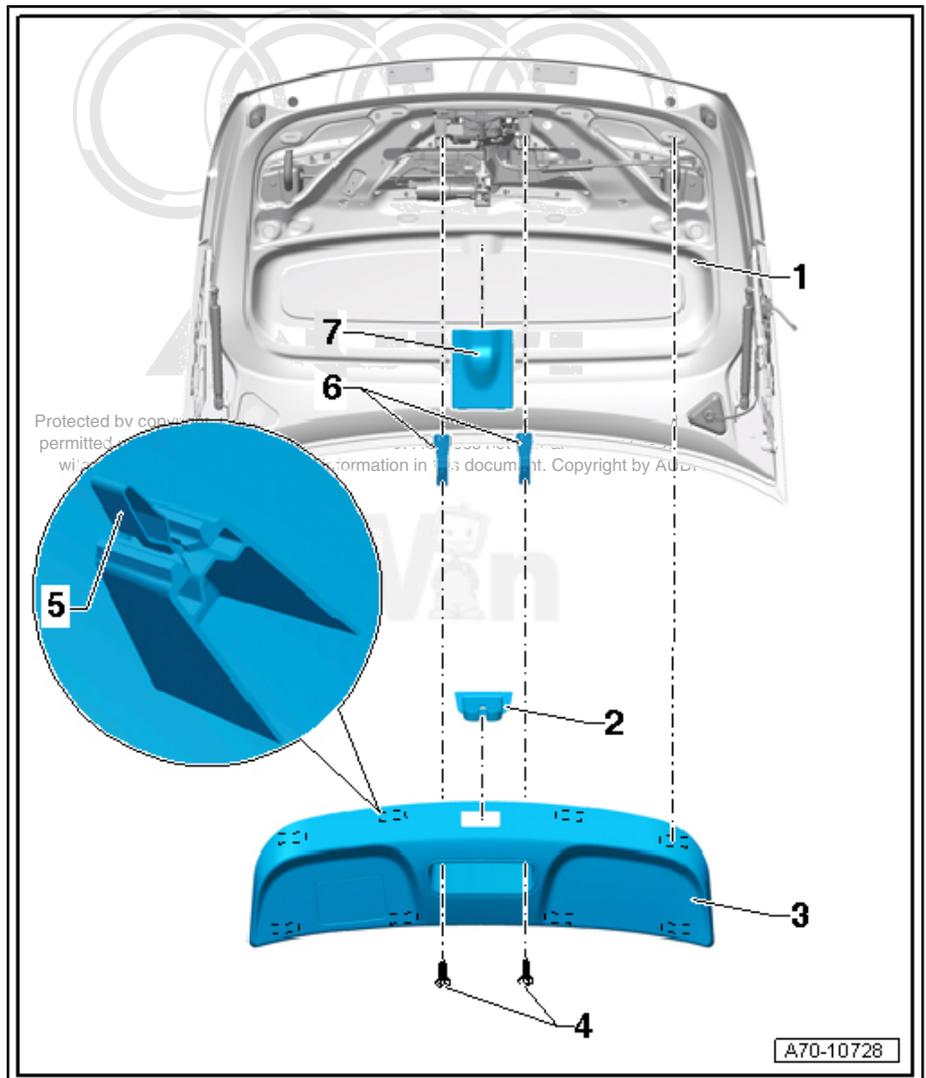
- ❑ Quantity: 8
- ❑ Replace if damaged or deformed

6 - Support

- ❑ Is engaged in the rear lid and bolted to rear lid trim

7 - Trim

- ❑ For SDARS antenna
- ❑ Not installed on all vehicles, note corresponding equipment
- ❑ Clip into rear lid



1.6 Roof Trim, Coupe

⇒ ["1.6.1 Headliner Assembly Overview", page 182](#)

⇒ ["1.6.2 Sun Visors Assembly Overview", page 183](#)

⇒ ["1.6.3 Sun Visor Center Mount Assembly Overview", page 184](#)

1.6.1 Headliner Assembly Overview

1 - Insulation

2 - Headliner

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to ["2.6.1 Headliner", page 242](#)

3 - Retaining clip

- ❑ Release ⇒ [page 244](#)

4 - Left sun visor

5 - Left cover

- ❑ For sun visor center bracket

6 - Left sun visor center bearing

7 - Left vanity mirror light

8 - Expanding clip

- ❑ Quantity: 2
- ❑ Removing, refer to ["page 244](#)

9 - Interior light/front reading light

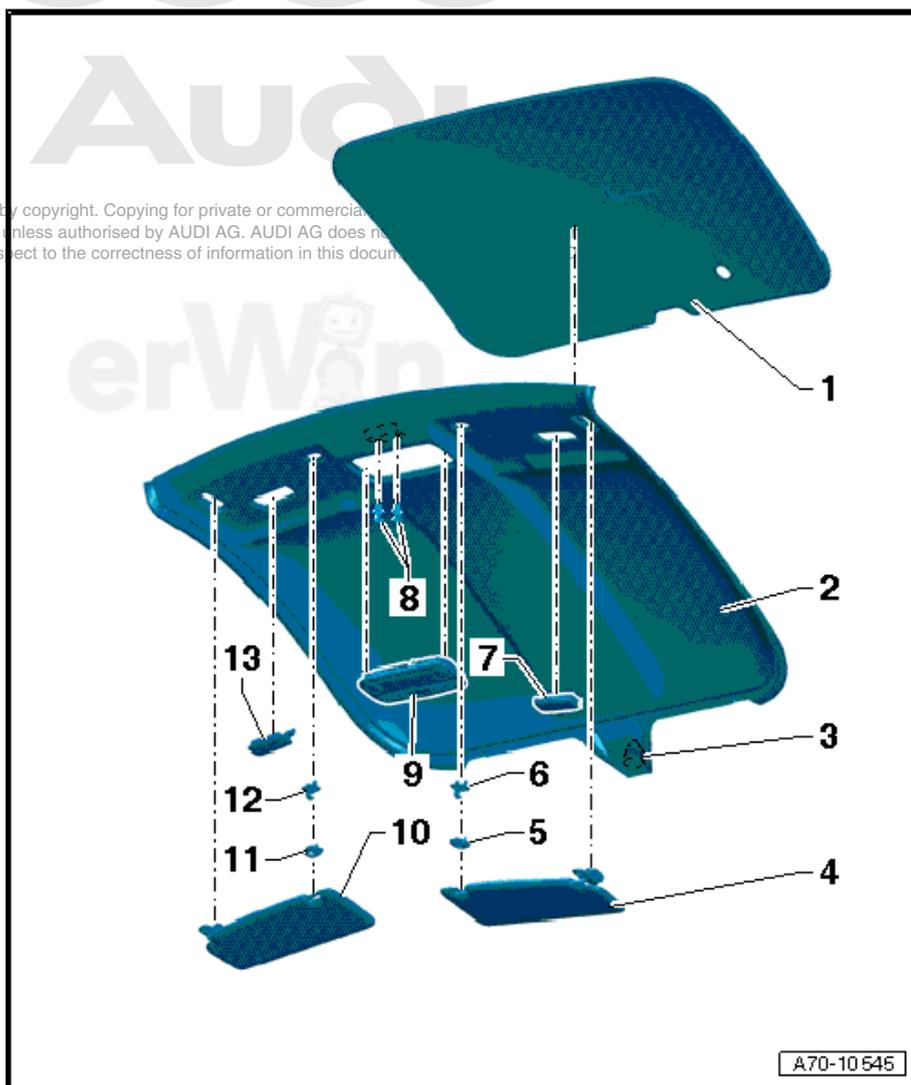
10 - Right sun visor

11 - Right cover

- ❑ For sun visor center bracket

12 - Right sun visor center bearing

13 - Right vanity mirror light



1.6.2 Sun Visors Assembly Overview

1 - Sun visor

- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.6.2 Sun Visors"](#),
 page 245

2 - Sun visor center bearing

- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.6.3 Sun Visor Center Mount"](#), page 245

3 - Headliner

4 - Connector

- From wiring harness

5 - Connector

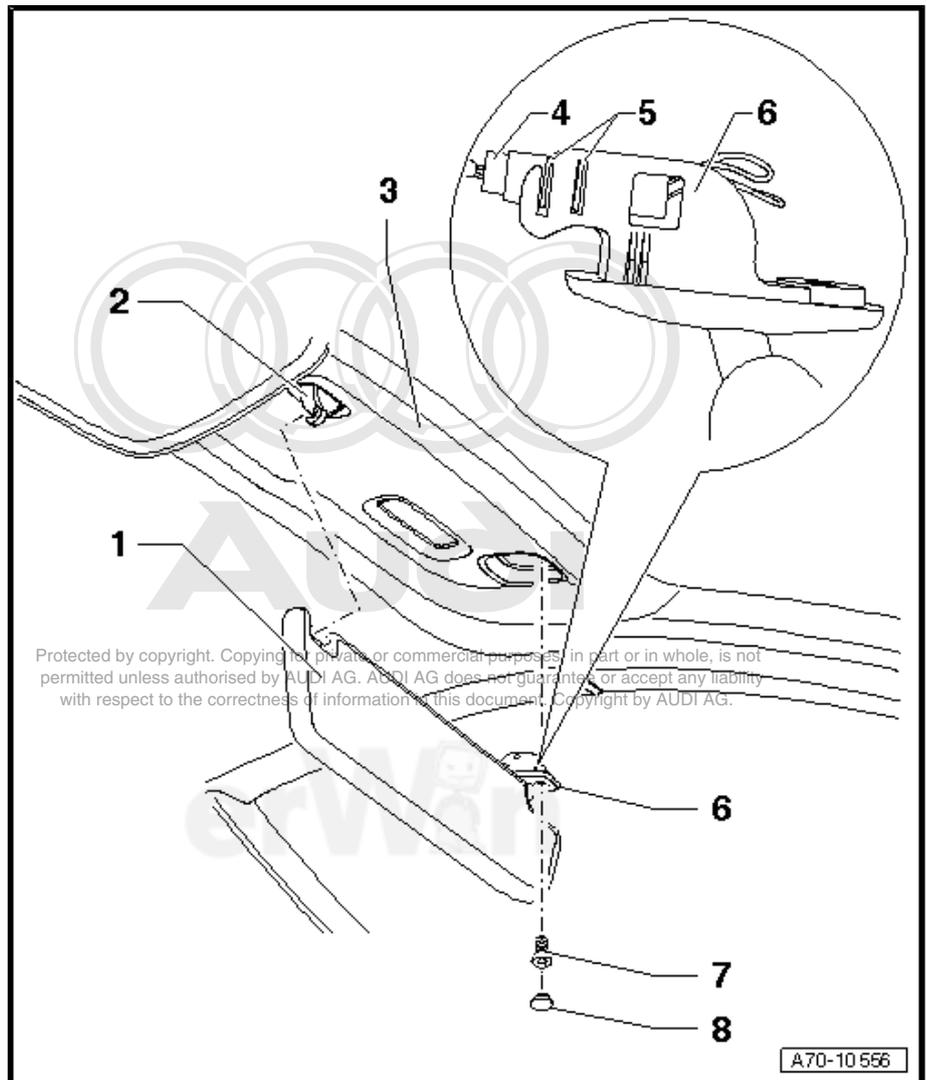
- From sun visor

6 - Sun visor mount

7 - Bolt

- 3.5 Nm

8 - Cover



1.6.3 Sun Visor Center Mount Assembly Overview

1 - Sun visor center bearing

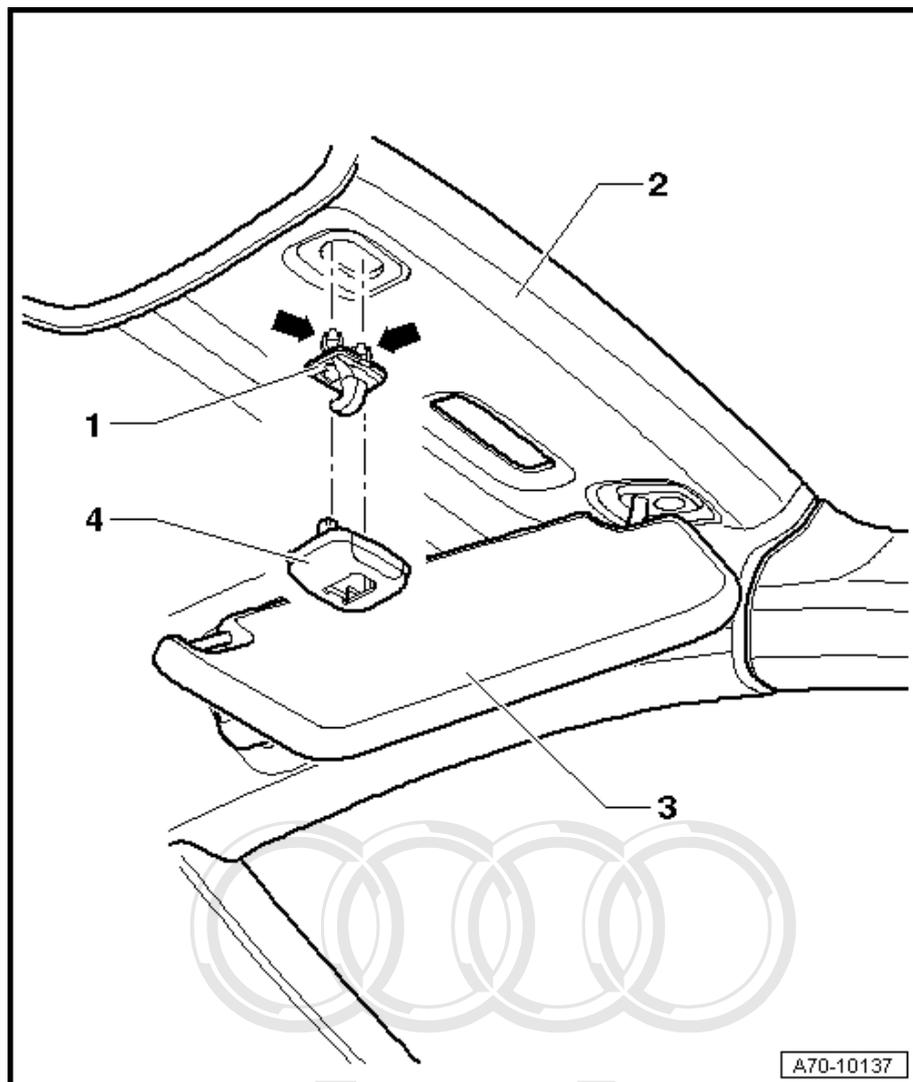
- Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.6.3 Sun Visor Center Mount", page 245](#)
- Replace sun visor center bearing if expanding tabs -arrows- are damaged

2 - Headliner

3 - Sun visor

4 - Cover

- Clipped into sun visor center bracket



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin

2 Removal and Installation

⇒ [“2.1 Door Trim”, page 185](#)

⇒ [“2.2 Instrument Panel”, page 193](#)

⇒ [“2.3 Central Tube”, page 200](#)

⇒ [“2.4 Trim, Coupe”, page 206](#)

⇒ [“2.5 Trim, Roadster”, page 224](#)

⇒ [“2.6 Roof Trim, Coupe”, page 242](#)

... for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for errors or omissions in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1 Door Trim

⇒ [“2.1.1 Mid-Range Speaker Trim”, page 185](#)

⇒ [“2.1.2 Bass Speaker Trim”, page 186](#)

⇒ [“2.1.3 BOSE Sound System Trim”, page 186](#)

⇒ [“2.1.4 Pull Handle Trim”, page 186](#)

⇒ [“2.1.5 Door Trim”, page 187](#)

⇒ [“2.1.6 Inner Cover”, page 190](#)

⇒ [“2.1.7 Inside Door Release Mechanism”, page 190](#)

⇒ [“2.1.8 Pull Handle”, page 191](#)

⇒ [“2.1.9 Armrest”, page 191](#)

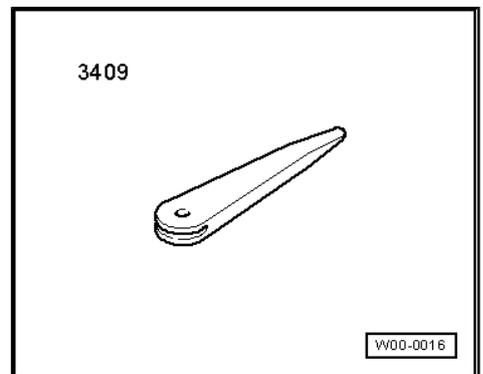
⇒ [“2.1.10 Mirror Adjustment Switch Mount”, page 192](#)

⇒ [“2.1.11 Window Regulator Switch Mount”, page 192](#)

2.1.1 Mid-Range Speaker Trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



Removing



Note

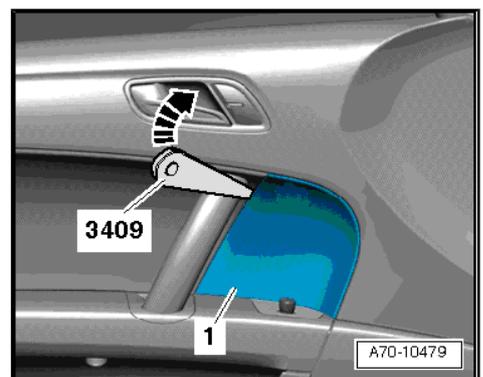
Removing and installing is identical for the left and right sides.

- Pry speaker trim -1- out of door trim -arrow- beginning at the back of the top corner using the Trim Removal Wedge -3409-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

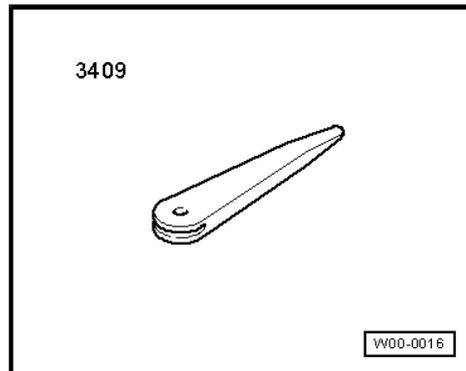
- Make sure the trim engages audibly.



2.1.2 Bass Speaker Trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-

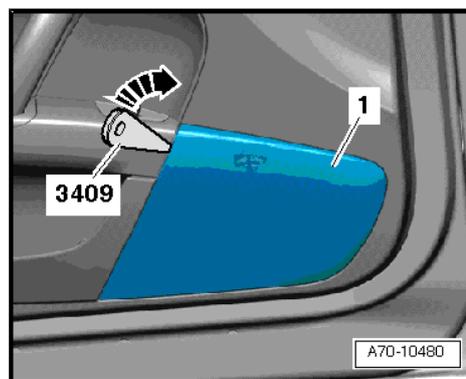


Removing



Removing and installing is identical for the left and right sides.

- Beginning at the armrest seal, pry speaker trim -1- out of door trim -arrow- at top and sides using Trim Removal Wedge -3409- .
- Pull speaker trim upward out of door trim.



Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- First engage bottom of speaker trim in door trim.
- Make sure the trim engages audibly.

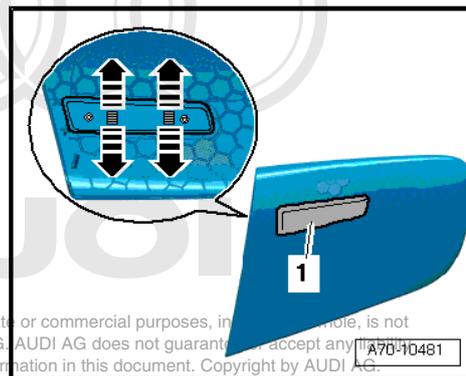
2.1.3 BOSE Sound System Trim

Removing



Removing and installing is identical for the left and right sides.

- Remove the speaker trim from the bass speaker. Refer to ⇒ ["2.1.2 Bass Speaker Trim", page 186](#) .
- Using a flat screwdriver, carefully pry out clips -arrows- and remove BOSE sound system trim panel -1- from speaker trim.



Installation

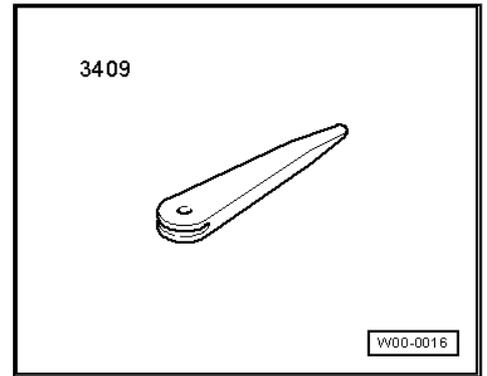
Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Make sure the side trim panel engages audibly.

2.1.4 Pull Handle Trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



Removing

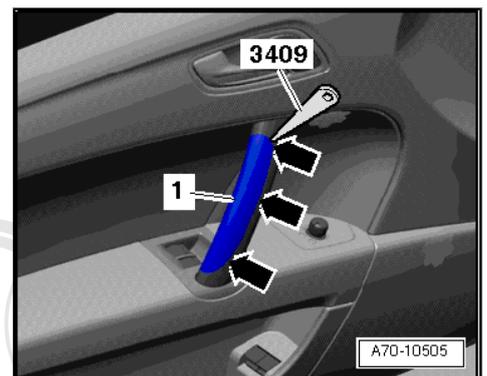


Removing and installing is identical for the left and right sides.

- Using Trim Removal Wedge -3409-, carefully pry out pull handle trim -1- -arrows-.

Installation

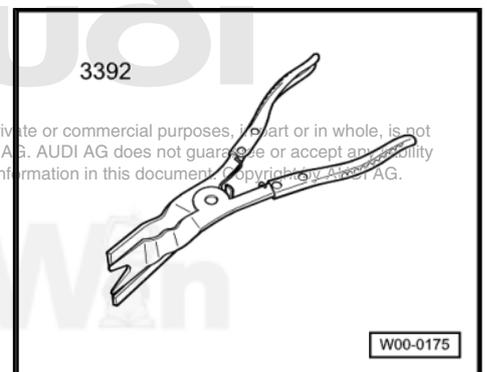
- Make sure the pull handle trim is engaged correctly.



2.1.5 Door Trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Pliers -3392-



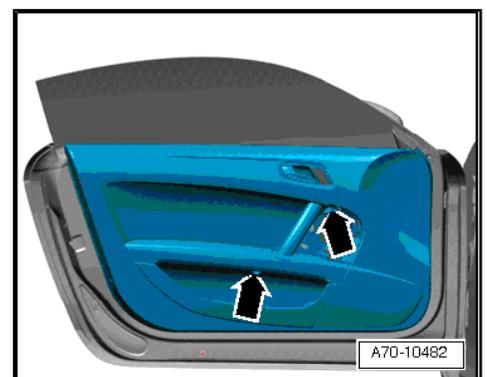
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG.

Removing

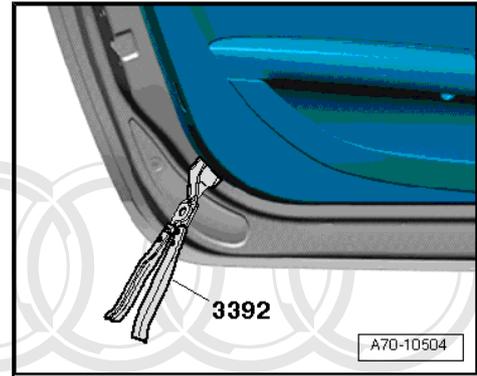


Removing and installing is identical for the left and right sides.

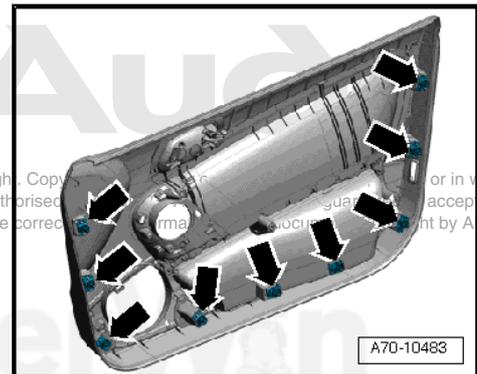
- Turn off the ignition and remove the key.
- Remove the trim from the midrange speaker. Refer to [⇒ "2.1.1 Mid-Range Speaker Trim", page 185](#).
- Remove the bolts -arrows-.



- Beginning at the bottom rear curve, unclip door trim from door with Pliers -3392- by sliding pliers between door trim and door in securing clip area.

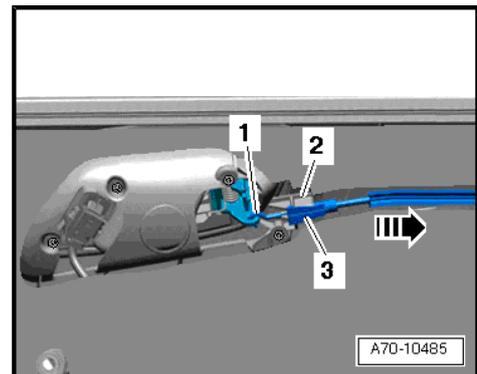


- Position of the retaining clips -arrows-.
- Disengage upper door trim from door in window shaft area by pulling door trim up.

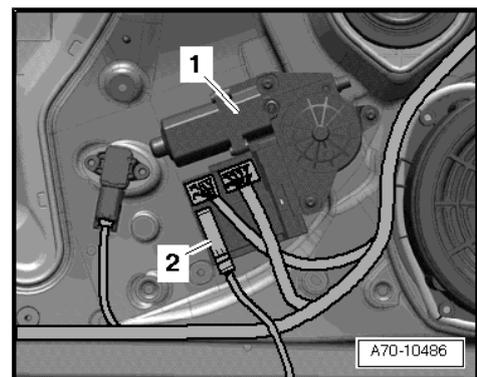


Protected by copyright. Copying or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised. Any liability accepted by Audi AG with respect to the correctness of the information is not the responsibility of Audi AG.

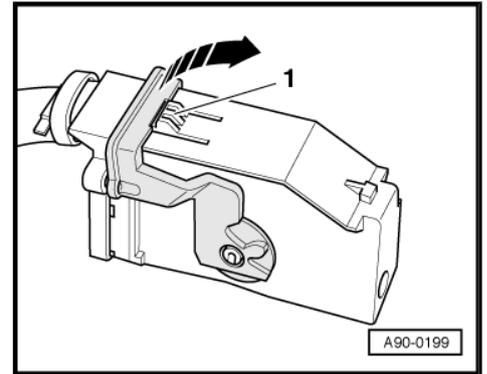
- Disengage the bracket -3- from the cable mounting bracket -2-.
- Pull interior door mechanism release cable in -direction of arrow- and out of bracket.
- Disengage end of cable -1- at door release mechanism.



- Disconnect electrical connector -2- on door control module -1-.



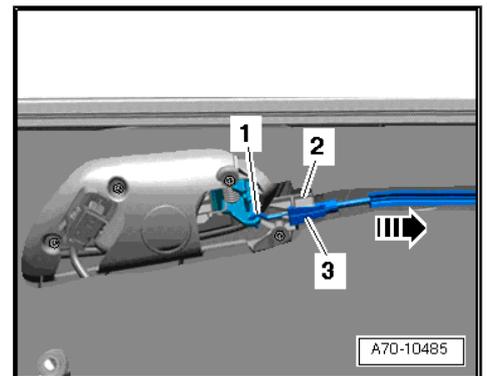
- To disconnect electrical connector, press catch -1-, rotate retaining bracket in direction of -arrow- and remove connector.
- Remove door trim.



Installation

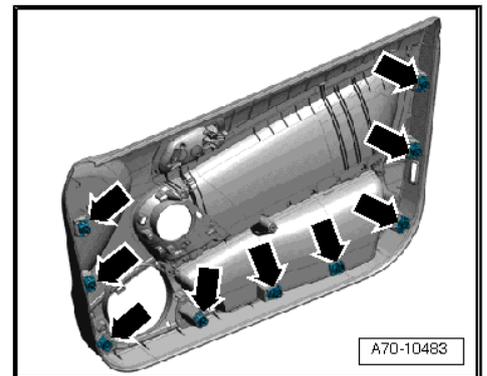
Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Engage end of cable -1- in door release mechanism lever.
- The open side of the eye on the end of the cable must face down.
- Pull inside door release cable in direction of -arrow- and guide it into bracket -2-.
- Attach the bracket -3- inside the cable mounting bracket.



 **WARNING**

- ◆ For proper crash sensor (pressure sensor) function, ensure door does not leak.
- ◆ The door trim clips -arrows- seal the system. Replace the clips if necessary.
- ◆ Follow the safety precautions for front side airbag crash sensors (pressure sensors). Refer to ["1.1.5 Front Side Airbag Crash Sensors Safety Precautions"](#), page 42.



For the correct tightening specifications; refer to ["1.1.1 Door Trim Assembly Overview"](#), page 133 .

Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

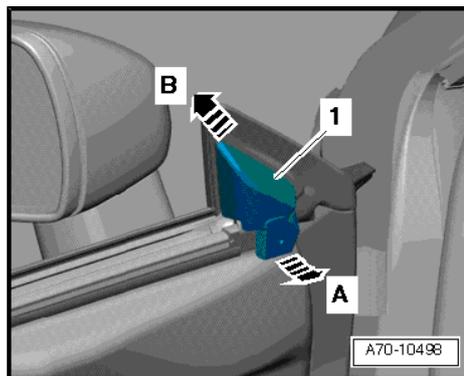
2.1.6 Inner Cover

Removing



Removing and installing is identical for the left and right sides.

- Remove the door trim panel. Refer to ⇒ ["2.1.5 Door Trim", page 187](#) .
- Unclip inner cover -1- from door -arrow A-.
- Push the inner cover upward -arrow B- and remove it.



Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Make sure the inner cover engages audibly.

2.1.7 Inside Door Release Mechanism

Removing



Removing and installing is identical for the left and right sides.

- Remove the door trim panel. Refer to ⇒ ["2.1.5 Door Trim", page 187](#) .

Driver side door trim:

- Remove the driver interior locking switch -E150- (central locking button). Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 96 ; Removal and Installation .

Procedure for both sides:

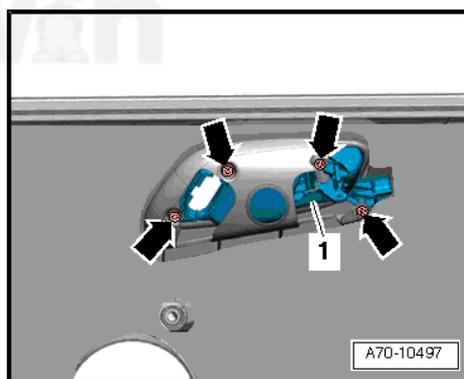
- Remove the bolts -arrows-.
- Remove door release mechanism -1- from door trim.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to ⇒ ["1.1.1 Door Trim Assembly Overview", page 133](#) .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



2.1.8 Pull Handle

Removing



Removing and installing is identical for the left and right sides.

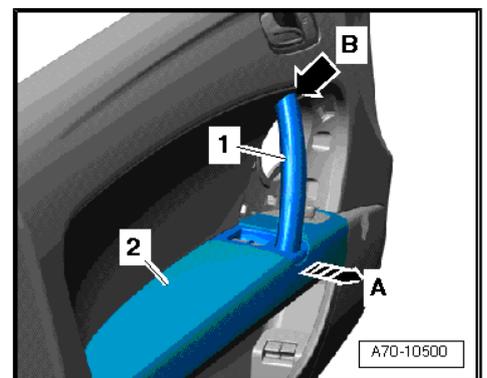
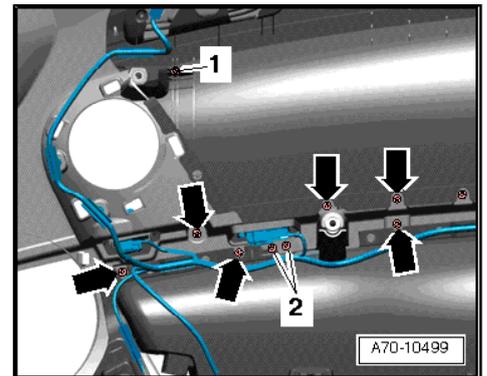
- Remove the door trim panel. Refer to [⇒ "2.1.5 Door Trim", page 187](#).
- Remove insulation from door trim.
- Remove armrest bolts -arrows-.
- Remove pull handle screws -1- and -2-.
- Pull armrest -2- away from door trim slightly in pull handle area -arrow A-.
- Disengage bottom of pull handle -1- from guide and top from door trim -arrow B-.
- Remove pull handle upward from armrest guide.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Make sure the top and bottom of pull handle engages in guides.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to [⇒ "1.1.1 Door Trim Assembly Overview", page 133](#).



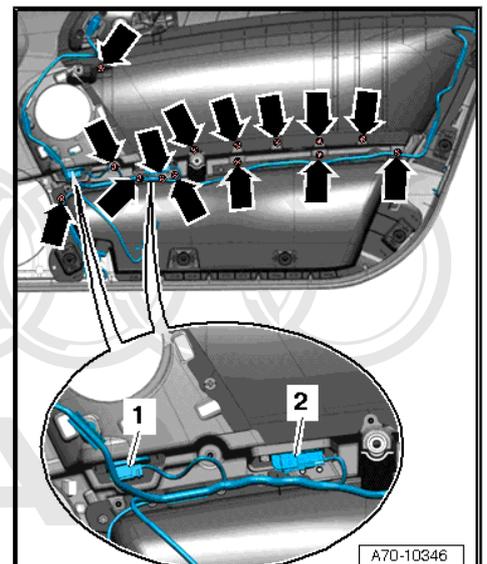
2.1.9 Armrest

Removing



Removing and installing is identical for the left and right sides.

- Remove the door trim panel. Refer to [⇒ "2.1.5 Door Trim", page 187](#).
- Remove insulation from door trim.
- Disconnect electrical connector at mirror adjustment switch -1- and window regulator switch -2-.
- Remove the bolts -arrows-.



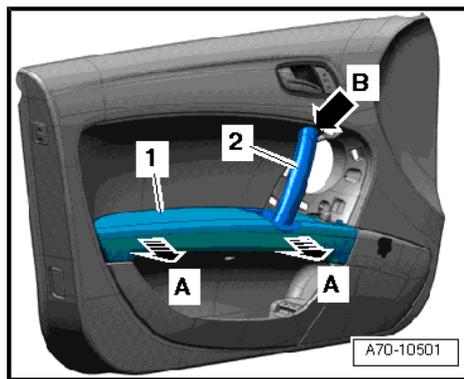
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Disengage top of pull handle -2- at door trim -arrow B- and remove it with armrest -1- -A arrows-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to ⇒ ["1.1.1 Door Trim Assembly Overview", page 133](#) .



2.1.10 Mirror Adjustment Switch Mount

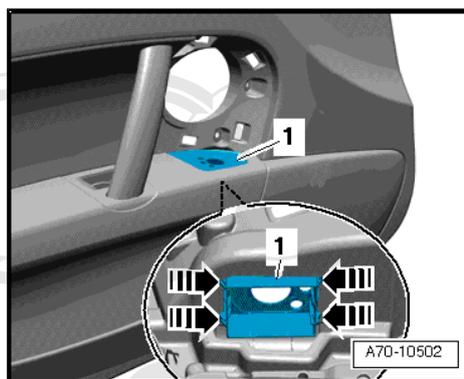
Removing

- Remove the door trim panel. Refer to ⇒ ["2.1.5 Door Trim", page 187](#) .
- Remove the mirror adjustment switch. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 96 ; Removal and Installation .
- Carefully release retaining hooks -arrows- with a small screwdriver.
- Press switch mount -1- up out of armrest.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Press switch mount into armrest until retaining hooks engage audibly.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1.11 Window Regulator Switch Mount

Removing

Note

Removing and installing is identical for the left and right sides.

- Remove armrest. Refer to ⇒ ["2.1.9 Armrest", page 191](#) .
- Remove the window regulator switch. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 96 ; Removal and Installation .
- Carefully release retaining hooks -arrows- with a small screwdriver.
- Press switch mount -1- up out of armrest.

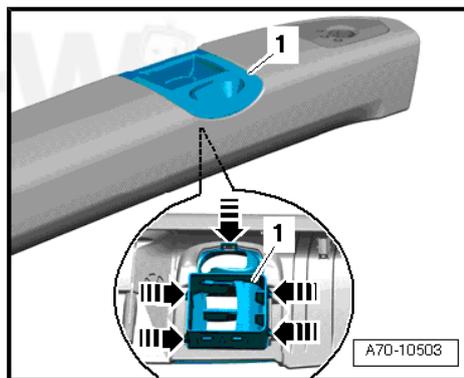
Note

The switch mount on the driver side is shown in the illustration.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Press switch mount into armrest until retaining hooks engage audibly.



2.2 Instrument Panel

- ⇒ ["2.2.1 Instrument Panel Side Cover", page 193](#)
- ⇒ ["2.2.2 Instrument Panel Vent", page 193](#)
- ⇒ ["2.2.3 Side Speaker Trim", page 194](#)
- ⇒ ["2.2.4 Center Speaker Trim", page 194](#)
- ⇒ ["2.2.5 Center Console Gap Cover", page 195](#)
- ⇒ ["2.2.6 Instrument Cluster Cover", page 195](#)
- ⇒ ["2.2.7 Radio and Navigation System Frame", page 196](#)
- ⇒ ["2.2.8 Instrument Panel", page 196](#)
- ⇒ ["2.2.9 Side Defroster Vents", page 199](#)
- ⇒ ["2.2.10 Center Defroster Vent", page 200](#)

2.2.1 Instrument Panel Side Cover

Removing



Note

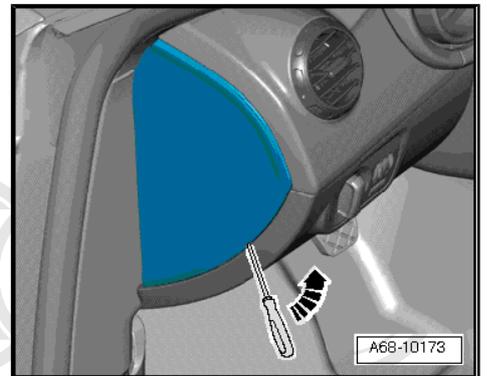
Removing and installing is identical for the left and right sides.

- Pry instrument panel side cover off with a screwdriver -arrow-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Press instrument panel side cover on until catches engage completely.



2.2.2 Instrument Panel Vent

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



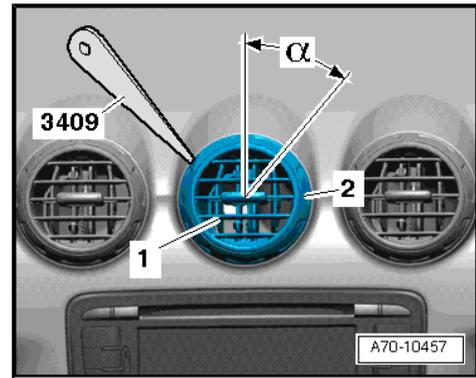
Removing



Note

Removal and installation on middle and sides is the same.

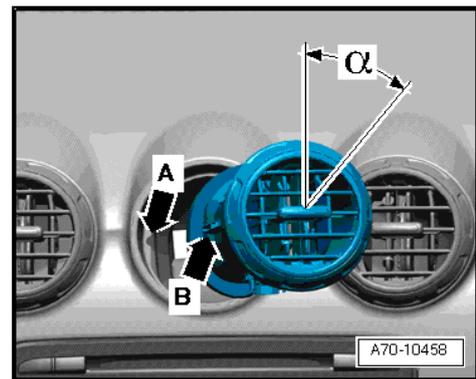
- Turn rotary ring -2- from left stop out - α - = 45° to the right.
- Using Trim Removal Wedge -3409- , pry instrument panel vent -1- from instrument panel.
- Remove instrument panel vent from instrument panel by hand.



Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Rotary ring must be - α - = 45° to the right.
- When sliding instrument panel vent into instrument panel, ensure guide -arrow B- engages in opening -arrow A-.
- Press instrument panel vent into installation opening as far as stop.



2.2.3 Side Speaker Trim

Removing



Note

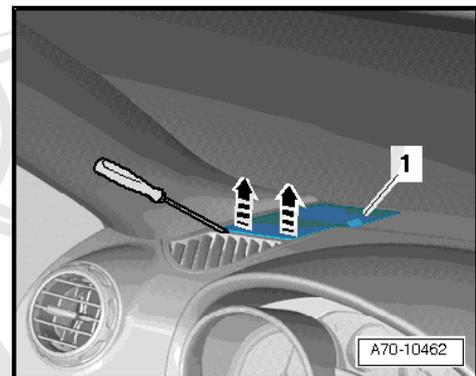
Removing and installing is identical for the left and right sides.

- Using a small screwdriver, carefully pry out speaker trim -1- -arrows-.
- Pull speaker trim back out of instrument panel.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- First insert front of speaker trim in instrument panel.
- Make sure the speaker trim engages audibly.



2.2.4 Center Speaker Trim

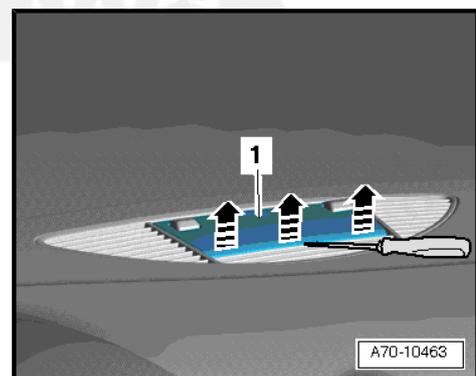
Removing

- Using a small screwdriver, carefully pry the trim off the speaker -1- -arrows-.
- Pull center speaker trim back out of instrument panel.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

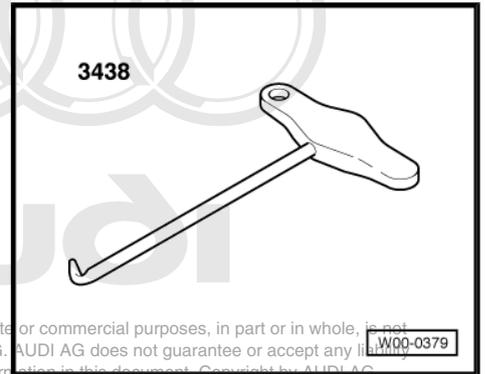
- Insert the center of the speaker trim into the instrument panel.
- Make sure the center speaker trim engages audibly.



2.2.5 Center Console Gap Cover

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Hook -3438-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

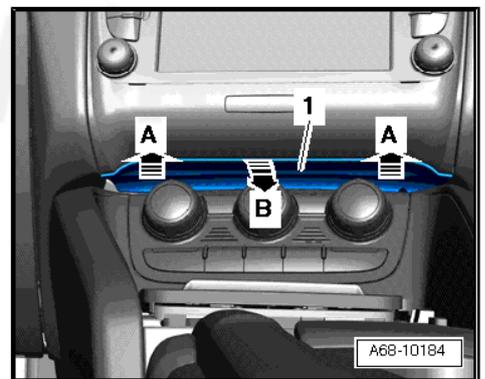
Removing

- Pull gap cover -1- back -A arrows- with Hook -3438- at left and right and carefully pry it down and out with a screwdriver -arrow B-.



Note

If center console gap cover cannot be removed in this way, pull radio or navigation system out of installation frame slightly. Refer to ⇒ Communication; Rep. Gr. 91 ; Removal and Installation .



Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.

2.2.6 Instrument Cluster Cover

Removing

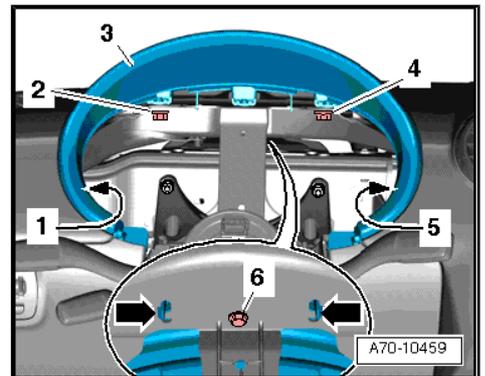
- Remove instrument cluster. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 90 ; Removal and Installation .
- If equipped, remove Tire Pressure Monitoring Control Module -J502- .
- Remove bolts -1, 2, 4, 5, 6-.
- Release retaining pins -arrows- and remove cover -3- upward.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Make sure the retaining pins engage audibly.

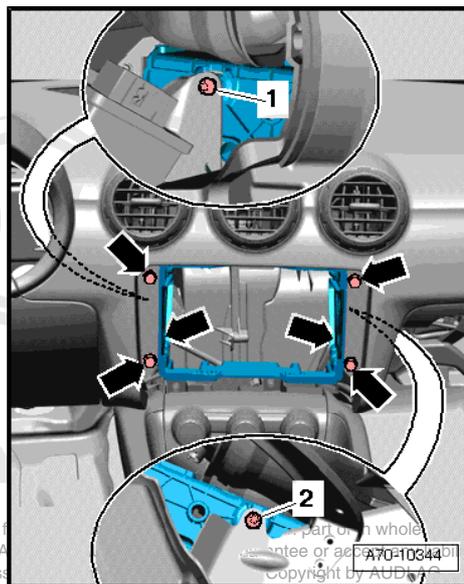
For the correct tightening specifications; refer to ⇒ "1.2.2 Instrument Panel Assembly Overview", page 137 .



2.2.7 Radio and Navigation System Frame

Removing

- Remove instrument cluster. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 90 ; Removal and Installation .
- Remove the glove compartment. Refer to ⇒ ["2.1.8 Glove Compartment", page 23](#) .
- Remove radio or navigation system. Refer to ⇒ Communication; Rep. Gr. 91 ; Removal and Installation .
- Remove center console gap cover. Refer to ⇒ ["2.2.5 Center Console Gap Cover", page 195](#) .
- Remove center console side screws -1- and -2-.
- Remove the bolts -arrows-.



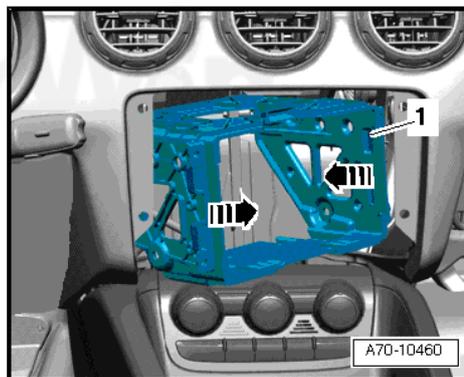
Protected by copyright. Copying is permitted unless authorised by Audi AG with respect to the correctness

- Turn installation frame -1- 90° in direction of -arrow- while pushing installation frame bracket to side slightly.
- Remove installation frame.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to ⇒ ["1.2.2 Instrument Panel Assembly Overview", page 137](#) .



2.2.8 Instrument Panel

Removing

- Position steering wheel so that it is as far rearward and down as possible, using full adjustment range of steering column adjuster.
- Adjust front seat all the way back and place backrest in 45° position.

Vehicles with a DSG transmission:

- Shift selector lever into "S" position.

All:



WARNING

- ◆ Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38](#) .

- Switch off the ignition.
- Disconnect battery ground cable. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .

- Remove the airbag unit.
- Remove steering wheel.
- Remove driver side instrument panel cover. Refer to [⇒ "2.1.1 Driver Side Instrument Panel Cover", page 18](#) .
- Remove the left front upper body vent temperature sensor - G385- from the air guide channel.

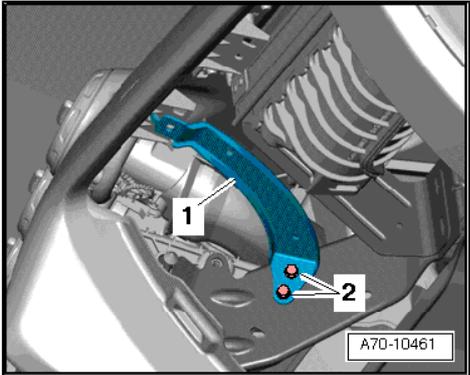
 **Note**

Left Vent Temperature Sensor -G150- electrical connector must not be disconnected.

- Remove instrument cluster. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 90 ; Removal and Installation .
- If equipped, remove Tire Pressure Monitoring Control Module -J502- .
- Remove radio or navigation system. Refer to ⇒ Communication; Rep. Gr. 91 ; Removal and Installation .
- Remove the glove compartment. Refer to [⇒ "2.1.8 Glove Compartment", page 23](#) .
- Remove the bolts -2-.
- Disengage support -1- at instrument panel and remove it.

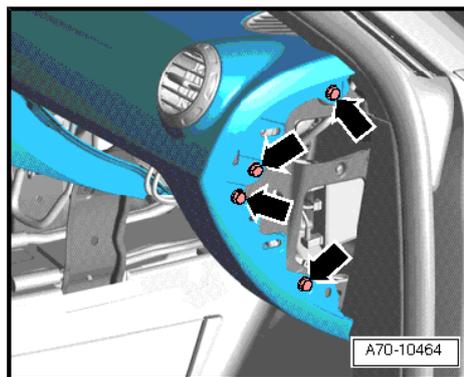
 **WARNING**

◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to [⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38](#) .*



- Remove the front passenger airbag unit bracket. Refer to [⇒ "3.6.2 Front Passenger Airbag Unit Bracket", page 105](#) .
- Remove front center console. Refer to [⇒ "2.2.13 Front Center Console", page 31](#) .
- Remove center speaker trim. Refer to [⇒ "2.2.4 Center Speaker Trim", page 194](#) .
- Remove Center Mid/High Range Loudspeaker -R158- from instrument panel.
- Remove Sunlight Photo Sensor (3241) -G107- .
- Remove Central Locking -SAFE- Indicator Lamp -K133- .
- Remove the left and right A-pillar trim. Refer to [⇒ "2.4.1 A-Pillar Upper Trim", page 206](#) .
- Remove side speaker trim. Refer to [⇒ "2.2.3 Side Speaker Trim", page 194](#) .
- Disconnect treble speaker electrical connector and free it up.

- Remove passenger side instrument panel cover. Refer to [⇒ "2.2.1 Instrument Panel Side Cover", page 193](#).
- Remove left and right instrument panel screws -arrows-.



- Remove instrument panel bolts -arrows-.
- Carefully pull instrument panel down from central tube.

**Note**

2 technicians are needed to remove the instrument panel.

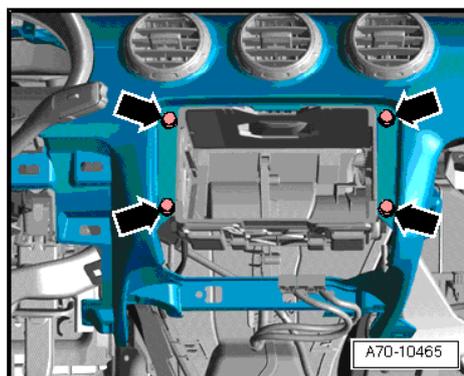
- Remove instrument panel from the vehicle interior.
- Lay instrument panel on a soft surface.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

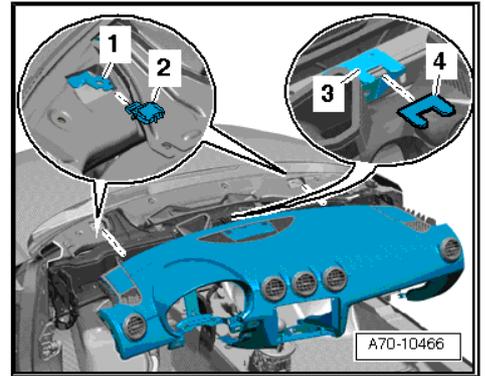
**WARNING**

- ◆ **Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to [⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38](#).**
- ◆ **Follow the allocation of the airbag unit to the instrument panel.**



- Position instrument panel and guide electrical connectors for Sunlight Photo Sensor -G107-, Central Locking -SAFE- Indicator Lamp -K133- and speaker through openings in instrument panel.

- Check whether a rubber buffer -2- is present at left and right on clamp -1- on lower windshield frame.
- Check whether there is a plastic cap -4- on centering bracket -3- on central tube.
- When sliding instrument panel on, ensure clips engage in box-shaped profiles on bottom side of instrument panel.
- Align instrument panel and tighten screws.



 **WARNING**

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written permission of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.
- **Switch on ignition.**
 - Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ [Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation](#) .
 - If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to ⇒ ["1.2.2 Instrument Panel Assembly Overview", page 137](#) .

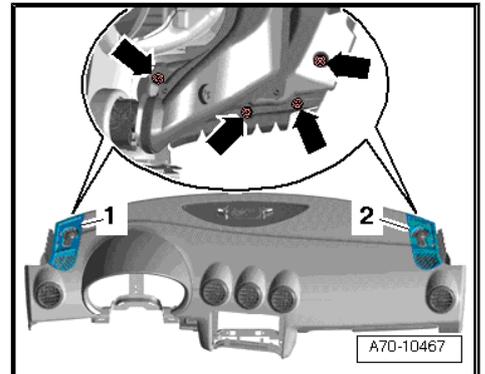
2.2.9 Side Defroster Vents

Removing

 **Note**

Removing and installing is identical for the left and right sides.

- Remove instrument panel. Refer to ⇒ ["2.2.8 Instrument Panel", page 196](#) .
- Remove bolts -arrows- on bottom side of instrument panel.
- Remove defroster vents -1- and -2- up out of instrument panel.



Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

 **Note**

When tightening nuts, ensure there is an even distance between the upper side of the instrument panel and the upper edge of the defroster vent as well as an even gap all the way around.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to ⇒ ["1.2.2 Instrument Panel Assembly Overview", page 137](#) .

2.2.10 Center Defroster Vent

Removing

- Remove instrument panel. Refer to [⇒ "2.2.8 Instrument Panel", page 196](#) .
- Remove bolts -arrows- on bottom side of instrument panel.
- Remove center defroster vent -1- up out of instrument panel.

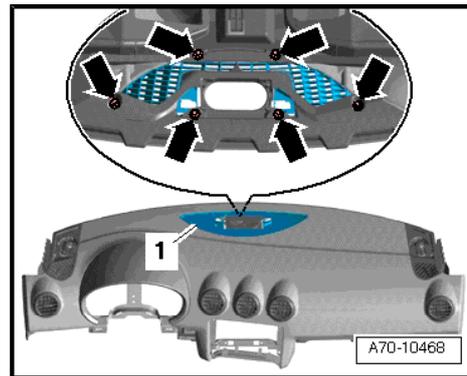
Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:



When tightening nuts, ensure there is an even distance between the upper side of the instrument panel and the upper edge of the center defroster vent as well as an even gap all the way around.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to [⇒ "1.2.2 Instrument Panel Assembly Overview", page 137](#) .



2.3 Central Tube

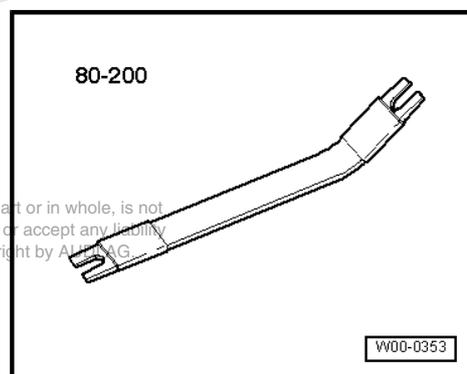
[⇒ "2.3.1 Central Tube", page 200](#)

2.3.1 Central Tube

Special tools and workshop equipment required

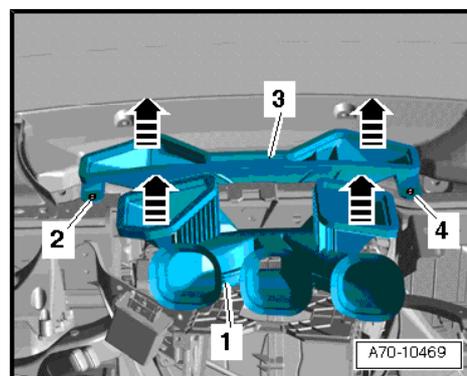
- ◆ Pry lever -80 - 200-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG



Removing

- Remove instrument panel. Refer to [⇒ "2.2.8 Instrument Panel", page 196](#) .
- Pull air duct -1- up off of A/C unit -arrows-.
- Release expanding clips -2- and -4- by pressing clamping pin in approximately 5 mm using a screwdriver.
- Pull air duct -3- up slightly from central tube -arrows-, but do not remove completely.

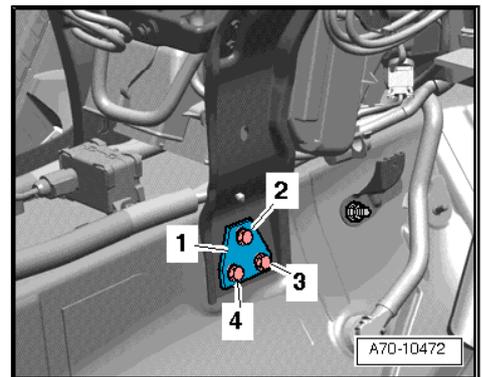
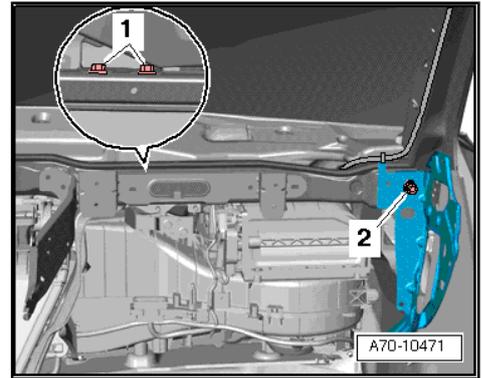


- Remove wiring guide bolts -1- on central tube.
- Remove central tube nut -2-.
- If present, remove Telephone Amplifier -R86- on right bracket.

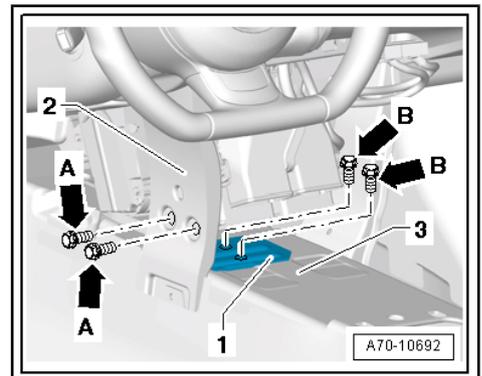
Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

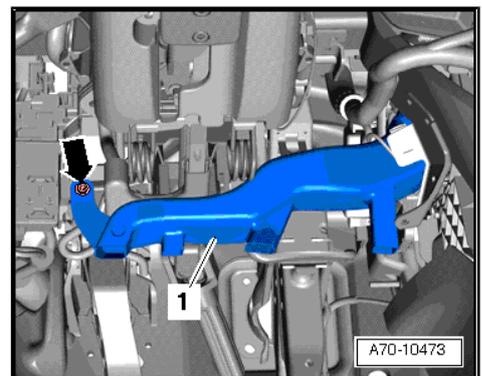
- Remove bolts -2 through 4- on left and right support and remove intermediate plate -1-.



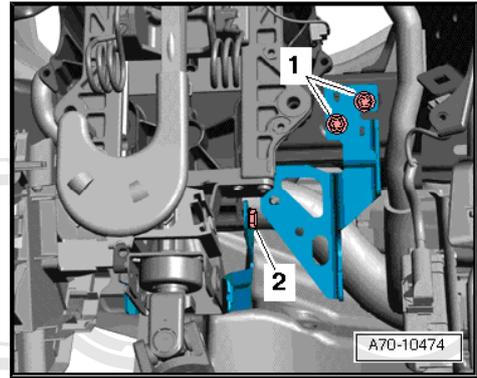
- Roadster: remove the bolts -arrows A- and -arrows B- and then remove the tunnel support reinforcement -1- from the left support -2- and from the front tunnel -3-.
- Remove Headlamp Range Control Module -J431- , electrical connector must not be loosened. Refer to => Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 94 ; Removal and Installation .
- Leave Head Range Control Module -J431- with electrical lines connected in vehicle.



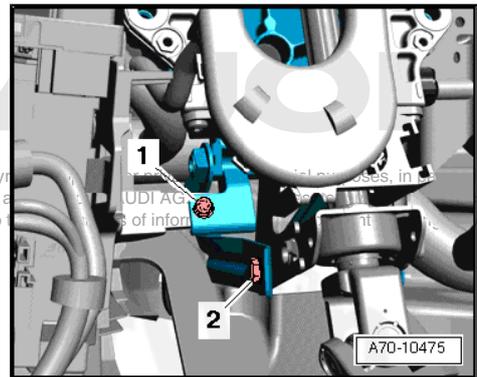
- Remove bolt -arrow- and remove air duct -1-.



- Remove bolts -1- on bottom of carrier.
- Remove lower brace bolt -2- on steering column mounting bracket.

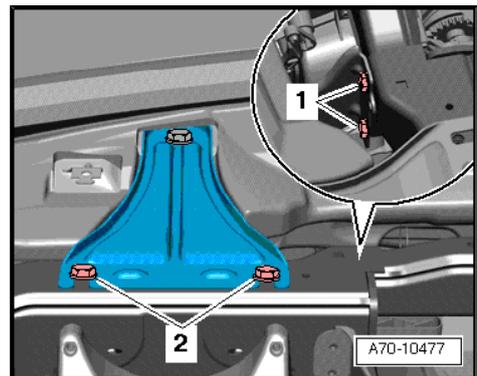


- Remove lower relay and fuse carrier bolt -1- on steering column mounting bracket.
- Loosen steering column bolt -2- a few turns.

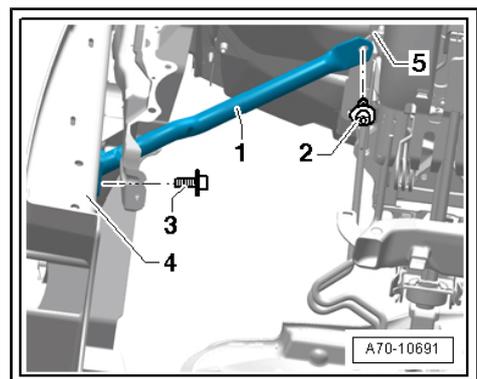


Protected by copyright. All rights reserved. Audi AG. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system, without the prior written permission of Audi AG.

- Remove A/C unit bracket bolts -1- on central tube.
- Loosen bolts -2- on upper brace several turns.



- Roadster: remove the bolts -2- and -3- and then remove the brace -1- from the A-pillar -4- and from the steering column bracket -5-.
- Remove the left instrument panel fuse panel. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 97 ; Removal and Installation .
- Lay fuse holder with connected wiring harness aside.

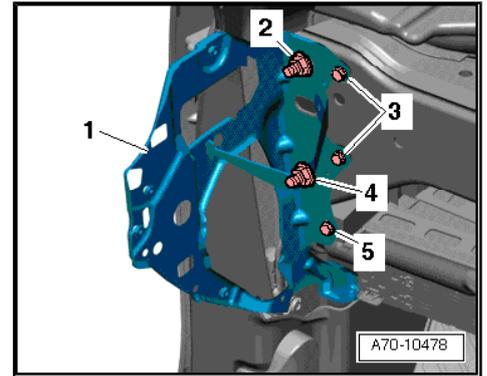


- Remove screws -3- and -5-.
- Remove nuts -2- and -4- and remove instrument panel bracket -1-.
- Remove steering column from steering column bracket.
- Lay steering column in the footwell on a suitable surface.



Caution

Mark height and side position on central tube for reinstallation.



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Pull central tube -3- with cable guide as far from bulkhead as possible.
- Remove left front wiring guide bolts -1- on central tube.
- Remove right front wiring guide bolts -2- on central tube.

**Note**

2 technicians are needed to remove instrument panel central pipe.

- Tip the top side of the central tube back.
- Remove central tube from vehicle interior.

Installation

- Insert central tube in body according to markings applied.
- Hand tighten left and right front wiring guide on central tube.
- Align central tube according to markings applied to A-pillar during removal.
- Tighten left and right central tube nuts.

Further installation is performed in reverse sequence of removal, but observe the following:

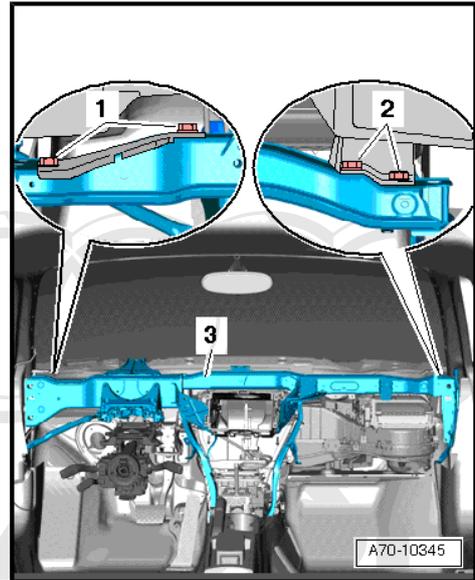
- Install Headlamp Range Control Module -J431- .
- Tighten steering column on steering column mounting bracket.
- If present, install Telephone Amplifier -R86- on right bracket.
- Install the left instrument panel fuse panel.

Check location of instrument panel central tube

- Insert instrument panel to test.
- Secure instrument panel at left and right to instrument panel central tube.
- Close doors.
- Check whether gap dimension between instrument panel and left and right doors is even.
- Check whether height of instrument panel aligns with molding in door trim.

If the adjustment is not correct:

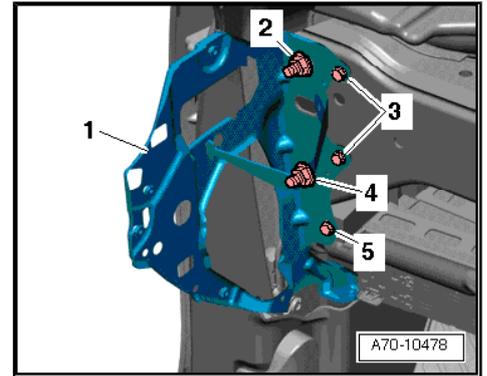
- Note side or height deviation.
- Remove instrument panel again.
- Loosen instrument panel central tube screws.
- Adjust instrument panel central tube according to noted deviations.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Tighten left and right instrument panel central tube bolts -2- and -4-.



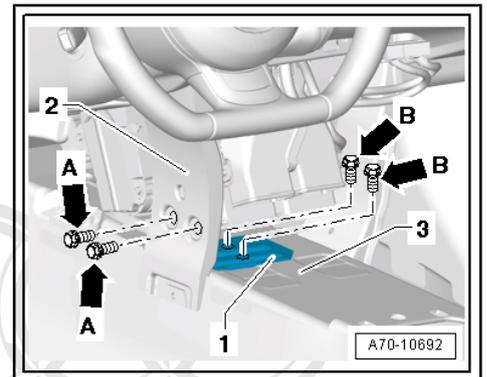
 **Note**

The tunnel support reinforcement is only on the driver side on the Roadster.

- Slide tunnel support reinforcement -1- onto left support -2- as far as stop.

 **Note**

Do not switch bolts -arrows A- and -arrows B- in their bolting points. The bolts are different lengths.



- Install bolts -A arrows- (M6, 20 mm long) and -B arrows- (M6, 12 mm long) in front tunnel -3- and tighten by hand.
- Tighten the bolts -arrows A- and -arrows B-.



WARNING

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Switch on ignition.
- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again. Refer to ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

For the correct tightening specifications, refer to ⇒ "1.3.1 Central Tube Assembly Overview", page 139 .

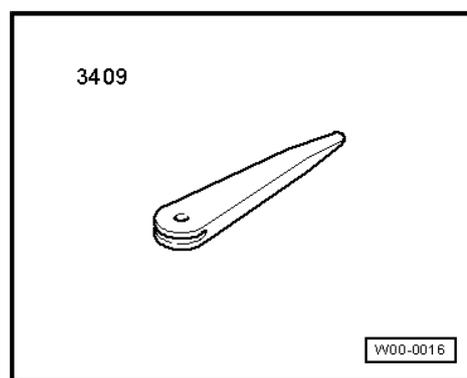
2.4 Trim, Coupe

- ⇒ ["2.4.1 A-Pillar Upper Trim", page 206](#)
- ⇒ ["2.4.2 Lower A-Pillar Trim", page 207](#)
- ⇒ ["2.4.3 Foot Rest Cover", page 209](#)
- ⇒ ["2.4.4 Foot Rest Mount", page 210](#)
- ⇒ ["2.4.5 Sill Panel Trim", page 210](#)
- ⇒ ["2.4.6 C-Pillar Trim", page 211](#)
- ⇒ ["2.4.7 Rear Side Trim", page 213](#)
- ⇒ ["2.4.8 Rear Side Trim Panel, after July 2011, Installing", page 215](#)
- ⇒ ["2.4.9 C-Pillar, Rear Side Trim Panel and Luggage Compartment Side Trim Panel Brackets", page 216](#)
- ⇒ ["2.4.10 Belt Extraction Panel", page 217](#)
- ⇒ ["2.4.11 Roof Panel Trim", page 217](#)
- ⇒ ["2.4.12 Floor Covering", page 218](#)
- ⇒ ["2.4.13 Upper Rear Lid Trim", page 219](#)
- ⇒ ["2.4.14 Lower Rear Lid Trim", page 220](#)
- ⇒ ["2.4.15 Rear Lid Lock Trim", page 221](#)
- ⇒ ["2.4.16 Front Rear Shelf", page 221](#)
- ⇒ ["2.4.17 Rear Shelf Rear Section", page 221](#)
- ⇒ ["2.4.18 Rear Cross Panel Trim", page 222](#)
- ⇒ ["2.4.19 Luggage Compartment Side Trim", page 222](#)
- ⇒ ["2.4.20 Tie-Downs", page 223](#)
- ⇒ ["2.4.21 Luggage Compartment Liner", page 223](#)

2.4.1 A-Pillar Upper Trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

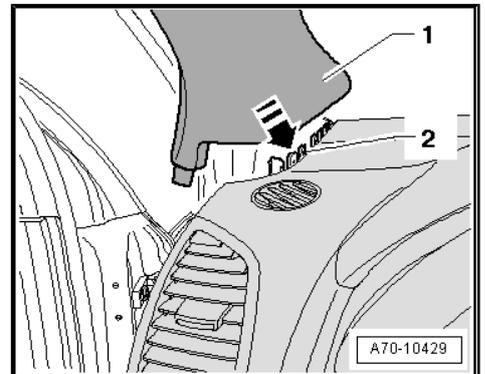
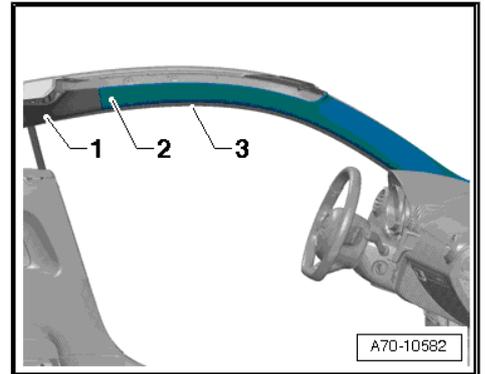
- Unclip the trim on the C-pillar -1- close to the top of the A-pillar trim -2-. Refer to ⇒ [“2.4.6 C-Pillar Trim”, page 211](#) .
- Unclip the upper A-pillar trim -2- beginning at top using Trim Removal Wedge -3409- .
- Remove upper A-pillar trim -2- upward.

Installation

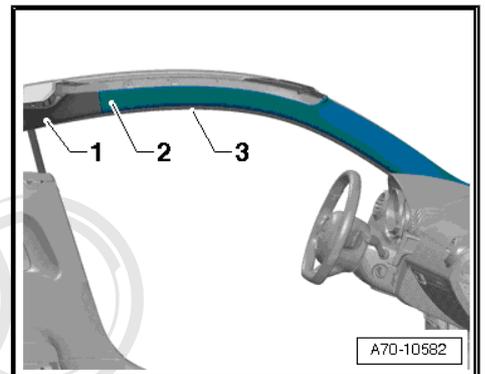
Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

Note

- ◆ *If trim clamps remain in body mounting points, remove these and insert them in trim.*
 - ◆ *Check clamps for damage or deformation, replace if necessary.*
- First insert upper A-pillar trim -1- in ribbed instrument panel ridge -2- in direction of -arrow-.



- Clip upper A-pillar trim -2- in and stretch lip of door seal -3- over upper A-pillar trim -2-.



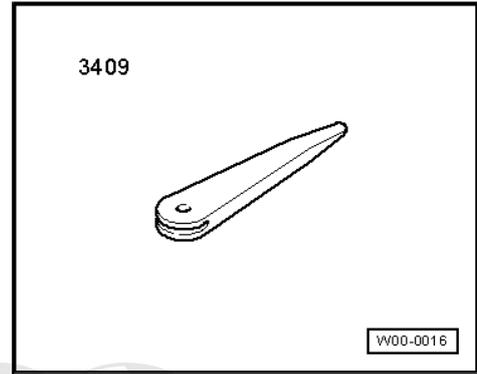
2.4.2 Lower A-Pillar Trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin

◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



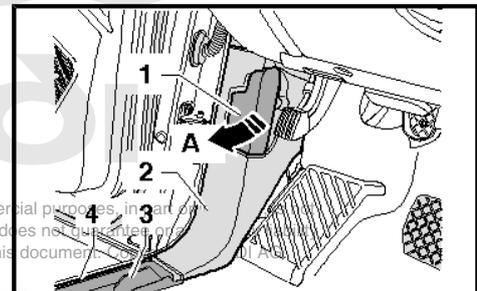
Removing

Driver Side Only

- Pull the operating lever -1- in direction of -arrow A-. The hood unlocks.

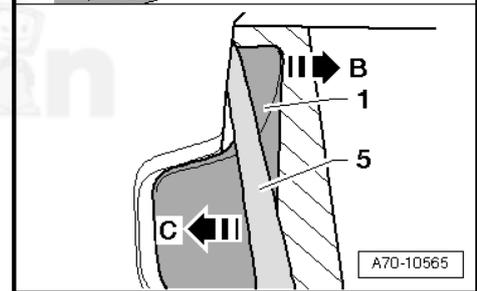
At the same time, operating lever -1- is guided out of guide in lower A-pillar trim -2-.

- Insert screwdriver -5- in gap between operating lever -1- and lower A-pillar trim -2-.



Caution

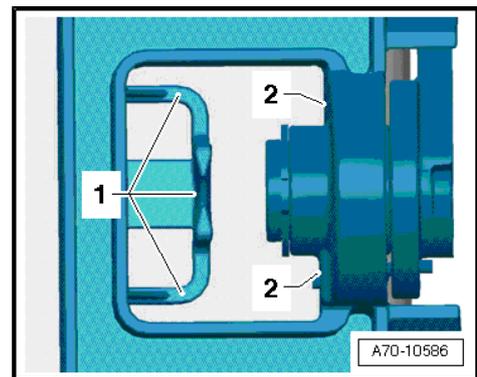
- ◆ **When removing, operating lever -1- must be pried straight out of its mount in direction of -arrow C- and pulled out straight by hand in direction of -arrow B- at the same time.**
- ◆ **If the operating lever -1- is pulled out crooked or tilted, the mount can be damaged. A damaged mount must be replaced.**



- Pry operating lever -1- straight out of mount.
- Check securing clip mount on securing points -1- and mount on securing points -2- for damage.

Procedure for both sides of vehicle

- Remove side instrument panel cover. Refer to [⇒ "2.2.1 Instrument Panel Side Cover", page 193](#).



- Remove the sill panel -3- from the door sill in the transition area to the trim at the bottom of the A-pillar. Refer to ⇒ [“2.4.5 Sill Panel Trim”, page 210](#) .
- Unclip lower A-pillar trim -2- with Trim Removal Wedge -3409- .

Installation

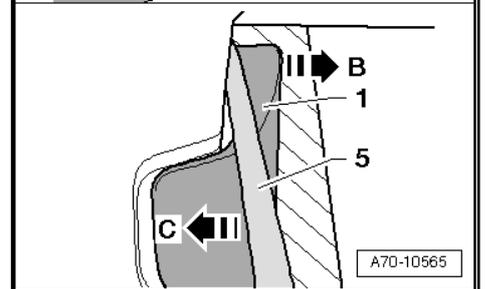
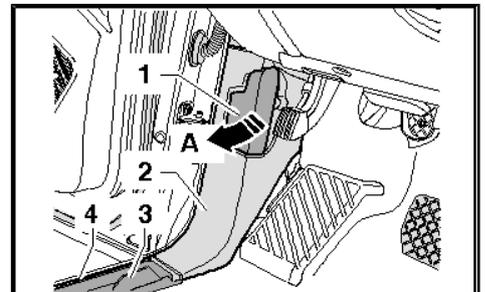
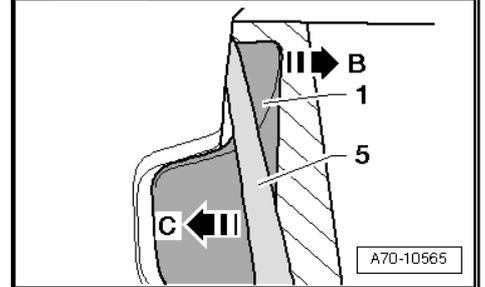
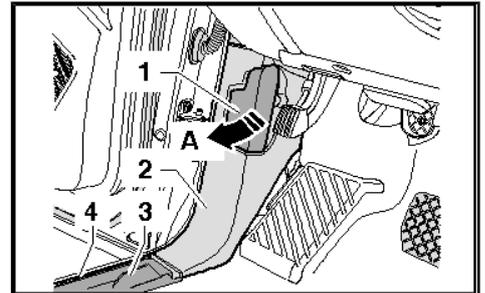
Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

Note

- ◆ *If trim clamps remain in body mounting points, remove these and insert them in trim.*
- ◆ *Check clamps for damage or deformation, replace if necessary.*

- Clip in lower A-pillar trim -2- and stretch lip of door seal -4- over upper A-pillar trim -1- and sill panel strip -3-.
- Insert operating lever -1- approximately halfway into mount and turn in direction of -arrow A-.
- Carefully press operating lever -1- into mount as far as stop and guide into guide in lower A-pillar trim -2-.

Mount tightening specification, refer to ⇒ [“1.4.3 Lower A-Pillar Trim Assembly Overview”, page 146](#) .



2.4.3 Foot Rest Cover

Removing

- Remove driver side instrument panel cover. Refer to ⇒ [“2.1.1 Driver Side Instrument Panel Cover”, page 18](#) .
- Remove the lower A-pillar trim. Refer to ⇒ [“2.4.2 Lower A-Pillar Trim”, page 207](#) .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



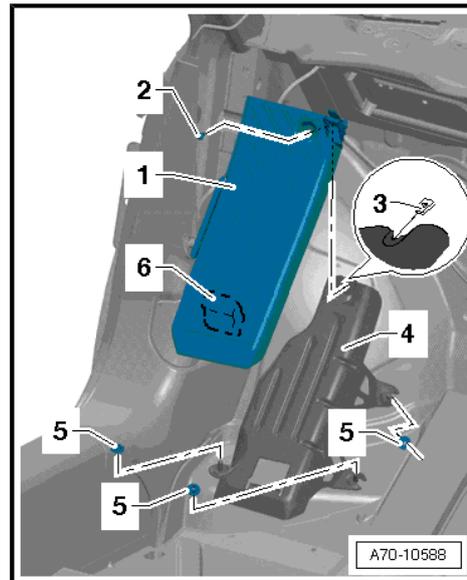
- Remove the bolt -2-.
- Push the foot support cover -1- far enough upward until the tab -6- disengages from the mount -4-.
- Remove the foot support cover -1-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Make sure the tab -6- engages securely into the mount.
- Make sure spring nut -3- fits correctly on the foot rest mount -4-.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to
 ⇒ ["1.4.4 Footrest Cover and Bracket Assembly Overview"](#),
[page 147](#) .



2.4.4 Foot Rest Mount

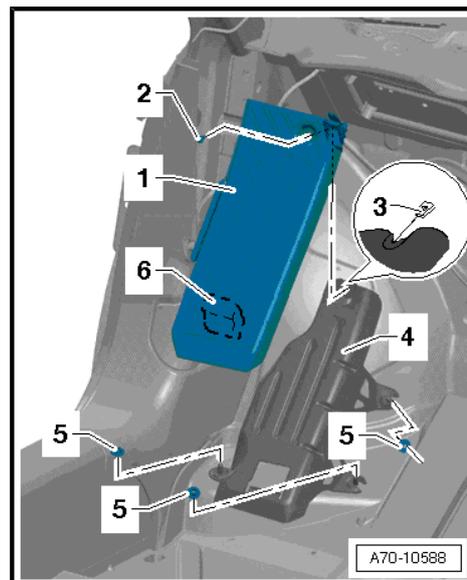
Removing

- Remove the foot rest cover -1-. Refer to
 ⇒ ["2.4.3 Foot Rest Cover"](#), [page 209](#) .
- Fold the floor covering back in the footrest area.
- Remove 3 nuts -5-.
- Remove the foot rest mount -4-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.

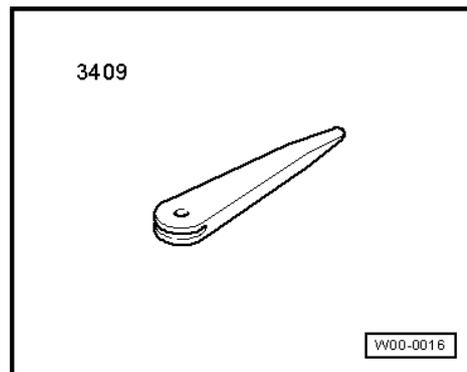
For the correct tightening specifications; refer to
 ⇒ ["1.4.4 Footrest Cover and Bracket Assembly Overview"](#),
[page 147](#) .



2.4.5 Sill Panel Trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



Removing

- Remove side trim -1-. Refer to [⇒ “2.4.7 Rear Side Trim”, page 213](#) .
- Unclip sill panel strip -3- with Trim Removal Wedge -3409- .

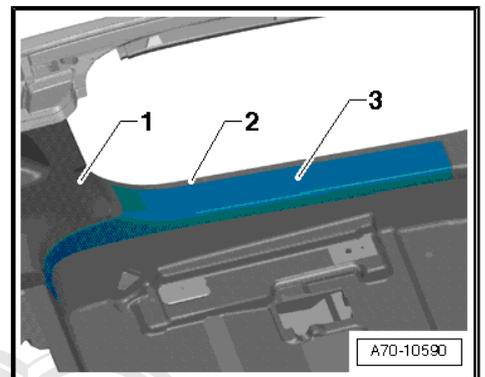
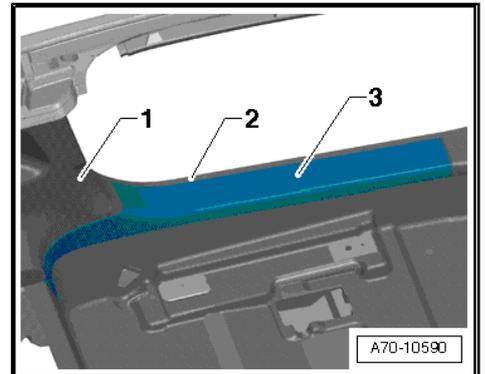
Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

Note

- ◆ *If trim clamps remain in body mounting points, remove these and insert them in trim.*
- ◆ *Check clamps for damage or deformation, replace if necessary.*

- Stretch door seal lip -2- over sill panel strip -3-.



2.4.6 C-Pillar Trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

- Remove the luggage compartment side trim. Refer to [⇒ “2.4.19 Luggage Compartment Side Trim”, page 222](#) .
- Remove the rear outer belt end fitting. Refer to [⇒ “3.1.6 Rear Outer Belt End Fitting”, page 82](#) .
- Remove the roof panel trim. Refer to [⇒ “2.4.11 Roof Panel Trim”, page 217](#) .

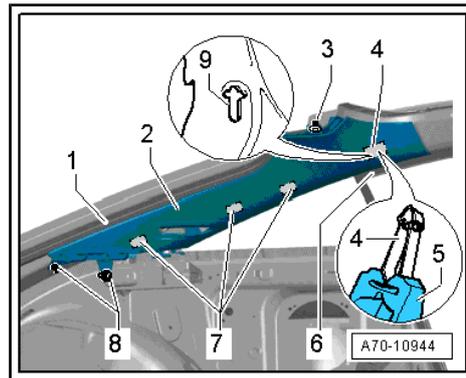
- Remove nuts -8-.
- Remove expanding clip -3-.

**Note**

From approximately calendar week 05/2007, a keyhole -9- for the spring clamp »with hooks« -4- was created on the body side.

**Caution**

On vehicles built before January 29, 2007, the C-pillar trim -2- will get damaged if it is removed incorrectly. Follow the following steps exactly.



- Unclip the C-pillar trim -2- at the spring clips -7- (quantity: 3) using the trim removal wedge -3409- .

Vehicles with Keyhole:

- Slide the spring clip -4- with the C-pillar trim -2- forward and up out of the keyhole.

Vehicles without Keyhole:

- Pull the C-pillar trim -2- toward the rear and then down. The spring clip -4- must slide out of the brace -5- on the C-pillar trim -2-. The spring clip -4- remains in the body.
- Carefully remove the spring clip -4- from the body.

Installation

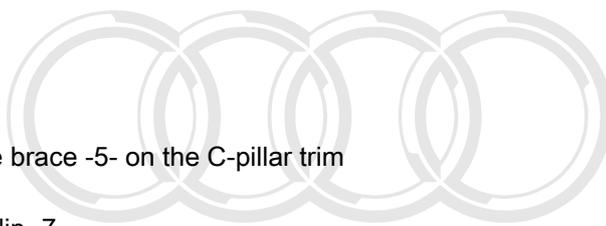
Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

**Note**

- ◆ If the spring clips -7- remain in the mounting points on the body, remove them and insert them in the trim.
- ◆ Check the spring clips -4- and -7- for damage or deformation and replace if necessary.

Vehicles without Keyhole:

- Replace the spring clip -4-.
- Slide the spring clip -4- into the brace -5- on the C-pillar trim -2-.
- Clip spring clip -4- like spring clip -7-.

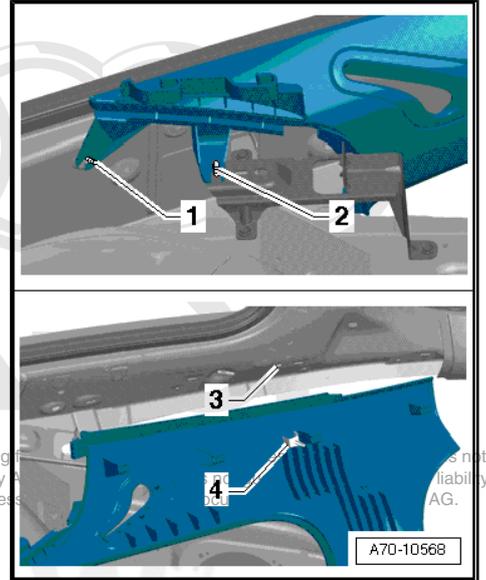
All Vehicles:

Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin

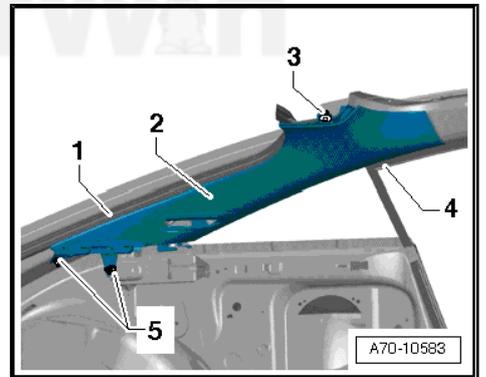
- Make sure the centering pin -4- slides into the mount -3- on the body.



Protected by copyright. Copying or reproduction in any form is not permitted unless authorised by Audi AG. with respect to the correctness of the information.

- Stretch the door seal lip -4- and the lip on the rear lid seal -1- over the C-pillar -2-.

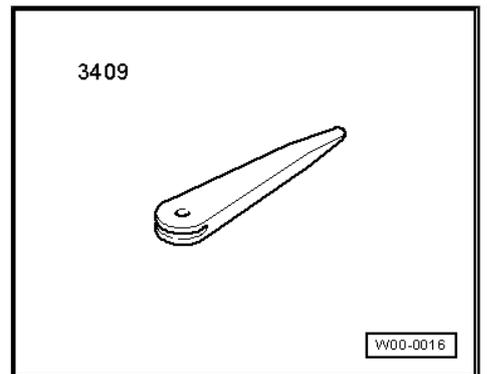
For the correct tightening specifications; refer to [⇒ "1.4.6 C-Pillar Trim Assembly Overview", page 149](#) .



2.4.7 Rear Side Trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



Removing

- Remove the rear bench seat. Refer to [⇒ "2.4.1 Bench Seat", page 406](#) .
- Unclip rear side trim -2- with Trim Removal Wedge -3409- starting at bottom front and working toward bottom rear.
- Fold rear seat backrest forward.
- Unclip top of rear side trim -2- with Trim Removal Wedge -3409- and remove.

Only if rear side trim should be removed:

- Remove the front outer belt end fitting. Refer to [⇒ "3.1.2 Front Outer Belt End Fitting", page 79](#) .

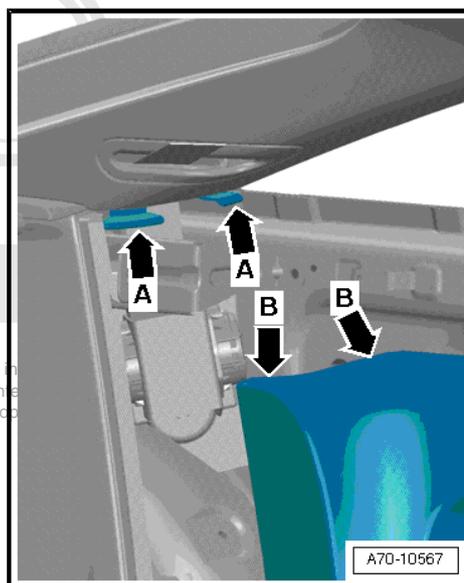
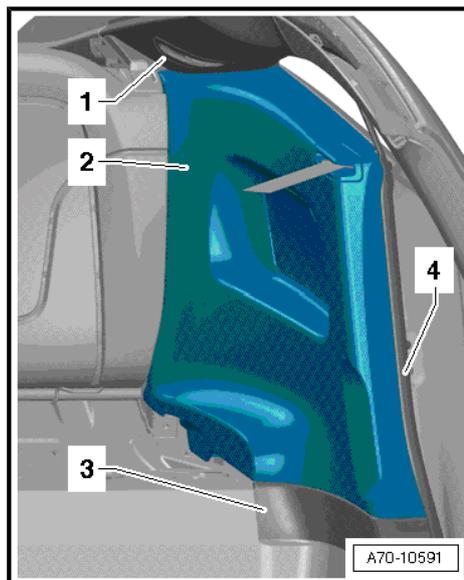
Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:



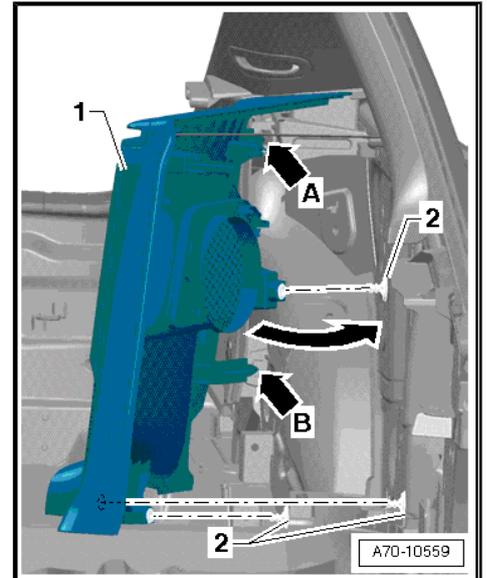
Note

- ◆ *For the rear side trim, there are clamps [⇒ Item 11 \(page 150\)](#) that are inserted in the rear side trim and mounting clips [⇒ Item 3 \(page 150\)](#) that are inserted in the body.*
 - ◆ *If any clamps remain in the body, remove them and insert them in the trim. If any securing clips remain in the trim, remove them and insert them in the body.*
 - ◆ *Check clamps and securing clips for damage or deformation, replace if necessary.*
- Engage rear side trim with tabs -B arrows- in C-pillar trim mounts -A arrows-.



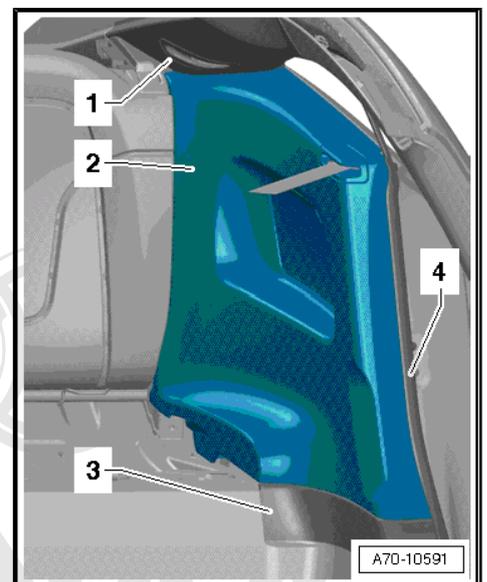
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole or in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the accuracy of the information with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copying and distribution of this document is prohibited.

- Insert rear side trim -1- in centering pins -arrow A- and -arrow B- in retainers.
- Tip rear side trim -1- in direction of -arrow- and press rear side trim -1- onto securing clips -2-.



- Stretch door seal lip -4- over rear side trim -2-.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to [⇒ "1.4.7 Rear Side Trim Assembly Overview", page 150](#) .



2.4.8 Rear Side Trim Panel, after July 2011, Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

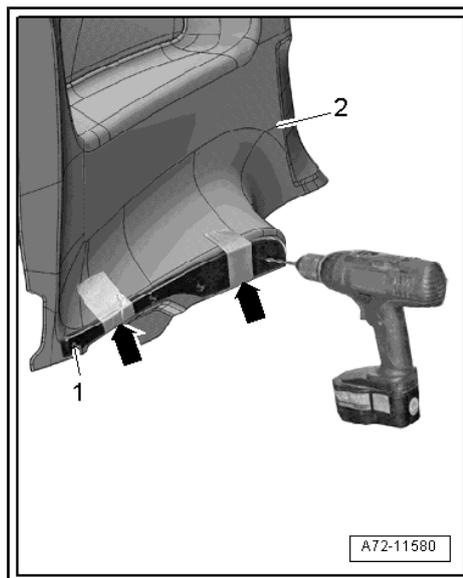
- ◆ *Depending on country.*
- ◆ *The rear side trim panel replacement part is delivered without holes for the trim.*
- ◆ *The holes must be inserted later during installation.*

Special tools and workshop equipment required

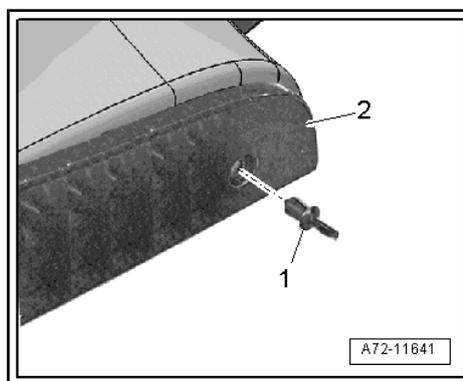
- ◆ Drill
- ◆ 6.5 mm drill bit

Procedure

- Position the trim -1- on the rear side trim panel -2- so that the contours are covered.
- Secure the trim to the side trim panel with adhesive tape -arrows-.
- Insert 4 holes 6.5 mm in diameter through the trim and into the side trim panel.



- Secure the trim -2- with 4 for expanding clips -1-.
- Carefully remove the adhesive tape.



2.4.9 C-Pillar, Rear Side Trim Panel and Luggage Compartment Side Trim Panel Brackets

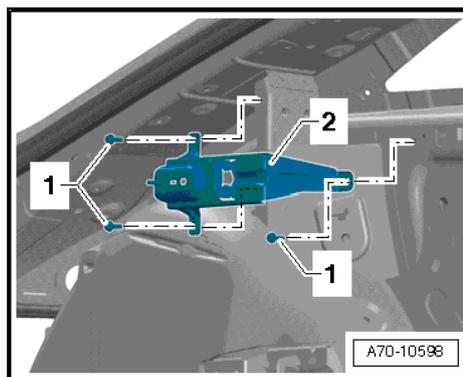
Removing

- Remove rear side trim. Refer to ⇒ ["2.4.7 Rear Side Trim", page 213](#) .
- Remove the luggage compartment side trim. Refer to ⇒ ["2.4.19 Luggage Compartment Side Trim", page 222](#) .
- Remove the C-pillar trim. Refer to ⇒ ["2.4.6 C-Pillar Trim", page 211](#) .
- Remove bolts -2- and remove bracket -1-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to ⇒ ["1.4.7 Rear Side Trim Assembly Overview", page 150](#) .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.4.10 Belt Extraction Panel

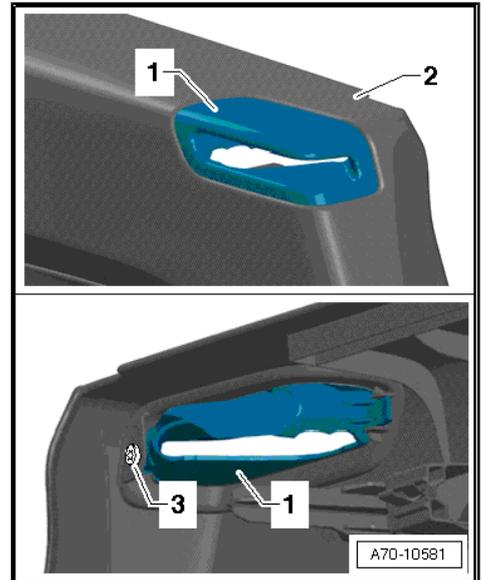
Removing

- Remove rear side trim. Refer to [⇒ "2.4.7 Rear Side Trim", page 213](#).
- Remove bolt -3- from rear side trim -2-.
- Tip belt extraction panel -1- out of rear side trim -2-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.

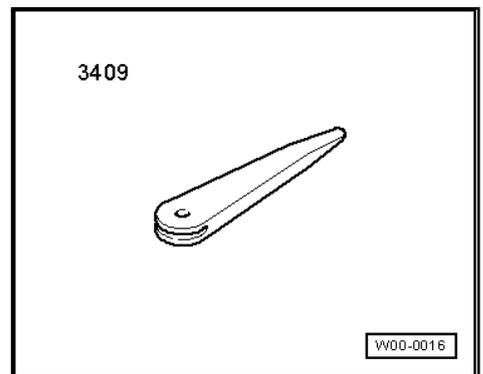
For the correct tightening specifications; refer to [⇒ "1.4.7 Rear Side Trim Assembly Overview", page 150](#).



2.4.11 Roof Panel Trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



Removing

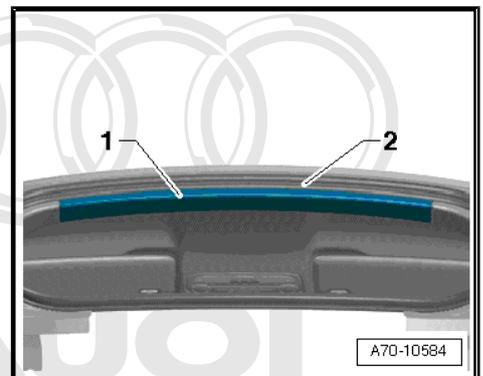
- Remove the rear roof panel trim -1- using the trim removal wedge -3409-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

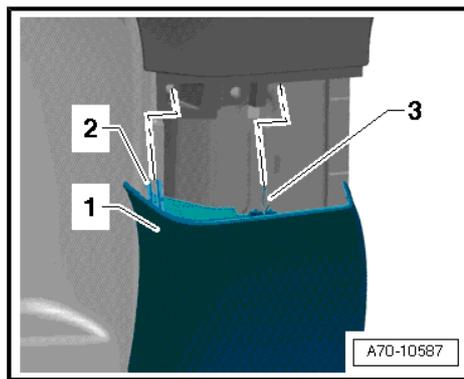
Note

- ◆ *If trim clamps remain in body mounting points, remove these and insert them in trim.*
- ◆ *Check clamps for damage or deformation, replace if necessary.*

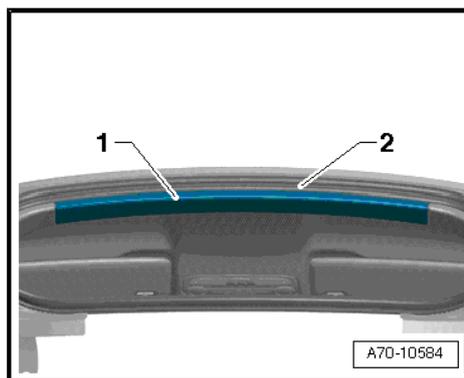
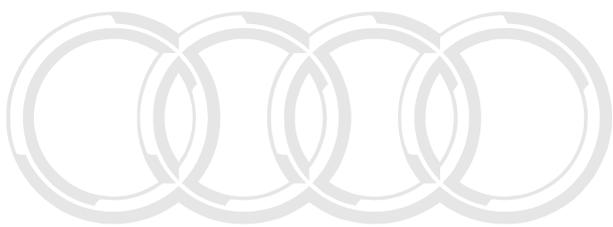


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- First insert the centering tabs -2- on the rear roof panel trim -1- into the mount.
- Push outer clip -3- into mounting. Then press in remaining clamps.



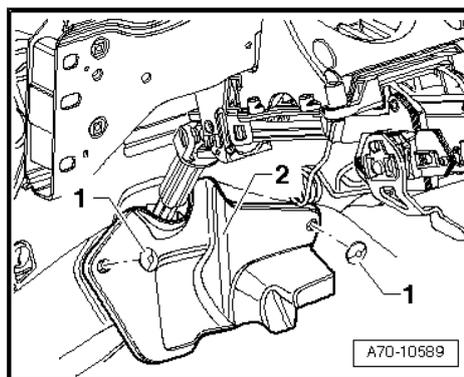
- Stretch the rear lid seal -2- over the rear roof panel trim -1-.



2.4.12 Floor Covering

Removing

- Copyright by Audi AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for errors or omissions. Copyright by AUDI AG.
- Remove the left and right front seats. Refer to ⇒ ["2.1.1 Front Seat", page 315](#) .
 - Remove the rear bench seat. Refer to ⇒ ["2.4.1 Bench Seat", page 406](#) .
 - Remove driver side instrument panel cover. Refer to ⇒ ["2.1.1 Driver Side Instrument Panel Cover", page 18](#) .
 - Completely remove center console. Refer to ⇒ ["2.2.14 Rear Center Console", page 31](#) .
 - Remove accelerator pedal module.
 - Remove the push knobs -1- and remove the cover for the steering column universal joint.
 - Remove the lower trim on the left and right A-pillars. Refer to ⇒ ["2.4.2 Lower A-Pillar Trim", page 207](#) .
 - Remove left and right sill panel strip. Refer to ⇒ ["2.4.5 Sill Panel Trim", page 210](#) .
 - Remove the footrest cover. Refer to ⇒ ["2.4.3 Foot Rest Cover", page 209](#) .
 - Remove the front outer belt end fitting. Refer to ⇒ ["3.1.2 Front Outer Belt End Fitting", page 79](#) .



- Remove the expanding clips -2- (quantity: 8).
- Detach the carpet from the brackets -1-.
- Detach the carpet from the omega clips -3-.
- Disengage wiring harness -4- and -5- from retainers.
- Pull the carpet -6- toward the rear.

 **Note**

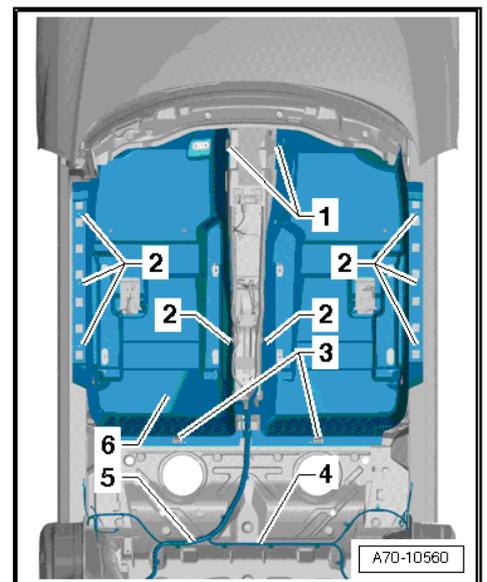
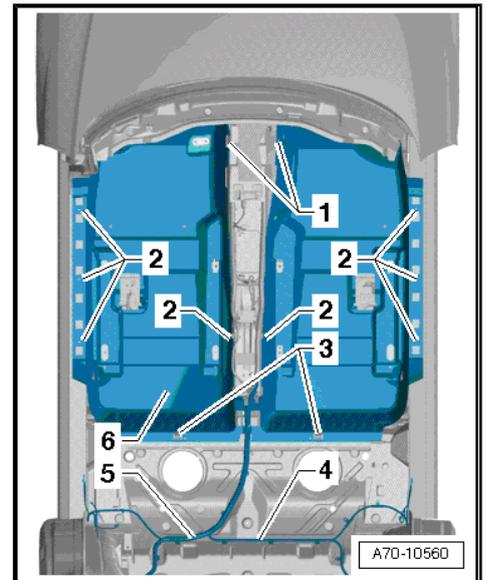
Make sure the floor covering does not tear at the openings.

- Fold the carpet lengthwise, guide under wiring harness -4- and -5- and remove through a door.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Fold the new floor mat lengthwise and place in vehicle.
- Slide the carpet all the way forward until it matches up with holes for the accelerator pedal, the foot rest and the cover for the steering column universal joint.
- Attach the carpet to the brackets -1- and too the omega clamps -3-.
- Install the expanding clips -2- (quantity: 8).



2.4.13 Upper Rear Lid Trim

Removing

- Remove lower rear lid trim. Refer to ["2.4.14 Lower Rear Lid Trim", page 220](#).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Remove left and right wiring harness clamp -1-.
- Remove left and right bolts -2-.

Only if the upper rear lid trim -4- should be replaced:

- Remove ball stud -3- on left and right sides.
- First, pull left and right of upper lid trim -4- down in direction of -arrow A-.
- Then pull upper lid trim -4- up in direction of -arrow B- with a 2nd technician.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:



Note

- ◆ If trim clamps remain in body mounting points, remove these and insert them in trim.
- ◆ Check clamps for damage or deformation, replace if necessary.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any responsibility with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

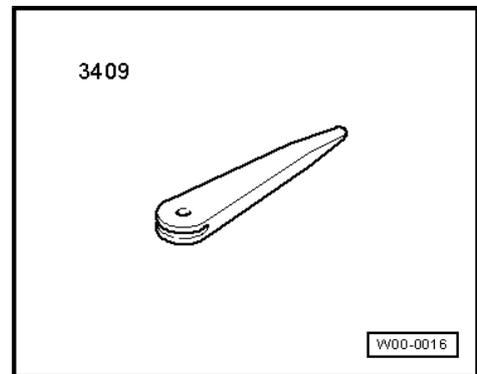
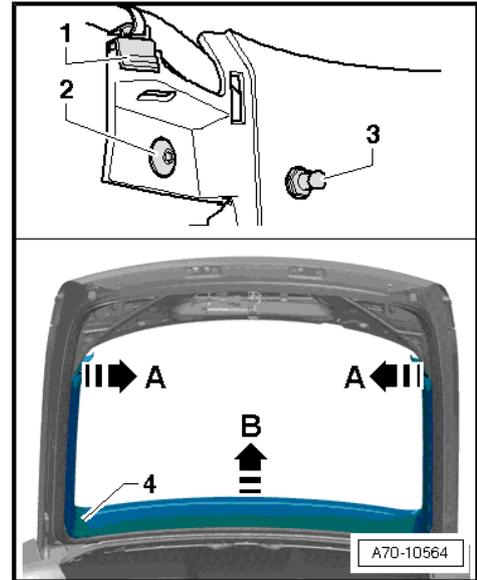
- Position upper rear lid trim panel with a 2nd technician. Press rear lid trim on from bottom to top.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to [⇒ "1.4.10 Rear Lid Trim Assembly Overview", page 153](#) .

2.4.14 Lower Rear Lid Trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



Removing

- Remove the rear shelf.

- Remove bolts -2-.
- Unclip lower rear lid trim -1- with Trim Removal Wedge -3409-.

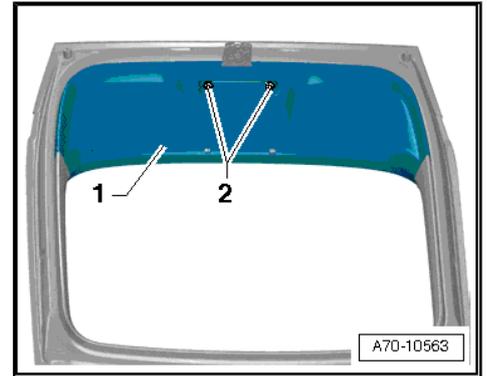
Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:



Note

- ◆ If trim clamps remain in body mounting points, remove these and insert them in trim.
- ◆ Check clamps for damage or deformation, replace if necessary.



For the correct tightening specifications; refer to
 ⇒ ["1.4.10 Rear Lid Trim Assembly Overview", page 153](#).

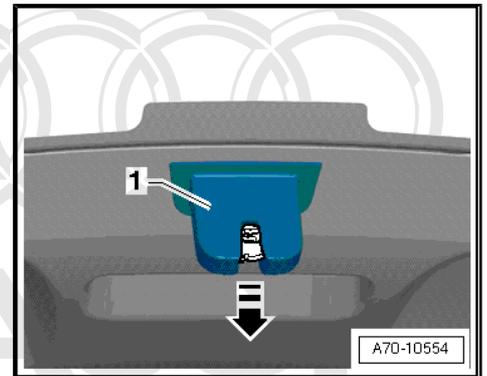
2.4.15 Rear Lid Lock Trim

Removing

- Remove rear lid lock cover -1- in direction of -arrow-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.



2.4.16 Front Rear Shelf

Removing

- Pull front rear shelf back out of its mount and remove it upward from C-pillar trim.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Press front rear shelf forward into mount as far as stop.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.4.17 Rear Shelf Rear Section

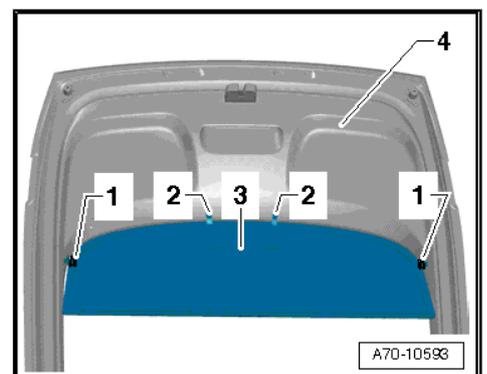
Removing

- Remove the brackets -1- on the rear shelf -3- from the clips.
- Pull rear shelf -3- with pins -2- vertically out of lower rear lid trim openings -4-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

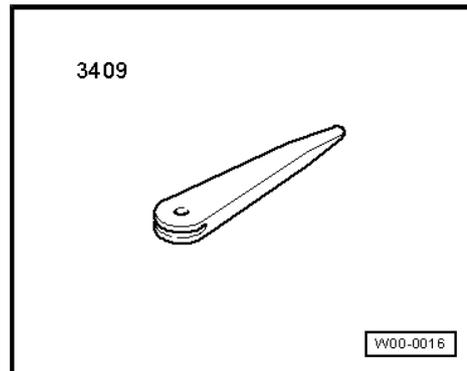
- Press rear shelf -1- into lower rear lid trim -3- as far as stop.



2.4.18 Rear Cross Panel Trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



Removing

- Remove the rear lid end panel trim panel -1- vertically and upward using the trim removal wedge -3409- .

Installation

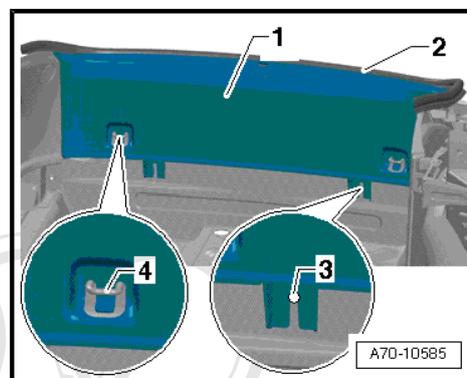
Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:



Note

Check clips for damage or deformation and replace if necessary.

- Position the rear lid end panel trim panel -1- so that the left and right brackets fit into the holes -3- and into the eyes -4-.
- Stretch the rear lid seal -2- over the rear lid end panel trim panel -1-.



2.4.19 Luggage Compartment Side Trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Removing

- Fold luggage compartment floor mat forward.
- Remove the rear cross panel trim. Refer to ⇒ ["2.4.18 Rear Cross Panel Trim", page 222](#) .

Right Luggage Compartment Side Trim Panel Only

- Using a screwdriver, pry out light -1- on side -3-.
- The -arrow- points to the direction of travel.
- Disconnect the connector -2-.

Procedure for Both Sides

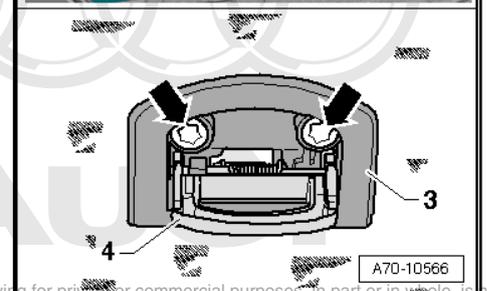
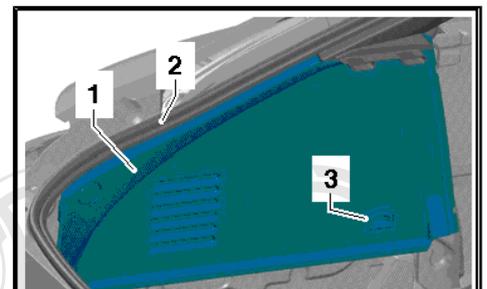
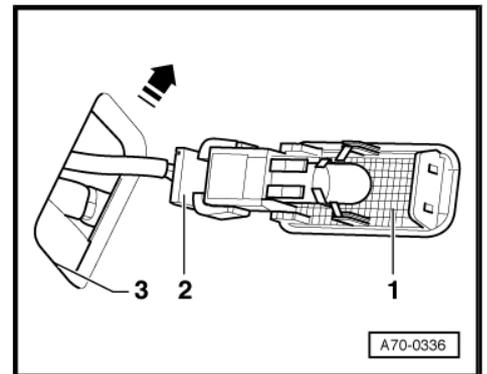
- Fold bracket -4- down.
- Remove the bolts -arrows- and then remove the tie down -3-.
- Unclip the luggage compartment side trim panel -1- using the trim removal wedge -3409- .

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Stretch the rear lid seal -2- over the luggage compartment side trim panel -1-.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to ["1.4.13 Luggage Compartment Side Trim Assembly Overview", page 156](#) .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes in part or in whole is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.4.20 Tie-Downs

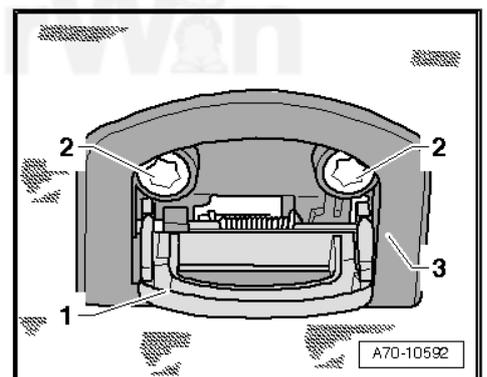
Removing

- Fold bracket -1- down.
- Remove the bolts -2- and remove the tie down -3-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to ["1.4.13 Luggage Compartment Side Trim Assembly Overview", page 156](#) .



2.4.21 Luggage Compartment Liner

Removing

- Fold luggage compartment floor mat completely forward.
- Remove the luggage compartment floor covering.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.



2.5 Trim, Roadster

- ⇒ [“2.5.1 Windshield Frame Trim”, page 224](#)
- ⇒ [“2.5.2 A-Pillar Upper Trim”, page 225](#)
- ⇒ [“2.5.3 Lower A-Pillar Trim”, page 226](#)
- ⇒ [“2.5.4 Foot Rest Cover”, page 228](#)
- ⇒ [“2.5.5 Foot Rest Mount”, page 229](#)
- ⇒ [“2.5.6 Sill Panel”, page 229](#)
- ⇒ [“2.5.7 Floor Covering”, page 230](#)
- ⇒ [“2.5.8 Side Rear Panel Trim Panel”, page 231](#)
- ⇒ [“2.5.9 Center Storage Compartment”, page 232](#)
- ⇒ [“2.5.10 Rear Bulkhead Cover”, page 233](#)
- ⇒ [“2.5.11 Anti-roll Bar Trim”, page 234](#)
- ⇒ [“2.5.12 Wind Deflector or Mount”, page 235](#)
- ⇒ [“2.5.13 Front Convertible Top Compartment Trim”, page 236](#)
- ⇒ [“2.5.14 Front Convertible Top Compartment Trim”, page 236](#)
- ⇒ [“2.5.15 Rear Cross Panel Trim”, page 237](#)
- ⇒ [“2.5.16 Luggage Compartment Side Trim”, page 237](#)
- ⇒ [“2.5.17 Lower Center Storage Compartment”, page 238](#)
- ⇒ [“2.5.18 Rear Lid Trim”, page 239](#)
- ⇒ [“2.5.19 Rear Lid Lock Trim”, page 240](#)
- ⇒ [“2.5.20 Sun Visor”, page 240](#)
- ⇒ [“2.5.21 Left and Right Storage Compartments”, page 240](#)
- ⇒ [“2.5.22 Belt Extraction Panel”, page 241](#)
- ⇒ [“2.5.23 Rear Convertible Top Compartment Trim”, page 241](#)
- ⇒ [“2.5.24 Luggage Compartment Liner”, page 241](#)
- ⇒ [“2.5.25 Upper Luggage Compartment Trim”, page 241](#)
- ⇒ [“2.5.26 Front Luggage Compartment Trim Panel”, page 242](#)

2.5.1 Windshield Frame Trim

Removing

- Remove Front Interior Light -W1-. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 96 ; Removal and Installation .
- Remove sun visors. Refer to ⇒ [“1.5.4 Sun Visor Assembly Overview”, page 163](#) .

- Remove the bolts -A- and -B- (located in the opening for the front interior lamp -W1-). Remove buffer -C-.
- Unclip the windshield frame trim from the upper A-pillar trim -D- in direction of -arrow- starting from the rear.

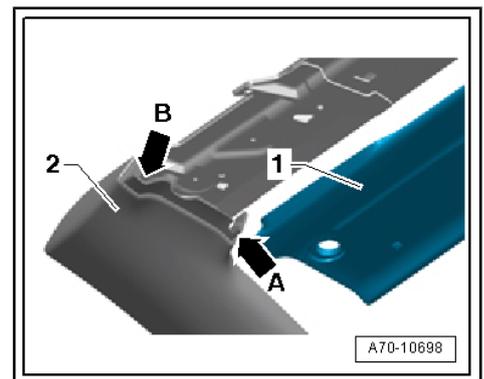
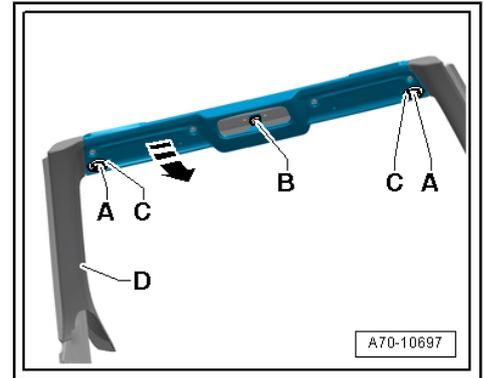
Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Insert the windshield frame trim -1- -arrow A- into the upper A-pillar trim -2- from the front and then swivel it upward.

While doing this, the windshield frame trim must engage with the A-pillar trim -arrow B-.

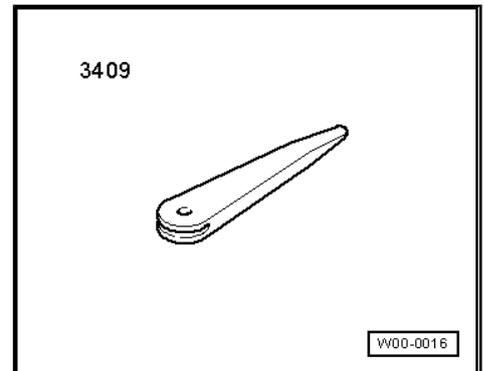
For the correct tightening specifications, refer to [⇒ "1.5.3 Windshield Frame Trim Assembly Overview", page 162](#) .



2.5.2 A-Pillar Upper Trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



Removing

- Remove the windshield frame trim. Refer to [⇒ "2.5.1 Windshield Frame Trim", page 224](#) .
- Unclip the upper A-pillar trim, starting at the top, using the trim removal wedge -3409- .
- Remove the upper A-pillar trim out of the instrument panel. Refer to [⇒ page 226](#) .

Installation

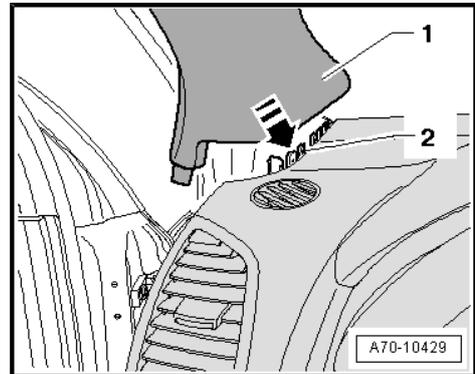
Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



**Note**

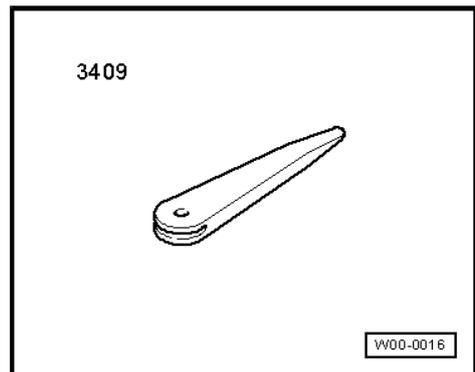
- ◆ *If trim clamps remain in body mounting points, remove these and insert them in trim.*
- ◆ *Check clamps for damage or deformation, replace if necessary.*
- Insert the upper A-pillar trim -1- onto the comb -2- in the instrument panel in direction of -arrow-.
- Then clip in upper A-pillar trim and stretch door seal lip over upper A-pillar trim.



2.5.3 Lower A-Pillar Trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing**Driver Side Only**

- Pull the operating lever -1- in direction of -arrow A-. The hood unlocks.

At the same time, operating lever -1- is guided out of guide in lower A-pillar trim -2-.

- Insert screwdriver -5- in gap between operating lever -1- and lower A-pillar trim -2-.



Caution

- ◆ *When removing, operating lever -1- must be pried straight out of its mount in direction of -arrow C- and pulled out straight by hand in direction of -arrow B- at the same time.*
- ◆ *If the operating lever -1- is pulled out crooked or tilted, the mount can be damaged. A damaged mount must be replaced.*

- Pry operating lever -1- straight out of mount.

- Check securing clip mount on securing points -1- and mount on securing points -2- for damage.

Procedure for Both Sides of Vehicle

- Remove side instrument panel cover
 ⇒ ["2.2.1 Instrument Panel Side Cover", page 193](#) .

- Remove the sill panel -3- from the door sill in the transition area to the trim at the bottom of the A-pillar. Refer to
 ⇒ ["1.5.8 Sill Panel Assembly Overview", page 167](#) .

- Unclip lower A-pillar trim -2- with Trim Removal Wedge -3409- .

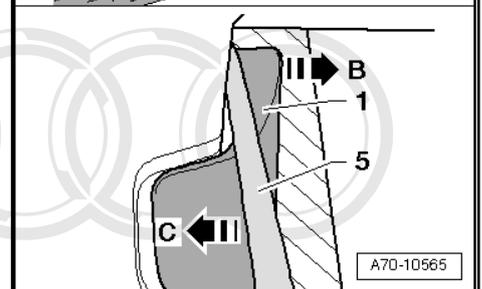
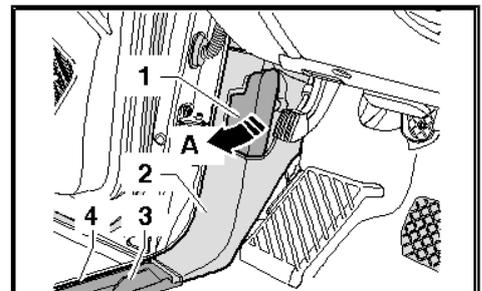
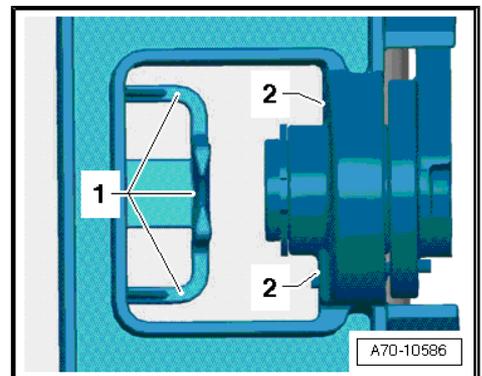
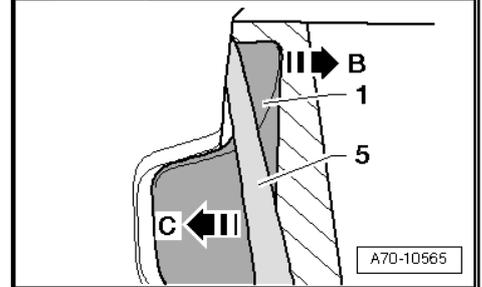
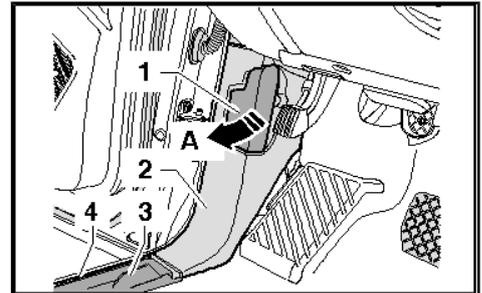
Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

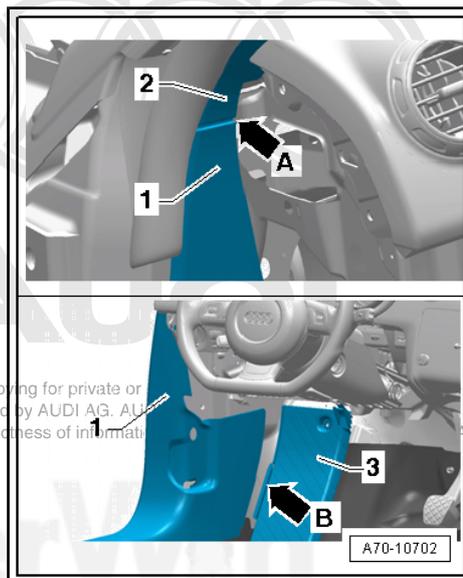


Note

- ◆ *If trim clamps remain in body mounting points, remove these and insert them in trim.*
- ◆ *Check clamps for damage or deformation, replace if necessary.*

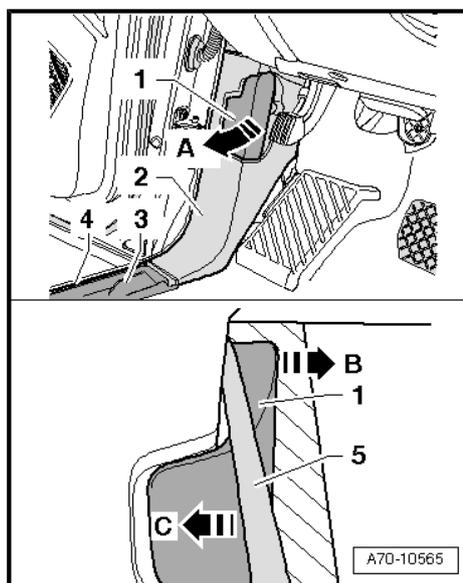


- When installing, guide the lower A-pillar trim -1- under the transition area to the upper A-pillar trim -2- -arrow A-.
- Insert lower A-pillar trim -1- into the groove -arrow B- on the foot rest cover -3-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AU is not liability AG. with respect to the correctness of informati

- Install the lower A-pillar trim -2-.
- Install side instrument panel cover .
- Stretch the lip on the door seal -4- over the lower A-pillar trim -2- and over the sill panel -3-.
- Insert operating lever -1- approximately halfway into mount and turn in direction of -arrow A-.
- Carefully press operating lever -1- into mount as far as stop and guide into guide in lower A-pillar trim -2-.



Mount tightening specification, refer to
 ⇒ ["1.5.6 Lower A-Pillar Trim Assembly Overview", page 165](#) .

2.5.4 Foot Rest Cover

Removing

- Remove driver side instrument panel cover. Refer to ⇒ ["2.1.1 Driver Side Instrument Panel Cover", page 18](#) .
- Remove the lower A-pillar trim. Refer to ⇒ ["2.5.3 Lower A-Pillar Trim", page 226](#) .

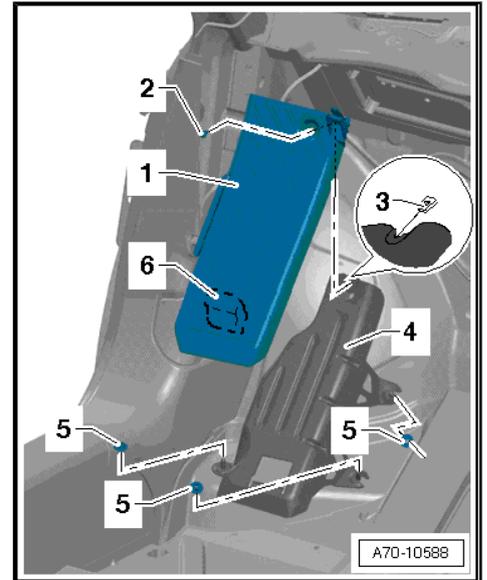
- Remove the bolt -2-.
- Push the foot support cover -1- far enough upward until the tab -6- disengages from the mount -4-.
- Remove the foot support cover -1-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Make sure the tab -6- engages securely into the mount.
- Make sure spring nut -3- fits correctly on the foot rest mount -4-.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to [⇒ "1.5.7 Footrest Cover and Bracket Assembly Overview", page 166](#).



2.5.5 Foot Rest Mount

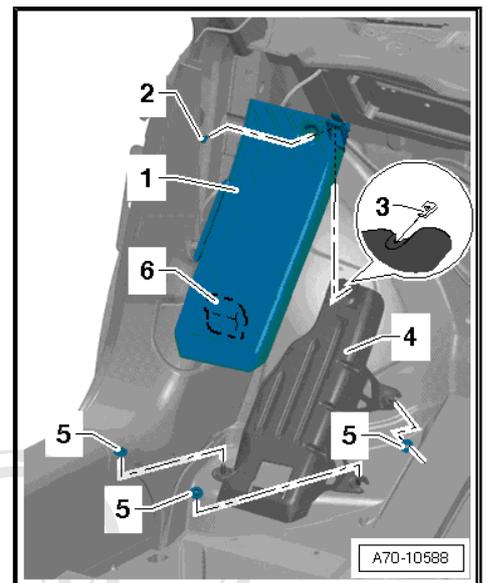
Removing

- Remove the foot rest cover -1-. Refer to [⇒ "2.5.4 Foot Rest Cover", page 228](#).
- Fold the floor covering back in the footrest area.
- Remove 3 nuts -5-.
- Remove the foot rest mount -4-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.

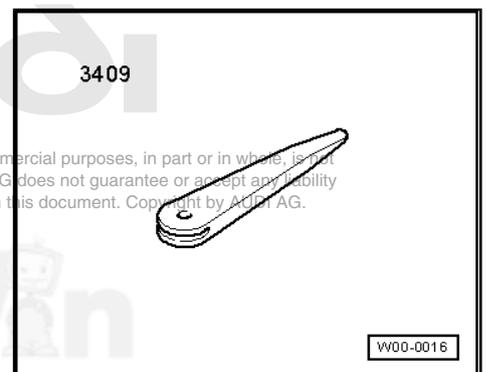
For the correct tightening specifications; refer to [⇒ "1.5.7 Footrest Cover and Bracket Assembly Overview", page 166](#).



2.5.6 Sill Panel

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

- Remove the rear panel trim panel sideways -1- from the body in the transition area to the sill panel strip -3-. Refer to ⇒ ["2.5.8 Side Rear Panel Trim Panel", page 231](#) .
- Unclip sill panel strip -3- with Trim Removal Wedge -3409- .

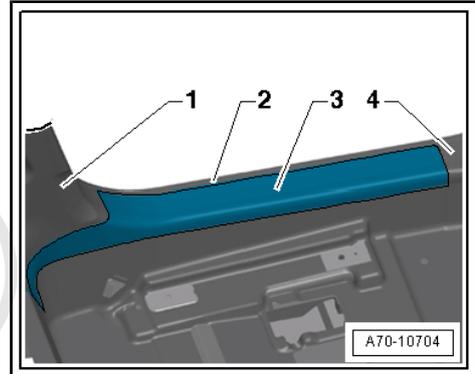
Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:



Note

- ◆ *If trim clamps remain in body mounting points, remove these and insert them in trim.*
 - ◆ *Check clamps for damage or deformation, replace if necessary.*
 - ◆ *The lower A-pillar trim -4- must be installed.*
- Stretch door seal lip -2- over sill panel strip -3- and over the rear panel trim panel -1-.

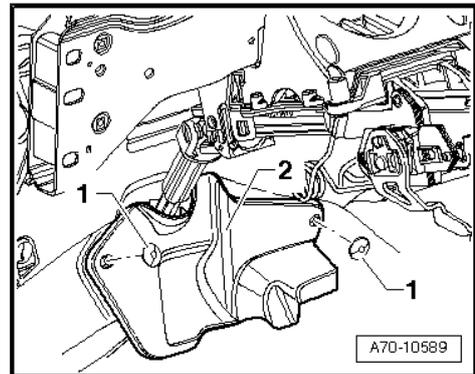


2.5.7 Floor Covering

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

- Remove left and right seats. Refer to ⇒ ["2.1.1 Front Seat", page 315](#) .
- Remove driver side instrument panel cover. Refer to ⇒ ["2.1.1 Driver Side Instrument Panel Cover", page 18](#) .
- Remove accelerator pedal module.
- Completely remove center console. Refer to ⇒ ["2.2.14 Rear Center Console", page 31](#) .
- Remove the push knobs -1- and remove the cover for the steering column universal joint.
- Remove the lower left and right A-pillar trim. Refer to ⇒ ["2.5.3 Lower A-Pillar Trim", page 226](#) .
- Remove the left and right rear panel trim panel sideways. Refer to ⇒ ["2.5.8 Side Rear Panel Trim Panel", page 231](#) .
- Remove left and right sill panel strip. Refer to ⇒ ["1.5.8 Sill Panel Assembly Overview", page 167](#) .
- Remove the footrest cover. Refer to ⇒ ["2.5.4 Foot Rest Cover", page 228](#) .
- Remove the seat belt from the outer belt end fitting. Refer to ⇒ ["3.2.2 Outer Belt End Fitting", page 88](#) .



- Remove the expanding clips -2- (quantity: 8).
- Detach the carpet from the brackets -1-.
- Disengage wiring harness from retainers.
- Pull the carpet -3- toward the rear.

 **Note**

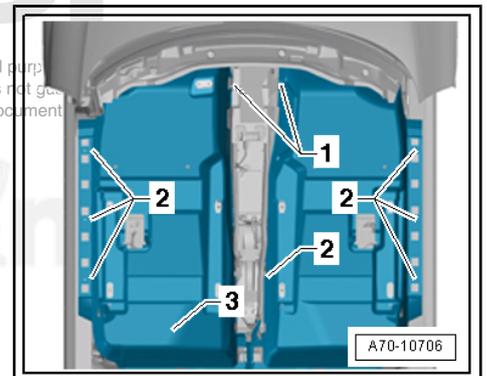
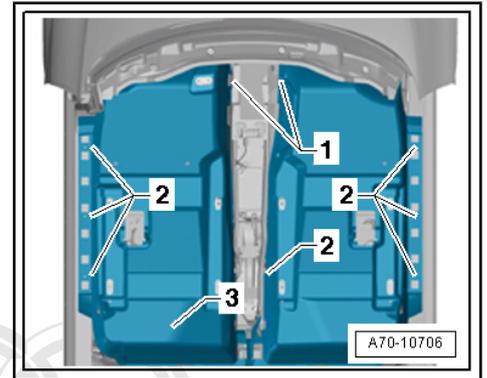
Make sure the floor covering does not tear at the openings.

- Fold the carpet lengthwise, guide it under the wiring harness and remove through a door.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

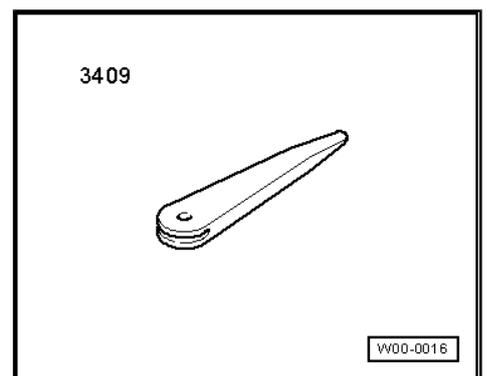
- Fold the new floor mat lengthwise and place in vehicle.
- Slide the carpet all the way forward until it matches up with holes for the accelerator pedal, the foot rest and the cover for the steering column universal joint.
- Attach the carpet -3- to the brackets -1-.
- Install the expanding clips -2- (quantity: 8).



2.5.8 Side Rear Panel Trim Panel

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



Removing

- Move both seats forward and fold backrests forward.

 **Note**

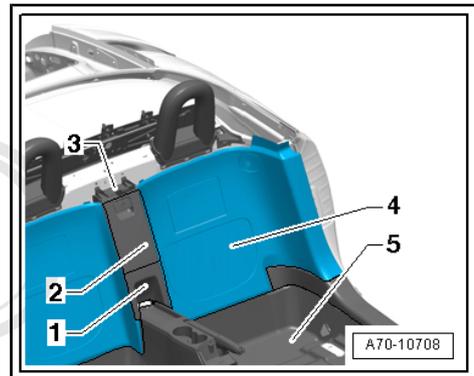
The rear bulkhead cover is only laid aside and is not removed completely.

Loosen the rear panel cover (without detaching the seat belts from the belt end fittings), refer to [⇒ "1.5.13 Rear Bulkhead Cover Assembly Overview", page 172](#) and move it to the side.

- Remove cover -1- from center storage compartment -3-.
- Open cover -2- on center storage compartment -3-.
- Starting at the top, unclip the side rear panel trim panel -4- from the rear panel using the trim removal wedge -3409-.
- Disconnect electrical connector on Left Rear Treble Speaker -R14- or Right Rear Treble Speaker -R16-. Refer to ⇒ Communication; Rep. Gr. 91 ; Removal and Installation .

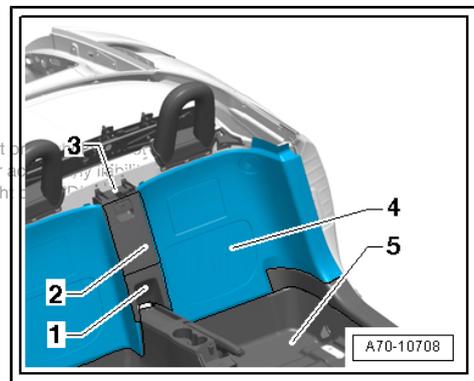
Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:



Note

- ◆ *If trim clamps remain in body mounting points, remove these and insert them in trim.*
 - ◆ *Check clamps for damage or deformation, replace if necessary.*
 - ◆ *The carpet -5- and the center storage compartment -3- must be installed. Open center storage compartment cover -2- to do so.*
- Attach the side rear panel trim panel -4- to the center storage compartment ⇒ [Item 12 \(page 169\)](#) with the locking tabs and then attach the trim panel to the end panel.
 - Attach the side rear panel trim panel to the center storage compartment when installing the cover -1-.
 - Fold the lip on the door seal over the side rear panel trim panel.



2.5.9 Center Storage Compartment

Removing

- Remove rear bulkhead cover. Refer to [⇒ "2.5.10 Rear Bulkhead Cover", page 233](#) .
- Remove the left and right rear panel trim panel sideways. Refer to [⇒ "2.5.8 Side Rear Panel Trim Panel", page 231](#) .
- Remove cover below center storage compartment cover. Refer to [⇒ page 232](#) .

- Open center storage compartment cover -3-.
- Disengage handle with rear lid emergency release cable.
- Remove bolts -2- for bracket -1- if present.

 **Note**

On vehicles without bracket -2-, bolts are still installed.

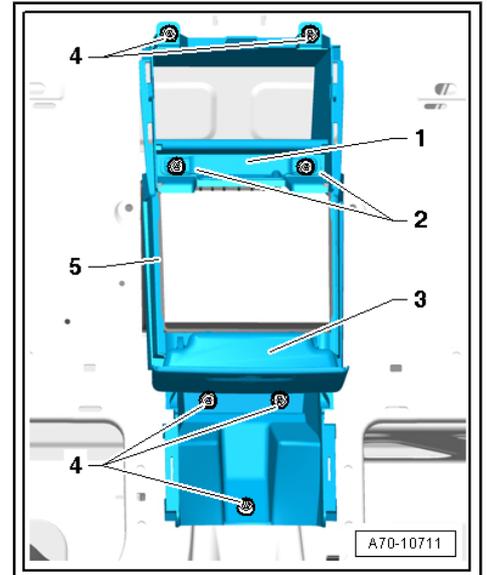
- Remove bolts -4- (quantity: 5) and remove center storage compartment -5- from rear bulkhead.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

 **Note**

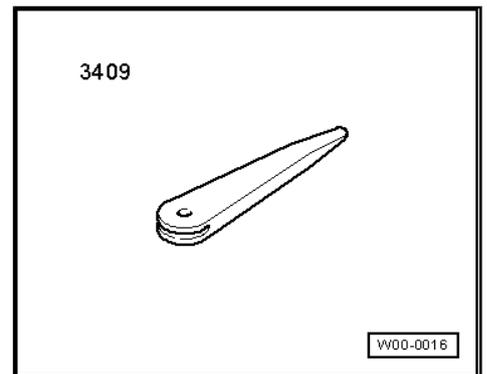
Do not exchange bolts -2- and -4- in their locations.



2.5.10 Rear Bulkhead Cover

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-

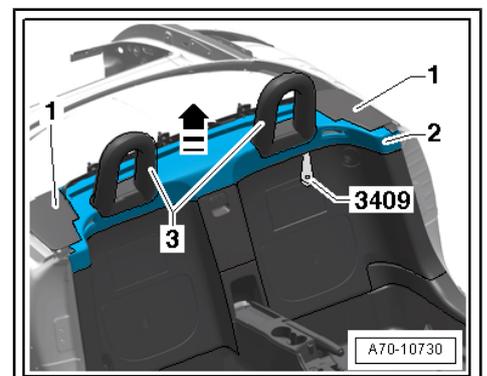


Removing

- Move both seats forward and fold backrests forward.
- Remove the driver and front passenger seat belts from the outer belt end fitting. Refer to [⇒ "3.2.2 Outer Belt End Fitting", page 88](#).
- Both linkage removal flaps -1- are closed when in basic position.
- Carefully unclip the rear panel cover -2- around both rollover protections -3- using the trim removal wedge -3409-.
- Then remove rear bulkhead cover -2- upward -direction of arrow- from body and from wind deflector or wind deflector support.

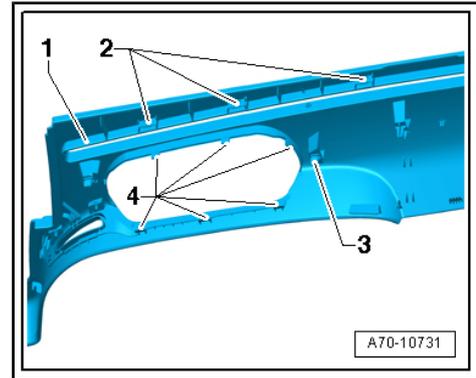
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not less authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation
 Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:



 **Note**

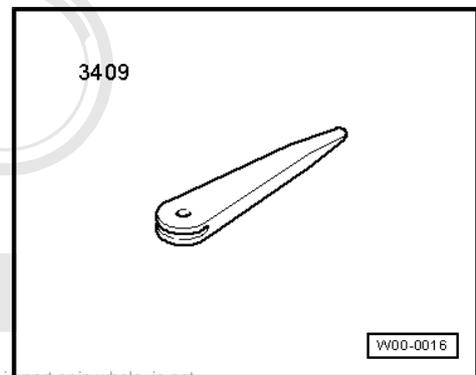
- ◆ There are clamps -2- and -3- for the rear bulkhead cover -1- that must be inserted in the cover and clamps ⇒ [Item 6 \(page 172\)](#) that must be placed in the rollover protection trim (body).
 - ◆ Allocate clamps according to their corresponding installation location.
 - ◆ Check clamps for damage or deformation, replace if necessary.
- The tabs -4- must lock into the recesses in the rollover protection trim.



2.5.11 Anti-roll Bar Trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

 **Note**

The rear bulkhead cover is only laid aside and is not removed completely.

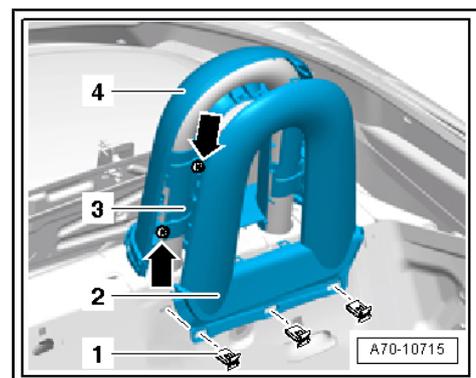
Loosen the rear panel cover (without detaching the seat belts from the belt end fittings), refer to ⇒ ["1.5.13 Rear Bulkhead Cover Assembly Overview", page 172](#) and move it to the side.

- Remove clamps -1- from front part of rollover protection trim -2- and body.
- Beginning at the bottom, unclip the front part of the rollover protection trim -2- from the rollover protection using the Trim Removal Wedge -3409- .
- Remove bolts -arrows- and remove rollover protection bracket -3-.
- Remove back part of rollover protection trim -4- from rollover protection.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to ⇒ ["1.5.14 Rollover Protection Trim Assembly Overview", page 173](#) .



2.5.12 Wind Deflector or Mount

Removing

- Remove rear bulkhead cover. Refer to [⇒ “2.5.10 Rear Bulkhead Cover”, page 233](#) .
- Remove left and right linkage removal flaps. Refer to ⇒ Body Exterior; Rep. Gr. 61 ; Removal and Installation .
- Remove front convertible top compartment trim. Refer to [⇒ “2.5.14 Front Convertible Top Compartment Trim”, page 236](#) .

Vehicles with Wind Deflector

- Disconnect connector on wind deflector motor and unclip electrical wire on deflector.

Vehicles with Electrical Convertible Top

- Unclip hydraulic lines from wind deflector or deflector support (5 clips).

Procedure for all Vehicles

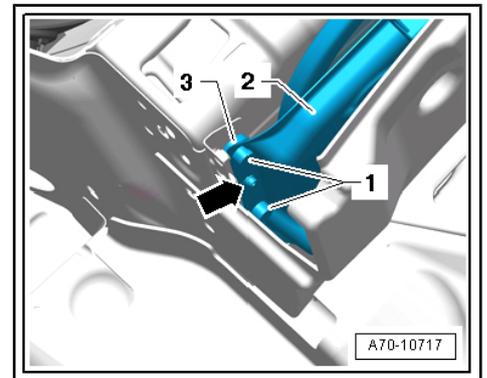
- Remove bolts -1- on both sides of vehicle. Be careful of the washers [⇒ Item 3 \(page 174\)](#) .
- Remove wind deflector -2- or support upward.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Insert wind deflector -2- or support with locking pins -arrow- (on left and right sides of vehicle) in holes in body.
- Make sure there is a washer [⇒ Item 3 \(page 174\)](#) between the bolt -1- and the insulation -3-.

For the correct tightening specifications, refer to [⇒ “1.5.15 Wind Deflector Assembly Overview”, page 174](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin 

2.5.13 Front Convertible Top Compartment Trim

1 - Front convertible top compartment trim

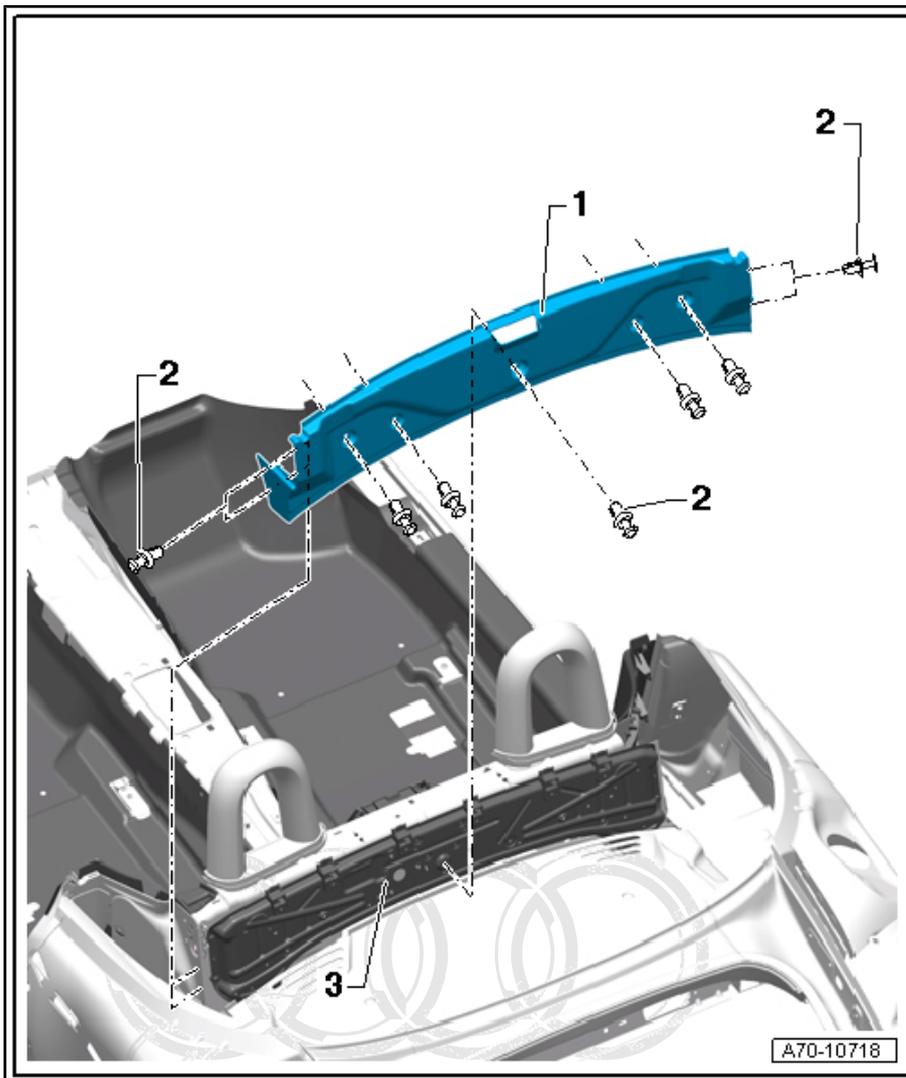
- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.5.14 Front Convertible Top Compartment Trim"](#), page 236

2 - Expanding clip

- ❑ Quantity: 9

3 - Wind deflector

- ❑ Only the wind deflector support is installed on some vehicles, note corresponding equipment



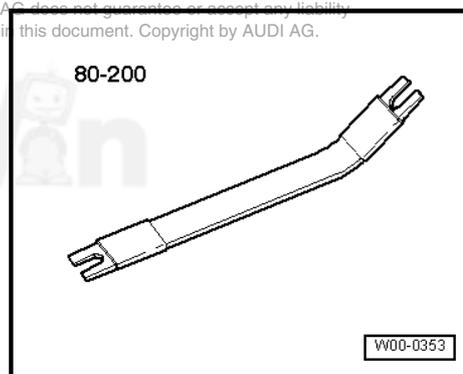
A70-10718

2.5.14 Front Convertible Top Compartment Trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Pry lever -80 - 200-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



VW00-0353

Removing

- Remove rear bulkhead cover. Refer to ⇒ “2.5.10 Rear Bulkhead Cover”, page 233 .
- Position convertible top or linkage removal flaps so that expanding clips -A- can be unclipped with Pry Lever -80 - 200- .

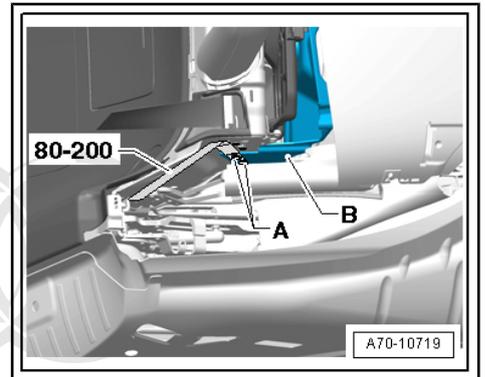
Note

Keep the expanding clips -A- from falling down.

- Unclip remaining expanding clips and remove front convertible top compartment trim -B-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.



2.5.15 Rear Cross Panel Trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Removing

- Fold luggage compartment floor mat completely forward.
- Remove the luggage compartment floor covering.
- Remove the rear lid end panel trim panel -1- vertically and upward using the trim removal wedge -3409- .

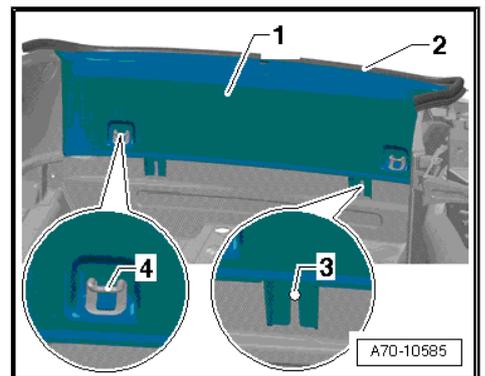
Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

Note

Check clips for damage or deformation and replace if necessary.

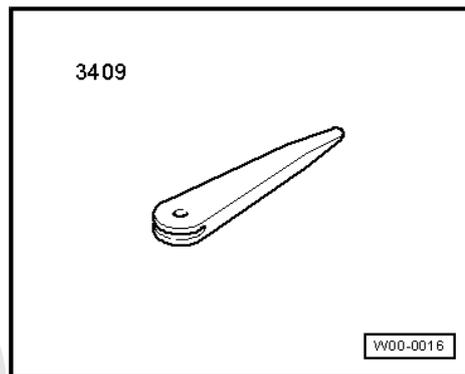
- Position the rear lid end panel trim panel -1- so that the left and right brackets fit into the holes -3- and into the eyes -4-.
- Stretch the rear lid seal -2- over the rear lid end panel trim panel -1-.



2.5.16 Luggage Compartment Side Trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



Removing

- Fold luggage compartment floor mat completely forward.
- Remove the luggage compartment floor covering.
- Remove the rear cross panel trim. Refer to [⇒ "2.5.15 Rear Cross Panel Trim", page 237](#) .

Right Luggage Compartment Side Trim Panel Only

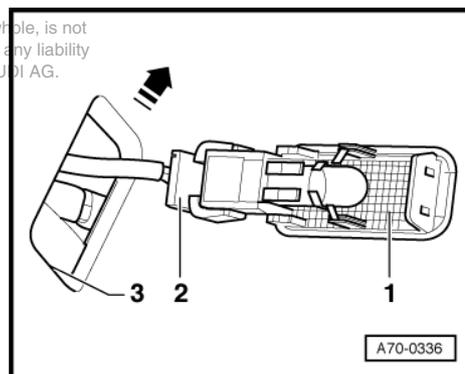
- Using a screwdriver, pry out light 1- on side -3-

The -arrow- points to the direction of travel.

- Disconnect the connector -2-.

Procedure for Both Sides

- Unclip the luggage compartment side trim panel using the trim removal wedge -3409- .



Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

 **Note**

- ◆ *If trim clamps remain in body mounting points, remove these and insert them in trim.*
- ◆ *Check clamps for damage or deformation, replace if necessary.*
- Stretch the rear lid seal over the luggage compartment side trim panel.

2.5.17 Lower Center Storage Compartment

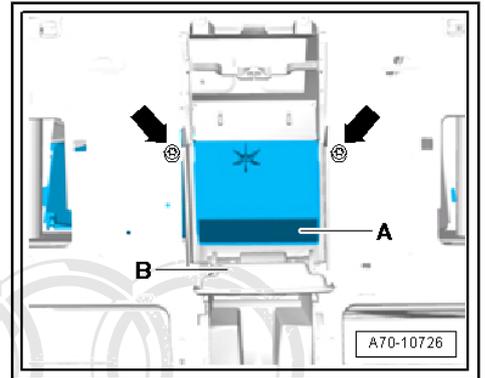
Removing

- Remove rear bulkhead cover. Refer to [⇒ "2.5.10 Rear Bulkhead Cover", page 233](#) .
- Remove the left and right rear panel trim panel sideways. Refer to [⇒ "2.5.8 Side Rear Panel Trim Panel", page 231](#) .

- Remove the bolts -arrows-.
- Remove lower center storage compartment -A- toward rear from luggage compartment.

 **Note**

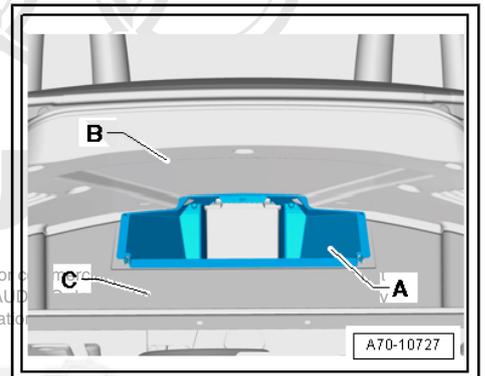
Center storage compartment -B- does not need to be removed to removal and install the lower center storage compartment -A-.



Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

The upper luggage compartment trim panel -B- and the front luggage compartment trim panel -C- must be clamped behind edge of lower center storage compartment -A-.

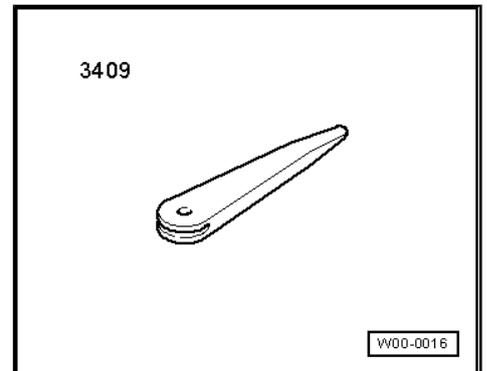


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUD with respect to the correctness of information

2.5.18 Rear Lid Trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



Removing

- Remove rear lid lock trim -1-. Refer to ["2.5.19 Rear Lid Lock Trim", page 240](#).
- If present, unclip SDARS antenna trim from rear lid.

- Remove bolts -2-.
- Unclip rear lid trim -3- with Trim Removal Wedge -3409- .

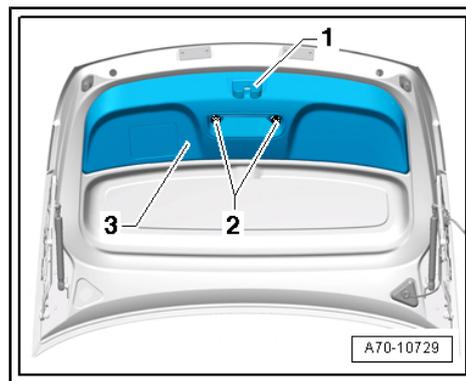
Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:



Note

- ◆ If trim clamps remain in body mounting points, remove these and insert them in trim.
- ◆ Check clamps for damage or deformation, replace if necessary.



For the correct tightening specifications; refer to
⇒ ["1.5.22 Rear Lid Trim Assembly Overview", page 181](#) .

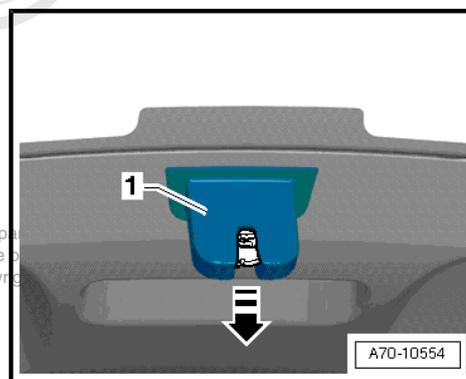
2.5.19 Rear Lid Lock Trim

Removing

- Remove rear lid lock cover -1- in direction of -arrow-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the accuracy of information with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © 2011 Audi AG

2.5.20 Sun Visor

Removing

- Fold sun visor up.
- Remove the two caps from the sun visor mounts.
- Remove the bolts on the windshield frame and remove the sun visor.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

2.5.21 Left and Right Storage Compartments

Removing

- Remove rear bulkhead cover. Refer to
⇒ ["2.5.10 Rear Bulkhead Cover", page 233](#) .
- Remove the rear lid trim panel sideways. Refer to
⇒ ["2.5.8 Side Rear Panel Trim Panel", page 231](#) .
- Remove bolts ⇒ [Item 2 \(page 170\)](#) and remove storage compartment from rear bulkhead.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

 **Note**

The clamps => [Item 5 \(page 170\)](#) must be installed in the rear bulkhead.

2.5.22 Belt Extraction Panel

Removing

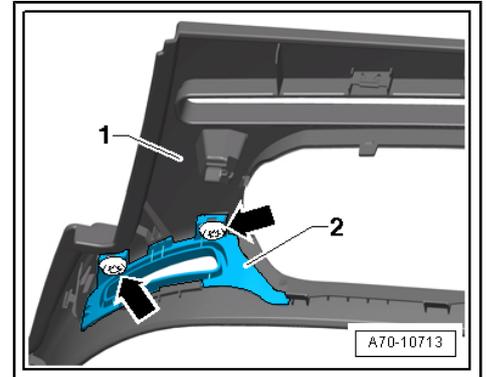
- Remove rear bulkhead cover -1-. Refer to => ["2.5.10 Rear Bulkhead Cover", page 233](#) .

Seat belt must be removed from outer floor assembly mounting point, refer to => ["3.2.2 Outer Belt End Fitting", page 88](#) and guided out of belt extraction panel -2-.

- Remove bolts -arrows- and remove belt extraction panel -2-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.



2.5.23 Rear Convertible Top Compartment Trim

Removing

- Remove upper luggage compartment cover. Refer to => ["1.5.20 Front and Upper Luggage Compartment Trim Panels Assembly Overview", page 178](#) .
- Loosen strap/convertible top retainer in luggage compartment => Body Exterior; Rep. Gr. 61 ; Removal and Installation .
- Remove convertible top => Body Exterior; Rep. Gr. 61 ; Removal and Installation .
- Thread convertible top straps through openings in rear convertible top compartment trim.
- Unclip expanding clips with Pry Lever -80 - 200- and remove rear convertible top compartment trim.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.

2.5.24 Luggage Compartment Liner

Removing

- Fold luggage compartment floor mat completely forward.
- Remove the luggage compartment floor covering.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Both pins on luggage compartment floor mat must be inserted in recesses in foam inserts.

2.5.25 Upper Luggage Compartment Trim

Removing

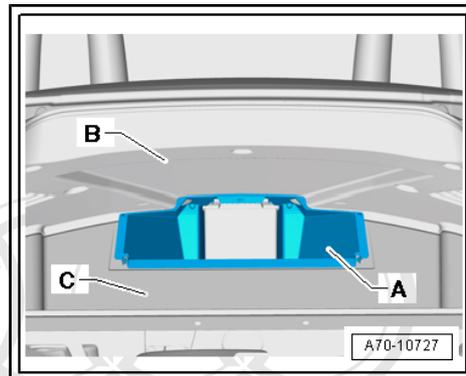
- Fold luggage compartment floor mat completely forward.
- Remove the luggage compartment floor covering.

- Remove the left and right luggage compartment side trim panels. Refer to [⇒ "2.5.16 Luggage Compartment Side Trim", page 237](#) .
- Remove cover from lower center storage compartment -A-.
- Remove the front luggage compartment trim panel -C- [⇒ page 242](#) .
- Remove expanding clips (quantity: 5) using pry lever -80 - 200- .
- Remove upper luggage compartment trim panel -B- toward rear by removing from lower center storage compartment -A-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Upper luggage compartment trim panel -B- must be clamped behind edge of lower center storage compartment -A- [⇒ Item 5 \(page 179\)](#) .
- Stretch the rear lid seal over the upper luggage compartment trim panel.



2.5.26 Front Luggage Compartment Trim Panel

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

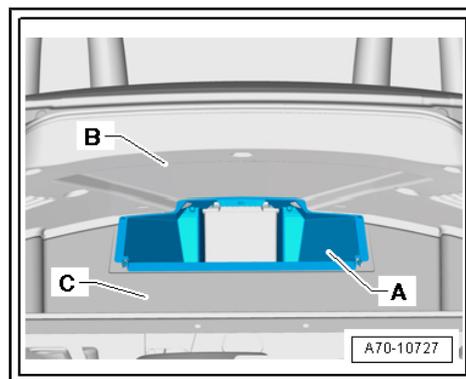
Removing

- Fold luggage compartment floor mat completely forward.
- Remove the luggage compartment floor covering.
- Remove the left and right luggage compartment side trim panels. Refer to [⇒ "2.5.16 Luggage Compartment Side Trim", page 237](#) .
- Remove cover from lower center storage compartment -A-.
- Remove expanding clips (quantity: 4) using pry lever -80 - 200- .
- Remove front luggage compartment trim panel -C- toward rear by removing from lower center storage compartment -A-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- The front luggage compartment trim panel -C- must be clamped behind the edge of lower center storage compartment -A- [⇒ Item 5 \(page 179\)](#) .



2.6 Roof Trim, Coupe

[⇒ "2.6.1 Headliner", page 242](#)

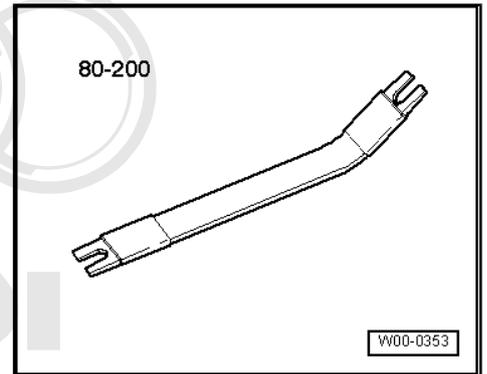
[⇒ "2.6.2 Sun Visors", page 245](#)

[⇒ "2.6.3 Sun Visor Center Mount", page 245](#)

2.6.1 Headliner

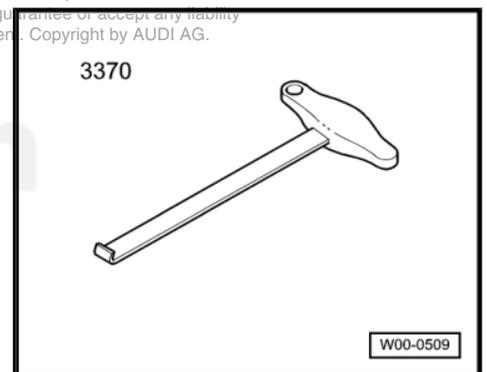
Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Pry lever -80-200-



◆ Special hook -3370-

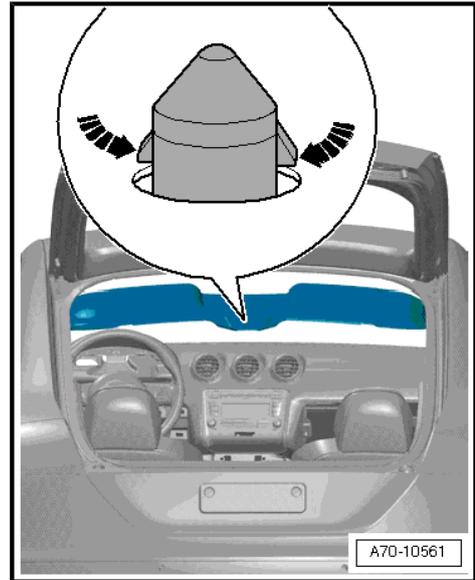
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Removing

- Remove the upper A-pillar trim. Refer to [⇒ "2.4.1 A-Pillar Upper Trim", page 206](#) .
- Remove the C-pillar trim. Refer to [⇒ "2.4.6 C-Pillar Trim", page 211](#) .
- Remove the roof panel trim. Refer to [⇒ "2.4.11 Roof Panel Trim", page 217](#) .
- Remove sun visors. Refer to [⇒ "2.6.2 Sun Visors", page 245](#) .
- Remove sun visor center brackets. Refer to [⇒ "2.6.3 Sun Visor Center Mount", page 245](#) .
- Remove interior lights. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 96 ; Removal and Installation .

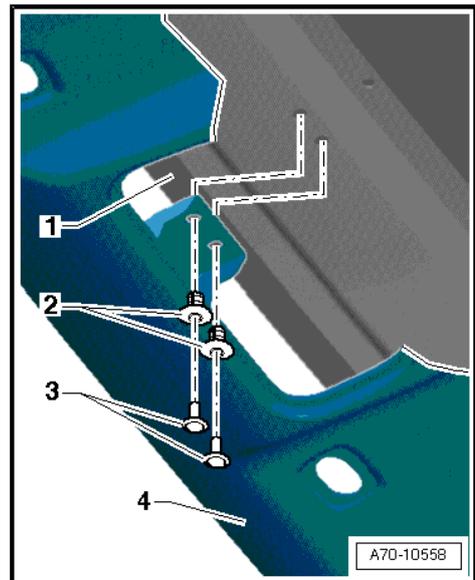
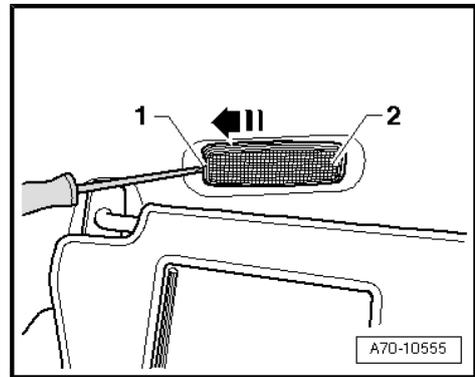
- Remove the clips -arrows- on the rear mount.



- Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.
- Pry out outer vanity mirror light -2- at -1-.
 - Remove vanity mirror light -2- in -direction of arrow- and disconnect connector.
 - Move seats forward and down as far as stops.
 - Adjust backrest back as far as stop.

 **Note**

- ◆ *The headliner must be replaced if bent.*
 - ◆ *2 technicians are needed to disconnect the last connections and remove headliner.*
- Pry pins -3- out of sleeves -2- using Pry Lever -80-200- .
 - Remove sleeves -2- from headliner -4- and roof -1-.

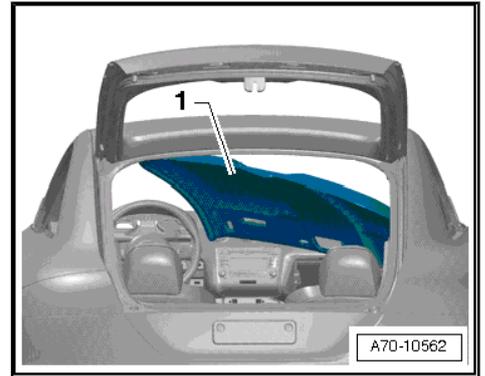


- Remove headliner -1- through passenger's door.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- align headliner before securing.



2.6.2 Sun Visors

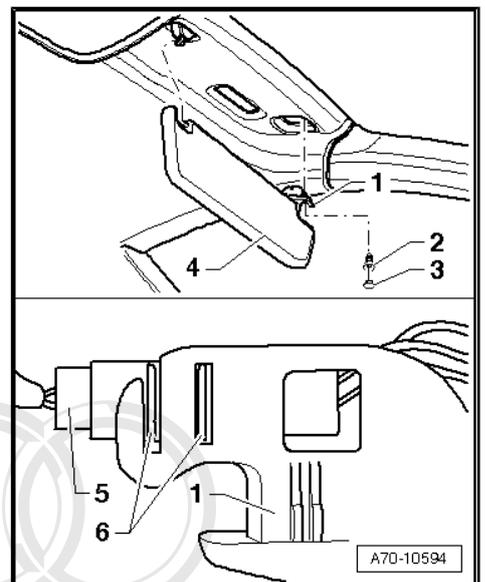
Removing

- Disengage sun visor -4- in vehicle center from sun visor center bracket and fold this to side.
- Remove the cap -3- from the sun visor mount -1-.
- Remove bolt -2- and remove sun visor -4-.
- Disconnect the sun visor connector -6- from the sun visor mount -1-.
- Disconnect sun visor connector -6- from wiring harness connector -5-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

For the correct tightening specifications; refer to ⇒ "1.6.2 Sun Visors Assembly Overview", page 183 .

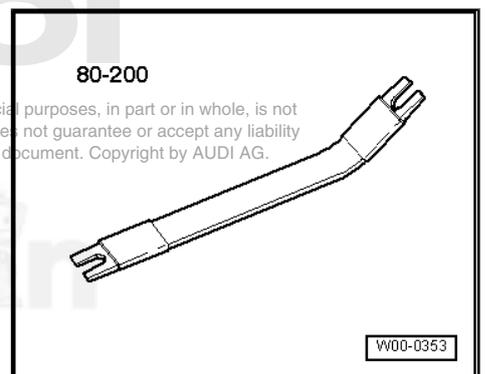


2.6.3 Sun Visor Center Mount

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Pry lever -80-200-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Removing

- Disengage sun visor in vehicle center from sun visor center bracket and fold this to side.

- Unclip sun visor center bearing cover -1- with Pry Lever -80-200-. Only slide Pry Lever -80-200- about 1 mm under cover cap -2 arrows-.

 **Note**

If Pry Lever -80-200- is inserted farther, it will be under the sun visor center bearing. It is not possible then to pry out the cover.

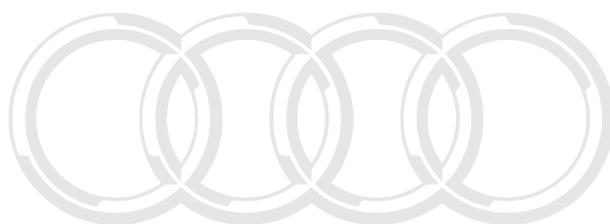
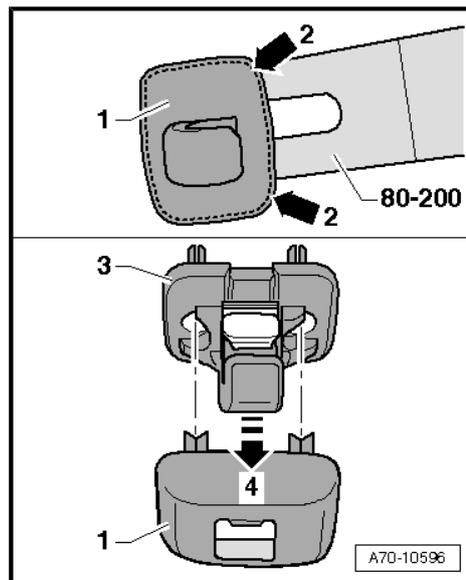
- Remove sun visor center bracket -3- -arrow 4-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

 **Note**

When inserted sun visor center bracket, make sure spreader tabs are not damaged.



Audi

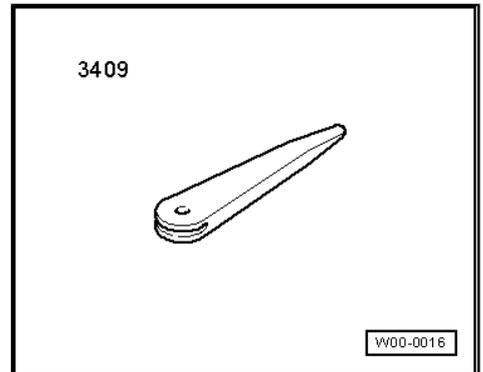
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



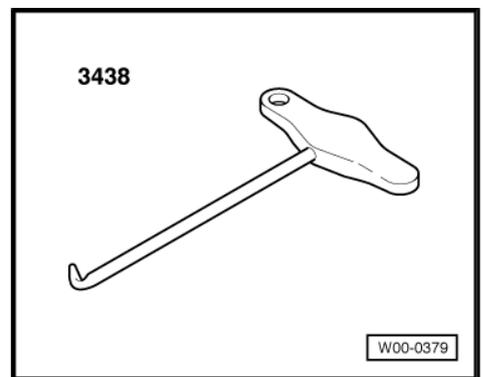
3 Special Tools

Special tools and workshop equipment required

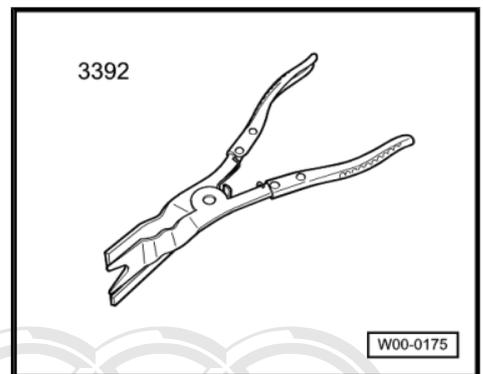
- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



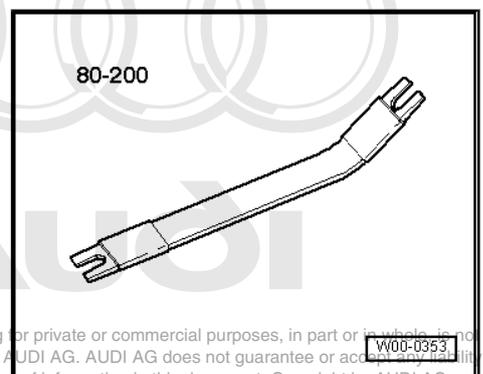
- ◆ Hook -3438-



- ◆ Pliers -3392-



- ◆ Pry lever -80 - 200-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of the information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

72 – Seat Frames

1 Description and Operation

⇒ [“1.1 Seat Versions Overview”, page 248](#)

⇒ [“1.2 Bringing Front Seats Into Service Position”, page 249](#)

⇒ [“1.3 Installing Front Seat On VAS 6136”, page 250](#)

⇒ [“1.4 Manual Front Seats”, page 252](#)

⇒ [“1.5 Power Front Seats”, page 268](#)

⇒ [“1.6 Bucket Seat”, page 306](#)

⇒ [“1.7 Rear Seat, Coupe”, page 309](#)

1.1 Seat Versions Overview



Note

Power front seats are shown in the illustrations.

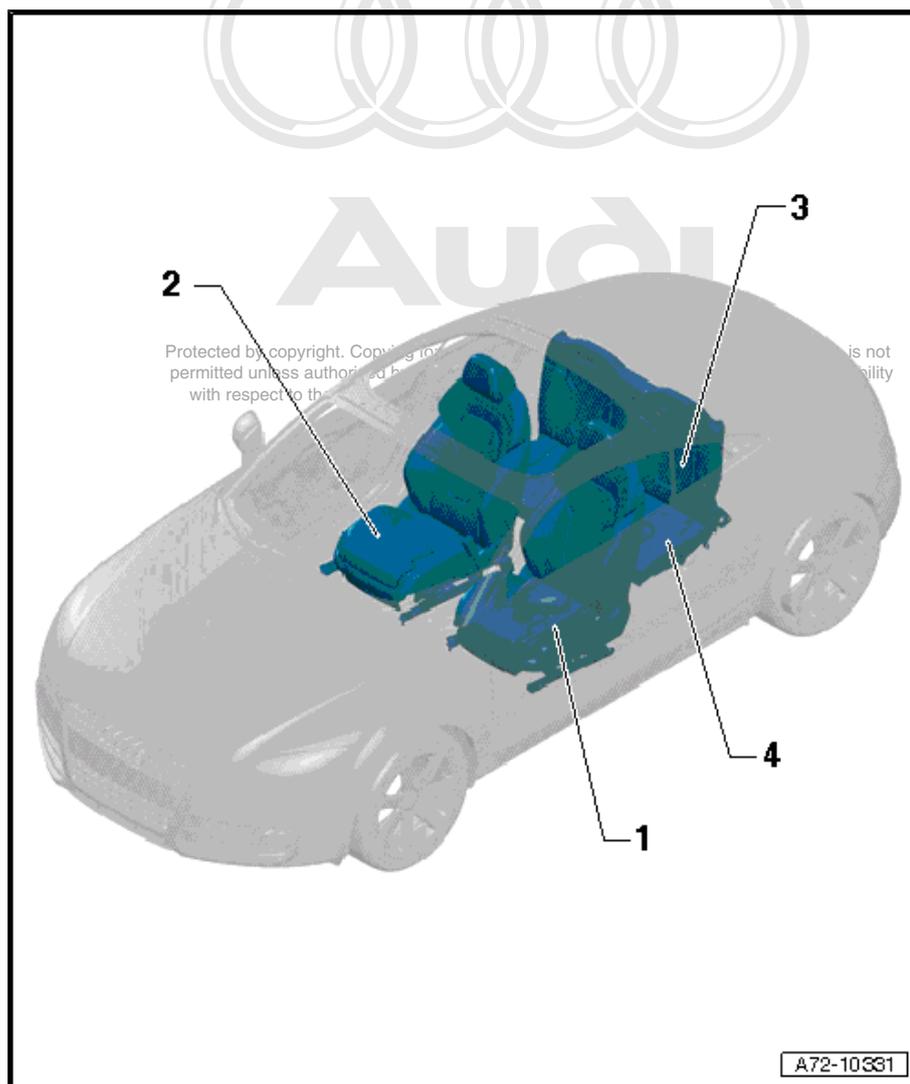
1 - Driver seat

Manual front seat, refer to
⇒ [“2.1 Manual Front Seats”,
page 315](#)

- With manual backrest release, Coupe only
- Without backrest release, with seat belt retaining loop, Roadster only
- Assembly Overview, refer to
⇒ [“1.4.1 Front Seat Assembly Overview”, page 252](#)
- Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ [“2.1.1 Front Seat”, page 315](#)
- Optional equipment:
 - ◆ Seat and backrest heating
 - ◆ Four-way lumbar support
 - ◆ Storage compartment

Power front seat, refer to
⇒ [“2.2 Power Front Seats”,
page 337](#)

- With manual backrest release, Coupe only
- Without backrest release, with seat belt retaining loop, Roadster only
- Assembly Overview, refer to
⇒ [“1.5.1 Front Seat As-](#)



[sembly Overview", page 269](#)

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.2.1 Front Seat", page 337](#)
- Optional equipment:

◆ Storage compartment

2 - Front passenger seat

Manual front seat, refer to ⇒ ["2.1 Manual Front Seats", page 315](#)

- With manual backrest release, Coupe only
- Without backrest release, with seat belt retaining loop, Roadster only
- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ ["1.4.1 Front Seat Assembly Overview", page 252](#)
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.1.1 Front Seat", page 315](#)
- Optional equipment:

◆ Seat and backrest heating

◆ Four-way lumbar support

◆ Storage compartment

◆ LATCH child seat anchor

Power front seat, refer to ⇒ ["2.2 Power Front Seats", page 337](#)

- with manual backrest release, Coupe only
- without backrest release, with seat belt retaining loop, Roadster only
- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ ["1.5.1 Front Seat Assembly Overview", page 269](#)
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.2.1 Front Seat", page 337](#)
- Optional equipment:

◆ Storage compartment

◆ LATCH child seat anchor

3 - Bench seat

- Undivided
- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ ["1.7.2 Bench Seat Assembly Overview", page 310](#)
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.4.1 Bench Seat", page 406](#)

4 - Backrest

- Divided evenly
- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ ["1.7.4 1/2 Left and Right Backrest Assembly Overview", page 311](#)
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.4.3 Backrest", page 408](#)
- Optional equipment:

◆ LATCH child seat anchor

- Versions for specific countries:

◆ Child seat anchors (on backrest frame)

◆ Top Tether (child seat anchor in backrest shell)

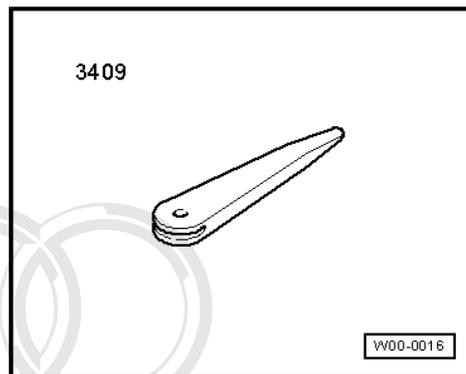
1.2 Bringing Front Seats Into Service Position

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



Service Position, Implementing

- Bring headrest into lowest lock position.
- Move seat as far back and up as possible.

Only with Electrically Adjustable Seat

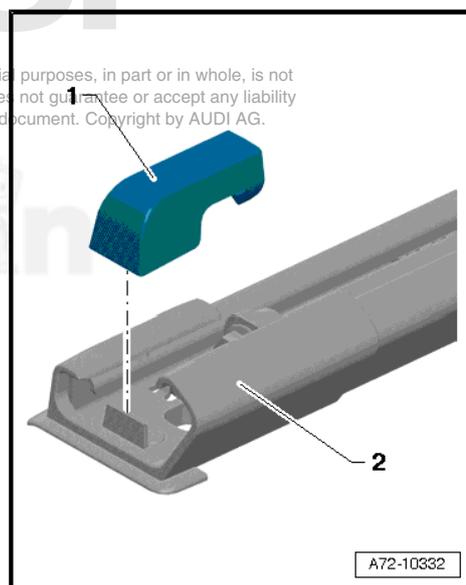


Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

The surrounding area was not shown in the illustration for clarity purposes.

- Pry cover caps -1- from seat rail covers -3- and seat fore/aft adjustment spindle -2- with Trim Removal Wedge -3409- .



Procedure for All Vehicles

- Unclip rear cover -1- with the trim removal wedge -3409- and pull the cover in the direction of -arrow- off of connector station -2-.



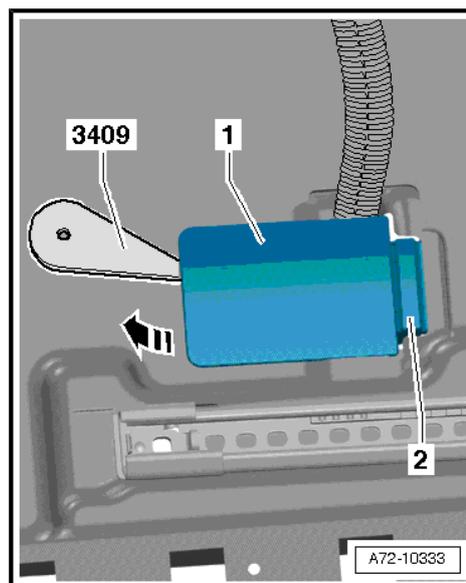
Note

Do not disconnect electrical wires.

Service Position, Resetting

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

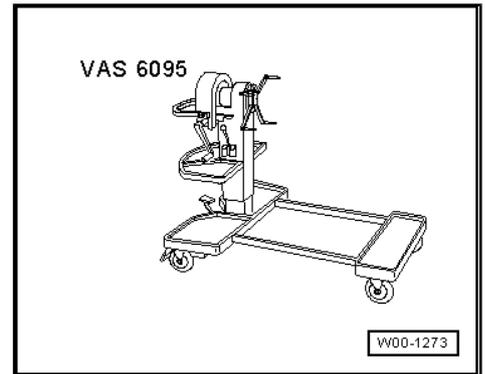
- Make sure the cover tab slides into connector station correctly.
- Engage the cover correctly with the connector station.



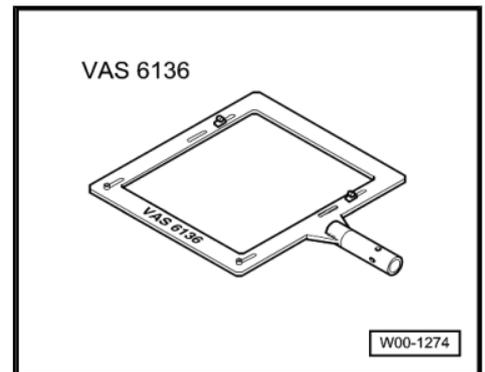
1.3 Installing Front Seat On VAS 6136

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Engine and transmission holder -VAS 6095-



◆ Fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136-



Installing the front seat on the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136-

- The front seat is removed from the vehicle.
- Mount the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136- on the engine and transmission holder -VAS 6095- .
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136- .



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1.4 Manual Front Seats

- ⇒ ["1.4.1 Front Seat Assembly Overview", page 252](#)
- ⇒ ["1.4.2 Harness Connectors, Disconnecting and Connecting", page 254](#)
- ⇒ ["1.4.3 Airbag Adapter, Connecting", page 254](#)
- ⇒ ["1.4.4 Connector Station Connectors", page 254](#)
- ⇒ ["1.4.5 Modular Wire Routing Assembly Overview", page 255](#)
- ⇒ ["1.4.6 Modular Wiring Routing Versions", page 255](#)
- ⇒ ["1.4.7 Modular Wire Routing with Ridged Tube on Front Seat", page 256](#)
- ⇒ ["1.4.8 Sill and Tunnel Side Trim Assembly Overview", page 259](#)
- ⇒ ["1.4.9 Front Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switches E176 and E177 Assembly Overview", page 260](#)
- ⇒ ["1.4.10 Sill Side Trim Retaining Bracket Assembly Overview", page 261](#)
- ⇒ ["1.4.11 Seat Height Adjuster and Seat Height Adjustment Handle Assembly Overview", page 262](#)
- ⇒ ["1.4.12 Front Backrest Assembly Overview", page 263](#)
- ⇒ ["1.4.13 Backrest Cover Assembly Overview", page 264](#)
- ⇒ ["1.4.14 Spring Mat Assembly Overview", page 265](#)
- ⇒ ["1.4.15 Four-Way Lumbar Support Assembly Overview", page 265](#)
- ⇒ ["1.4.16 Entry Assistance Assembly Overview, Coupe Only", page 265](#)
- ⇒ ["1.4.17 Entry Assistance Release Cables, Adjusting, Coupe Only", page 266](#)
- ⇒ ["1.4.18 Headrests Assembly Overview", page 267](#)
- ⇒ ["1.4.19 Seat Pan Assembly Overview", page 267](#)
- ⇒ ["1.4.20 Storage Compartment Assembly Overview", page 268](#)
- ⇒ ["1.4.21 Storage Compartment Individual Components Assembly Overview", page 268](#)
- ⇒ ["1.4.22 Storage Compartment, Disassembling and Assembling", page 268](#)

... or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.4.1 Front Seat Assembly Overview

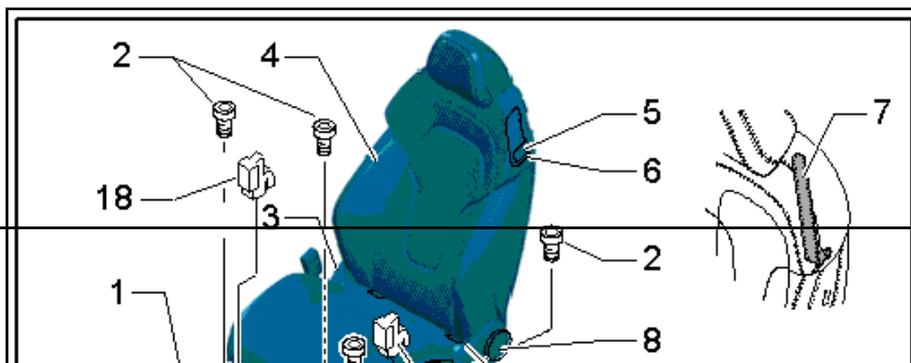


Note

- ◆ *The overview is based on the driver's seat. The passenger's seat is similar and the components are installed reversed from left to right.*
- ◆ *The carpet was not shown in the illustration for clarity reasons.*

1 - Seat rail cover

- Right front
- Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.1.2 Seat Rail Cov-](#)



[ers", page 319](#)

2 - Bolt

- 40 Nm
- Quantity: 4

3 - Trim

- Tunnel side
- Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.1.7 Tunnel Side Trim", page 323](#)

4 - Front seat

- Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.1.1 Front Seat", page 315](#)

5 - Handle

- With entry assist
- Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.1.16 Trim with Entry Assistance Handle, Coupe Only", page 334](#)
- Coupe only

6 - Trim

- With entry assist
- Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.1.16 Trim with Entry Assistance Handle, Coupe Only", page 334](#)
- Coupe only

7 - Retaining loop with push button

- For seat belt
- Roadster only

8 - Backrest adjusting wheel

- Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.1.4 Backrest Adjusting Wheel", page 319](#)

9 - LATCH child seat anchor

- Vehicles with
- For the front passenger seat only
- Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.3.1 Front Seat LATCH Child Seat Anchorage Assembly Overview", page 61](#)
- Check after accident [⇒ "1.1.19 Child Seat Anchorages, Inspecting after an Accident", page 50](#)

10 - Seat height adjustment handle

- Assembly Overview, refer to [⇒ "1.4.11 Seat Height Adjuster and Seat Height Adjustment Handle Assembly Overview", page 262](#)
- Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.1.9 Seat Height Adjustment Handle", page 324](#)

11 - Lumbar support adjustment mechanism

- Vehicles with
- Driver Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch -E176-, removing and installing [⇒ "1.4.9 Front Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switches E176 and E177 Assembly Overview", page 260](#)
- Front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E177-, removing and installing [⇒ "1.4.9 Front Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switches E176 and E177 Assembly Overview", page 260](#)
- Four-way lumbar support, removing and installing [⇒ "1.5.13 Four-Way Lumbar Support Assembly Overview", page 284](#)



Note

12 - Seat rail cover

- Left front
- Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.1.2 Seat Rail Covers", page 319](#)

13 - Rear console

- Welded with floor assembly

14 - Front console

- Welded with floor assembly

15 - Trim

- Sill side
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.1.5 Sill Side Trim", page 320](#)

16 - Storage compartment

- Vehicles with
- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ ["1.4.20 Storage Compartment Assembly Overview", page 268](#)
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.1.22 Storage Compartment", page 337](#)
- Storage compartment individual parts, assembly overview, refer to ⇒ ["1.4.21 Storage Compartment Individual Components Assembly Overview", page 268](#)
- Storage compartment, disassembling and assembling, refer to ⇒ ["1.4.22 Storage Compartment, Disassembling and Assembling", page 268](#)

17 - Handle

- For seat forward/back adjustment
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.1.11 Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Handle", page 327](#)

18 - Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Stop

- Quantity: 2
- Clipped
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.1.3 Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Stop", page 319](#)

1.4.2 Harness Connectors, Disconnecting and Connecting

The connector station is located in the vehicle floor under the front seat area. The following describes disconnecting and connecting the connectors on a power front seat.

Connectors, disconnecting and connecting, refer to
⇒ ["1.5.2 Harness Connectors, Disconnecting and Connecting", page 272](#)

1.4.3 Airbag Adapter, Connecting

The following describes connecting an airbag adapter on power front seat.

Airbag adapter, connecting, refer to
⇒ ["1.5.3 Airbag Adapter, Connecting", page 275](#)

1.4.4 Connector Station Connectors

The connectors are routed the same way on the manual seat as on the power seat.

Connector station connectors refer to
 ⇒ ["1.5.4 Connector Station Connectors", page 278](#)

1.4.5 Modular Wire Routing Assembly Overview

Note

- ◆ Check version of front seat and of vehicle and perform repairs accordingly.
- ◆ Note the two possible versions of the modular wiring routing, Modular Light and Modular. Refer to
 ⇒ ["1.4.6 Modular Wiring Routing Versions", page 255](#) .

1 - Bolt

- For the cable clamp
- 3.5 Nm

2 - Front seat

3 - Wiring harness

- Observe notes for routing wiring harness in corrugated pipe. Refer to
 ⇒ ["1.4.7 Modular Wire Routing with Ridged Tube on Front Seat", page 256](#)

4 - Cable tie

5 - Cable bracket

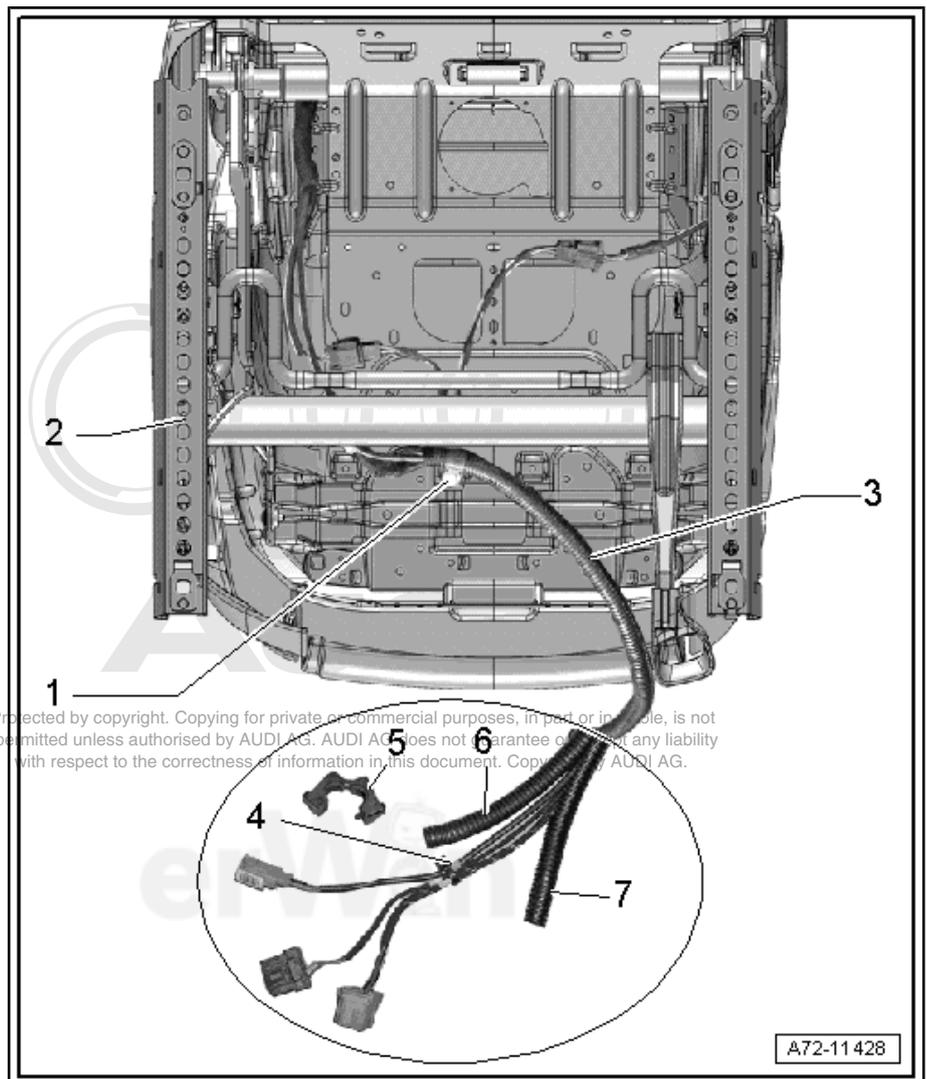
- Note location
 ⇒ ["1.4.7 Modular Wire Routing with Ridged Tube on Front Seat", page 256](#)

6 - Corrugated pipe

- Upper shell
- Note location
 ⇒ ["1.4.7 Modular Wire Routing with Ridged Tube on Front Seat", page 256](#)

7 - Corrugated pipe

- Lower shell
- Note location
 ⇒ ["1.4.7 Modular Wire Routing with Ridged Tube on Front Seat", page 256](#)



1.4.6 Modular Wiring Routing Versions

There are two versions of modular wiring routing:

- ◆ Modular Light ⇒ [page 256](#)
- ◆ Modular ⇒ [page 256](#) .

»Modular Light« Wiring Routing

A characteristic of the »Modular Light« versions is that only the side airbag wiring harness leads directly to the connector station in the vehicle floor. There is no additional connector (intermediate coupling) present in the side airbag wiring harness.

All other electrical or electronic components, for example, seat occupied recognition, electrically adjustable headrests, seat and backrest heating, electrical backrest adjustment, etc., have an additional connector (intermediate coupling) -1-, -2-, -3- on the underside of the seat pan upper frame.

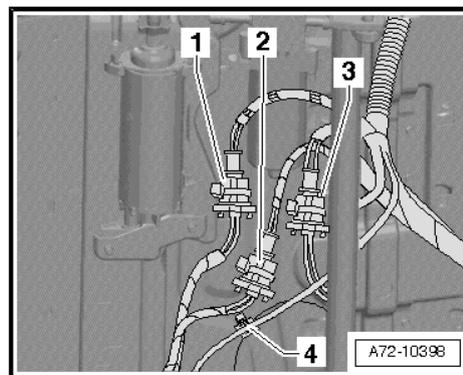
4 - Clip

All wiring harnesses are routed in a two-part corrugated pipe in the seat/connector station area.

»Modular« Wiring Routing

A characteristic of »Modular« wiring routing is that all wiring harnesses for electrical or electronic components, for example, side airbag, seat occupied recognition, bladder system, electrically adjustable headrests, seat and backrest heating, electrical backrest adjustment, etc., lead directly to the connector station in the vehicle floor. There are no additional connectors (intermediate couplings) in the electrical or electronic component wiring harnesses.

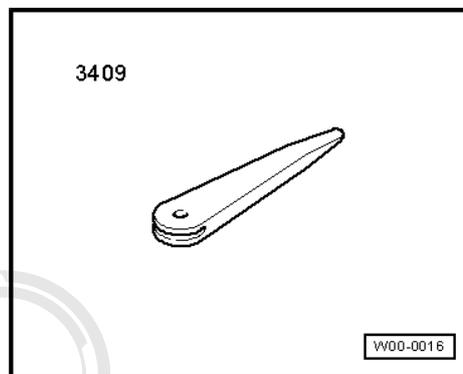
All wiring harnesses are routed in a two-part corrugated pipe in the seat/connector station area.



1.4.7 Modular Wire Routing with Ridged Tube on Front Seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



General Information

With the introduction of modular wiring routing (Modular Light or Modular), the complete sheathing of the entire wiring harness with a fabric strap between the seat tray and the connectors to the connector station has been eliminated. A two-shell corrugated pipe in which the individual wires are routed separately has been implemented for this purpose.

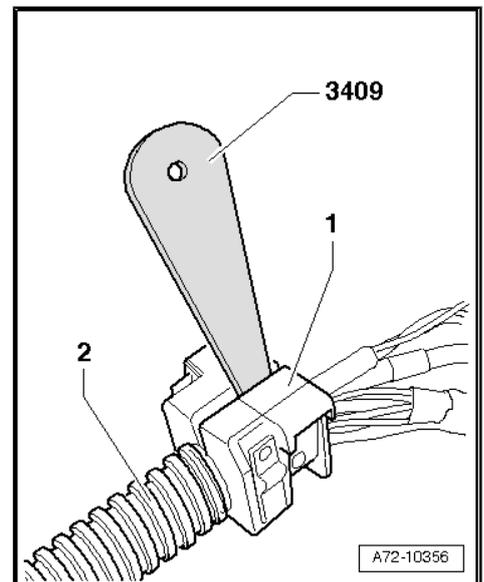
Opening Corrugated Pipe and Removing Individual Wire



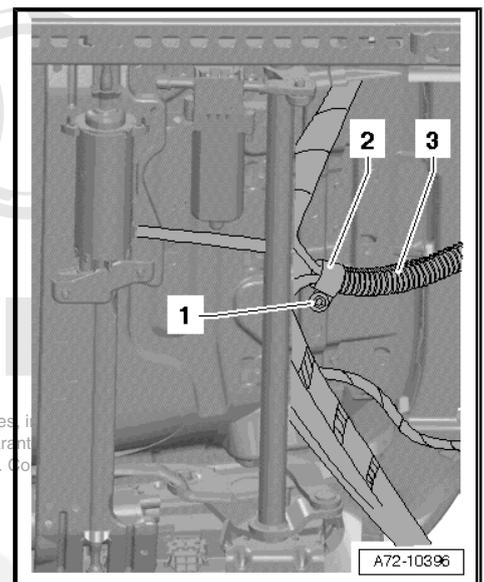
WARNING

- ◆ **Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .**

- Remove the front seat:
 - ◆ Manually Adjustable Front Seat, Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ "2.1.1 Front Seat", page 315
 - ◆ Power Front Seat, Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ "2.2.1 Front Seat", page 337
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136- . Refer to ⇒ "1.3 Installing Front Seat On VAS 6136", page 250 .
- Using Trim Removal Wedge -3409- , open cable bracket -1-.
- Remove cable bracket -1- from corrugated pipe -2-.



- Remove the bolt -1-.
- Remove cable clip -2- from corrugated pipe -3-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © Audi AG 2011

- Open fabric band -2- in area of -arrow-.
- Open corrugated pipe -1-.
- Replace the faulty wire and the side airbag
=> "3.7.1 Side Airbag", page 106 . Refer to => Electrical Equip-
ment; Rep. Gr. 96 ; Removal and Installation .

Install Individual Wires and Close Corrugated Pipe

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

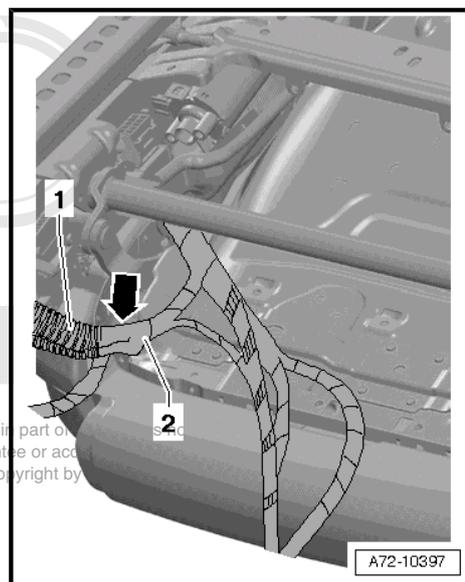
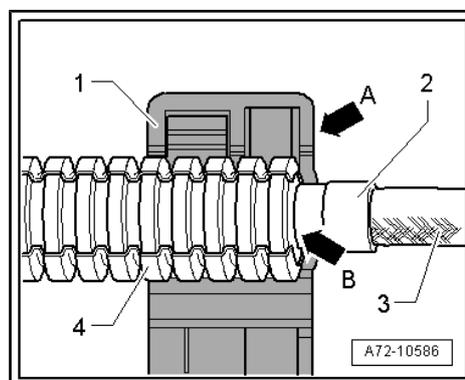
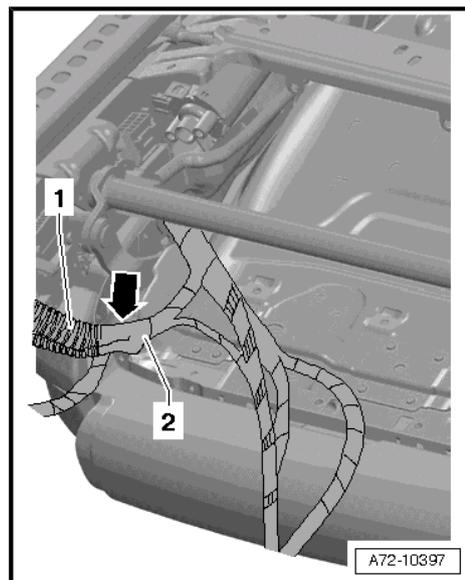
- When bundling and placing individual wires in corrugated pipe, ensure wires are not twisted.



Note

Note installation position of two-part corrugated pipe to wiring harness and position of cable bracket to corrugated pipe.

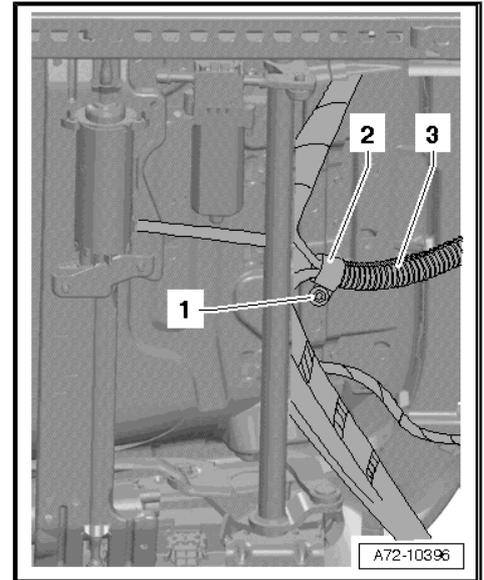
- The beginning of the corrugated pipe -4- should be placed immediately after the clip -2- or cable tie.
- 3 - Wiring harness to the connector station
- Ensure two-part corrugated pipe -4- locks cleanly over entire length.
- After connecting both halves of the corrugated pipe, wiring bracket -1- should be positioned and clipped into place according to the illustration.
- Make sure the side -arrow A- of cable bracket -1- connects to the last rib -arrow B- on the corrugated pipe -4-.
- Then bind transition of seat side of corrugated pipe -1- and wiring harness -2- with self-adhesive fabric tape -arrow-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG.

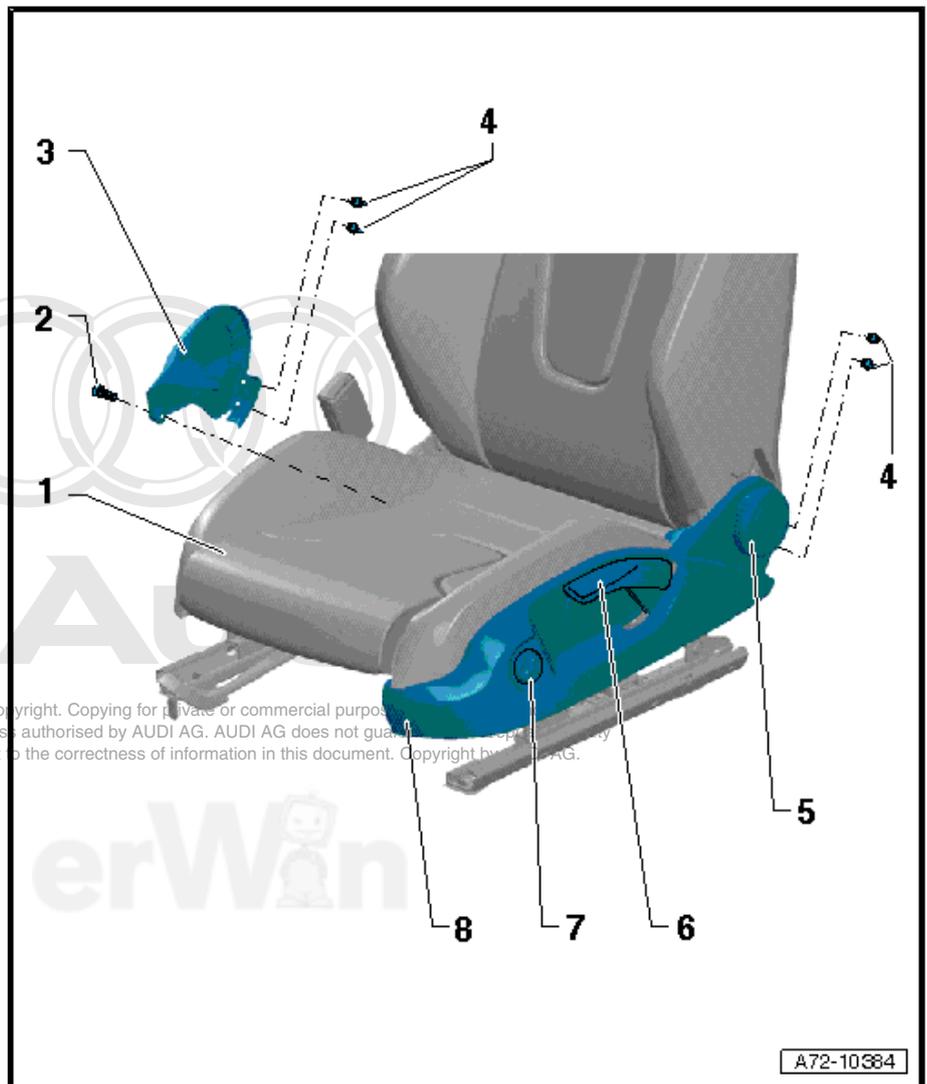
- Secure corrugated pipe -3- and wiring harness to seat pan with a cable clip -2-.
- 1 - Bolt
- Install cable ties, cable bracket and clips in the same positions as before removal.

For the correct tightening specification refer to
 ⇒ ["1.4.5 Modular Wire Routing Assembly Overview", page 255](#)



1.4.8 Sill and Tunnel Side Trim Assembly Overview

- 1 - Front seat
- 2 - Bolt
 - 2.5 Nm
- 3 - Tunnel side trim
 - Can only be replaced with seat removed
 - Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.1.7 Tunnel Side Trim", page 323](#)
- 4 - Expanding rivet
 - Quantity: 4
- 5 - Backrest adjusting wheel
 - Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.1.4 Backrest Adjusting Wheel", page 319](#)
- 6 - Seat height adjustment handle
 - Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.1.9 Seat Height Adjustment Handle", page 324](#)
- 7 - Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- or front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E177-
 - Vehicles with
 - Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ ["1.4.9 Front Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switches E176 and E177 Assembly Overview", page 260](#)



8 - Sill-side trim

- Can be replaced with seat installed
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.1.5 Sill SideTrim", page 320](#)

1.4.9 Front Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switches E176 and E177 Assembly Overview

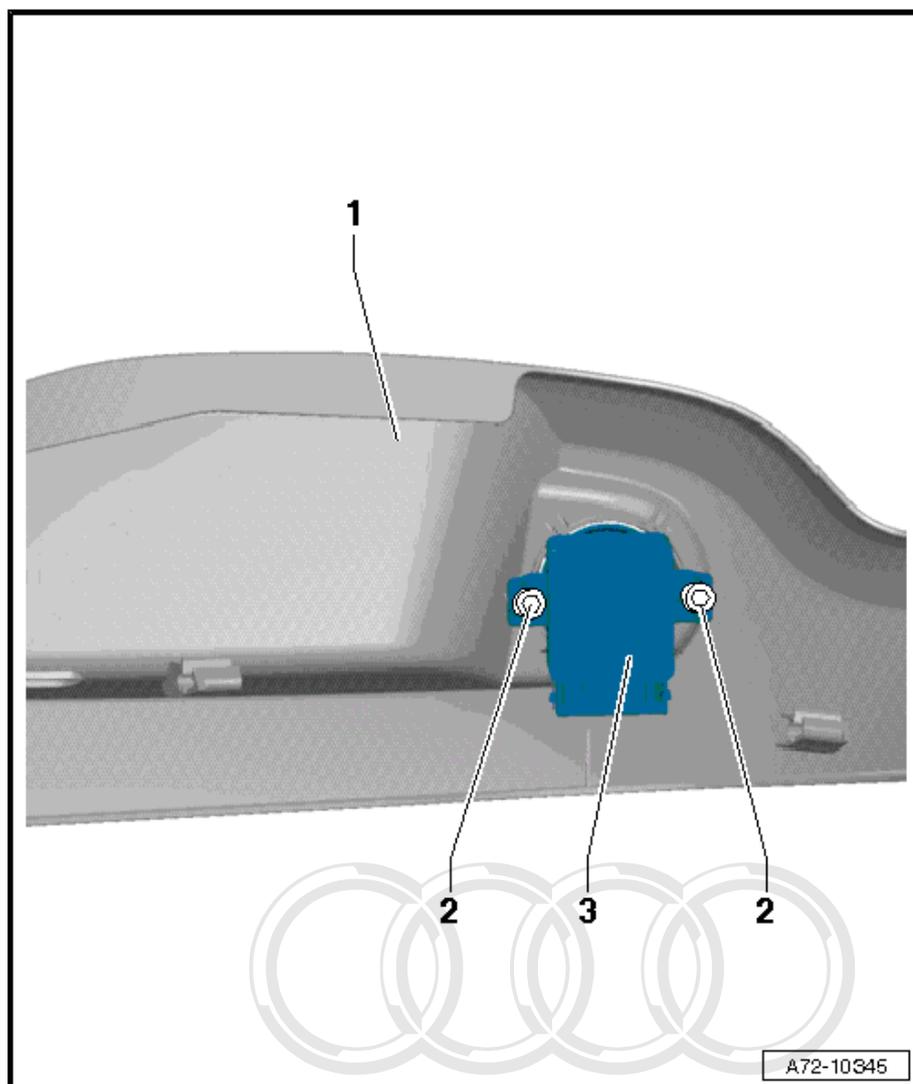
1 - Sill-side trim

2 - Bolt

- 0.5 Nm
- Quantity: 2

3 - Lumbar support adjustment switch

- Driver side -E176-
- Passenger side -E177-
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.1.6 Front Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switches E176 and E177", page 322](#)
- Switch and operating knob cannot be separated
- ◆ Connector connecting direction from below
 - on manual front seats with passenger occupant detection system (country-specific), the driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E176- or -E177- is rotated 180° when installed
- ◆ Connector connecting direction from above



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin

1.4.10 Sill Side Trim Retaining Bracket Assembly Overview

1 - Front seat

- Mechanically adjustable

2 - Sill side retaining bracket

- Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.1.8 Sill Side Retaining Bracket Trim"](#),
[page 324](#)

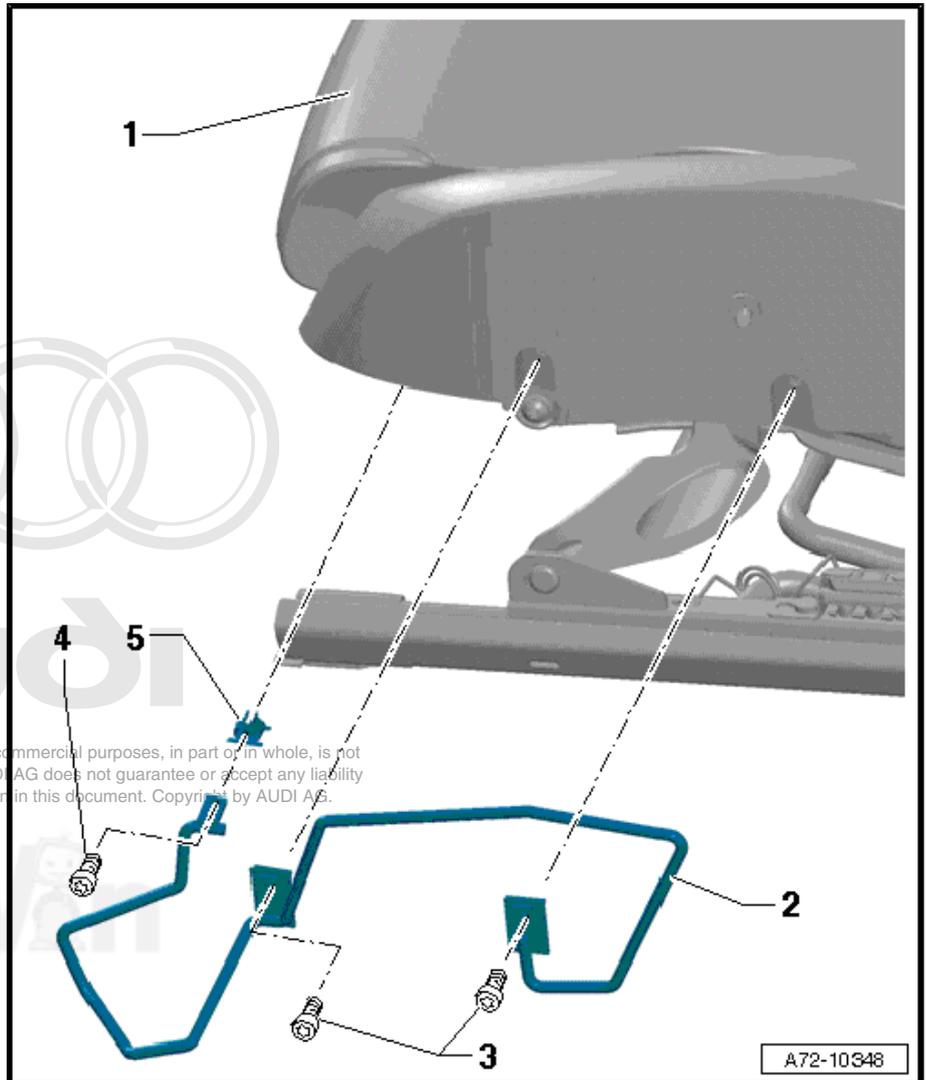
3 - Bolt

- 3.5 Nm
- Quantity: 2

4 - Bolt

- 3.5 Nm

5 - Threaded clip



1.4.11 Seat Height Adjuster and Seat Height Adjustment Handle Assembly Overview

1 - Seat height adjustment handle

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.1.9 Seat Height Adjustment Handle", page 324](#)

2 - Retaining clip

- ❑ Always replace if removed
- ❑ Note location [⇒ page 325](#)

3 - Lever

- ❑ For seat height adjustment handle

4 - Seat height adjuster

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.1.10 Seat Height Adjuster", page 325](#)

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 8 Nm

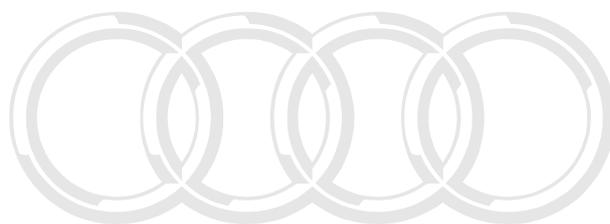
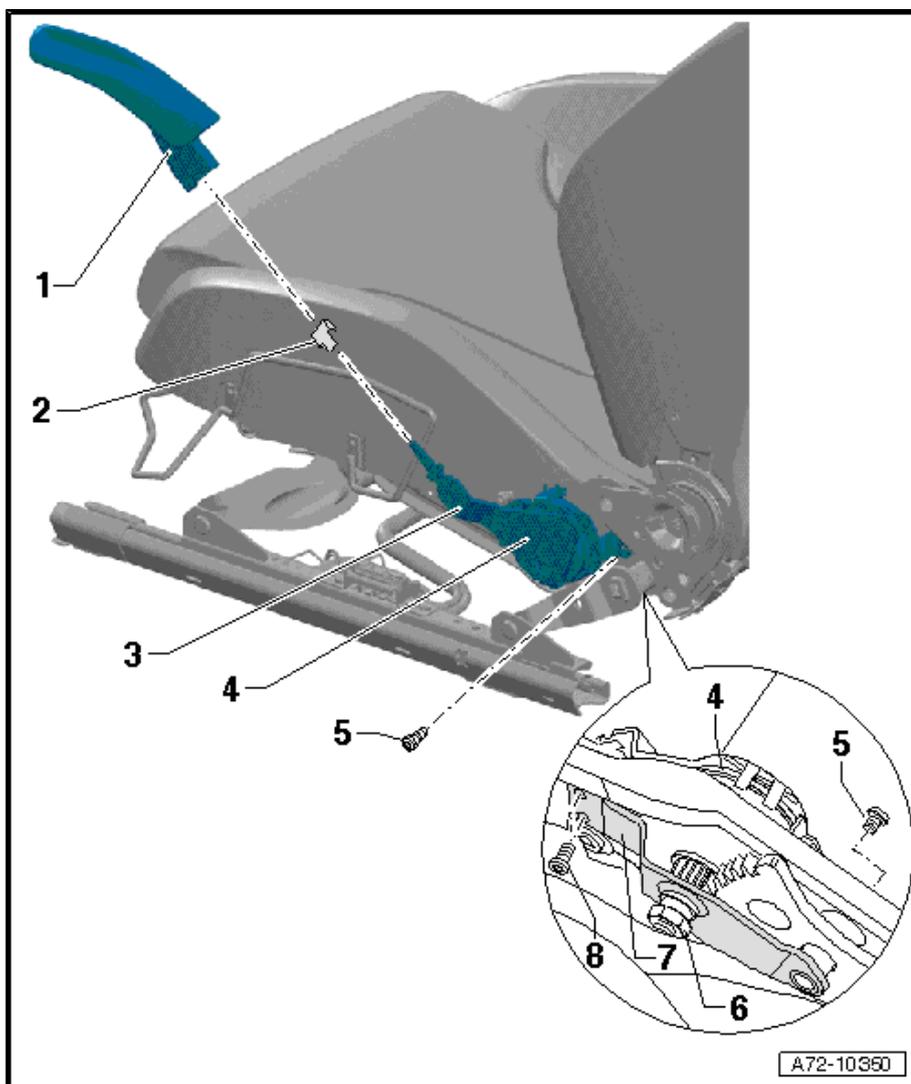
6 - Nut

- ❑ 12 Nm

7 - Retaining plate

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 8 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin

1.4.12 Front Backrest Assembly Overview

1 - Seat pan

2 - Screw, self-locking

- 36 Nm
- Quantity: 4
- Replacing
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

3 - Front backrest

- Removing and Installing, refer to
[⇒ "2.1.12 Front Backrest", page 327](#)

4 - Headrest

- Removing and Installing, refer to
[⇒ "1.4.18 Headrests Assembly Overview", page 267](#)

5 - Handle

- With entry assist
- Removing and Installing, refer to
[⇒ "2.1.16 Trim with Entry Assistance Handle, Coupe Only", page 334](#)
- Coupe only

6 - Trim

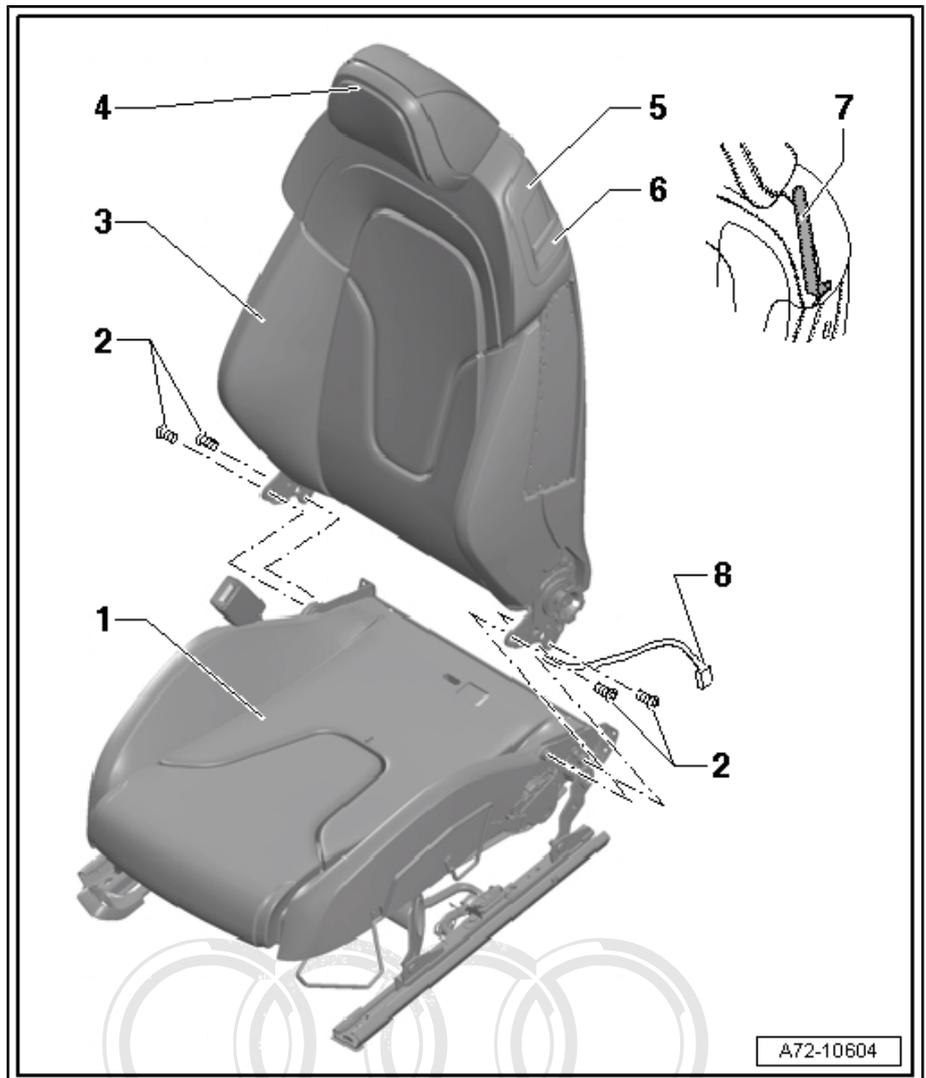
- With entry assist
- Removing and Installing, refer to
[⇒ "2.1.16 Trim with Entry Assistance Handle, Coupe Only", page 334](#)
- Coupe only

7 - Retaining loop with push button

- For seat belt
- Roadster only

8 - Wiring

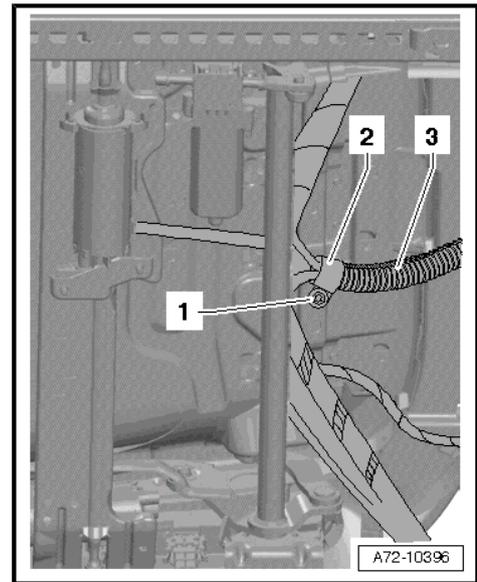
- For side airbag
- depending on optional equipment, there may be more wires, such as for seat heating, lumbar support



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG.

Cable Clip to Seat Pan

-1- - 3.5 Nm



1.4.13 Backrest Cover Assembly Overview

The backrest cover on a manual front seat is the same as on a power front seat.



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin

Backrest cover, assembly overview, refer to
 ⇒ ["1.5.12 Backrest Cover Assembly Overview"](#), page 282

1.4.14 Spring Mat Assembly Overview

1 - Spring mat

- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.1.14 Spring Mat"](#),
 page 331
- Can be removed and installed with and without pull-springs

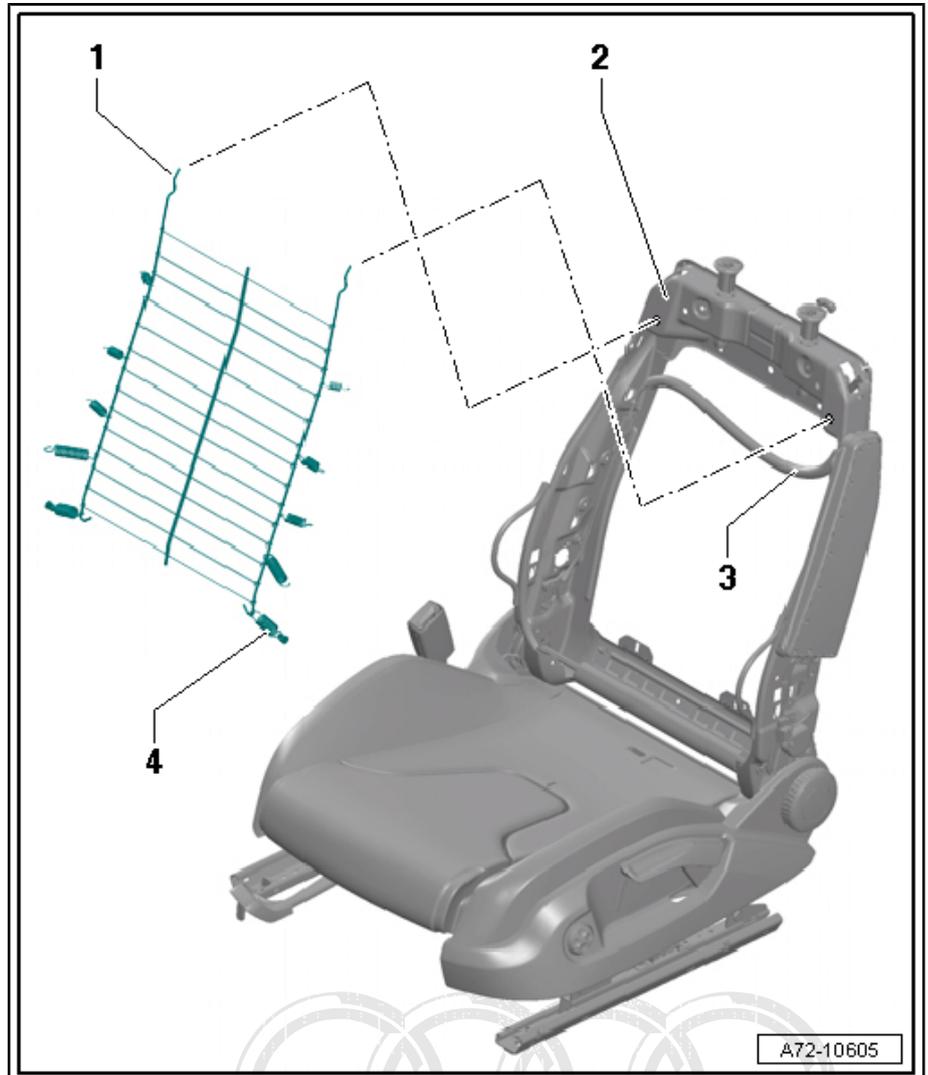
2 - Backrest frame

3 - Release cable

- With entry assist
- Coupe only

4 - Pull-spring

- Each of the five pull-springs have a different number of coils
- For the correct allocation, refer to ⇒ Parts Catalog



1.4.15 Four-Way Lumbar Support Assembly Overview

The four-way lumbar support on the manual front seat is the same as the one on a power front seat.

Four-way lumbar support, assembly overview, refer to
 ⇒ ["1.5.13 Four-Way Lumbar Support Assembly Overview"](#), page 284

1.4.16 Entry Assistance Assembly Overview, Coupe Only

The entry assistance on a manual front seat is the same as on a power front seat.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written authorization of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Entry Assistance, Coupe Only, Assembly Overview, refer to
⇒ "1.5.14 Entry Assistance Assembly Overview, Coupe Only",
page 285

1.4.17 Entry Assistance Release Cables, Ad- justing, Coupe Only

The following describes adjusting the release cables on a power front seat.

Entry Assistance Release Cables, Coupe Only, Adjusting, refer to



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



⇒ ["1.5.15 Entry Assistance Release Cables Adjusting, Coupe Only", page 286](#)

1.4.18 Headrests Assembly Overview

Headrests, assembly overview, refer to
 ⇒ ["1.5.16 Headrests Assembly Overview", page 289](#)

1.4.19 Seat Pan Assembly Overview



Note Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ◆ *Upper and lower seat pan frames must not be separated.*
- ◆ *If damaged, replace the entire seat pan.*

1 - Upper seat pan frame

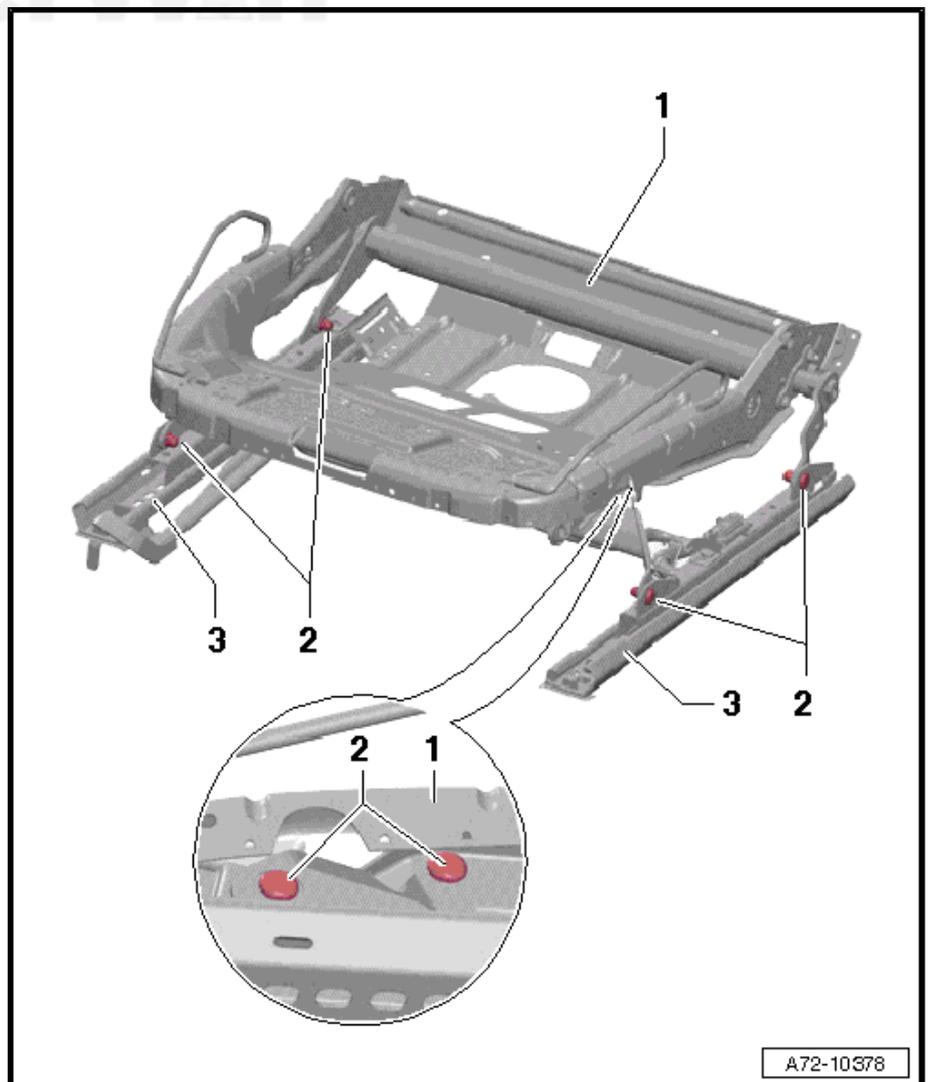
- Do not separate from lower seat pan frame
- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.1.21 Seat Pan", page 335](#)

2 - Shear tension bolts with self-locking collar

- Quantity: 6
- Must not be drilled out

3 - Lower seat pan frame

- Do not separate from upper frame
- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.1.21 Seat Pan", page 335](#)



A72-10378

1.4.20 Storage Compartment Assembly Overview

Storage compartment, assembly overview, refer to
⇒ ["1.5.19 Storage Compartment Assembly Overview", page 294](#)

1.4.21 Storage Compartment Individual Components Assembly Overview

Storage compartment individual parts, assembly overview, refer to
⇒ ["1.5.20 Storage Compartment Individual Components Assembly Overview", page 295](#)

1.4.22 Storage Compartment, Disassembling and Assembling

Storage compartment, disassembling and assembling, refer to
⇒ ["1.5.21 Storage Compartment, Disassembling and Assembling", page 295](#)

1.5 Power Front Seats

⇒ ["1.5.1 Front Seat Assembly Overview", page 269](#)

⇒ ["1.5.2 Harness Connectors, Disconnecting and Connecting", page 272](#)

⇒ ["1.5.3 Airbag Adapter, Connecting", page 275](#)

⇒ ["1.5.4 Connector Station Connectors", page 278](#)

⇒ ["1.5.5 Modular Wire Routing Assembly Overview", page 278](#)

⇒ ["1.5.6 Modular Wiring Routing Versions", page 278](#)

⇒ ["1.5.7 Modular Wire Routing with Ridged Tube on Front Seat", page 278](#)

⇒ ["1.5.8 Sill and Tunnel Side Trim Assembly Overview", page 279](#)

⇒ ["1.5.9 Sill Side Trim Retaining Bracket Assembly Overview", page 280](#)

⇒ ["1.5.10 Seat and Backrest Adjustment Actuator Assembly Overview", page 280](#)

⇒ ["1.5.11 Front Backrest Assembly Overview", page 281](#)

⇒ ["1.5.12 Backrest Cover Assembly Overview", page 282](#)

⇒ ["1.5.13 Four-Way Lumbar Support Assembly Overview", page 284](#)

⇒ ["1.5.14 Entry Assistance Assembly Overview, Coupe Only", page 285](#)

⇒ ["1.5.15 Entry Assistance Release Cables Adjusting, Coupe Only", page 286](#)

⇒ ["1.5.16 Headrests Assembly Overview", page 289](#)

⇒ ["1.5.17 Seat Pan Assembly Overview", page 290](#)

⇒ ["1.5.18 Seat Pan, Disassembling and assembling", page 291](#)

⇒ ["1.5.19 Storage Compartment Assembly Overview", page 294](#)

⇒ ["1.5.20 Storage Compartment Individual Components Assembly Overview", page 295](#)

⇒ ["1.5.21 Storage Compartment, Disassembling and Assembling", page 295](#)

⇒ ["1.5.22 Seat Angle Adjustment Motor V243/V244 Assembly](#)

[Overview", page 298](#)

⇒ ["1.5.23 Driver Seat Angle Adjustment Motor V243/V244", page 298](#)

⇒ ["1.5.24 Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor V288 Assembly Overview", page 300](#)

⇒ ["1.5.25 Front Seat Backrest Adjustment Motors V45/V46 Assembly Overview", page 301](#)

⇒ ["1.5.26 Front Seat Backrest Stop Switches E69 and E70 Assembly Overview", page 302](#)

⇒ ["1.5.27 Lumbar Support Curvature and Height Adjustment Motors Assembly Overview", page 303](#)

⇒ ["1.5.28 Seat Height Adjustment Motors V245 and V246 Assembly Overview", page 304](#)

⇒ ["1.5.29 Lumbar Support Adjustment Switches E176 and E177 Assembly Overview", page 305](#)

1.5.1 Front Seat Assembly Overview

 Note

- ◆ *The overview is based on the driver's seat. The passenger's seat is similar and the components are installed reversed from left to right.*
- ◆ *The carpet was not shown in the illustration for clarity reasons.*

1 - Seat rail cover

- Right front
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.2.3 Seat Rail and Spindle Covers", page 344](#)

2 - Spindle cover

- Clipped into seat rails at left and right front
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.2.3 Seat Rail and Spindle Covers", page 344](#)

3 - Bolt

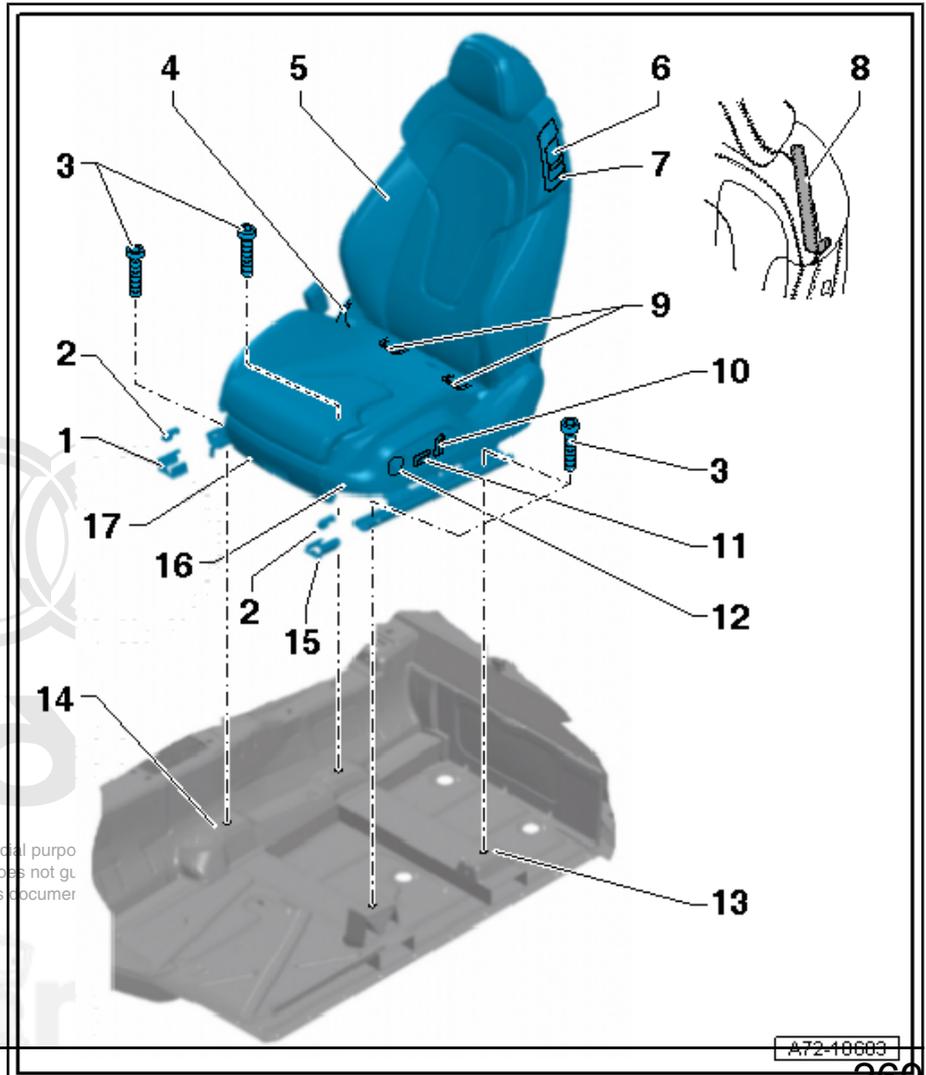
- 40 Nm
- Quantity: 4

4 - Trim

- Tunnel side
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["1.5.8 Sill and Tunnel Side Trim Assembly Overview", page 279](#)

5 - Front seat

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.2.1 Front Seat", page 337](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted without the express authorisation of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the correctness of information in this document.

- Remove if the seat forward/back adjustment motor -V288- is faulty, refer to [⇒ "2.2.2 Front Seat, Removing a Faulty Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor V288", page 340](#) .

6 - Handle

- With entry assist
- Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "1.5.14 Entry Assistance Assembly Overview, Coupe Only", page 285](#)
- Coupe only

7 - Trim

- With entry assist
- Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "1.5.14 Entry Assistance Assembly Overview, Coupe Only", page 285](#)
- Coupe only

8 - Retaining loop with push button

- For seat belt Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.
- Roadster only

9 - LATCH child seat anchor

- Vehicles with
- For the front passenger seat only
- Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.3.1 Front Seat LATCH Child Seat Anchorage Assembly Overview", page 61](#)
- Check after accident, refer to [⇒ "1.1.19 Child Seat Anchorages, Inspecting after an Accident", page 50](#)

10 - Actuator

- ◆ For Driver Backrest Adjustment Switch -E96- or -E98-
 - Actuator, removing and installing, refer to [⇒ "1.5.10 Seat and Backrest Adjustment Actuator Assembly Overview", page 280](#)
 - Switch, removing and installing, refer to [⇒ "2.2.28 Seat Forward/Back, Angle, Height and Backrest Adjustment Switches V288/V243/V244/V245/V246/V45/V46", page 392](#)

11 - Actuator

- ◆ For Driver Seat Fore/Aft Switch -E363- or -E64-
- ◆ For driver seat angle adjustment switch -E222- or -E334-
- ◆ For Driver Seat Height Adjustment Switch -E364- or -E365-
 - Actuator, removing and installing, refer to [⇒ "1.5.10 Seat and Backrest Adjustment Actuator Assembly Overview", page 280](#)
 - Switch, removing and installing, refer to [⇒ "2.2.28 Seat Forward/Back, Angle, Height and Backrest Adjustment Switches V288/V243/V244/V245/V246/V45/V46", page 392](#)

12 - Driver Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch -E176- or -E177-

- Switch, removing and installing, refer to [⇒ "1.5.29 Lumbar Support Adjustment Switches E176 and E177 Assembly Overview", page 305](#)
- Four-way lumbar support, removing and installing, refer to [⇒ "1.5.13 Four-Way Lumbar Support Assembly Overview", page 284](#)



Note

13 - Rear console

- Welded with floor assembly

14 - Front console

- Welded with floor assembly

15 - Seat rail cover

- Left front

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.2.3 Seat Rail and Spindle Covers”, page 344](#)

16 - Trim

- Sill side
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“1.5.8 Sill and Tunnel Side Trim Assembly Overview”, page 279](#)

17 - Storage compartment

- Vehicles with
- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ [“1.5.19 Storage Compartment Assembly Overview”, page 294](#)
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.2.19 Storage Compartment”, page 373](#)
- Storage compartment individual parts, assembly overview, refer to ⇒ [“1.5.20 Storage Compartment Individual Components Assembly Overview”, page 295](#)
- Storage compartment, disassembling and assembling, refer to ⇒ [“1.5.21 Storage Compartment, Disassembling and Assembling”, page 295](#)

Electrical and Electronic Components Overview

1 - Seat angle adjustment motor

- Driver side -V243-
- Passenger side -V244-
- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ [“1.5.22 Seat Angle Adjustment Motor V243/V244 Assembly Overview”, page 298](#)
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“1.5.23 Driver Seat Angle Adjustment Motor V243/V244”, page 298](#)

2 - Seat forward/back adjustment motor -V288-

- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ [“1.5.24 Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor V288 Assembly Overview”, page 300](#)
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.2.20 Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor V288”, page 375](#)

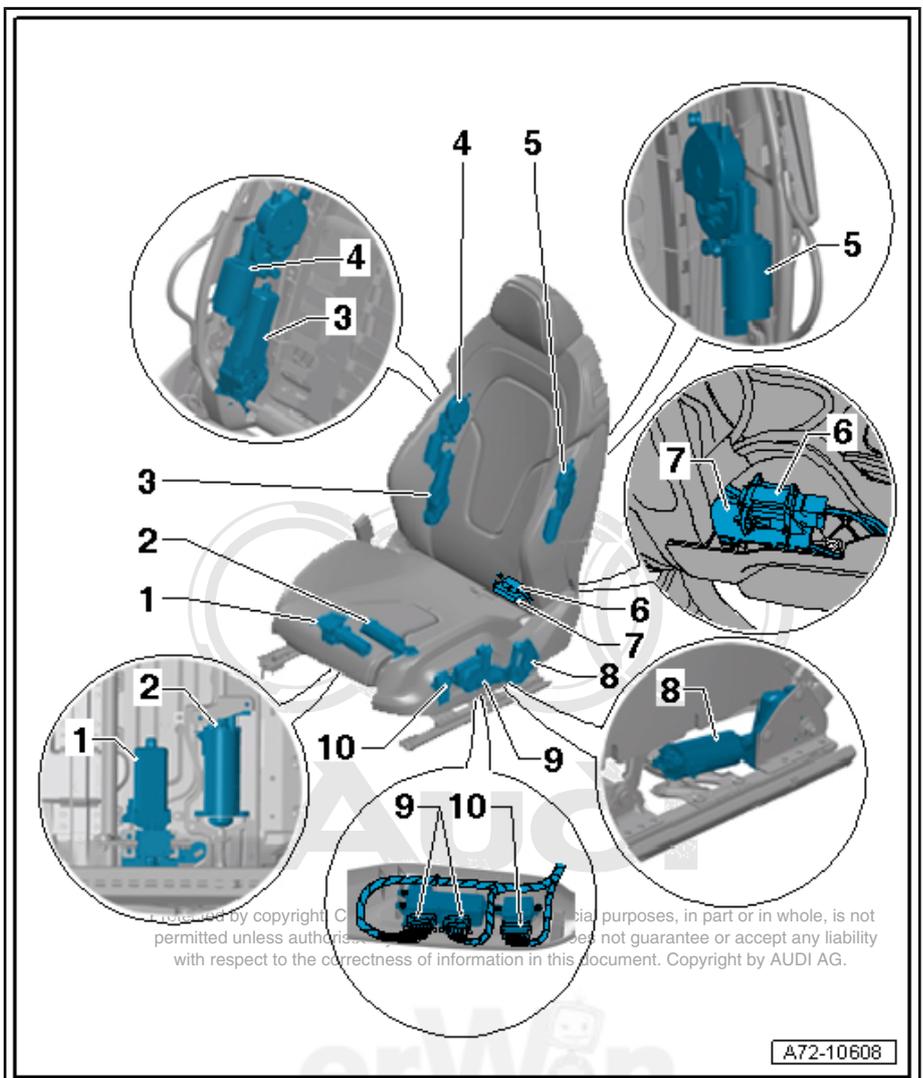
3 - Backrest adjustment motor

- Driver side -V45-
- Passenger side -V46-
- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ [“1.5.25 Front Seat Backrest Adjustment Motors V45/V46 Assembly Overview”, page 301](#)

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.2.21 Driver's Backrest Adjustment Motor V45 or V46”, page 377](#)

4 - Lumbar support height adjustment motor

- Driver side -V129-
- Passenger side -V130-



- Assembly Overview, refer to
⇒ ["1.5.27 Lumbar Support Curvature and Height Adjustment Motors Assembly Overview", page 303](#)
- Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.2.24 Lumbar Support Height Adjustment Motors V129 and V130", page 383](#)

5 - Lumbar support curvature adjustment motor

- Driver side -V125-
- Passenger side -V126-
- Assembly Overview, refer to
⇒ ["1.5.27 Lumbar Support Curvature and Height Adjustment Motors Assembly Overview", page 303](#)
- Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.2.23 Lumbar Support Curvature Adjustment Motors V125 and V126", page 380](#)

6 - Stop switch coupling

7 - Housing with stop switch

- For driver's seat backrest -E69-
- For passenger's seat backrest -E70-
- Assembly Overview, refer to
⇒ ["1.5.26 Front Seat Backrest Stop Switches E69 and E70 Assembly Overview", page 302](#)
- Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.2.22 Front Seat Backrest Stop Switches E69 and E70", page 379](#)
- Only stop switch may be removed and installed

8 - Seat height adjustment motor

- Driver side -V245-
- Passenger side -V246-
- Assembly Overview, refer to
⇒ ["1.5.28 Seat Height Adjustment Motors V245 and V246 Assembly Overview", page 304](#)
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.2.25 Seat Height Adjustment Motor V245 and V246", page 386](#)

9 - Switch

- Driver Seat Fore/Aft Switch -E363- or -E64-
- Driver Backrest Adjustment Switch -E96- or -E98-
- Driver Seat Fore/Aft Switch -E222- or -E334-
- Driver Seat Fore/Aft Switch -E364- or -E365-



Note

- Assembly Overview, refer to
⇒ ["2.2.18 Seat Adjustment Switches, V288/V243/V244/V245/V246/V45/V46 Assembly Overview", page 372](#)
- Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.2.28 Seat Forward/Back, Angle, Height and Backrest Adjustment Switches V288/V243/V244/V245/V246/V45/V46", page 392](#)

10 - Lumbar support adjustment switch

- Driver side -E176-
- Passenger side -E177-
- Assembly Overview, refer to
⇒ ["1.5.29 Lumbar Support Adjustment Switches E176 and E177 Assembly Overview", page 305](#)
- Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.2.27 Lumbar Support Adjustment Switches E176 and E177", page 391](#)

1.5.2 Harness Connectors, Disconnecting and Connecting

The connector station is located in the vehicle floor under the front seat area.

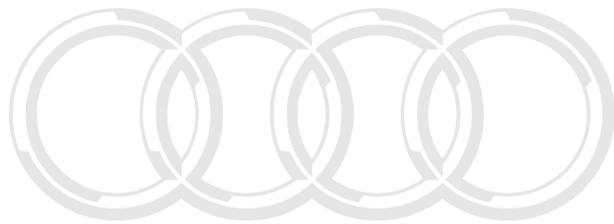
Disconnecting



WARNING

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .*

- Bring seat into service position. Refer to ⇒ "1.2 Bringing Front Seats Into Service Position", page 249 .
- Switch off the ignition.
- Disconnect battery ground cable. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin 

- Remove the cable bracket -3- upward from connector station.

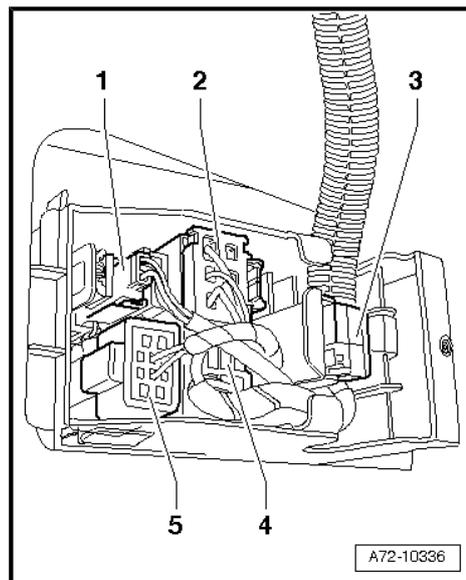
**Note**

The number of harness connectors may vary depending on the equipment. The description shows the version with the most equipment.

**WARNING**

- ◆ Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.

- Remove side airbag connector -1-.
- Remove seat heating connector -2-.
- Disconnect seat adjustment voltage supply connector -4-.
- Disconnect the seat belt latch connector -5-.
- Connect the airbag adapter -VAS 6281- to the side airbag connector on the front seat. Refer to [⇒ "1.5.3 Airbag Adapter, Connecting", page 275](#) .

**Note**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Ensure airbag adapter engages correctly.

Connecting

Connect the connectors in reverse order. Observe the following when doing so:

**WARNING**

- ◆ Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to [⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38](#) .
- ◆ Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.

**Note**

Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.

- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again.

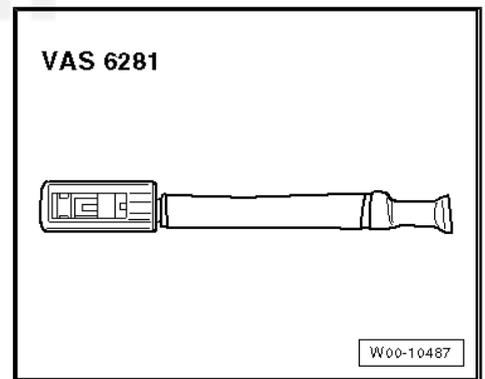
The connector station is located in the vehicle floor under the front seat.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.5.3 Airbag Adapter, Connecting

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Airbag adapter -VAS 6281-



Disconnecting



WARNING

- ◆ **Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .**

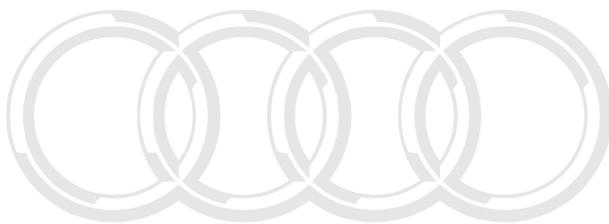
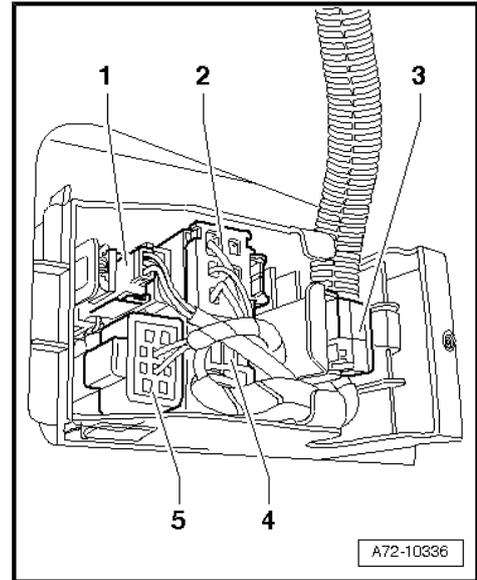
- Bring seat into service position. Refer to ⇒ "1.2 Bringing Front Seats Into Service Position", page 249 .
- Switch off the ignition.
- Disconnect battery ground cable. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .



WARNING

- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.**

- Release side airbag connector -1- and disconnect it.



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Connect Airbag Adapter -VAS 6281- -4- to side airbag connector on seat side -1-.



Caution

The Airbag Adapter -VAS 6281- must stay connected to seat until seat is installed again.

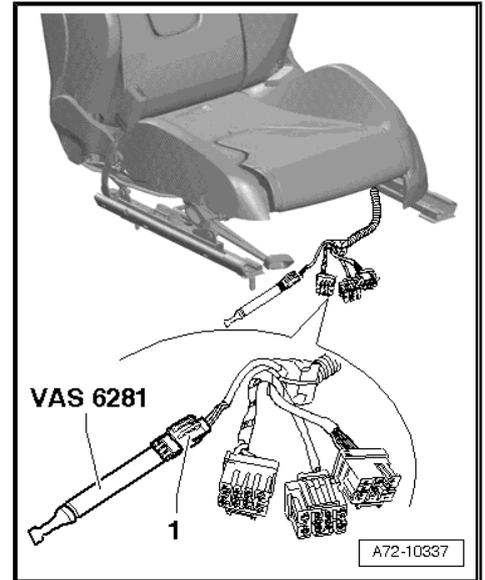
Connecting

The airbag connectors are connected in reverse order. Observe the following when doing so:



WARNING

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38.*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*



Note

Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.

- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin 

1.5.4 Connector Station Connectors

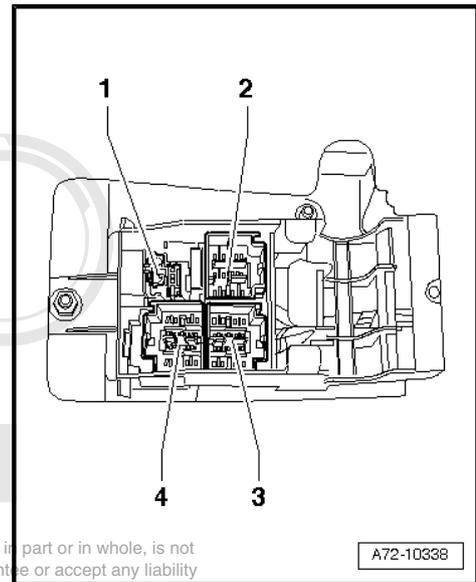
Connector routing, refer to ⇒ Wiring diagrams, Troubleshooting & Component locations

- 1 - Side Airbag
- 2 - Seat heater
- 3 - Seat adjustment power supply
- 4 - Belt latch



Note

The number of harness connectors may vary depending on the equipment. The description shows the version with the most equipment.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.5.5 Modular Wire Routing Assembly Overview

Modular wiring routing, assembly overview, refer to ⇒ ["1.4.5 Modular Wire Routing Assembly Overview", page 255](#)

1.5.6 Modular Wiring Routing Versions

The differences between the »Modular Light« and »Modular« versions are explained in this chapter.

Modular wiring routing, versions, refer to ⇒ ["1.4.6 Modular Wiring Routing Versions", page 255](#)

1.5.7 Modular Wire Routing with Ridged Tube on Front Seat

The procedure steps and notes about removing and installing the corrugated pipe and wiring are given in the following description.

Modular wiring with corrugated tube on front seat, refer to
 ⇒ ["1.4.7 Modular Wire Routing with Ridged Tube on Front Seat"](#),
[page 256](#)

1.5.8 Sill and Tunnel Side Trim Assembly Overview

1 - Front seat

2 - Bolt

- 2.5 Nm

3 - Tunnel side trim

- Can only be replaced with seat removed
- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.2.5 Tunnel Side Trim"](#), [page 348](#)

4 - Expanding rivet

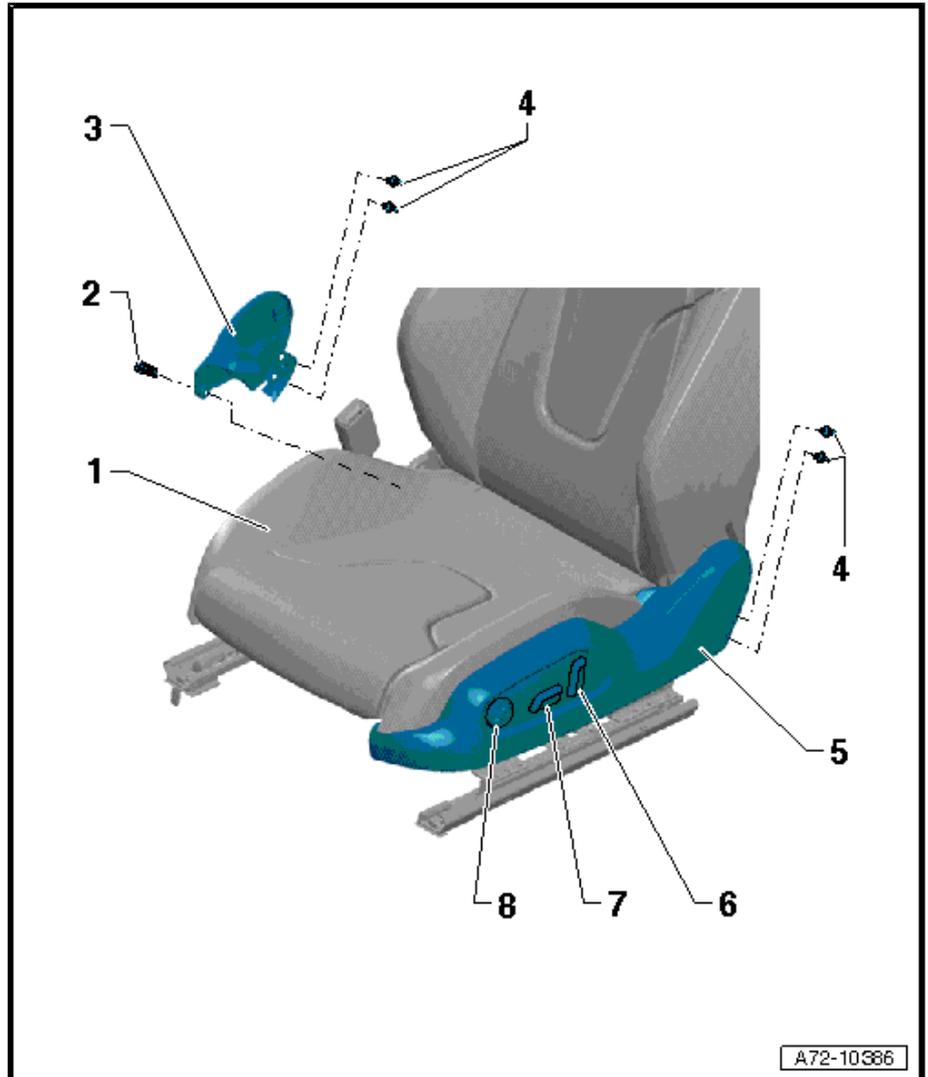
- Quantity: 4

5 - Sill-side trim

- Can be replaced with seat installed
- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.2.4 Sill Side Trim"](#), [page 346](#)

6 - Actuator

- ◆ For Driver Backrest Adjustment Switch -E96- or Passenger Backrest Adjustment Switch -E98-
 - Assembly Overview, refer to
 ⇒ ["1.5.10 Seat and Backrest Adjustment Actuator Assembly Overview"](#), [page 280](#)
 - The switch -E363-, -E222-, -E364- or switch or button -E64-, -E334- and -E365-
 ⇒ [Item 7 \(page 279\)](#) as well as switch -E96- or -E98- are allocated to the same housing.



7 - Actuator

- for driver seat forward/back adjustment switch -E363- or front passenger seat forward/back adjustment switch -E64-
- for driver seat angle adjustment switch -E222- or front passenger seat angle adjustment button -E334-
- for driver seat height adjustment switch -E364- or front passenger seat height adjustment switch -E365-
- Assembly Overview, refer to
 ⇒ ["1.5.10 Seat and Backrest Adjustment Actuator Assembly Overview"](#), [page 280](#)
- The switch -E363-, -E222-, -E364- or the switch or button -E64-, -E334- and -E365- as well as the switch -E96- or -E98- are allocated to the same housing ⇒ [Item 6 \(page 279\)](#).

8 - Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- or front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E177-

- Assembly Overview, refer to ["1.5.10 Seat and Backrest Adjustment Actuator Assembly Overview"](#), [page 280](#)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee, except any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.5.9 Sill Side Trim Retaining Bracket Assembly Overview

The retaining bracket on the power front seat is identical the one on the front manual seat.

Sill side trim retaining bracket, assembly overview, refer to ⇒ ["1.4.10 Sill Side Trim Retaining Bracket Assembly Overview", page 261](#)

1.5.10 Seat and Backrest Adjustment Actuator Assembly Overview

1 - Actuator

◆ For Driver Backrest Adjustment Switch -E96- or Passenger Backrest Adjustment Switch -E98-

□ The switch -E363-, -E222-, -E364- or the switch or button -E64-, -E334- and -E365- as well as the switch -E96- or -E98- are allocated to the same housing ⇒ [Item 2 \(page 280\)](#).

□ Actuator, removing and installing ⇒ ["2.2.8 Backrest Adjustment Actuator", page 351](#)

□ Switch, removing and installing ⇒ ["2.2.18 Seat Adjustment Switches, V288/V243/V244/V245/V246/V45/V46 Assembly Overview", page 372](#)

2 - Actuator

□ For driver seat forward/back adjustment switch -E363- or front passenger seat forward/back adjustment switch -E64-

□ For driver seat angle adjustment switch -E222- or front passenger seat angle adjustment button -E334-

□ For driver seat height adjustment switch -E364- or front passenger seat height adjustment switch -E365-

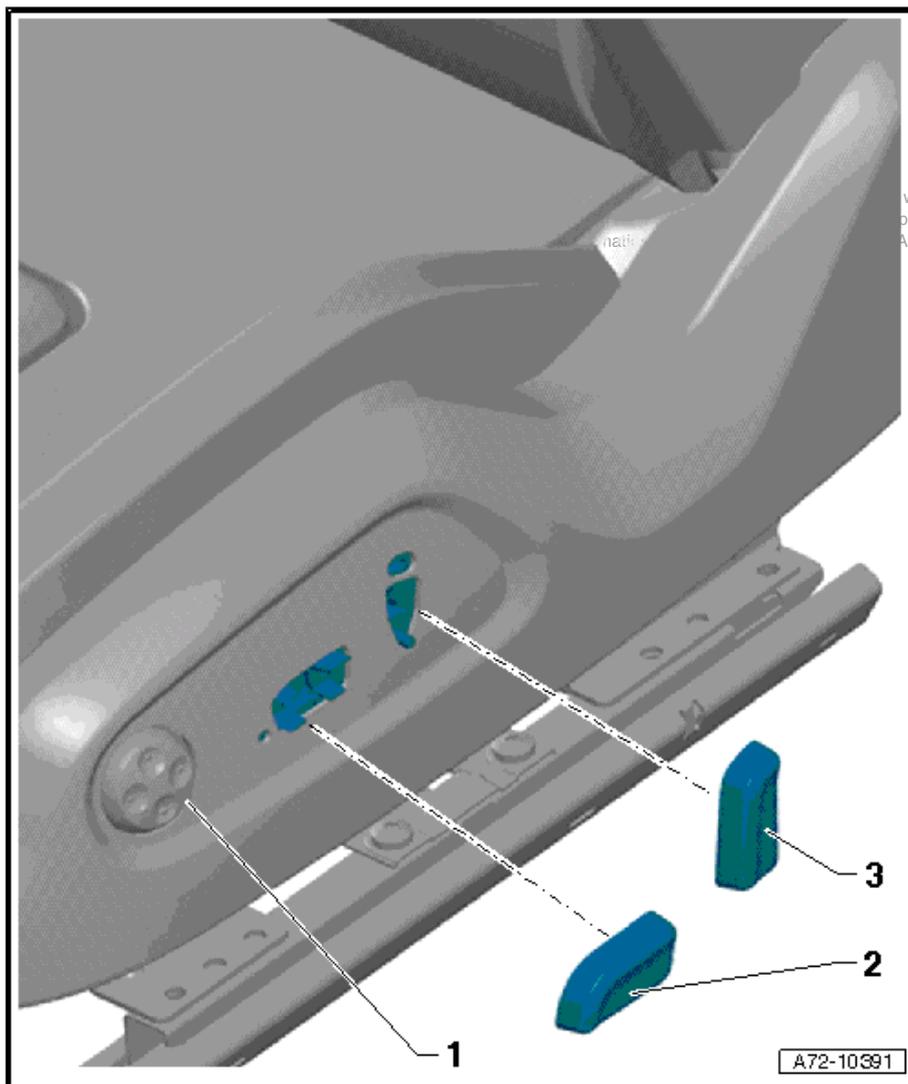
□ The switch -E363-, -E222-, -E364- or the switch or button -E64-, -E334- and -E365- as well as the switch -E96- or -E98- are allocated to the same housing ⇒ [Item 1 \(page 280\)](#).

□ Actuator, removing and installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.2.7 Seat Adjustment Actuator", page 350](#)

□ Switch, removing and installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.2.18 Seat Adjustment Switches, V288/V243/V244/V245/V246/V45/V46 Assembly Overview", page 372](#)

3 - Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- or front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E177-

□ Do not disconnect actuator and switch, they can only be replaced as a complete assembly unit.



whole, is not
not any liability
AUDI AG.

- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["1.5.29 Lumbar Support Adjustment Switches E176 and E177 Assembly Overview", page 305](#)

1.5.11 Front Backrest Assembly Overview

1 - Seat pan

2 - Screw, self-locking

- 35 Nm
- Quantity: 4
- Replacing
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

3 - Front backrest

- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.2.9 Front Backrest", page 352](#)

4 - Headrest

- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.2.16 Headrests with Locking Mechanism", page 368](#)

5 - Trim

- With entry assist
- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["1.5.14 Entry Assistance Assembly Overview, Coupe Only", page 285](#)

- Coupe only

6 - Handle

- With entry assist
- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["1.5.14 Entry Assistance Assembly Overview, Coupe Only", page 285](#)

- Coupe only

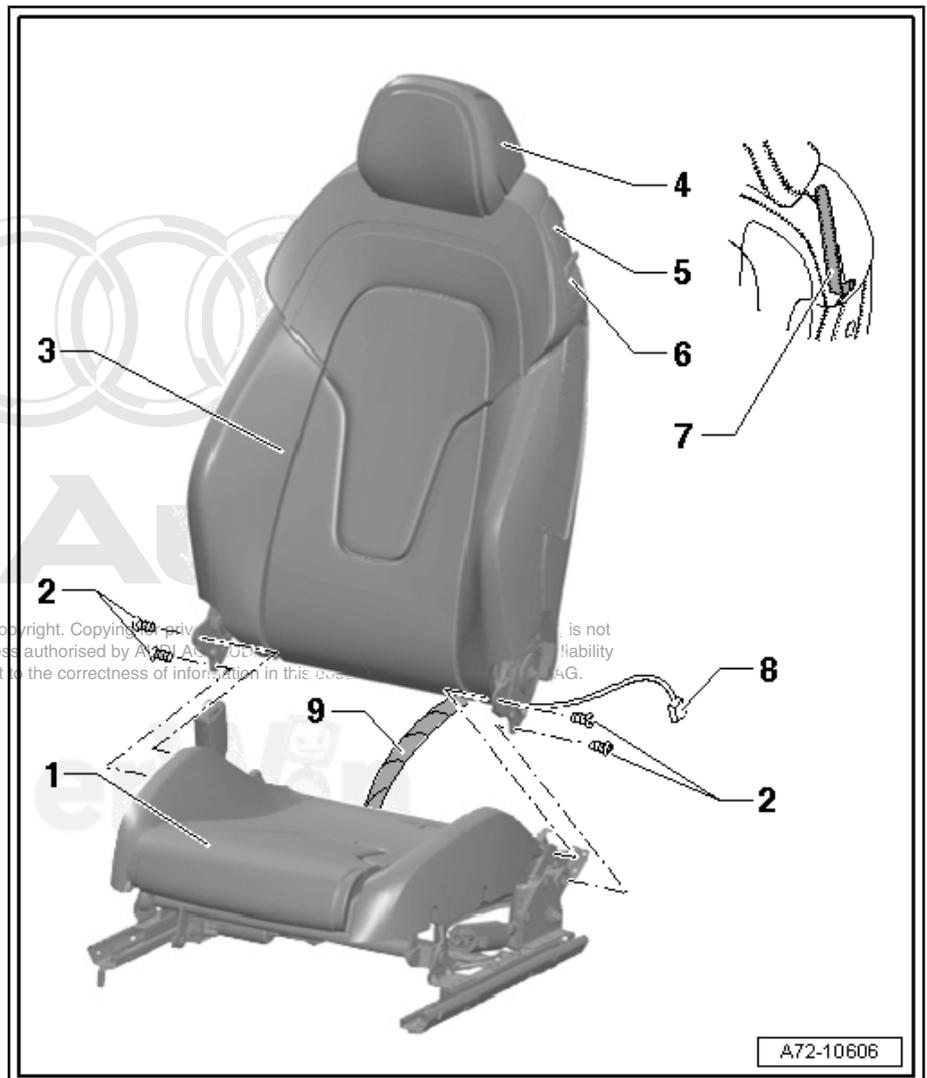
7 - Retaining loop with push button

- For seat belt
- Roadster only

8 - Wiring

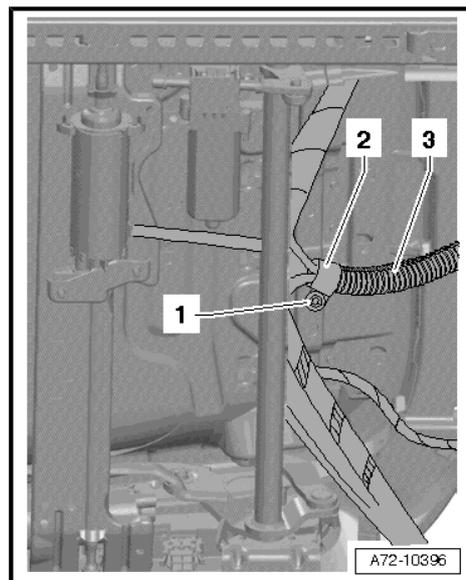
- For side airbag

9 - Wiring harness



Cable Clip to Seat Pan

-1- - 3.5 Nm



1.5.12 Backrest Cover Assembly Overview

 **Note**

*A front seat with Coupe backrest cover is shown in the illustration.
The back rest cover on the Coupe and Roadster is the same.*



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Front seat

2 - Release cable

- With entry assist

3 - Tab

- Formed to backrest cover

4 - Backrest cover

- Removing and Installing, refer to

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is prohibited. Audi AG does not accept any liability for the correctness of information in this document.

⇒ ["2.2.10 Backrest Cover", page 356](#)

5 - Bracket

- Quantity: 2
- Formed to backrest cover

6 - Groove

- For engaging backrest cover

7 - Clip

- Quantity: 2
- Clipped into backrest cover
- Replace if damaged

8 - four-way lumbar support

- Manual seat:

- ◆ Assembly Overview, refer to

⇒ ["1.4.15 Four-Way Lumbar Support Assembly Overview", page 265](#)

- ◆ Removing and Installing, refer to

⇒ ["2.1.15 Four-Way Lumbar Support", page 333](#)

- Power seats:

- ◆ Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ ["1.5.13 Four-Way Lumbar Support Assembly Overview", page 284](#)

- ◆ Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.2.11 Four-Way Lumbar Support", page 359](#)

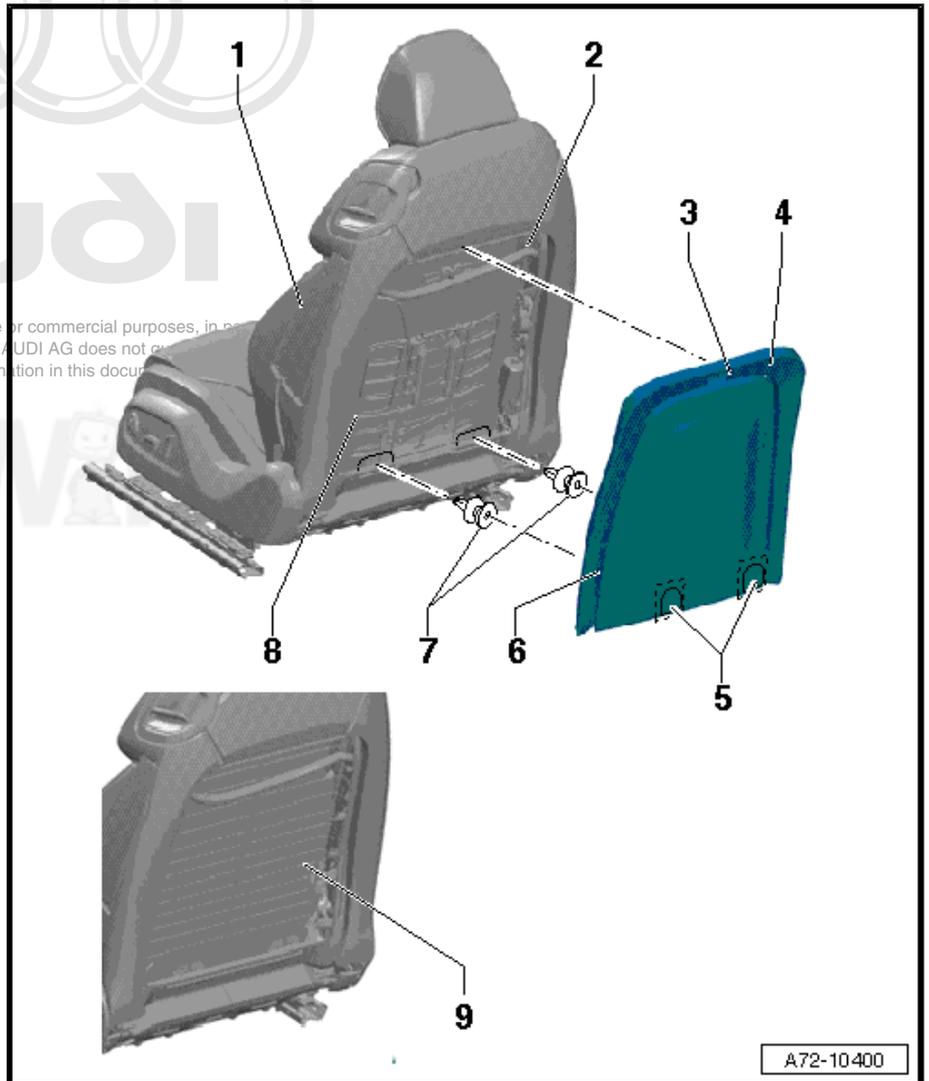
⇒ ["2.2.11 Four-Way Lumbar Support", page 359](#)

9 - Spring mat

- Manual seat:

- ◆ Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ ["1.4.14 Spring Mat Assembly Overview", page 265](#)

- ◆ Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.1.14 Spring Mat", page 331](#)



1.5.13 Four-Way Lumbar Support Assembly Overview

Note

The cover with upholstery in the backrest is not shown for clarity purposes.

1 - Four-way lumbar support

- Removing and Installing, refer to
=> ["2.2.11 Four-Way Lumbar Support"](#),
page 359

2 - Release cable

- With entry assist
- Coupe only

3 - Clip

- For release cable guide
=> [Item 4 \(page 284\)](#)

4 - Release cable

- For lumbar support height adjustment
- can only be replaced with Driver Seat Lumbar Support Height Adjustment Motor -V129- or Front passenger Seat Lumbar Support Height Adjustment Motor -V130-

5 - Driver Seat Lumbar Support Height Adjustment Motor -V129- or Front passenger Seat Lumbar Support Height Adjustment Motor -V130-

- Removing and Installing, refer to
=> ["2.2.24 Lumbar Support Height Adjustment Motors V129 and V130"](#),
page 383

6 - Backrest frame

7 - Rivet

- Rivet using special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753A-
- before riveting, a plastic washer must be placed between lumbar support and backrest frame
=> [Item 10 \(page 284\)](#)

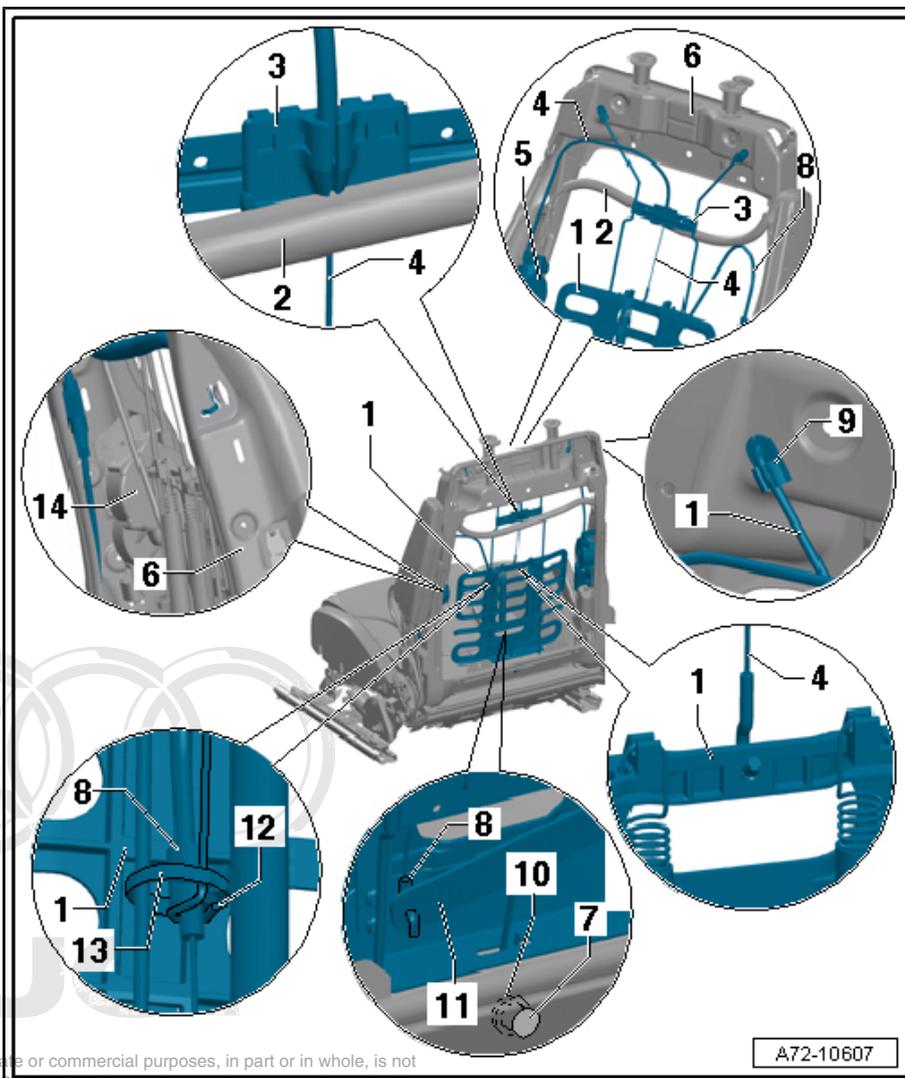
8 - Release cable

- For lumbar support curvature adjustment
- Can only be replaced with Driver Seat Lumbar Support Curvature Adjustment Motor -V125- or Front Passenger's Seat Lumbar Support Curvature Adjustment Motor -V126-

9 - Clip

10 - Plastic washer

- Between four-way lumbar support and backrest frame



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted, unless authorised by AUDI AG. All rights reserved. Audi reserves the right to change specifications without notice. Audi AG is not responsible for the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

A72-10607

11 - Retaining plate

12 - Retainer

13 - Cable tie

14 - Driver Seat Lumbar Support Curvature Adjustment Motor -V125- or Front Passenger's Seat Lumbar Support Curvature Adjustment Motor -V126-

- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.2.23 Lumbar Support Curvature Adjustment Motors V125 and V126", page 380](#)

1.5.14 Entry Assistance Assembly Overview, Coupe Only



Note

The four-way lumbar support was not shown in the illustration for clarity purposes.

1 - Backrest frame

2 - Release cable adjuster

- for right release cable

3 - Cable tie

4 - Right release cable

- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.2.15 Left and Right Release Cables, Coupe Only", page 365](#)

5 - Pull-spring

- engaged in operating lever and release cables bracket

6 - Lever

- For the entry assistance handle
- Riveted to backrest frame

7 - Stop button

- For left and right release cable
- Do not disengage release cables from bracket

8 - left release cable

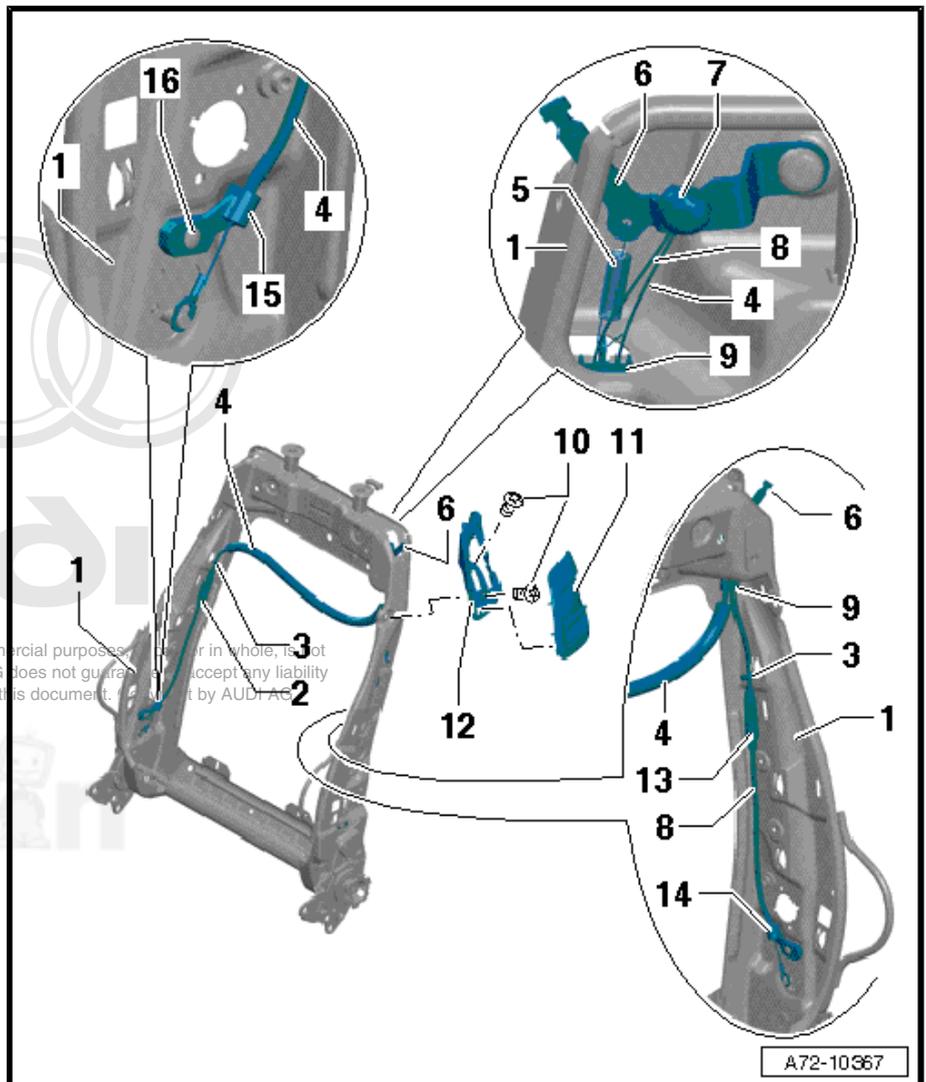
- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.2.15 Left and Right Release Cables, Coupe Only", page 365](#)

9 - Mount

- For left and right release cable
- Do not disengage release cables from bracket
- Bracket clipped into backrest frame

10 - Bolt

- 4 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole or in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of information in this document. © Audi AG

- ❑ Quantity: 2

11 - Trim with handle

- ❑ With entry assist
- ❑ Cannot be removed without destroying through 10.06
- ❑ Trim is clipped with bracket ⇒ [Item 12 \(page 286\)](#)
- ❑ Removing and Installing through 10.06, refer to ⇒ [“2.2.12 Trim with Entry Assistance Handle, Coupe Only through 10.06”, page 362](#)
- ❑ Removing and Installing from 11.06, refer to ⇒ [“2.2.13 Trim with Entry Assistance Handle, Coupe Only from 11.06”, page 363](#)

12 - Bracket

- ❑ With entry assist
- ❑ Bolted to backrest frame
- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.2.14 Entry Assistance Bracket, Coupe Only”, page 364](#)

13 - Release cable adjuster

- ❑ For left release cable

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

14 - left release cable bracket

- ❑ Riveted to backrest frame

15 - right release cable bracket

- ❑ Riveted to backrest frame

16 - Rivet

- ❑ Quantity: 2

1.5.15 Entry Assistance Release Cables Adjusting, Coupe Only



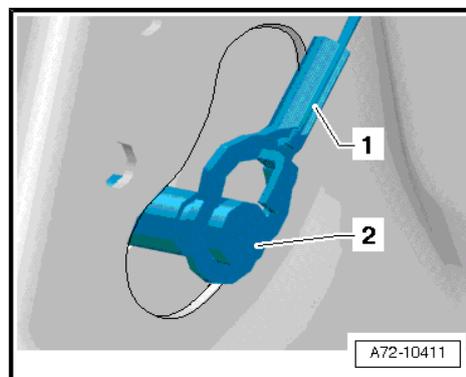
WARNING

Make sure the backrest is locked (zero position) or it could tip forward accidentally.

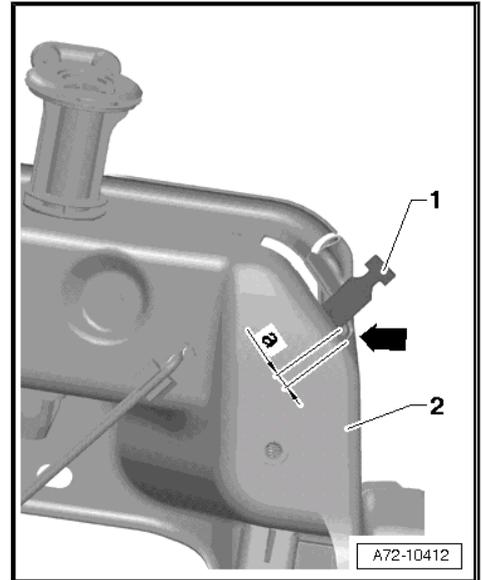
- Cover and upholstery removed, refer to ⇒ [“2.1.3 Backrest Cover and Upholstery”, page 432](#) .
- Left and right release cables installed, refer to ⇒ [“2.2.15 Left and Right Release Cables, Coupe Only”, page 365](#)

Pins (release pins) -2- are in locked position on both sides (delivery position, that means - lower basic position).

- 1 - Release cable



- Bring lever -1- to a distance of $a = 3$ mm to edge of opening -arrow-.

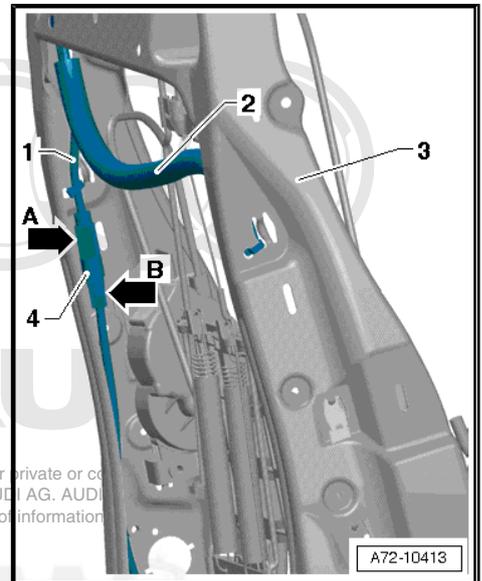


- Adjust left and right release cables -1- and -2- at release cable adjusters -4-.

 **Note**

Right release cable adjuster not shown in the illustration for overview purposes.

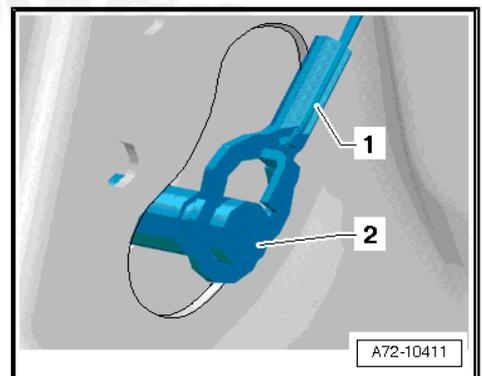
- To adjust, turn upper part -arrow A- and lower part -arrow B- of release cable adjuster -4- against each other.
- Adjust release cable adjuster -4- so release cable -1- is free of tension and release cable is loose.



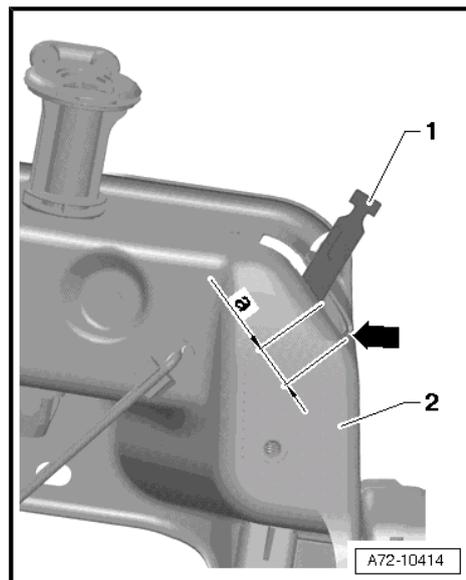
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG is not liable with respect to the correctness of information.

 **Note**

- ◆ *Proceed the same way with the release cable that is not pictured.*
- ◆ *When adjusting the release cable, do not pull on release pins -2-.*
- After adjusting release cables, check function of backrest lock.



- When pressing lever -1-, backrest must be released when lever is at a distance of $a = 9\text{ mm}$ to edge of opening.
- If it does not release or only releases partially, check release cable routing or repeat adjustment.



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1.5.16 Headrests Assembly Overview

Note

- ◆ The cover with upholstery in the backrest is not shown for clarity purposes.
- ◆ The illustration shows a Coupe backrest frame. The headrest guides and headrests are allocated and secured the same way on the Coupe and Roadster.

1 - Front backrest

2 - Headrest guide without release button

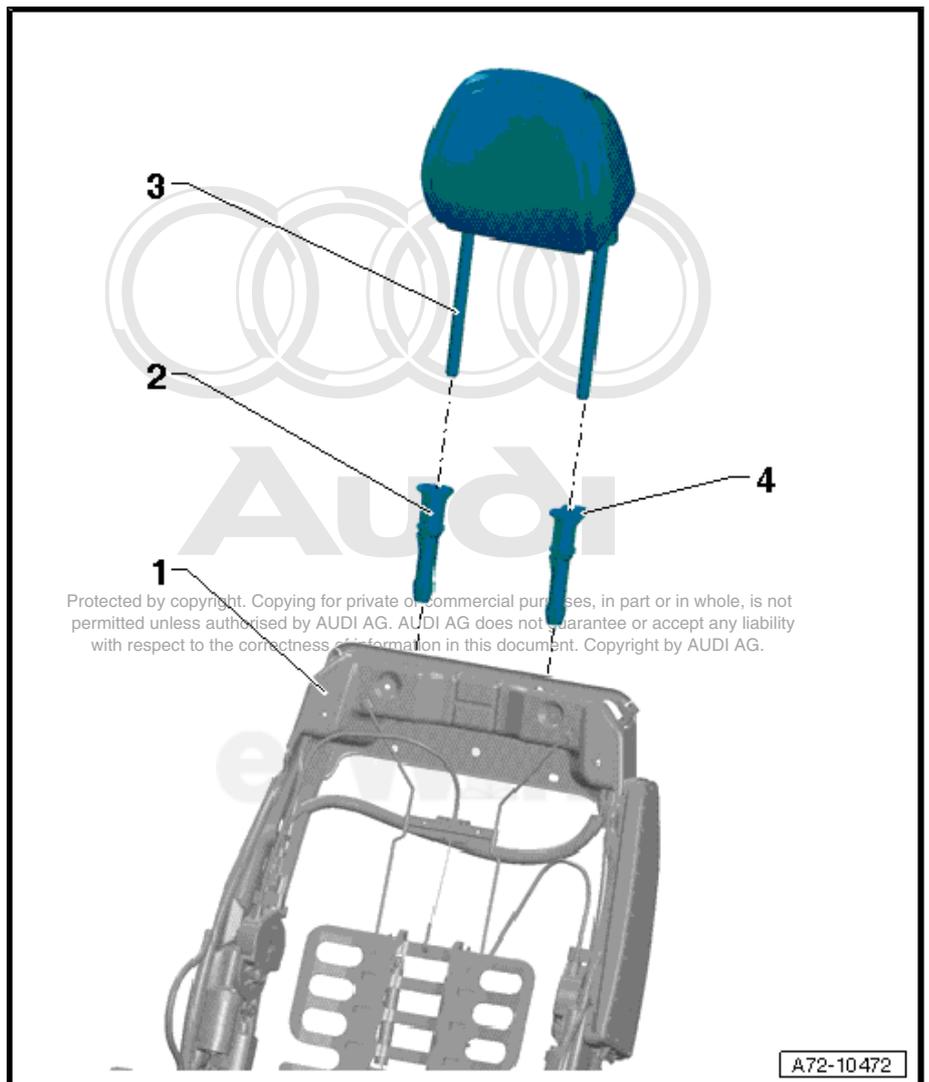
- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.2.17 Headrest Guide", page 369](#)
- Always installed on right side of backrest

3 - Headrest

- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.2.16 Headrests with Locking Mechanism", page 368](#)

4 - Headrest guide with release button

- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.2.17 Headrest Guide", page 369](#)
- Always installed on left side of backrest



1.5.17 Seat Pan Assembly Overview



Note

- ◆ *The upper and lower seat pan frames can be separated and replaced individually on a power front seat.*
- ◆ *When removing seat pan, ensure bushings in bearing points (upper and lower frame threaded connection) are not damaged. These bushings cannot be replaced with workshop materials.*

1 - Screw, self-locking

- 29 Nm
- Quantity: 3
- Replacing
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

2 - Upper seat pan frame

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["1.5.18 Seat Pan, Disassembling and assembling", page 291](#)

3 - Bushing

- Inserted in all bracket locations
- Cannot be replaced with workshop materials
- If the bushing is damaged, assembly part must be replaced, allocation ⇒ Parts Catalog

4 - Lower seat pan frame

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["1.5.18 Seat Pan, Disassembling and assembling", page 291](#)

5 - Bolt

- 27 Nm
- Always replace if removed
- Before installing new bolts, clean threads on seat pan nuts

6 - Driver Seat Height Adjustment Motor -V245- or Front Passenger's Seat Height Adjustment Motor -V246-

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.2.25 Seat Height Adjustment Motor V245 and V246", page 386](#)

7 - Seat forward/back adjustment motor -V288-

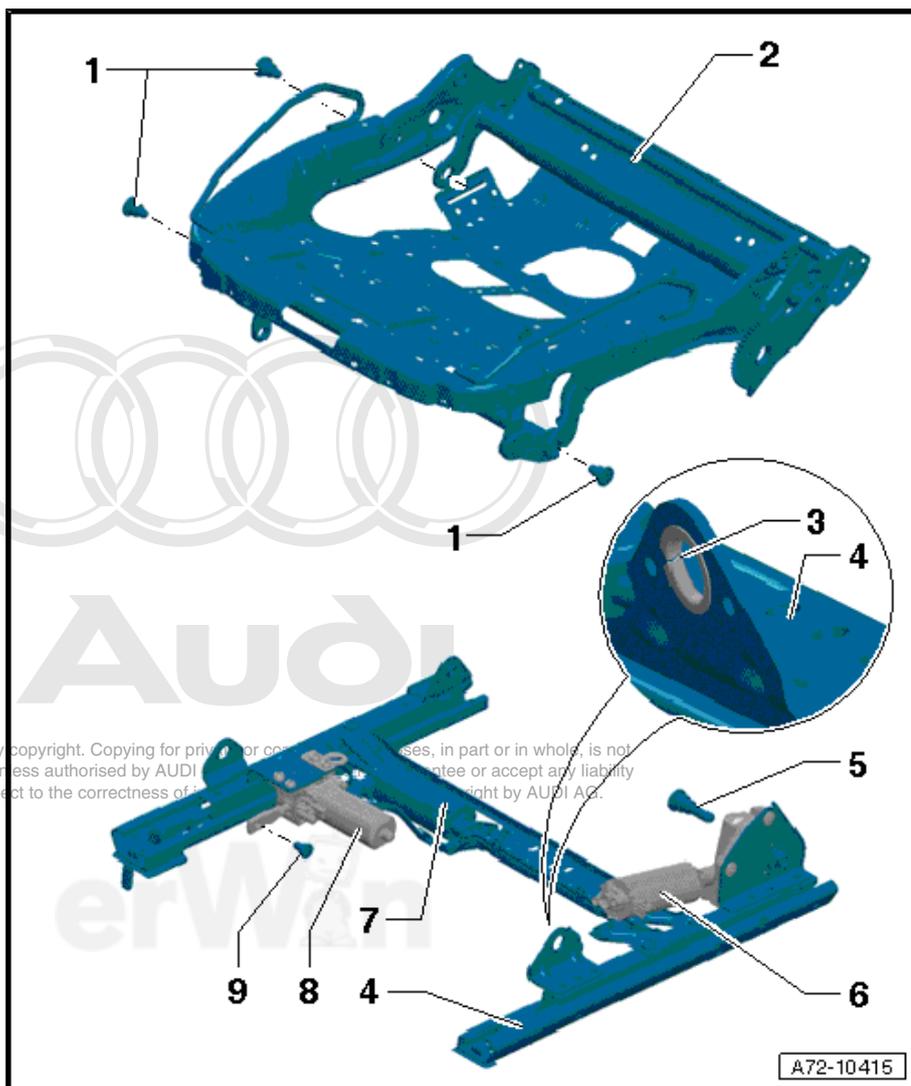
- Cannot be removed and installed with workshop materials
- Stays on the lower seat pan frame ⇒ [Item 4 \(page 290\)](#)

8 - Driver seat angle adjustment motor -V243- or front passenger seat angle adjustment motor -V244-

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["1.5.23 Driver Seat Angle Adjustment Motor V243/V244", page 298](#)

9 - Screw, self-locking

- For the correct tightening specifications, refer to ⇒ [Item 3 \(page 298\)](#)



- Replacing
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

1.5.18 Seat Pan, Disassembling and assembling

Disassembling



WARNING

- ◆ **Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .**
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.**

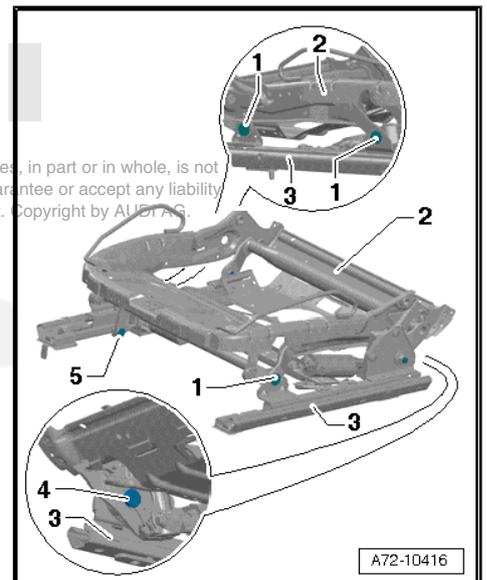
- Remove the front seat. Refer to ⇒ "2.2.1 Front Seat", page 337 .
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136- . Refer to ⇒ "1.3 Installing Front Seat On VAS 6136", page 250 .
- Remove the backrest. Refer to ⇒ "2.2.9 Front Backrest", page 352 .
- Remove cover with seat pan upholstery . Refer to ⇒ "2.1.1 Seat Pan Cover and Upholstery", page 429 .
- Disconnect the harness connectors if applicable.

Replace Upper Seat Pan Frame

- Remove wiring harnesses and individual wires from seat pan upper frame.

Continuation: Upper or Lower Frame, Replacing

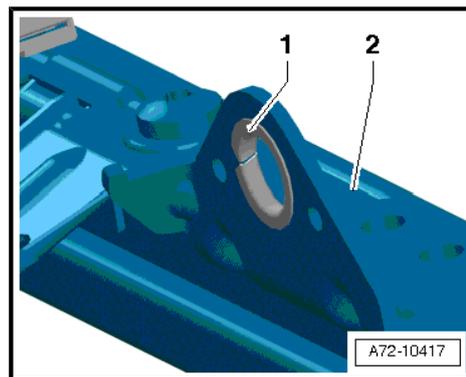
- Remove bolts -1- (quantity: 3).
- Remove the bolt -4-.
- Remove the bolt -5-.
- Remove upper frame -2- upward from lower frame -3- of the seat pan.



- Be careful of bushings -1- in bearing points.
- 2 - Lower seat pan frame

**Caution**

- ◆ *Do not damage bushings -1- inserted in all bearing points when separating or disassembling upper and lower frame.*
- ◆ *The bushings cannot be replaced with workshop materials.*
- ◆ *If the bushings are damaged, the corresponding assembly parts must be replaced.*



- Remove Driver Seat Height Adjustment Motor -V245- or Front Passenger's Seat Height Adjustment Motor -V246-
⇒ ["2.2.25 Seat Height Adjustment Motor V245 and V246"](#), page 386 .
- Remove the driver seat angle adjustment motor -V243- or front passenger seat angle adjustment motor -V244-
⇒ ["1.5.23 Driver Seat Angle Adjustment Motor V243/V244"](#), page 298 .

Seat pan, Assembling

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

**WARNING**

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to*
⇒ ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures"](#), page 38 .
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*

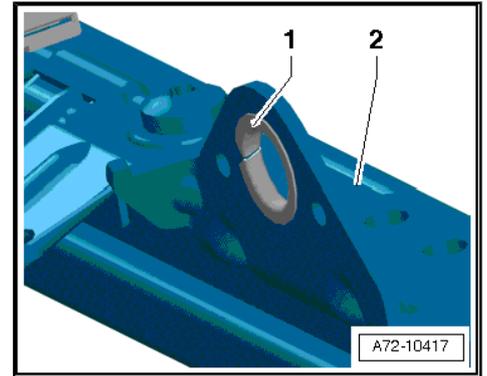
- Install removed driver seat height adjustment motor -V245- or front passenger seat height adjustment motor -V246- in new lower seat pan frame. Refer to
⇒ ["2.2.25 Seat Height Adjustment Motor V245 and V246"](#), page 386 .
- Install the driver seat angle adjustment motor -V243- or front passenger seat angle adjustment motor -V244- in the new lower seat pan frame. Refer to
⇒ ["1.5.23 Driver Seat Angle Adjustment Motor V243/V244"](#), page 298 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Do not damage bushings -1- during further assembly.

 **Caution**

- ◆ *Do not damage bushings -1- inserted in all bearing points when separating or disassembling upper and lower frame.*
- ◆ *The bushings cannot be replaced with workshop materials.*
- ◆ *If the bushings are damaged, the corresponding assembly parts must be replaced.*



 **Note**

Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.

- Switch on ignition.

 **WARNING**

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the express consent of Audi AG. Audi AG does not accept any liability for errors or omissions in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.
- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment, Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
 - If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

For the correct tightening specifications, refer to ⇒ "1.5.17 Seat Pan Assembly Overview", page 290

1.5.19 Storage Compartment Assembly Overview

1 - Storage compartment

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ [“2.2.19 Storage Compartment”, page 373](#)
- ❑ Storage compartment individual parts, assembly overview, refer to
⇒ [“1.5.20 Storage Compartment Individual Components Assembly Overview”, page 295](#)
- ❑ Disassembling and assembling, refer to
⇒ [“1.5.21 Storage Compartment, Disassembling and Assembling”, page 295](#)

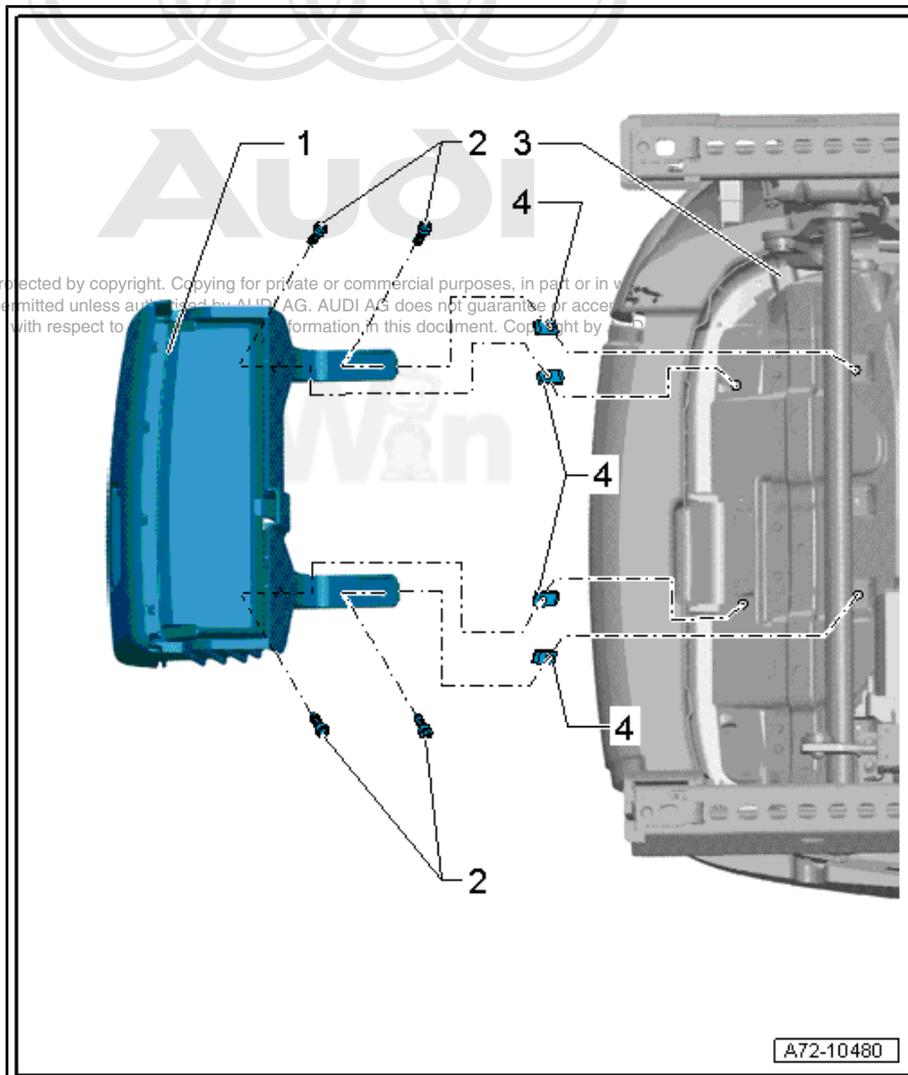
2 - Bolt

- ❑ 3.5 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 4

3 - Seat pan

4 - Threaded clip

- ❑ Quantity: 4



1.5.20 Storage Compartment Individual Components Assembly Overview

1 - Axle

- ❑ For handle with locking mechanism
 ⇒ [Item 3 \(page 295\)](#)

2 - Torsion spring

- ❑ As a replacement part only with handle with locking mechanism
 ⇒ [Item 3 \(page 295\)](#)
 and axle
 ⇒ [Item 1 \(page 295\)](#)

3 - Handle with locking mechanism

- ❑ As replacement part handle with locking mechanism, axle
 ⇒ [Item 1 \(page 295\)](#) and
 torsion spring
 ⇒ [Item 2 \(page 295\)](#)

4 - Trim

- ❑ Clipped with inner part

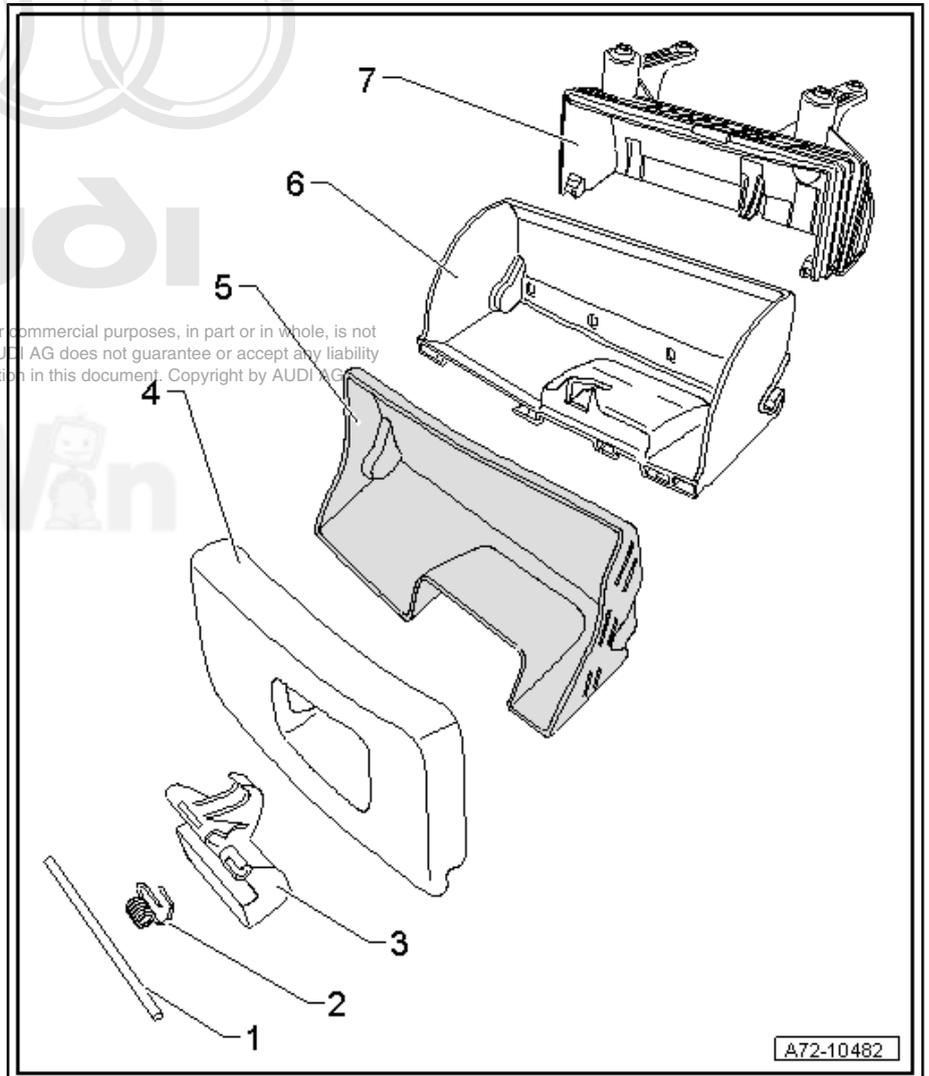
5 - Insert

6 - Inner part

- ❑ As a replacement part only with the outer part
 ⇒ [Item 7 \(page 295\)](#)

7 - Outer part

- ❑ As replacement part only with inner part
 ⇒ [Item 6 \(page 295\)](#)



1.5.21 Storage Compartment, Disassembling and Assembling



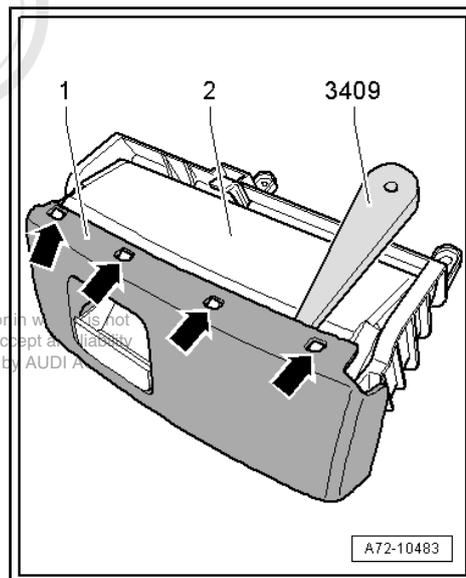
Note

- ◆ *The seat must not be removed to disassemble and assemble storage compartment.*
- ◆ *The storage compartment can be assembled and disassembled when installed.*
- ◆ *It is necessary to remove the front seat and the storage compartment in order to replace the outer part
 ⇒ [Item 7 \(page 295\)](#).*

Trim, Removing

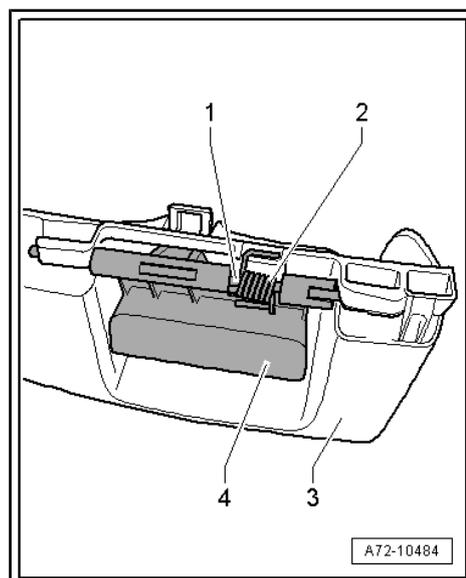
- Remove the inner part from the outer part ⇒ [page 297](#) .
- Using the trim removal wedge -3409- , unclip the trim -1- from the retaining tabs -arrows- (quantity: 4) on the inner part -2-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Handle with Locking Mechanism, Removing

- Remove trim ⇒ [page 296](#) .
- Remove axle -1- from inner part -3-.
- Remove handle with locking mechanism -4-, torsion spring -2- and axle -1-.

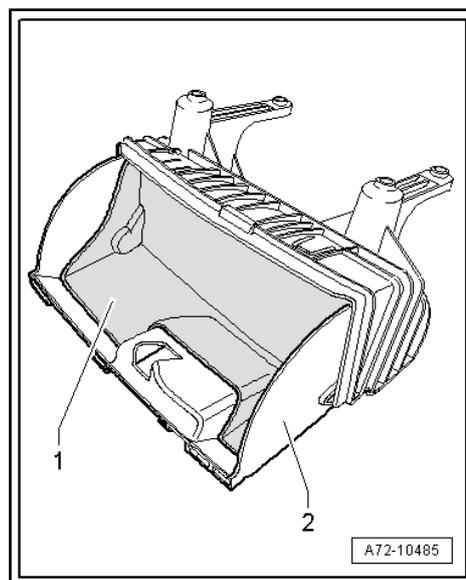


Insert, Removing



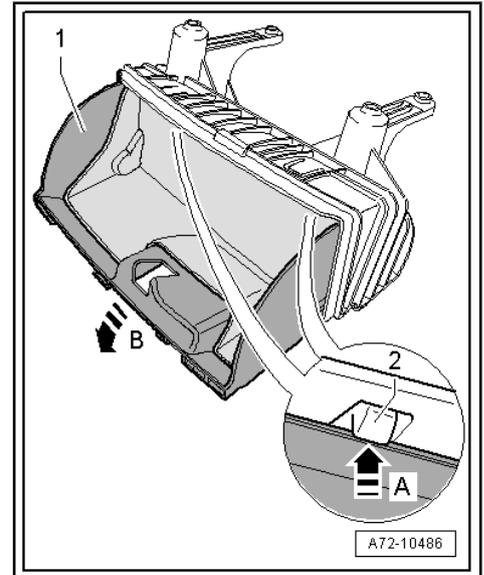
Note

- ◆ *The insert is placed in the inner part and is not secured by any additional means.*
- ◆ *For overview purposes, the storage compartment is shown removed and without trim and release handle in the following illustrations.*
- Open storage compartment.
- Remove insert -1- from inner part -2-.

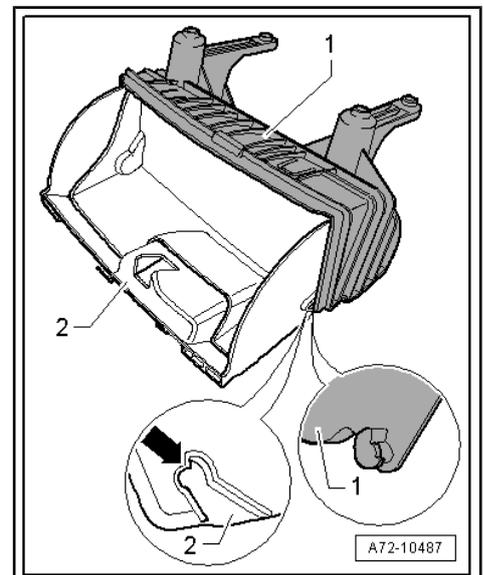


Inner Part, Removing from Outer Part

- Open storage compartment.
- Press retainers -2- (quantity: 2) upward in direction of -arrow A-.
- Tip inner part -1- down in direction of -arrow B-.



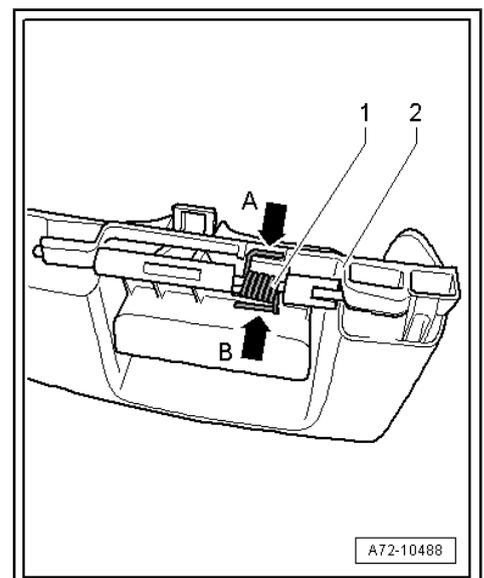
- Remove outer part -1- from guide -arrow- on inner part -2-.



Storage Compartment, Assembling

Assembling is reverse of removal, noting the following:

- Engage the torsion spring -1- so that the shorter side -arrow A- is supported on the inner part -2- and the longer side -arrow B- is supported on the handle.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1.5.22 Seat Angle Adjustment Motor V243/V244 Assembly Overview

1 - Seat angle adjustment motor

- Driver side -V243-
- Passenger side -V244-
- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["1.5.23 Driver Seat Angle Adjustment Motor V243/V244"](#), page 298

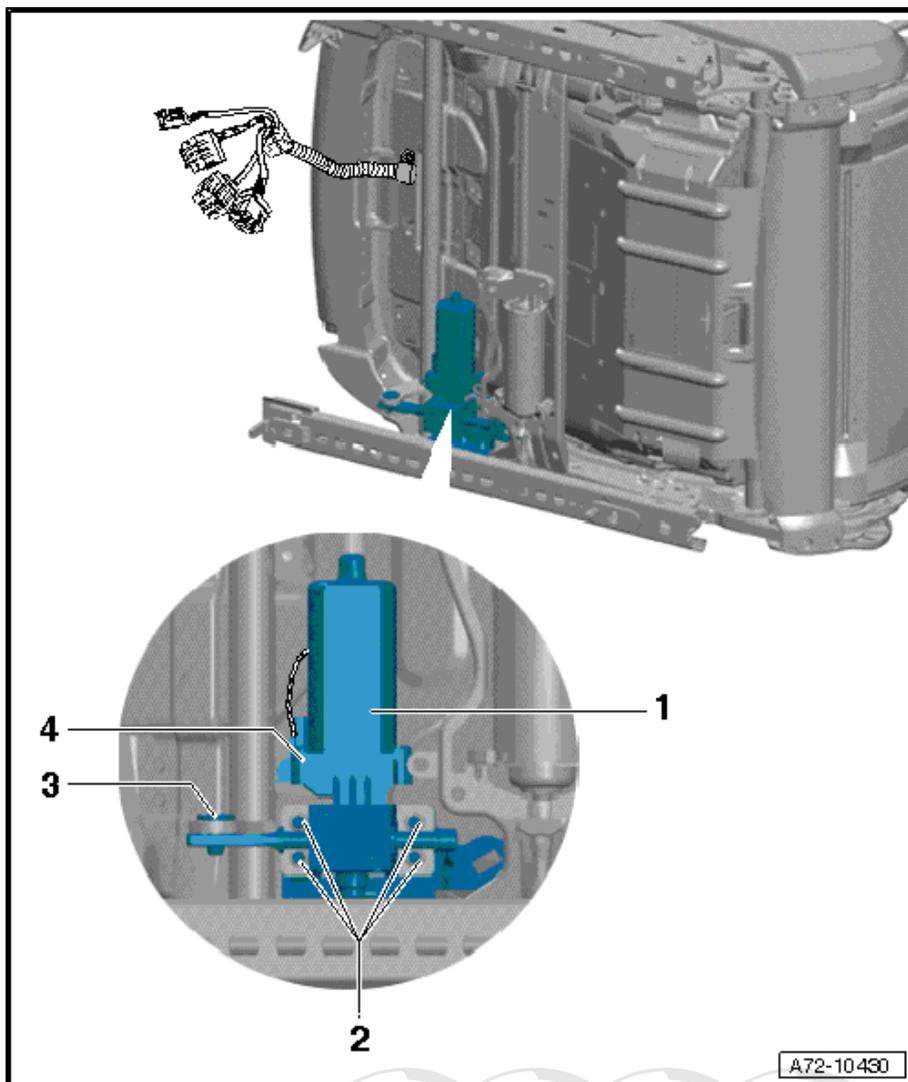
2 - Bolt

- 14 Nm
- Quantity: 4

3 - Screw, self-locking

- 22 Nm
- Replacing
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

4 - Connector



1.5.23 Driver Seat Angle Adjustment Motor V243/V244

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures"](#), page 38.*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Remove the seat. Refer to ⇒ ["2.2.1 Front Seat"](#), page 337.

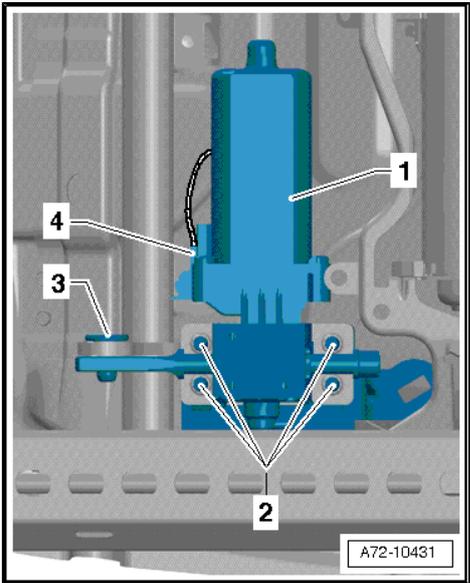
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136- . Refer to [⇒ "1.3 Installing Front Seat On VAS 6136", page 250](#) .
- Remove bolts -2- (quantity: 4).
- Remove the bolt -3-.
- Remove connector -4-.
- Remove Driver Seat Inclination Adjustment Motor -V243- or -V244- -1-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

 **WARNING**

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to [⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*



 **Note**

Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.

- Switch on ignition.

 **WARNING**

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again ⇒ [Vehicle diagnosis; testing and information system VAS 5051](#) .

For the correct tightening specifications, refer to [⇒ "1.5.22 Seat Angle Adjustment Motor V243/V244 Assembly Overview", page 298](#)

1.5.24 Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor V288 Assembly Overview

1 - Upper seat pan frame

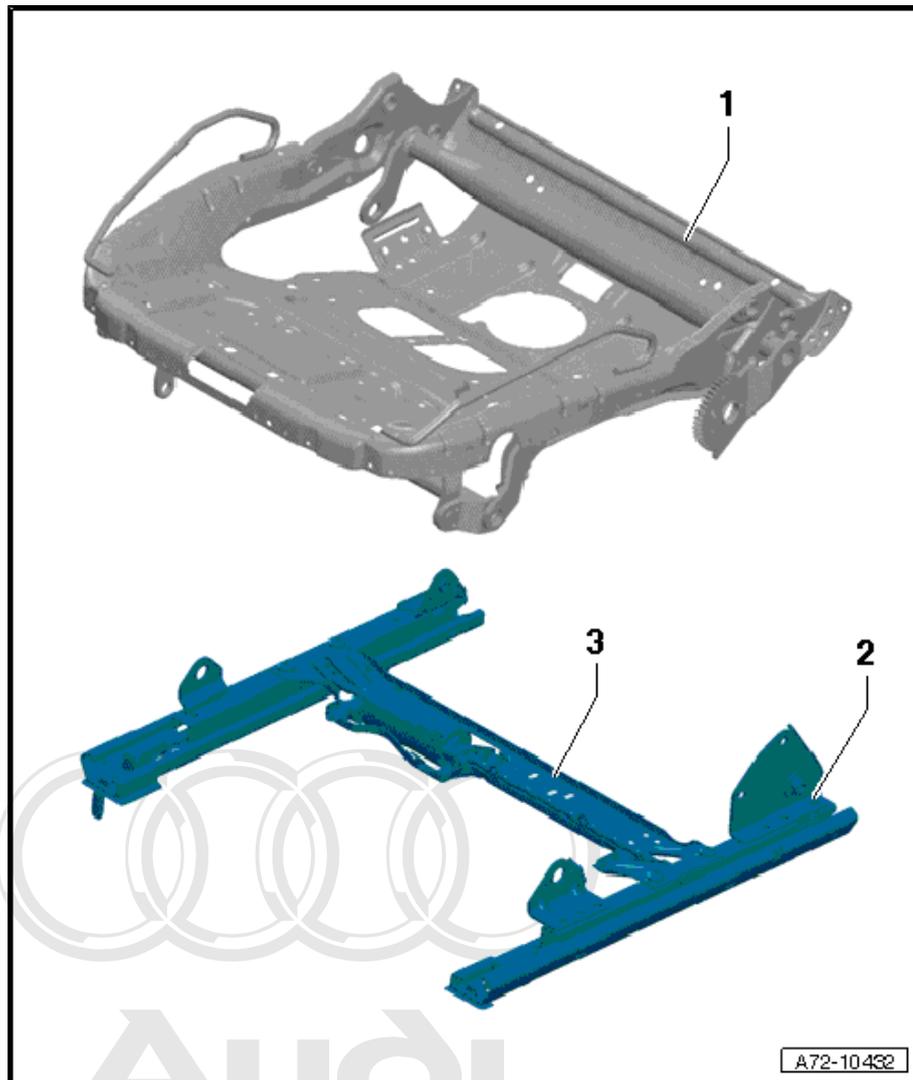
- ❑ Separate the seat pan upper and lower frames and assemble. Refer to ⇒ ["1.5.18 Seat Pan, Disassembling and assembling", page 291](#)

2 - Lower seat pan frame

- ❑ Separate the seat pan upper and lower frames and assemble. Refer to ⇒ ["1.5.18 Seat Pan, Disassembling and assembling", page 291](#)

3 - Seat forward/back adjustment motor -V288-

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.2.20 Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor V288", page 375](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin

1.5.25 Front Seat Backrest Adjustment Motors V45/V46 Assembly Overview

Note

- ◆ For clarity reasons, the backrest is shown without lumbar support, padding and cover.
- ◆ A Coupe backrest frame is shown in the illustration. The Roadster backrest frame is the same, only the entry assistance release cable shown in the illustration is not installed.

1 - Backrest adjustment motor

- Driver side -V45-
- Passenger side -V46-
- May not be replaced.
Refer to
⇒ ["2.2.21 Driver's Backrest Adjustment Motor V45 or V46", page 377](#)
- If there is damage to the motor, replace backrest frame with backrest adjustment motor, shaft and housing. Refer to
⇒ ["2.2.21 Driver's Backrest Adjustment Motor V45 or V46", page 377](#)

2 - Front backrest

- Only backrests shown

3 - Rivet

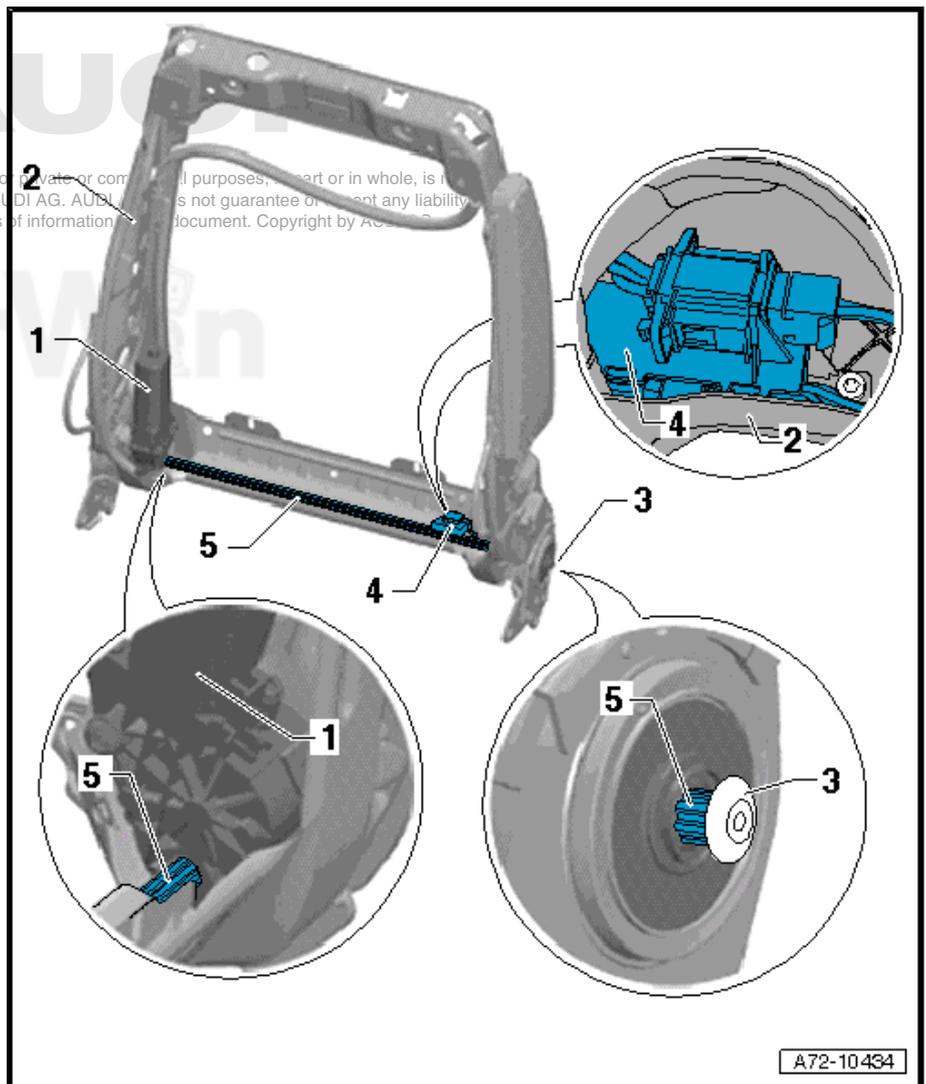
- Do not remove

4 - Housing with stop switch coupling

- Driver Backrest Stop Switch -E69- or front passenger backrest stop switch -E70- are installed in the housing
- do not remove the housing from the shaft
⇒ [Item 5 \(page 301\)](#) or the component will be damaged
- The driver backrest stop switch -E69- or front passenger backrest stop switch -E70- may not be replaced. Refer to

5 - Shaft

- Do not remove



⇒ ["2.2.22 Front Seat Backrest Stop Switches E69 and E70", page 379](#)

1.5.26 Front Seat Backrest Stop Switches E69 and E70 Assembly Overview

1 - Backrest frame

2 - Stop switch coupling

3 - Housing

- ❑ For driver backrest stop switch -E69- or front passenger backrest stop switch -E70-

 **Caution**
Housing with adjusting element
 ⇒ [Item 5 \(page 302\)](#) must not be separated from shaft
 ⇒ [Item 4 \(page 302\)](#) because end positions cannot be found again.

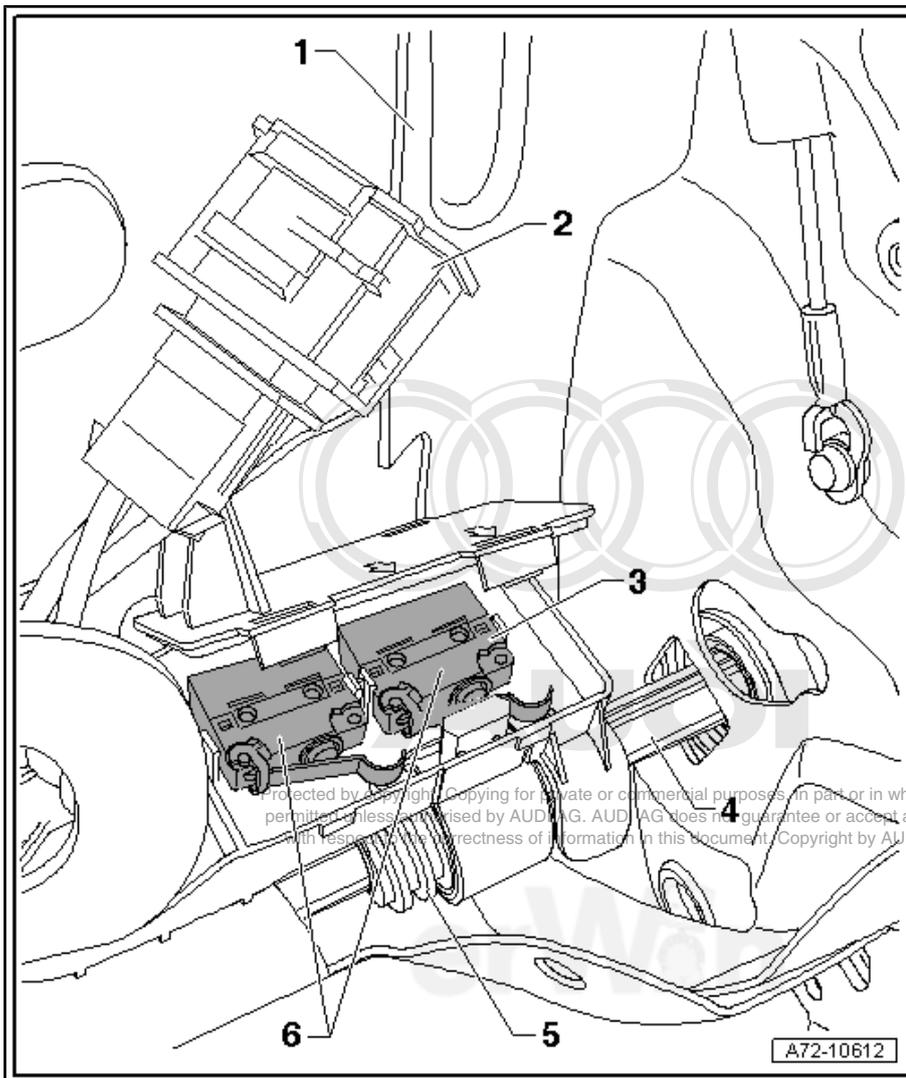
4 - Shaft

 **Caution**
Do not remove shaft from housing with adjusting element.

5 - Actuator

- ❑ For driver backrest stop switch -E69- or front passenger backrest stop switch -E70-
- ❑ Must not be removed from shaft
 ⇒ [Item 4 \(page 302\)](#)

 **Caution**
Housing with adjusting element
 ⇒ [Item 4 \(page 302\)](#) must not be separated from shaft because end positions cannot be found again.



6 - Driver Backrest Stop Switch -E69- or Front Passenger Backrest Stop Switch -E70-

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.2.22 Front Seat Backrest Stop Switches E69 and E70", page 379](#)

1.5.27 Lumbar Support Curvature and Height Adjustment Motors Assembly Overview

1 - Clip

- For release cable guide
 ⇒ [Item 3 \(page 303\)](#)

2 - Release cable

- With entry assist
- Coupe only

3 - Release cable

- For four-way lumbar support height adjustment
- Can only be replaced together with Driver Seat Lumbar Support Height Adjustment Motor - V129- or Front passenger Seat Lumbar Support Height Adjustment Motor -V130-

4 - Driver Seat Lumbar Support Height Adjustment Motor - V129- or Front passenger Seat Lumbar Support Height Adjustment Motor -V130-

- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.2.24 Lumbar Support Height Adjustment Motors V129 and V130", page 383](#)

5 - Driver Seat Lumbar Support Curvature Adjustment Motor - V125- or Front Passenger's Seat Lumbar Support Curvature Adjustment Motor -V126-

- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.2.23 Lumbar Support Curvature Adjustment Motors V125 and V126", page 380](#)

6 - Backrest frame

7 - four-way lumbar support

8 - Rivet

- Quantity: 2 per motor
- Rivet using special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753A-

9 - Connector

10 - Release cable

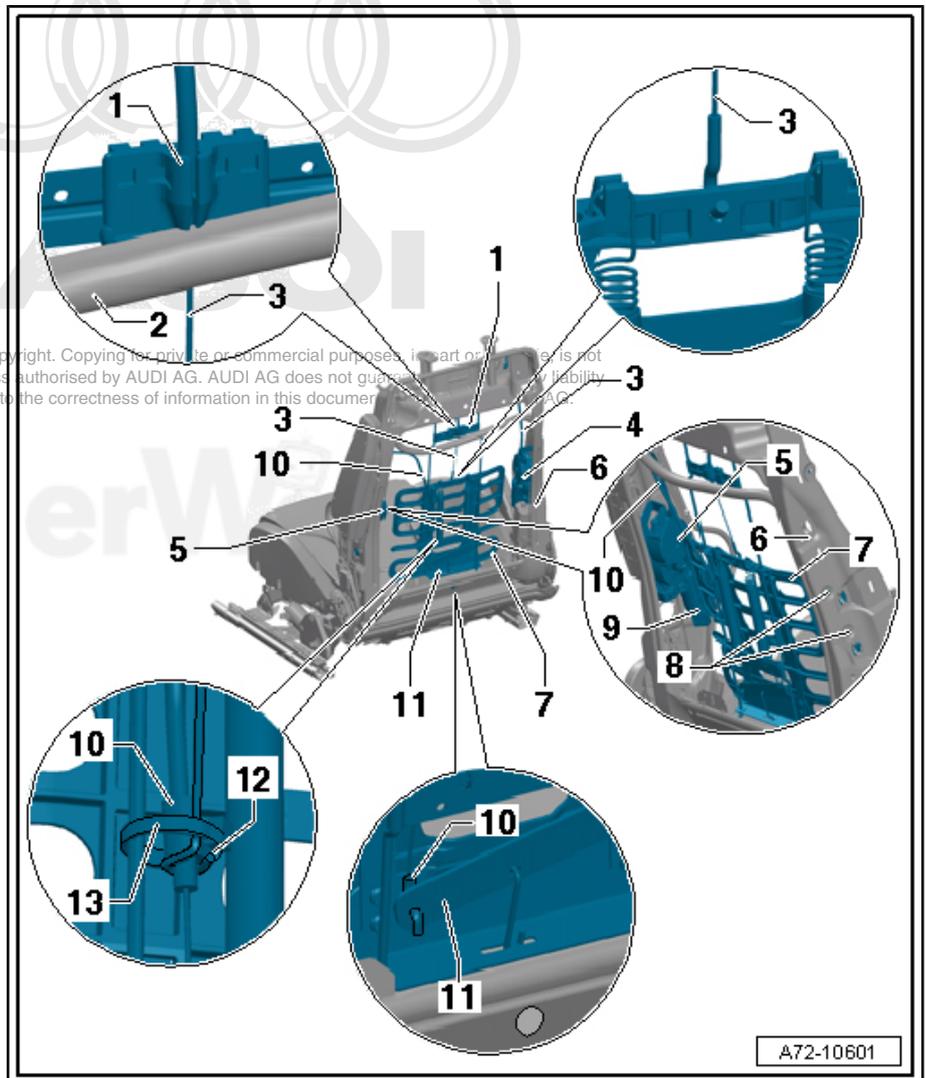
- For four-way lumbar support curvature adjustment
- Can only be replaced together with Driver Seat Lumbar Support Curvature Adjustment Motor -V125- or Front Passenger's Seat Lumbar Support Curvature Adjustment Motor -V126-

11 - Retaining plate

12 - Retainer

- For release cable guide ⇒ [Item 10 \(page 303\)](#)

13 - Cable tie



A72-10601

1.5.28 Seat Height Adjustment Motors V245 and V246 Assembly Overview

1 - Upper seat pan frame

- With cover and upholstery
- Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "1.5.18 Seat Pan, Disassembling and assembling", page 291](#)

2 - Toothed segment

- Plastic toothed segment
- Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.2.26 Seat Height Adjuster Toothed Segment", page 388](#)
- Clipped to fitting

3 - Driver Seat Height Adjustment Motor -V245- or Front Passenger's Seat Height Adjustment Motor -V246-

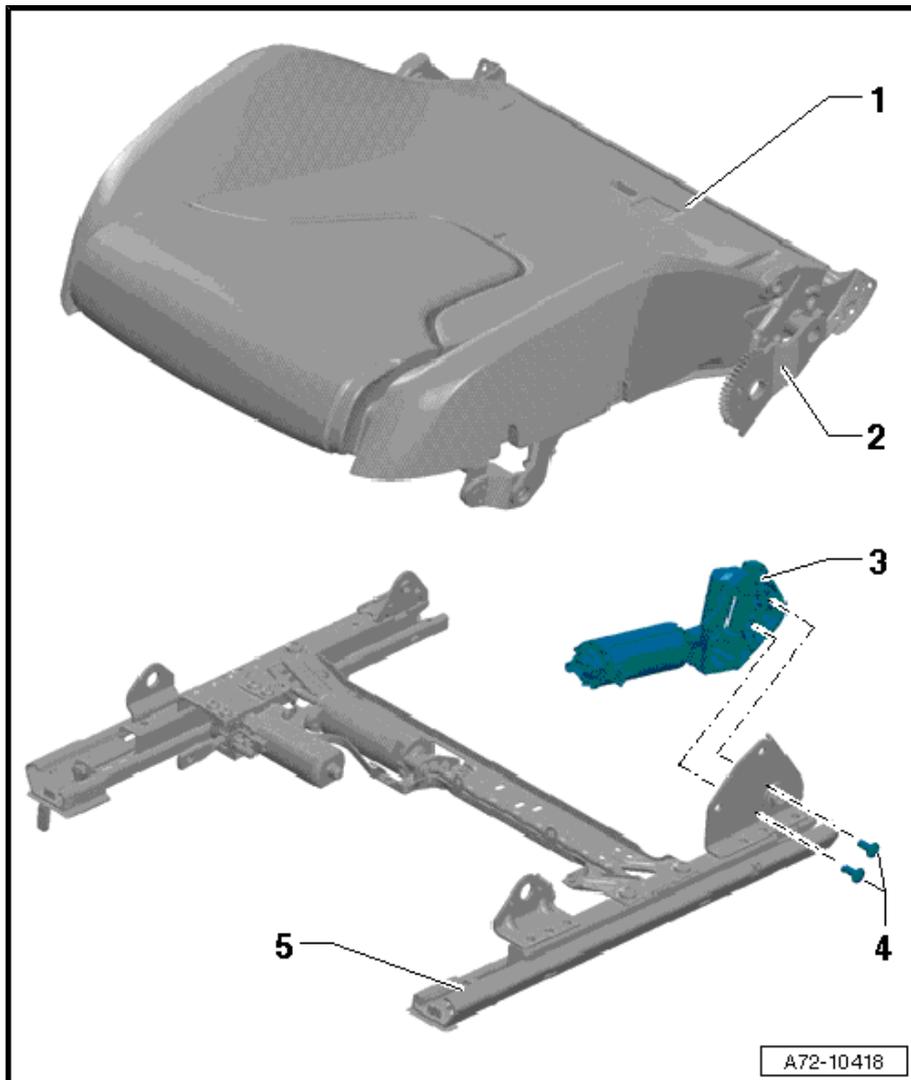
- Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.2.25 Seat Height Adjustment Motor V245 and V246", page 386](#)

4 - Screw, self-locking

- 31 Nm
- Quantity: 2
- Replacing
- Threaded holes for screws must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter)

5 - Lower seat pan frame

- Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "1.5.18 Seat Pan, Disassembling and assembling", page 291](#)



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.5.29 Lumbar Support Adjustment Switches E176 and E177 Assembly Overview

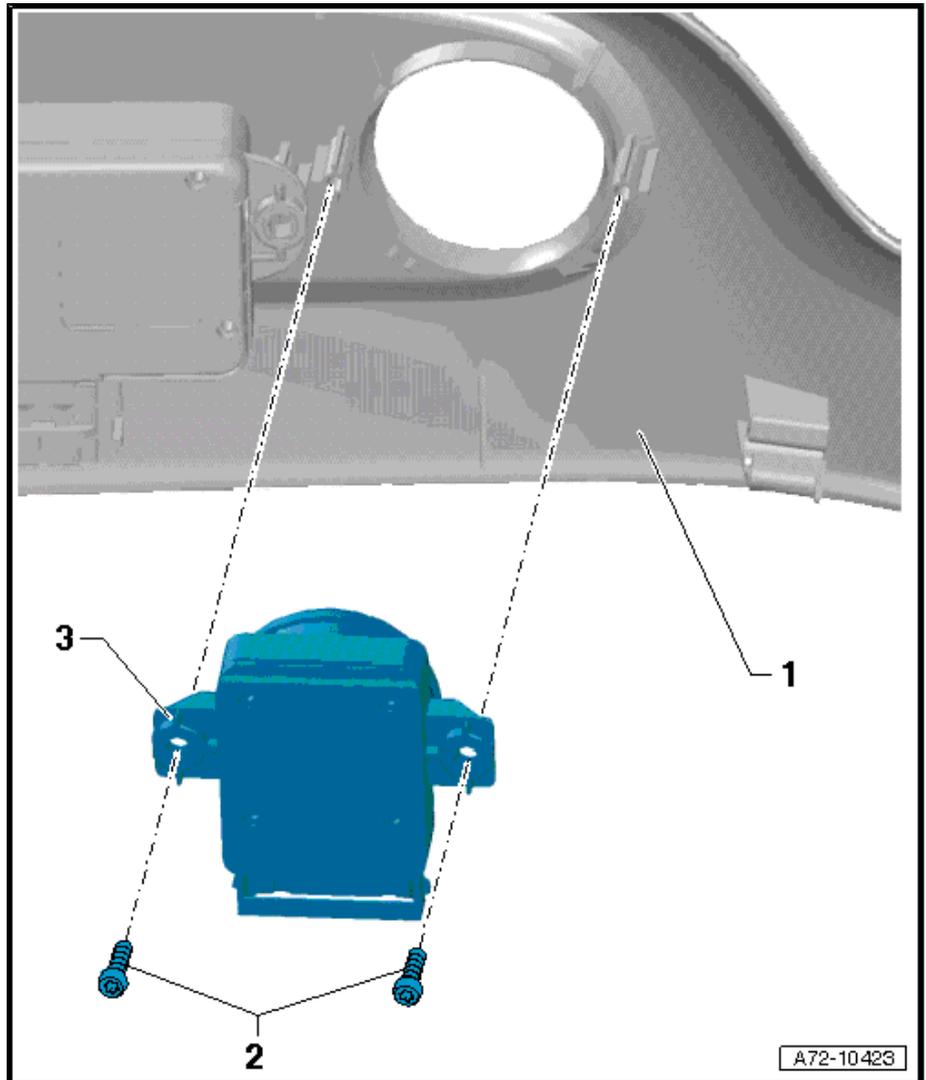
1 - Sill-side trim

2 - Bolt

- 0.5 Nm
- Quantity: 2

3 - Lumbar support adjustment switch

- Driver side -E176-
- Passenger side -E177-
- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.2.27 Lumbar Support Adjustment Switches E176 and E177", page 391](#)
- Switch and actuator cannot be disconnected and replaced separately
- ◆ Connector connecting direction from below
 - On power front seats with passenger occupant detection system (country-specific), the driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch - E176- or -E177- is rotated 180° when installed
- ◆ Connector connecting direction from above



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1.6 Bucket Seat

⇒ "1.6.1 Connectors, Disconnecting", page 306

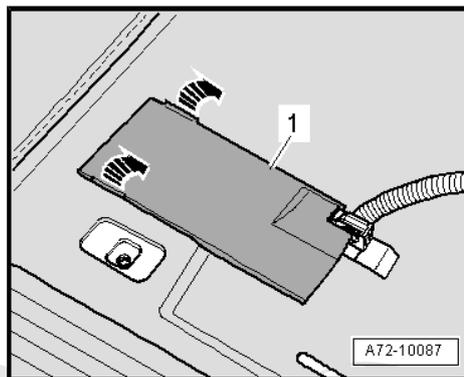
⇒ "1.6.2 Backrest Lock Actuating Link Assembly Overview", page 307

⇒ "1.6.3 Backrest Lock Actuating Link, Adjusting", page 308

1.6.1 Connectors, Disconnecting

Procedure

- Loosen seat mounting bolts. Refer to
⇒ "2.3.1 Seat", page 392 .
- Tip front seat back.
- Release cover cap -1- in direction of -arrow-.



- Remove wiring bracket -3-.
- Release clip in direction of -arrow- with a small screwdriver and disconnect electrical connector -1- with side airbag terminal resistance.

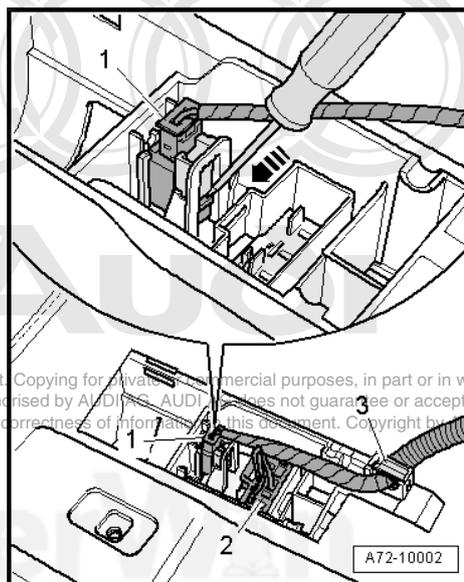
Note

The side airbag terminal resistance is a separate connector housing without a cable. The side airbag cable, as shown in the illustration above, is not in the TT.

- Press in tab on connector for heated seat -2- on tunnel side and disconnect connector for heated seat.

For vehicles with seat belt fasten sensor:

- Press in tab on connector for seat belt fasten sensor on tunnel side and disconnect connector for seat belt fasten sensor.



Copyright © Audi AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Audi AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG.

1.6.2 Backrest Lock Actuating Link Assembly Overview

1 - Backrest lock actuating link

- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.3.10 Backrest Lock Actuating Link"](#),
 page 403

2 - Actuating link adjuster

- Left

3 - Bolt

- Tightening specification
 2.5 Nm
- Replace with locking
 compound
- Locking compound, refer
 to Parts Catalog

4 - Left release lever cover

5 - Edge protection

6 - Bolt

- Tightening specification
 2.5 Nm
- replace with locking
 compound
- Locking compound, refer
 to Parts Catalog

7 - right release lever cover

8 - Edge protection

9 - right backrest lock release lever

- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.3.10 Backrest Lock Actuating Link"](#),
 page 403

10 - Plastic disc

- For release lever

11 - Right release lever mount

12 - Left release lever mount

13 - Backrest frame

14 - Backrest frame mount

15 - Bolt

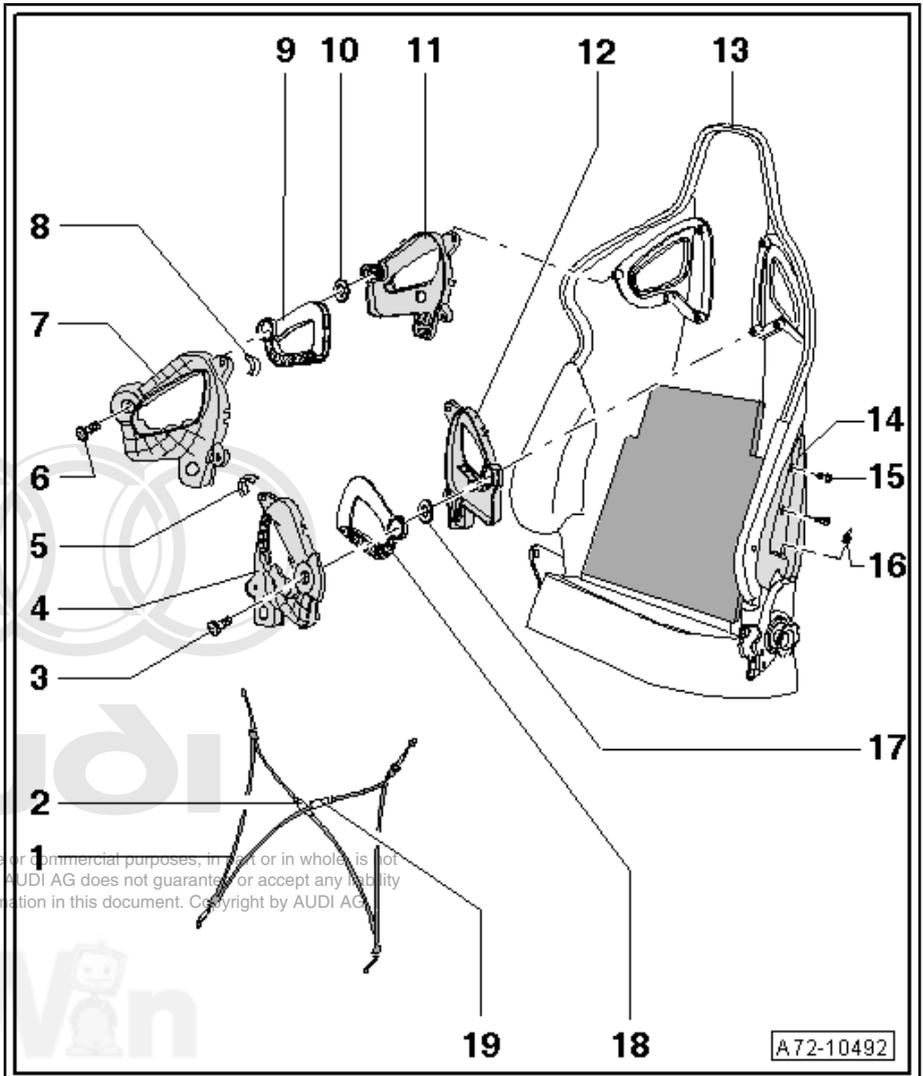
- Tightening specification 22 Nm
- Replace with locking compound
- Locking compound, refer to Parts Catalog

16 - Pop rivet

- 6 mm (steel)

17 - Plastic washer

- For release lever



18 - Left backrest lock release lever

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.3.10 Backrest Lock Actuating Link”, page 403](#)

19 - Actuating link adjuster

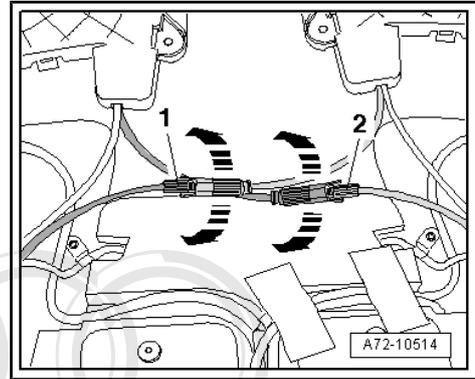
- ❑ Right

1.6.3 Backrest Lock Actuating Link, Adjusting**Procedure**

- Backrest cover removed.

When operating one of the two backrest lock release levers, release pins on left and right of seat frame must be operated at the same time.

- Operate backrest lock release lever:
- Left and right release pins must be operated at the same time.
- Release backrest lock release lever:
- The actuating links must engage the release pins on the backrest hinge as far as stop.
- The actuating links must then be relieved.
- If necessary, rotate -arrows- adjusters -1 and 2- on actuating links accordingly.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1.7 Rear Seat, Coupe

- ⇒ ["1.7.1 Rear Seat Assembly Overview", page 309](#)
- ⇒ ["1.7.2 Bench Seat Assembly Overview", page 310](#)
- ⇒ ["1.7.3 Seat Frame Assembly Overview", page 311](#)
- ⇒ ["1.7.4 1/2 Left and Right Backrest Assembly Overview", page 311](#)
- ⇒ ["1.7.5 Left or Right Release Assembly Overview", page 313](#)
- ⇒ ["1.7.6 Top Tether Child Seat Anchorage Assembly Overview", page 314](#)
- ⇒ ["1.7.7 Backrest Frame and Panel Assembly Overview", page 314](#)

1.7.1 Rear Seat Assembly Overview

1 - Bench seat

- Undivided
- Assembly Overview, refer to
 ⇒ ["1.7.2 Bench Seat Assembly Overview", page 310](#)

2 - Belt latch

- Assembly Overview, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.1.5 Rear Belt Latch Assembly Overview", page 57](#)

3 - Cover

- For backrest center bearing
- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.4.4 Center Bearing Cover Cap", page 411](#)

4 - Right release

- Assembly Overview, refer to
 ⇒ ["1.7.5 Left or Right Release Assembly Overview", page 313](#)

5 - 1/2 right backrest

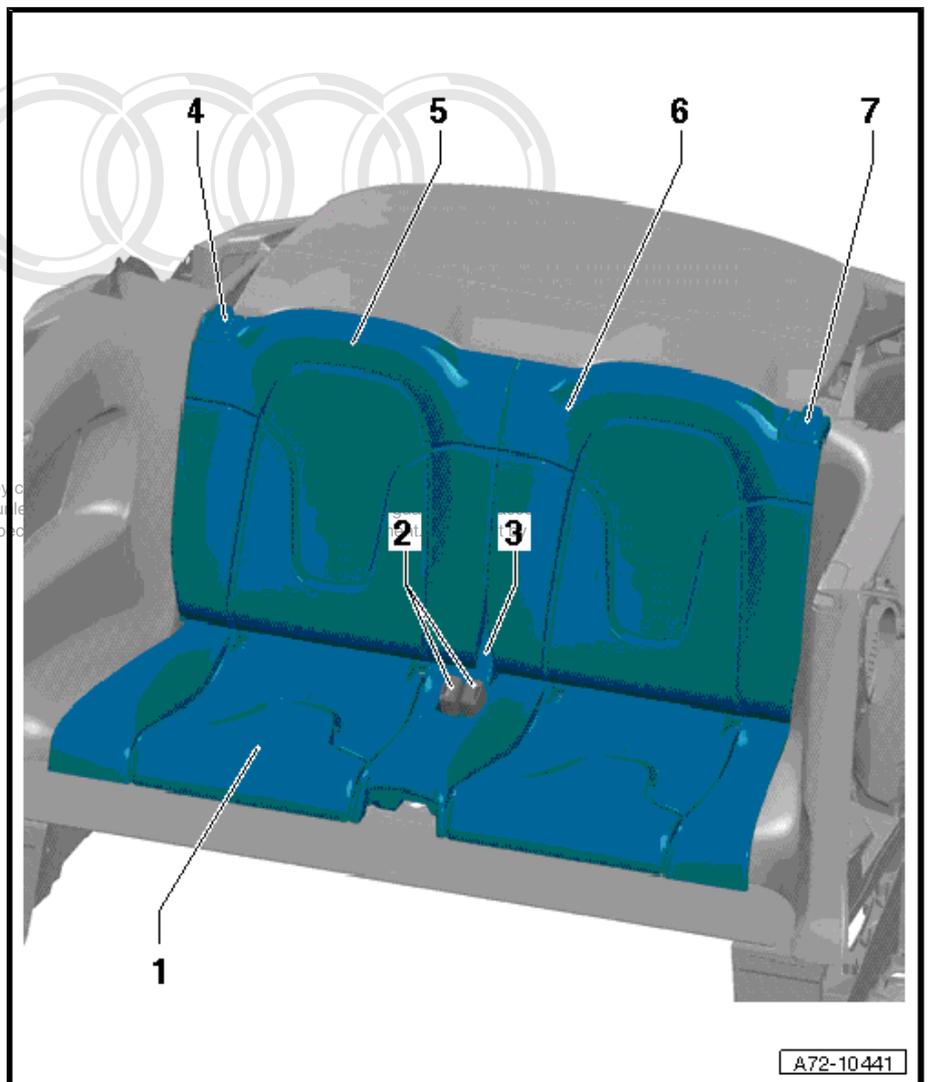
- Assembly Overview, refer to
 ⇒ ["1.7.4 1/2 Left and Right Backrest Assembly Overview", page 311](#)

6 - Left 1/2 backrest

- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ ["1.7.4 1/2 Left and Right Backrest Assembly Overview", page 311](#)

7 - Left release

- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ ["1.7.5 Left or Right Release Assembly Overview", page 313](#)



1.7.2 Bench Seat Assembly Overview

1 - Bench seat

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.4.1 Bench Seat", page 406](#)

2 - 1/2 right backrest

3 - Left 1/2 backrest

4 - Belt latch

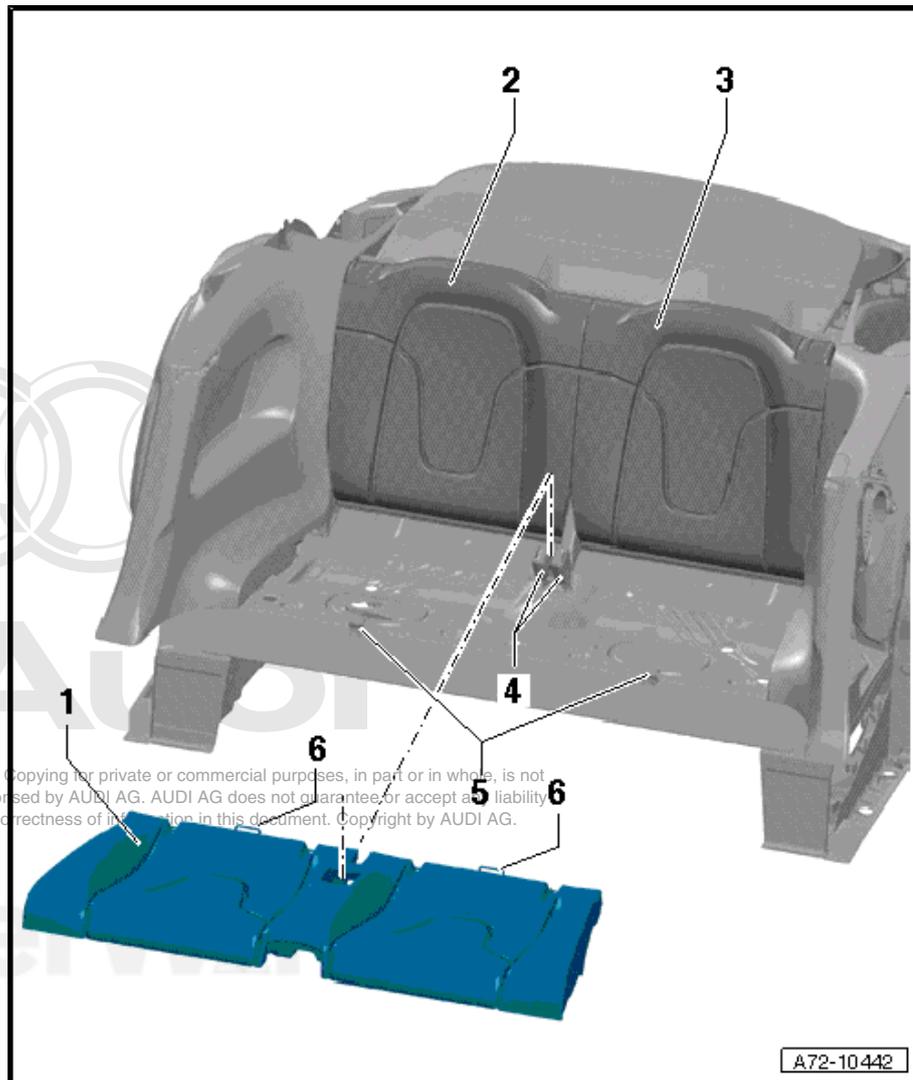
- ❑ Assembly Overview, refer to
⇒ ["2.1.5 Rear Belt Latch Assembly Overview", page 57](#)
- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["3.1.7 Belt Latch", page 83](#)

5 - Omega clips

- ❑ Quantity: 2
- ❑ Cannot be replaced
- ❑ For securing bench seat

6 - Retaining eyes

- ❑ Welded with bench seat



1.7.3 Seat Frame Assembly Overview

1 - Seat frame

- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.4.2 Seat Frame"](#),
 page 408

2 - Cover with upholstery

- Do not separate from one another when removing seat frame

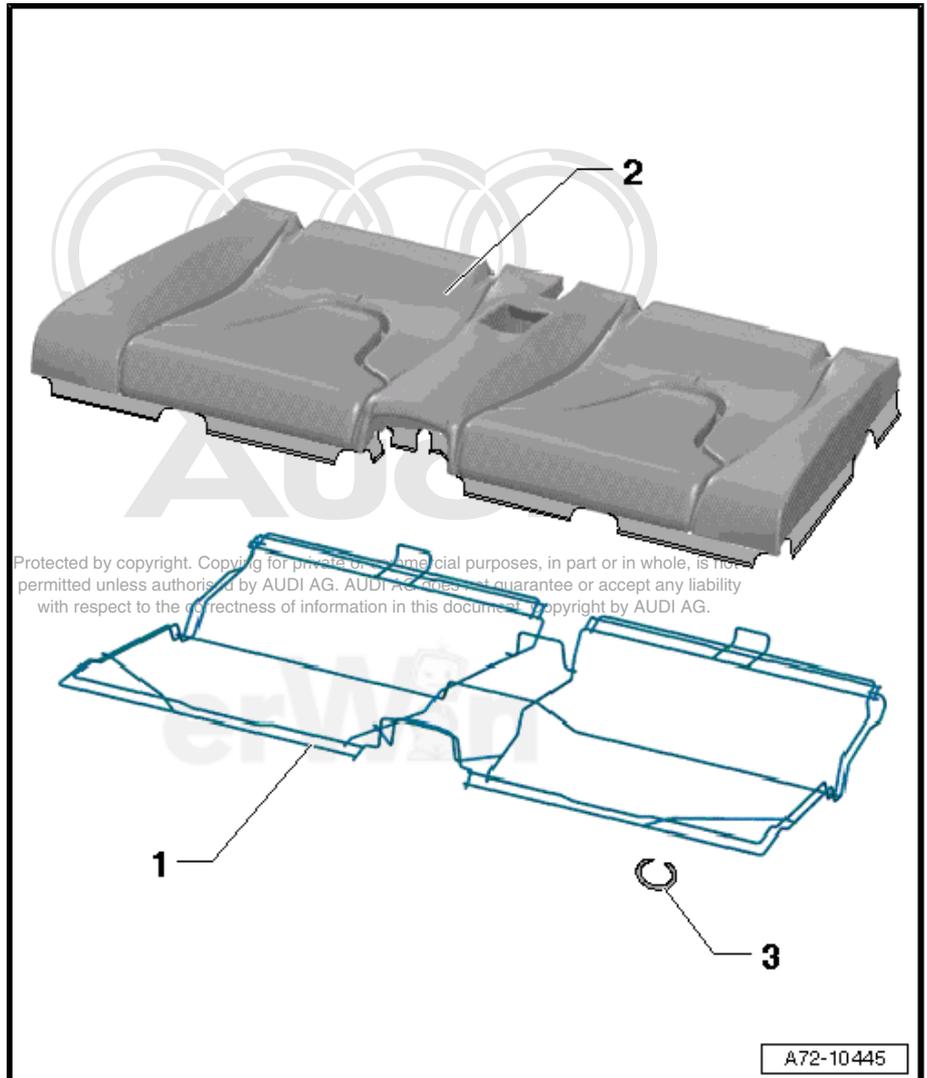
3 - Cushion clamp

- Quantity: 48
- Replacing
- Install in same location as before removal



WARNING

Ends of upholstery clips must face in direction of upholstery after installing and must be bent correctly. Otherwise, there is a risk of injury.



1.7.4 1/2 Left and Right Backrest Assembly Overview



Note

When installing left and right 1/2 backrest, follow threaded connection installation sequence.

- Tighten the screw and nut -9- hand-tight. Tighten the screws -1- to the tightening specification. Tighten the nut -5- to the

tightening specification. Tighten the screw and the nut -9- to the tightening specification.

1 - Bolt

- 40 Nm
- Quantity: 4

2 - Right release

- Assembly Overview, refer to
⇒ ["1.7.5 Left or Right Release Assembly Overview"](#), page 313

3 - 1/2 right backrest

- Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.4.3 Backrest"](#), page 408

4 - Left 1/2 backrest

- Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.4.3 Backrest"](#), page 408

5 - Nut

- 55 Nm

6 - Left release

- Assembly Overview, refer to
⇒ ["1.7.5 Left or Right Release Assembly Overview"](#), page 313

7 - Center bearing cover cap

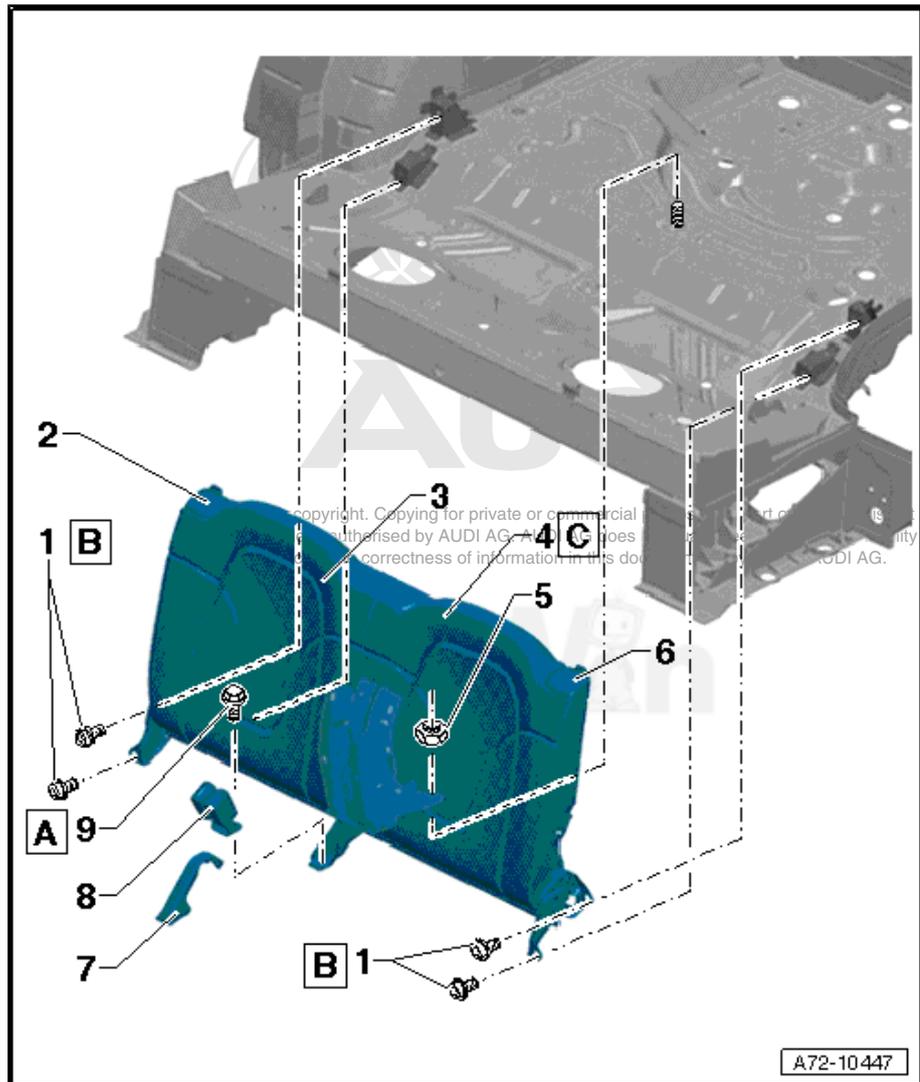
- Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.4.4 Center Bearing Cover Cap"](#), page 411

8 - Belt latch

- Assembly Overview, refer to ⇒ ["2.1.5 Rear Belt Latch Assembly Overview"](#), page 57
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["3.1.7 Belt Latch"](#), page 83

9 - Screw and nut

- For the correct tightening specification refer to ⇒ [Item 3 \(page 57\)](#) or ⇒ [Item 4 \(page 57\)](#)



1.7.5 Left or Right Release Assembly Overview

1 - Left/right release

- Without trim
- With release cable
- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.4.5 Left or Right Release", page 412](#)

2 - Bolt

- 2.0 Nm
- Quantity: 6

3 - Left/right trim

- Clipped with release
 ⇒ [Item 1 \(page 313\)](#)
- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.4.6 Left or Right Trim", page 415](#)

4 - Button

- For release
- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.4.7 Release Button", page 416](#)

5 - 1/2 left/right backrest

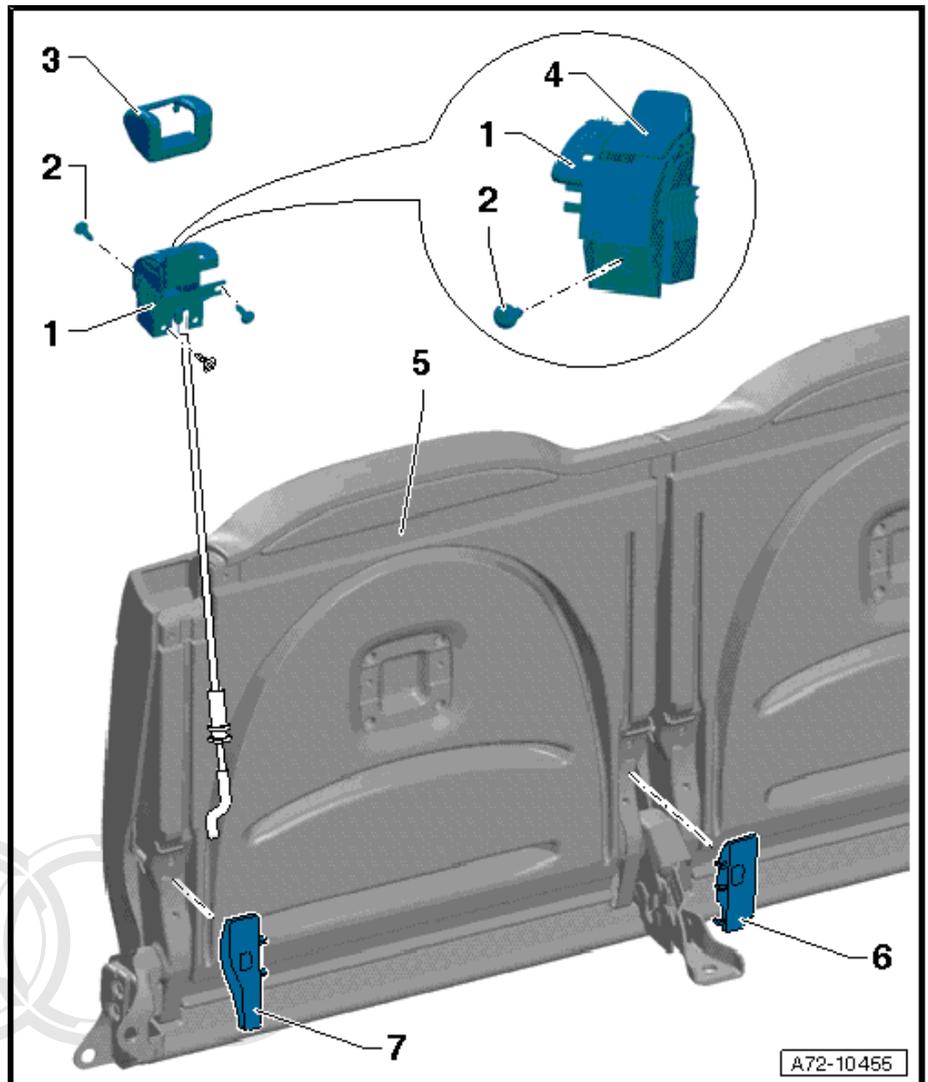
- Cover removed

6 - Left inner filler piece

- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.4.9 Inner Left or Right Spacer", page 418](#)

7 - Left outer filler piece

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.4.8 Outer Left or Right Spacer", page 418](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin

1.7.6 Top Tether Child Seat Anchorage Assembly Overview

Child Seat Anchorage, Top Tether, Assembly Overview
⇒ ["2.3.3 Top Tether Child Seat Anchorages Assembly Overview"](#),
[page 63](#)

1.7.7 Backrest Frame and Panel Assembly Overview

1 - Right backrest shell

- Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.4.12 Backrest Panel"](#), [page 419](#)
- Front side taped with two-sided adhesive tape
- Rear side cover with adhesive film

2 - Left backrest shell

- Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.4.12 Backrest Panel"](#), [page 419](#)
- Front side taped with two-sided adhesive tape
- Rear side cover with adhesive film

3 - Bolt

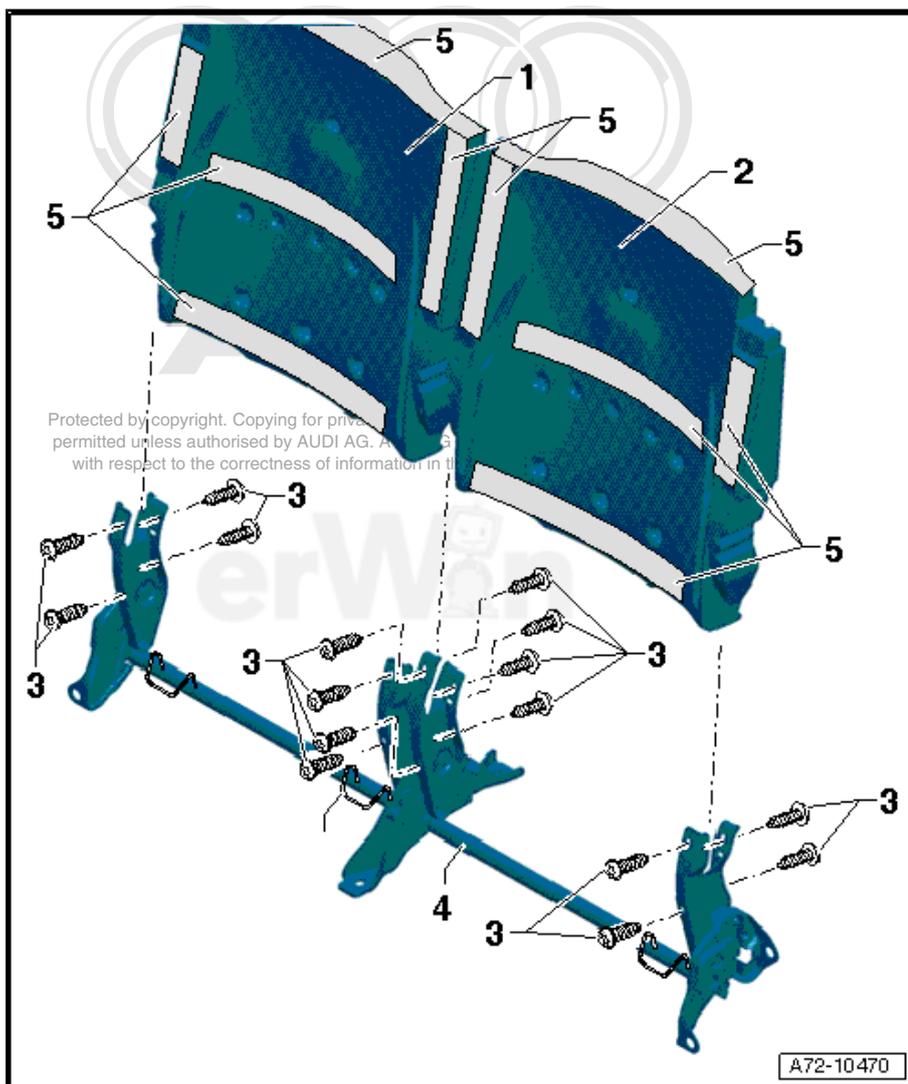
- 4.0 Nm
- Quantity: 16

4 - Backrest frame

- Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.4.11 Backrest Frame"](#), [page 419](#)
- Optional equipment:
 - ◆ with child seat anchor (LATCH)
 - ◆ without child seat anchor

5 - Double sided adhesive tape

- Attach to front side and upper edge of backrest shell



2 Removal and Installation

⇒ [“2.1 Manual Front Seats”, page 315](#)

⇒ [“2.2 Power Front Seats”, page 337](#)

⇒ [“2.3 Bucket Seat”, page 392](#)

⇒ [“2.4 Rear Seat, Coupe”, page 406](#)

2.1 Manual Front Seats

⇒ [“2.1.1 Front Seat”, page 315](#)

⇒ [“2.1.2 Seat Rail Covers”, page 319](#)

⇒ [“2.1.3 Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Stop”, page 319](#)

⇒ [“2.1.4 Backrest Adjusting Wheel”, page 319](#)

⇒ [“2.1.5 Sill Side Trim”, page 320](#)

⇒ [“2.1.6 Front Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switches E176 and E177”, page 322](#)

⇒ [“2.1.7 Tunnel Side Trim”, page 323](#)

⇒ [“2.1.8 Sill Side Retaining Bracket Trim”, page 324](#)

⇒ [“2.1.9 Seat Height Adjustment Handle”, page 324](#)

⇒ [“2.1.10 Seat Height Adjuster”, page 325](#)

⇒ [“2.1.11 Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Handle”, page 327](#)

⇒ [“2.1.12 Front Backrest”, page 327](#)

⇒ [“2.1.13 Backrest Cover”, page 331](#)

⇒ [“2.1.14 Spring Mat”, page 331](#)

⇒ [“2.1.15 Four-Way Lumbar Support”, page 333](#)

⇒ [“2.1.16 Trim with Entry Assistance Handle, Coupe Only”, page 334](#)

⇒ [“2.1.17 Entry Assistance Bracket, Coupe Only”, page 334](#)

⇒ [“2.1.18 Left and Right Release Cables, Coupe Only”, page 334](#)

⇒ [“2.1.19 Headrests with Locking Mechanism”, page 335](#)

⇒ [“2.1.20 Headrest Guide”, page 335](#)

⇒ [“2.1.21 Seat Pan”, page 335](#)

⇒ [“2.1.22 Storage Compartment”, page 337](#)

2.1.1 Front Seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

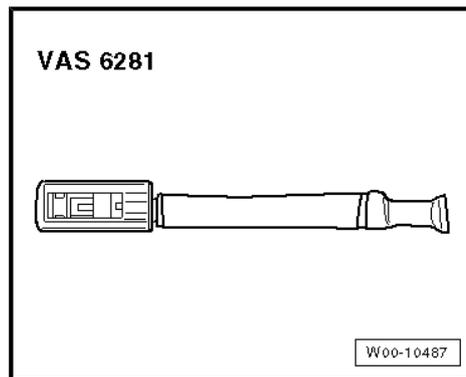


Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the express consent of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin

◆ Airbag adapter -VAS 6281-



Note

The removal and installation procedure describes a driver seat.
The procedure for the front passenger seat is identical.

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38](#).

- Bring seat into service position. Refer to ⇒ ["1.2 Bringing Front Seats Into Service Position", page 249](#).
- Switch off the ignition.
- Disconnect battery ground cable. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .



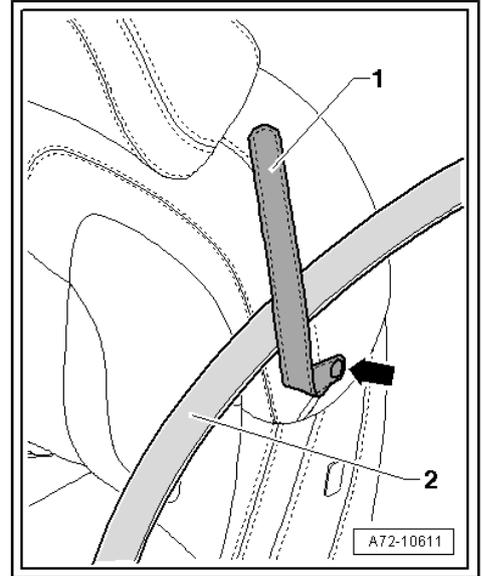
WARNING

- ◆ Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.

- Disconnect the connectors on the connector station inside the floor panel. Refer to ⇒ ["1.5.2 Harness Connectors, Disconnecting and Connecting", page 272](#)
- Connect Airbag Adapter -VAS 6281- . Refer to ⇒ ["1.5.3 Airbag Adapter, Connecting", page 275](#) .

Roadster Only

- Open retaining loop -1- by loosening push button -arrow-.
- Remove seat belt -2- from retaining loop.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Procedure for all vehicles

- Remove front bolts -1- (quantity: 2).
- 3 - Rear console
- 4 - Front console
- Press the seat forward/back adjustment handle and move the seat -2- as far forward as possible.
- Remove rear bolts -1- (quantity: 2).
- With help from a second mechanic, lift seat -2- out of vehicle.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:



WARNING

- ◆ **Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .**
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Remove Airbag Adapter -VAS 6281- only after installing seat. Refer to ⇒ "1.5.3 Airbag Adapter, Connecting", page 275 .



Note

Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.

- Connect connector to connectors on connector station location in floor. Refer to ⇒ "1.5.2 Harness Connectors, Disconnecting and Connecting", page 272 .
- Switch on ignition.

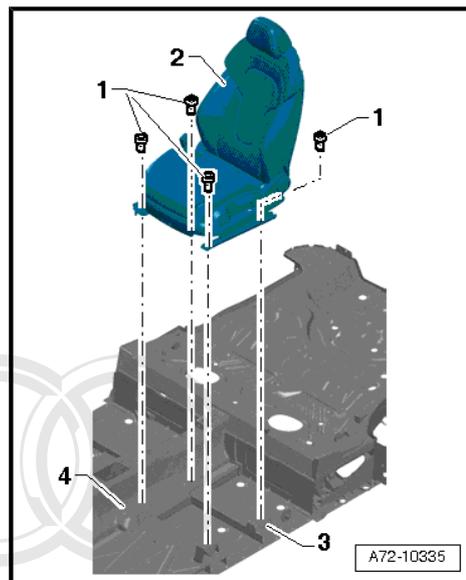


WARNING

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

For the correct tightening specifications, refer to ⇒ "1.4.1 Front Seat Assembly Overview", page 252



2.1.2 Seat Rail Covers

- ◆ The removal and installation procedure is described on a power front seat .
- ◆ The removal and installation procedure for the seat rail covers describes the driver seat rail on the sill side. The procedure for the cover on the tunnel side is similar.
- ◆ A spindle cover is only installed on the power front seat. Refer to ⇒ ["2.2.3 Seat Rail and Spindle Covers", page 344](#) .

Seat rail covers, removing and installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.2.3 Seat Rail and Spindle Covers", page 344](#)

2.1.3 Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Stop



Note

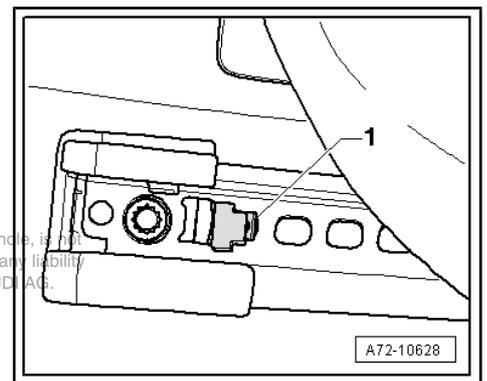
The seat fore and aft adjustment stop can be removed and installed with the seat installed. For overview purposes, the stop is only shown on one side.

Removing

- Unclip seat fore and aft adjustment stop -1-

Installation

- Install in reverse order of removal.

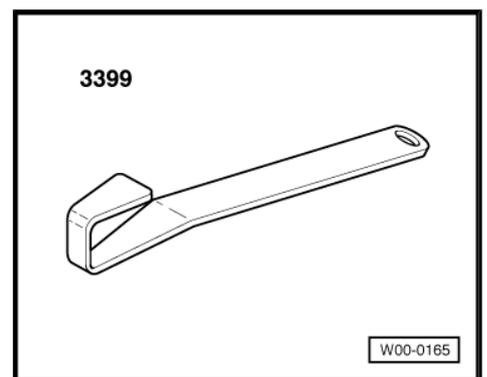


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1.4 Backrest Adjusting Wheel

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Assembly tool -3399-



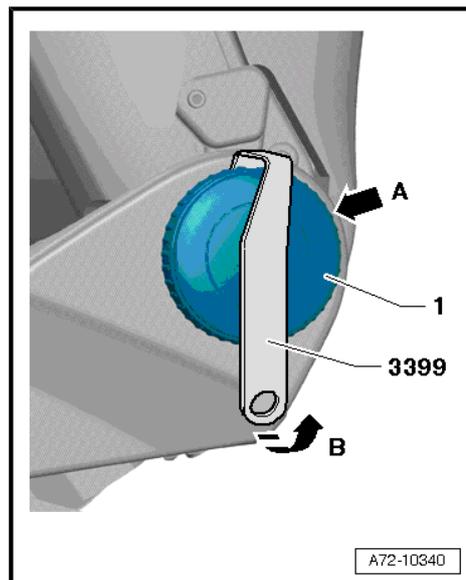
Removing

- Turn the backrest adjustment wheel -1- until a locking mechanism is visible from behind -arrow A-. It may be necessary to use a flashlight.
- Engage Assembly Tool -3399- and pry it in direction of -arrow B-.
- Turn backrest adjustment wheel about 120° more.
- Engage Assembly Tool -3399- and pry it in direction of -arrow B-.
- Remove backrest adjustment wheel.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- If backrest adjustment wheel is too loose after installation, replace wheel.



2.1.5 Sill Side Trim



Note

The sill side trim can be removed and installed with the front seat installed.

Removing



WARNING

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the express written consent of Audi AG. All rights reserved. Copyright by Audi AG.

◆ **Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to**

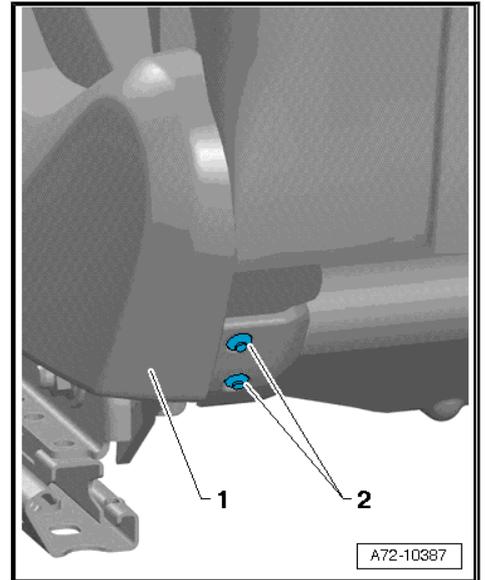
⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .

- Bring seat as far up as possible.
- Remove backrest adjustment wheel. Refer to ⇒ ["2.1.4 Backrest Adjusting Wheel", page 319](#) .
- Remove seat height adjustment handle. Refer to ⇒ ["2.1.9 Seat Height Adjustment Handle", page 324](#) .

- Remove expanding rivets -2- (quantity: 2).

1 - Sill-side trim

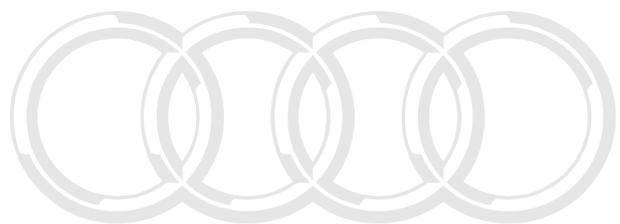
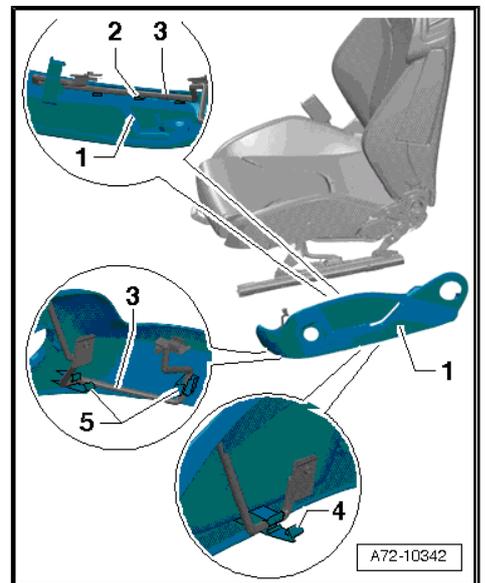
Expanding rivets on a power front seat are shown in the illustration.



- Open the clips -5- (quantity: 2) and -4-.
- Unclip trim -1- on retaining bracket -3-.
- Disengage trim in area of backrest adjustment wheel and seat anchor.
- Remove trim forward from retaining bracket -3-.

 **Note**

Ensure bracket -2- is not damaged when removing trim.



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin

Seat with Four-Way Lumbar Support



Note

On vehicles with manual front seats and passenger occupant detection system (country-specific), the driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- or -E177- must be installed so connector is connected from above.

- Remove connector -1- from Driver Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch -E176- -4-.

2 - Sill-side trim

3 - Retaining bracket

Continuation for all Manual Seats

- Remove sill side trim.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:



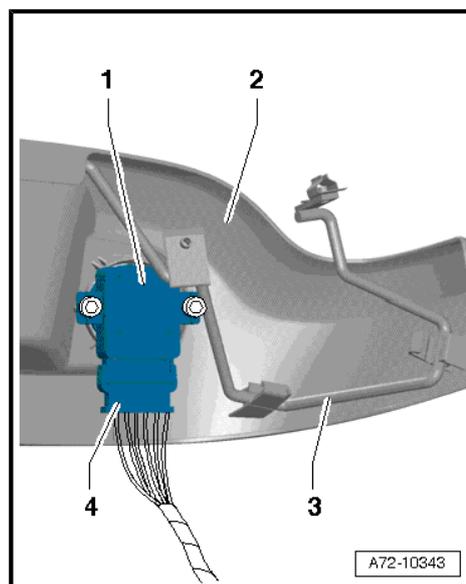
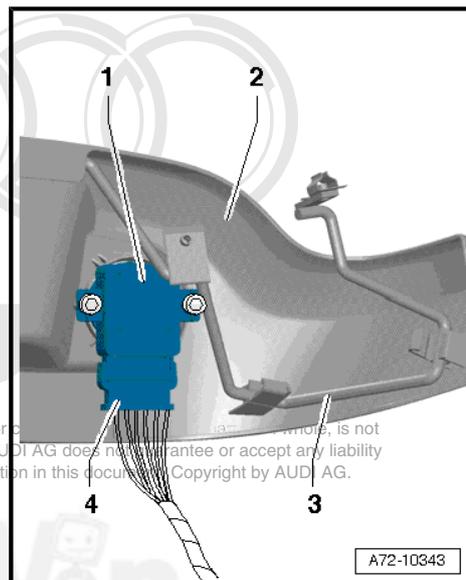
WARNING

- ◆ Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ ***“1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures”, page 38*** .



Note

- ◆ Make sure the sill side trim is engaged correctly on retaining bracket and lock clips are closed.
- ◆ Make sure the wires are as close to the coupling -4- as possible.



2.1.6 Front Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switches E176 and E177

Removing

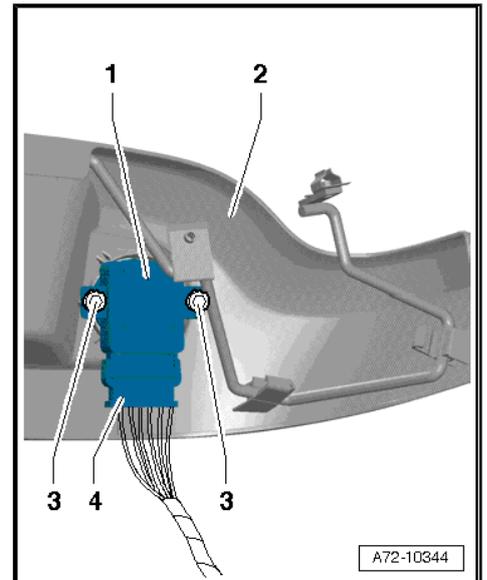
- Remove tunnel side trim panel. Refer to ⇒ ***“2.1.5 Sill SideTrim”, page 320*** .

- Disconnect the connector -4-.

 **Note**

On vehicles with manual front seats and passenger occupant detection system (country-specific), the connector -4- is connected from above, in contrast to the illustration.

- Remove bolts -3- (quantity: 2).
- Remove Driver Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch - E176- or -E177- -1- from trim -2-.

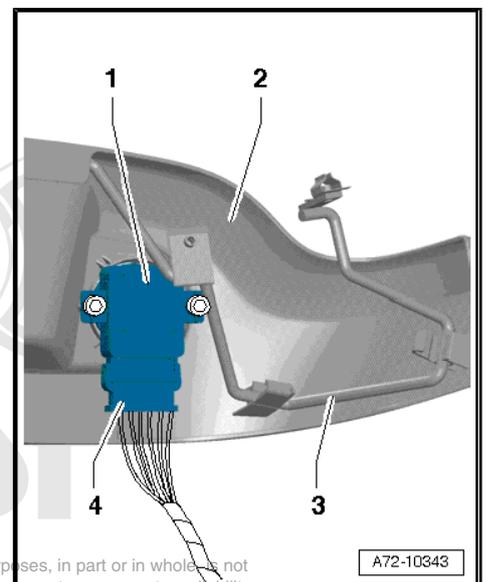


Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Route wires as close to the coupling -4- as possible.

For the correct tightening specifications, refer to
 ⇒ **["1.4.9 Front Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switches E176 and E177 Assembly Overview"](#), page 260**



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the accuracy of the information with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1.7 Tunnel Side Trim

 **Note**

- ◆ *The sill-side trim can only be removed and installed when the front seat is removed.*
- ◆ *Removal and installation of the sill side trim is described on an electrically adjustable seat.*

Tunnel side trim panel, removing and installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.2.5 Tunnel Side Trim", page 348](#)

For the correct tightening specifications, refer to
⇒ ["1.4.8 Sill and Tunnel Side Trim Assembly Overview", page 259](#)

2.1.8 Sill Side Retaining Bracket Trim

Removing



WARNING

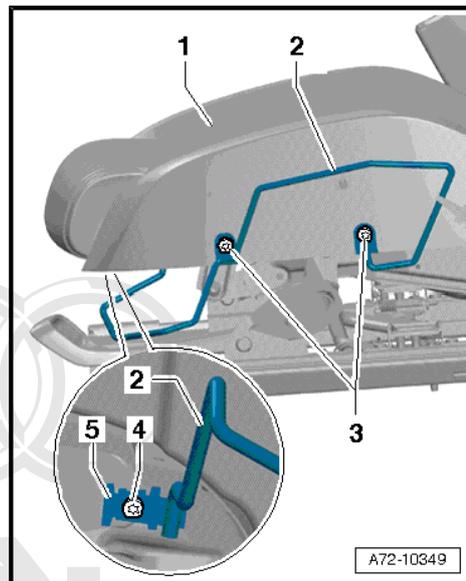
- ◆ Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to
⇒ ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38](#).

- Remove tunnel side trim panel:
- ◆ Manual front seat, refer to ⇒ ["2.1.5 Sill Side Trim", page 320](#)
- ◆ Power front seat, refer to ⇒ ["2.2.4 Sill Side Trim", page 346](#).
- Remove the bolt -4-.
- Remove bolts -3- (quantity: 2).
- Remove the bracket -2- from the front seat -1-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.

For the correct tightening specifications, refer to
⇒ ["1.4.10 Sill Side Trim Retaining Bracket Assembly Overview", page 261](#)



2.1.9 Seat Height Adjustment Handle

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ It is necessary to create an assisting tool. ⇒ [page 325](#)



Note

The seat height adjustment handle can be replaced with the front seat installed.

Removing

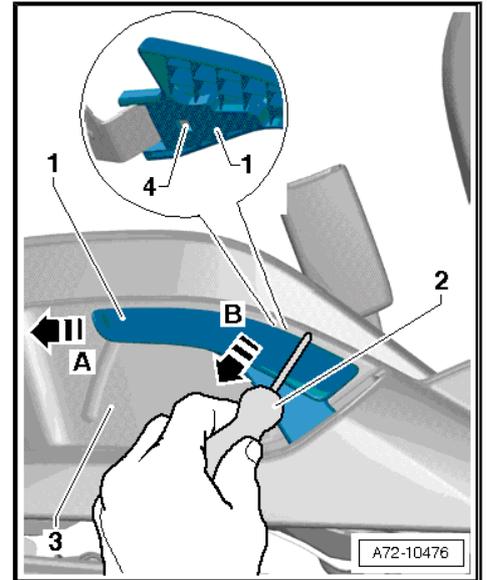
- Create an assisting tool. Refer to ⇒ [page 325](#).

- Pull the seat height adjustment handle -1- as far up as possible and hold it in that position.
- Carefully remove the seat height adjustment handle -1- from the front seat.
- Guide assisting tool -2- into mount -4-.
- Pull assisting tool -2- in direction of -arrow B- while pressing clip spring outward.
- Pull seat height adjustment handle -1- in direction of -arrow A- away from lever.

Installation

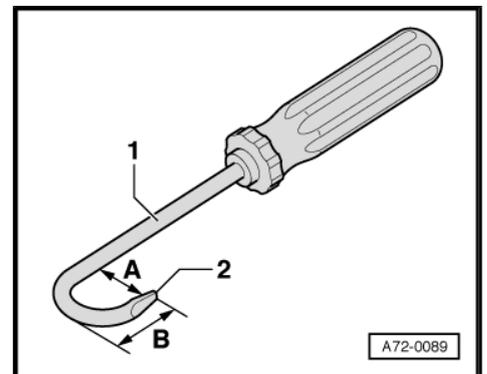
Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Replace clip on seat height adjustment handle while noting clip installation location ⇒ [page 325](#) .
- Make sure the seat height adjustment handle engages correctly with the clips.



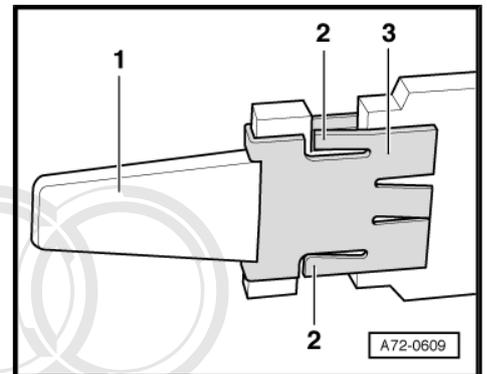
Assisting Tool, Creating

- Bend 3.5 mm wide -2- screwdriver -1- to dimensions:
 - ◆ A = 20 mm
 - ◆ B = maximum of 15 mm.



Clip, Installation Location

- Ensure springs -2- (quantity: 2) in clip -3- are positioned on outside of lever -1-.



2.1.10 Seat Height Adjuster

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ **Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .**
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.**

- Remove the front seat. Refer to [⇒ "2.1.1 Front Seat", page 315](#) .
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136- . Refer to [⇒ "1.3 Installing Front Seat On VAS 6136", page 250](#) .
- Remove tunnel side trim panel. Refer to [⇒ "2.1.5 Sill SideTrim", page 320](#) .
- Remove nut -3-.
- Remove bolts -5- (quantity: 2).
- Remove the bolt -2-.
- Remove seat height adjustment unit -1- and retaining plate -4-.

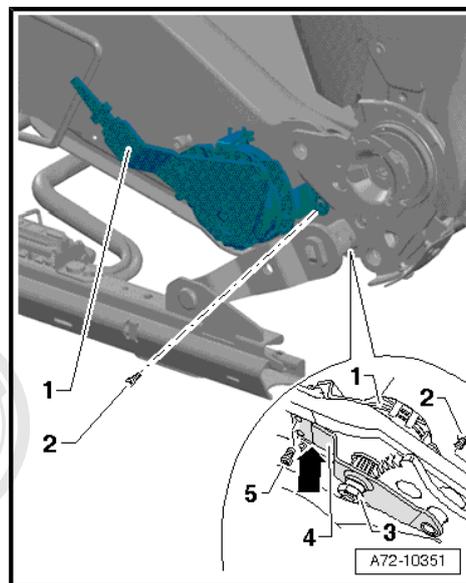
Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:



WARNING

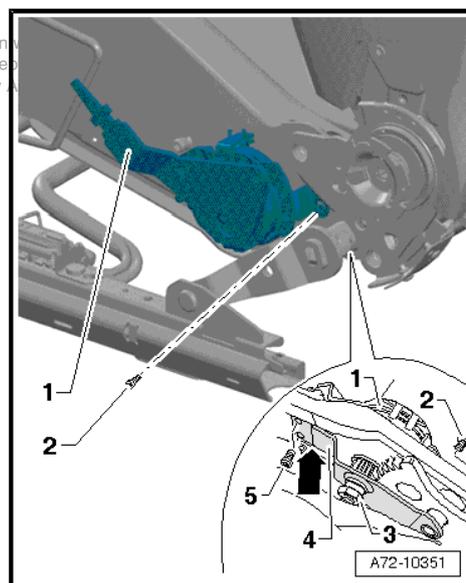
- ◆ **Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to [⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38](#) .**
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.**



Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG.

- ◆ **Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.**
- ◆ **Ensure retaining plate -4- contacts location on backrest frame marked with -arrow-.**
- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to [⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation](#) .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again.

For the correct tightening specifications, refer to [⇒ "1.4.11 Seat Height Adjuster and Seat Height Adjustment Handle Assembly Overview", page 262](#)

2.1.11 Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Handle

Removing

 **Note**

The seat fore and aft adjustment handle cannot be removed without destroying it.

- Move the front seat all the way forward.
- Remove the seat forward/back adjustment handle -1- from its mount -2- using a rubber or plastic mallet.

 **Note**

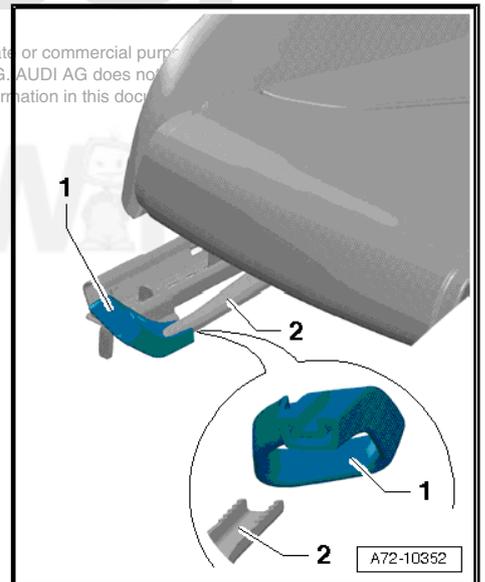
The unit is shown rotated 180°.

Installation

- Push the seat forward/back adjustment handle back onto its mount.
- Hit the seat forward/back adjustment handle all the way back on with a rubber hammer.

 **Note**

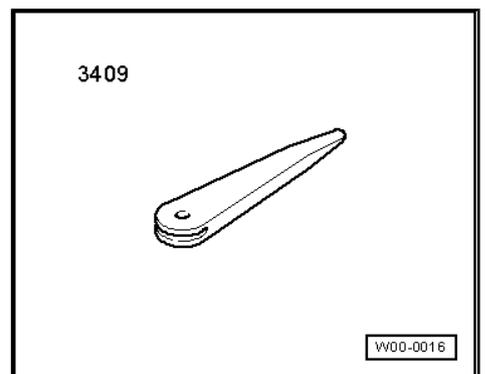
Be careful not to damage the handle when hitting it with the rubber hammer.



2.1.12 Front Backrest

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



 **Note**

- ◆ *The removal and installation procedure describes a driver seat. The procedure for the front passenger seat is identical.*
- ◆ *The steps for disconnecting the connectors on a power front seat are described.*

Removing

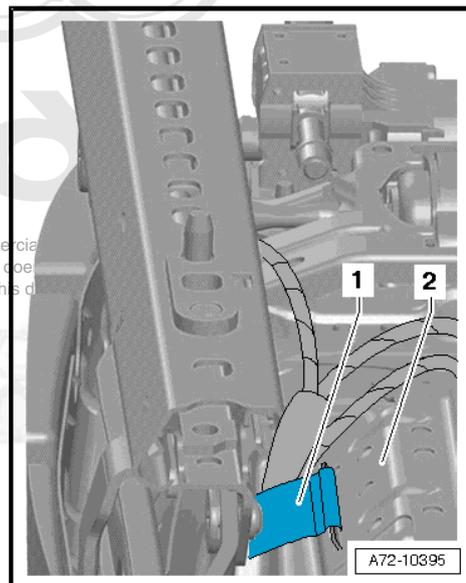


WARNING

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures"](#), page 38 .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*

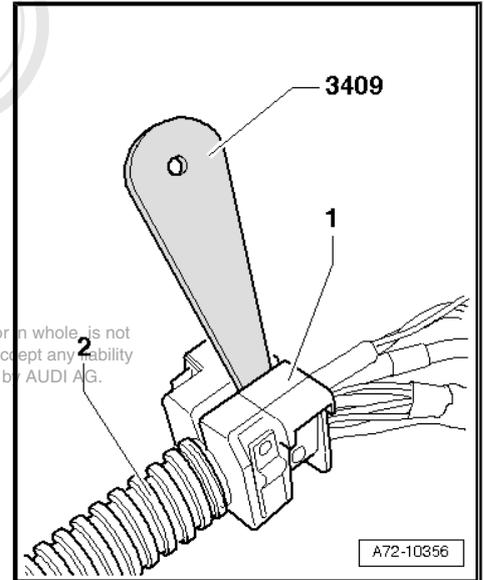
- Remove the front seat. Refer to ⇒ ["2.1.1 Front Seat"](#), page 315 .
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136- . Refer to ⇒ ["1.3 Installing Front Seat On VAS 6136"](#), page 250 .
- Remove tunnel side trim panel. Refer to ⇒ ["2.1.5 Sill SideTrim"](#), page 320 .
- Remove tunnel side trim panel. Refer to ⇒ ["2.2.5 Tunnel Side Trim"](#), page 348 .
- Disengage tab -1- at seat pan -2-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

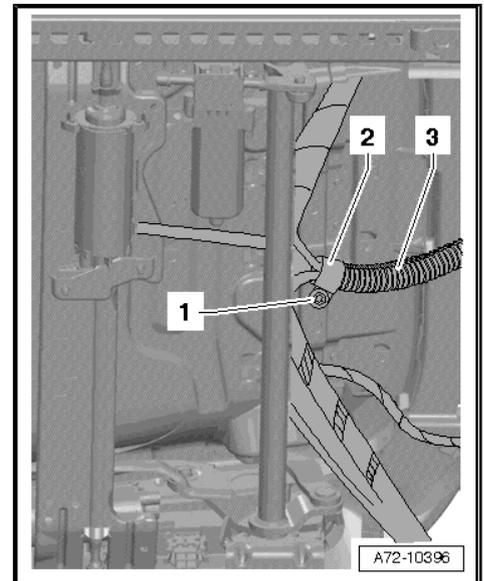


- Using Trim Removal Wedge -3409- , clip on cable bracket -1-.
- Remove cable bracket -1- from corrugated pipe -2-.

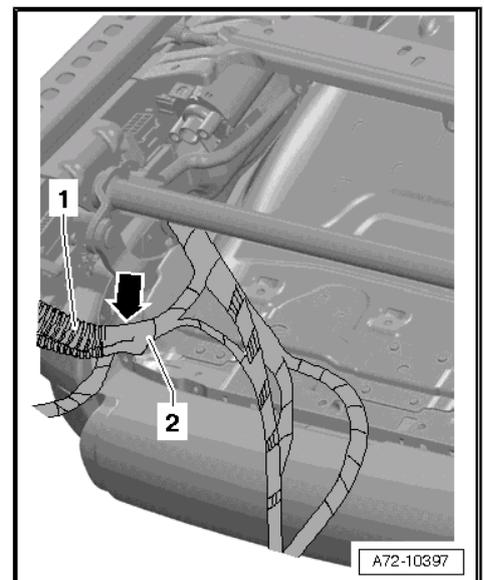
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



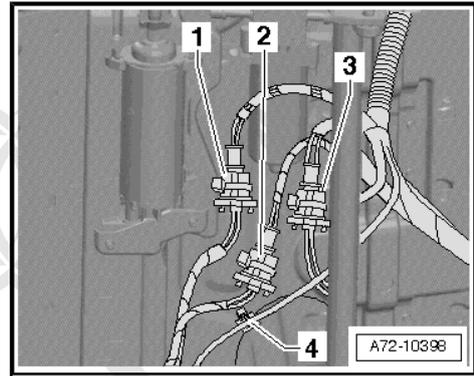
- Remove the bolt -1-.
- Remove cable clip -2- from corrugated pipe -3-.



- Open fabric band -2- in area of -arrow-.
- Open corrugated pipe -1-.
- Remove corrugated pipe -1- from wiring harness.



- Disconnect connectors, for example, -1-, -2- and -3-.
- Remove clip with cable tie -4-.



- Remove bolts -2- (quantity: 4).
- Tip backrest -3- forward onto seat pan -1-.
- Press upholstery to side and carefully remove side airbag wire -4- and, if necessary, all additional wires (depending on option equipment) on the seat pan.
- Remove backrest.

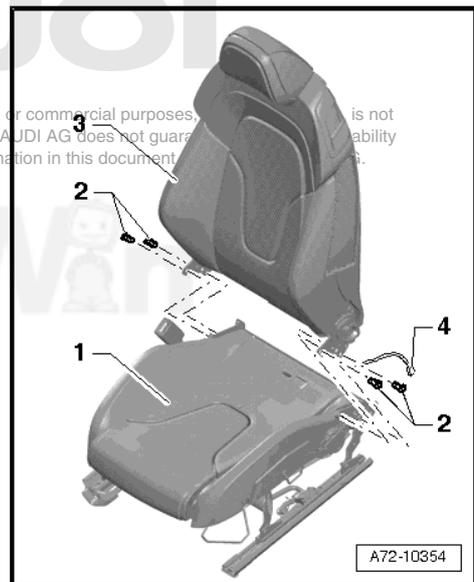
Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:



WARNING

- ◆ Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38](#).
- ◆ Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.



- Threaded bolt holes -2- must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter).
- Replace bolts -2- (quantity: 4) after each removal.
- Make sure the upper and lower part of corrugated pipe fit together precisely.

 **Note**

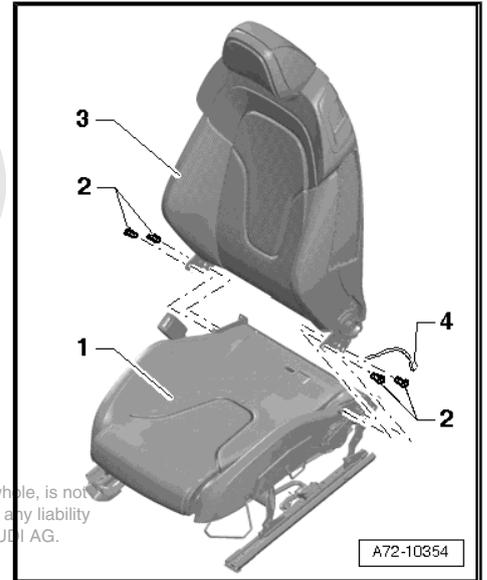
Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.

- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.



- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ [Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation](#) .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again.

For the correct tightening specifications, refer to ⇒ ["1.4.12 Front Backrest Assembly Overview"](#), page 263

2.1.13 Backrest Cover

The following describes removing and installing the backrest cover on a power front seat.

Backrest cover, removing and installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.2.10 Backrest Cover"](#), page 356

2.1.14 Spring Mat

Removing



WARNING

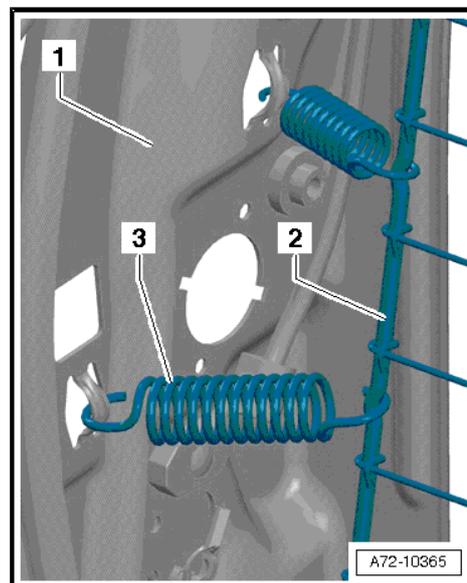
- ◆ **Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures"](#), page 38 .**
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.**

- Remove the front seat. Refer to ⇒ ["2.1.1 Front Seat"](#), page 315 .
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136- . Refer to ⇒ ["1.3 Installing Front Seat On VAS 6136"](#), page 250 .

- Remove backrest cover panel. Refer to [⇒ "2.2.10 Backrest Cover", page 356](#) .
- Remove the headrests. Refer to [⇒ "2.2.16 Headrests with Locking Mechanism", page 368](#) .
- Remove cover with upholstery. Refer to [⇒ "2.1.3 Backrest Cover and Upholstery", page 432](#) .
- Disengage pull-springs -3- on backrest frame -1-.

**Note**

The pull-springs -3- can also stay engaged in the backrest frame -1- and the spring mat -2- can be disengaged directly at the pull-springs.



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



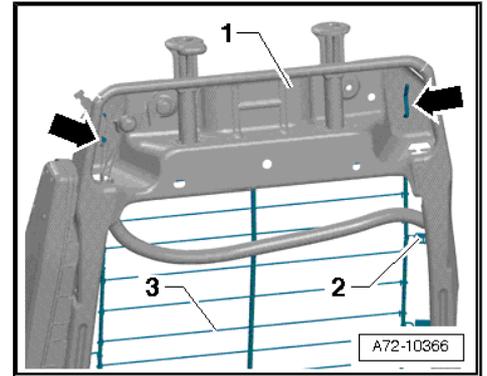
- Tip spring mat -3- forward.
- Remove spring mat -arrows- from backrest frame -1-.
- 2 - Pull-spring

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

 **WARNING**

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*



- Make sure the correct pull-spring (number of coils) is engaged at the location determined.

 **Note**

Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Switch on ignition.

 **WARNING**

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again.

2.1.15 Four-Way Lumbar Support

The following describes the removing and installing a four-way lumbar support on a power front seat.

Four-way lumbar support, removing and installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.2.11 Four-Way Lumbar Support", page 359](#)

2.1.16 Trim with Entry Assistance Handle, Coupe Only



Note

- ◆ *The trim with the handle can be removed and installed with the front seat installed.*
- ◆ *The trim and handle are both destroyed during removal.*
- ◆ *The following describes removing and installing trim on the entry assistance handle on a power front seat.*

Entry Assistance Handle Trim, Coupe Only, Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.2.12 Trim with Entry Assistance Handle, Coupe Only through 10.06", page 362](#)

2.1.17 Entry Assistance Bracket, Coupe Only



Note

- ◆ *The entry assistance bracket can be removed and installed with the front seat installed.*
- ◆ *The following describes removing and installing the entry assistance bracket on a power front seat.*

Entry Assistance Bracket, Coupe Only, Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.2.14 Entry Assistance Bracket, Coupe Only", page 364](#)

2.1.18 Left and Right Release Cables, Coupe Only



Note

- ◆ *The left and right release cables cannot be replaced separately.*
- ◆ *The following describes removing and installing the release cable on a left and right power front seat.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Left and right release cable, Coupe only, removing and installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.2.15 Left and Right Release Cables, Coupe Only"](#),
 page 365

2.1.19 Headrests with Locking Mechanism

Headrest with insertion lock, removing and installing, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.2.16 Headrests with Locking Mechanism"](#), page 368

2.1.20 Headrest Guide

Headrest Guides Without and With Release Button, Removing
 and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.2.17 Headrest Guide"](#), page 369

2.1.21 Seat Pan

Removing

 **WARNING**

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to
 ⇒ ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures"](#), page 38 .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*

- Remove the front seat. Refer to
 ⇒ ["2.1.1 Front Seat"](#), page 315 .
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136- .
 Refer to
 ⇒ ["1.3 Installing Front Seat On VAS 6136"](#), page 250 .
- Remove front backrest. Refer to
 ⇒ ["2.1.12 Front Backrest"](#), page 327 .
- Remove cover with upholstery from seat pan. Refer to
 ⇒ ["2.1.1 Seat Pan Cover and Upholstery"](#), page 429 .

Installation

- Install removed cover with upholstery in new seat pan.

Installation is in reverse order of removal, noting the following:

 **WARNING**

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to
 ⇒ ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures"](#), page 38 .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*



Note

Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.

- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27, Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again.

2.1.22 Storage Compartment

Storage compartment, removing and installing. Refer to
 ⇒ ["2.2.19 Storage Compartment", page 373](#)

2.2 Power Front Seats

⇒ ["2.2.1 Front Seat", page 337](#)

⇒ ["2.2.2 Front Seat, Removing a Faulty Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor V288", page 340](#)

⇒ ["2.2.3 Seat Rail and Spindle Covers", page 344](#)

⇒ ["2.2.4 Sill Side Trim", page 346](#)

⇒ ["2.2.5 Tunnel Side Trim", page 348](#)

⇒ ["2.2.6 Sill Side Retaining Bracket Trim", page 350](#)

⇒ ["2.2.7 Seat Adjustment Actuator", page 350](#)

⇒ ["2.2.8 Backrest Adjustment Actuator", page 351](#)

⇒ ["2.2.9 Front Backrest", page 352](#)

⇒ ["2.2.10 Backrest Cover", page 356](#)

⇒ ["2.2.11 Four-Way Lumbar Support", page 359](#)

⇒ ["2.2.12 Trim with Entry Assistance Handle, Coupe Only through 10.06", page 362](#)

⇒ ["2.2.13 Trim with Entry Assistance Handle, Coupe Only from 11.06", page 363](#)

⇒ ["2.2.14 Entry Assistance Bracket, Coupe Only", page 364](#)

⇒ ["2.2.15 Left and Right Release Cables, Coupe Only", page 365](#)

⇒ ["2.2.16 Headrests with Locking Mechanism", page 368](#)

⇒ ["2.2.17 Headrest Guide", page 369](#)

⇒ ["2.2.18 Seat Adjustment Switches, V288/V243/V244/V245/V246/V45/V46 Assembly Overview", page 372](#)

⇒ ["2.2.19 Storage Compartment", page 373](#)

⇒ ["2.2.20 Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor V288", page 375](#)

⇒ ["2.2.21 Driver's Backrest Adjustment Motor V45 or V46", page 377](#)

⇒ ["2.2.22 Front Seat Backrest Stop Switches E69 and E70", page 379](#)

⇒ ["2.2.23 Lumbar Support Curvature Adjustment Motors V125 and V126", page 380](#)

⇒ ["2.2.24 Lumbar Support Height Adjustment Motors V129 and V130", page 383](#)

⇒ ["2.2.25 Seat Height Adjustment Motor V245 and V246", page 386](#)

⇒ ["2.2.26 Seat Height Adjuster Toothed Segment", page 388](#)

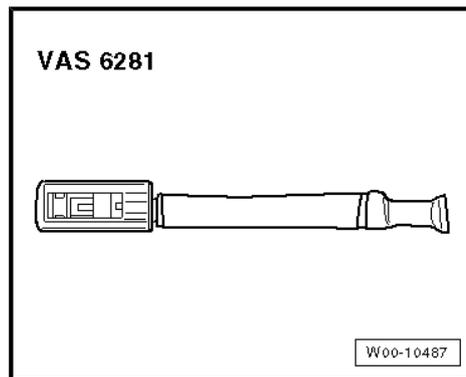
⇒ ["2.2.27 Lumbar Support Adjustment Switches E176 and E177", page 391](#)

⇒ ["2.2.28 Seat Forward/Back, Angle, Height and Backrest Adjustment Switches V288/V243/V244/V245/V246/V45/V46", page 392](#)

2.2.1 Front Seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Airbag adapter -VAS 6281-



Note

The removal and installation procedure describes a driver seat.
The procedure for the front passenger seat is identical.

Removing

Roadster Only

- Open retaining loop -1- by loosening push button -arrow-.
- Remove seat belt -2- from retaining loop.

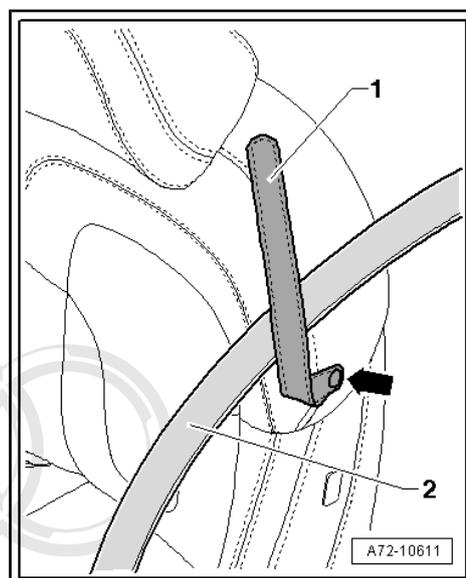
Procedure for All Vehicles



WARNING

- ◆ Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures"](#), page 38.

- Bring seat into service position. Refer to ⇒ ["1.2 Bringing Front Seats Into Service Position"](#), page 249.



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

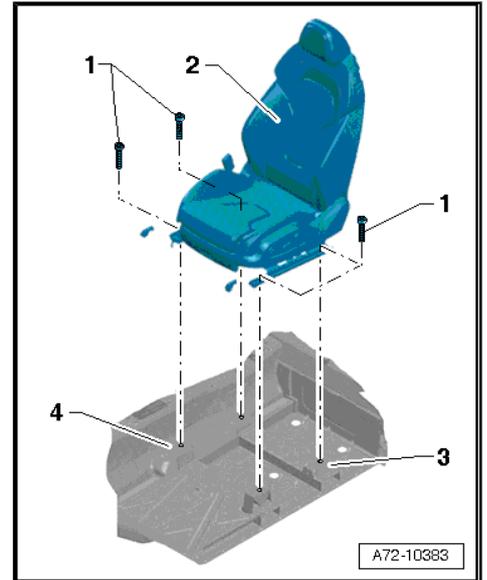
erWin

- Remove front bolts -1- (quantity: 2).
- Operate seat forward/back adjuster and move the seat -2- as far forward as possible.
- Remove rear bolts -1- (quantity: 2).
- 3 - Rear console
- 4 - Front console
- Switch off the ignition.
- Disconnect battery ground cable. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .



WARNING

- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*



- Disconnect the connectors. Refer to ⇒ ["1.5.2 Harness Connectors, Disconnecting and Connecting", page 272](#) on the connector station inside the floor panel.
- Connect Airbag Adapter -VAS 6281- . Refer to ⇒ ["1.5.3 Airbag Adapter, Connecting", page 275](#) .
- With help from a second technician, lift the front seat out of vehicle.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:



WARNING

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*

- Remove the airbag adapter -VAS 6281- only after installing the front seat. Refer to ⇒ ["1.5.3 Airbag Adapter, Connecting", page 275](#) .



Note

Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.

- Connect the connectors to the connector station in the floor panel. Refer to ⇒ ["1.5.2 Harness Connectors, Disconnecting and Connecting", page 272](#) .
- Switch on ignition.

Copyright © Audi AG. All rights reserved. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**WARNING**

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for the use of this information. Copyright by AUDI AG.

For the correct tightening specifications, refer to ⇒ "1.5.1 Front Seat Assembly Overview" page 269

2.2.2 Front Seat, Removing a Faulty Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor V288

**Note**

The seat pan is shown without upholstery and backrest in illustration to provide a better overview.

Removing

**WARNING**

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .*

- If possible, move seat as high up as possible.

- Remove the bolt -3-.
- Disconnect threaded connection -4-.



Caution

Loosen bolts -2- only after checking electrical or electronic components and wires.

After loosening bolts -2-, lower part of seat pan -5- including Seat Fore/Aft Adjustment Motor -V288- must be replaced with transverse member.

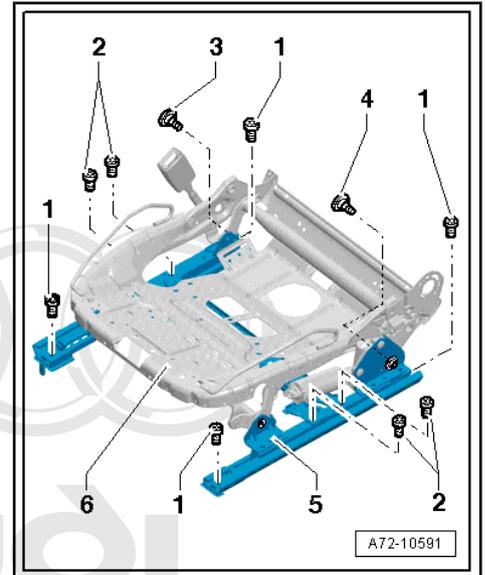
- Move the seat forward. Remove the steering wheel if necessary.



WARNING

- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Note

Check electrical and electronic components and wires before removing seat further to avoid unnecessary repair costs.

- Perform the following tests:
 - ◆ Check fuse, refer to ⇒ Wiring diagrams, Troubleshooting & Component locations
 - ◆ Check voltage at connector station, perform Fault Finding if necessary, refer to ⇒ Wiring diagrams, Troubleshooting & Component locations
 - ◆ Check voltage to control module, refer to ⇒ Wiring diagrams, Troubleshooting & Component locations
 - ◆ Check the voltage to the seat forward/back adjustment motor -V288- ⇒ Wiring diagrams, Troubleshooting & Component locations
- Replace the fuse if faulty, refer to ⇒ Wiring diagrams, Troubleshooting & Component locations.
- If there is no voltage at the connector station, repair or replace the wire ⇒ Wiring diagrams, Troubleshooting & Component locations.
- Replace the seat pan lower frame if the seat forward/back adjustment motor -V288- is faulty. Refer to [⇒ "1.5.18 Seat Pan, Disassembling and assembling", page 291](#).

Continue removing only if the seat forward/back adjustment motor -V288- is faulty

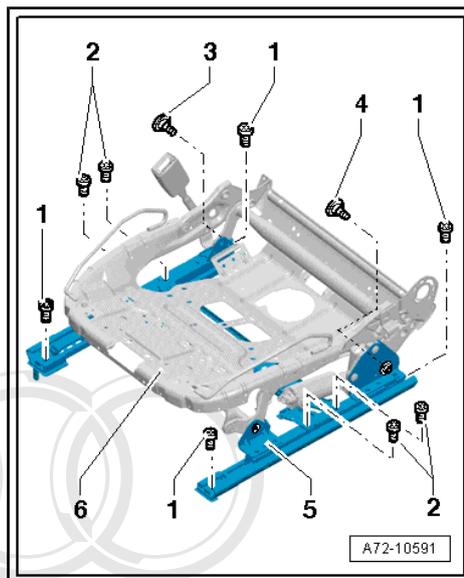
- Disconnect battery ground cable. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .

- Remove transverse member bolts -2- (quantity: 4) on both sides.

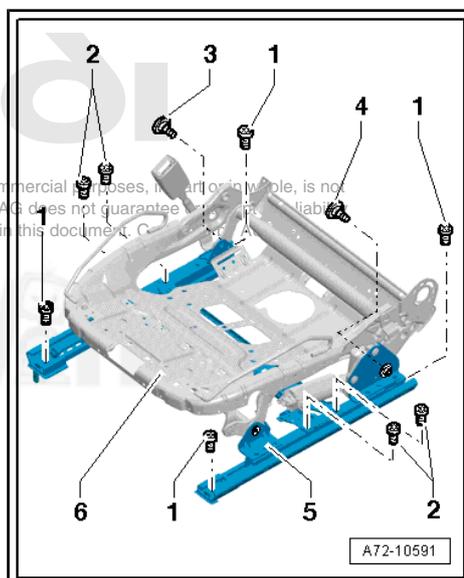
**WARNING**

- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*

- Disconnect connector at Seat Fore/Aft Adjustment Motor - V288- .



- Move seat until bolts -1- (quantity: 4) are visible.
- Remove bolts -1- (quantity: 4).
- Disconnect the harness connectors at the connector station. Refer to [⇒ "1.5.2 Harness Connectors, Disconnecting and Connecting", page 272](#) .
- Connect Airbag Adapter -VAS 6281- . Refer to [⇒ "1.5.3 Airbag Adapter, Connecting", page 275](#) .
- With help from a second technician, lift the front seat out of vehicle.
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136- . Refer to [⇒ "1.3 Installing Front Seat On VAS 6136", page 250](#) .



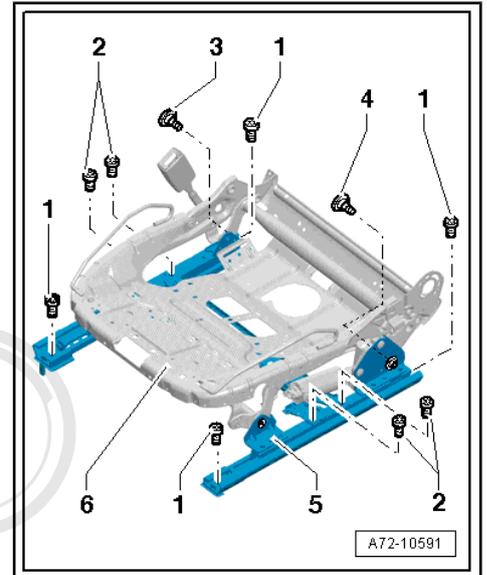
- Separate the lower frame -5- from the upper frame -6-. Refer to
 ⇒ ["1.5.18 Seat Pan, Disassembling and assembling"](#),
[page 291](#) .
- Replace seat pan lower frame -4- with Seat Fore/Aft Adjustment Motor -V288- with the transverse member. Refer to
 ⇒ ["1.5.18 Seat Pan, Disassembling and assembling"](#),
[page 291](#) .

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

 **WARNING**

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to
 ⇒ ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures"](#), [page 38](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*



- Remove the airbag adapter, VAS 6281, only after installing the front seat. Refer to
 ⇒ ["1.5.3 Airbag Adapter, Connecting"](#), [page 275](#) .
- Connect the connectors to the connector station in the floor panel. Refer to
 ⇒ ["1.5.2 Harness Connectors, Disconnecting and Connecting"](#), [page 272](#) .

Note

Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.

- Switch on ignition.

 **WARNING**

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

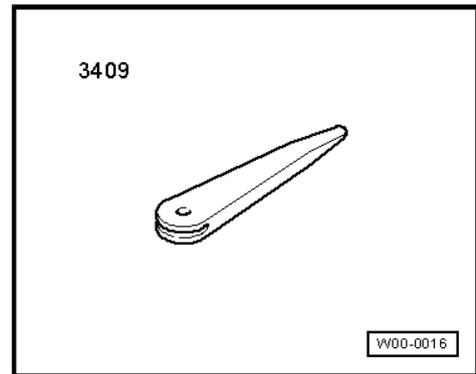
Tightening specifications:

- ◆ Front Seat Assembly Overview, refer to
 ⇒ ["1.5.1 Front Seat Assembly Overview"](#), [page 269](#)
- ◆ Seat pan, assembly overview, refer to
 ⇒ ["1.5.17 Seat Pan Assembly Overview"](#), [page 290](#)

2.2.3 Seat Rail and Spindle Covers

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



Note

- ◆ *The removal and installation of spindle covers and seat rail covers is described on the sill-side driver's seat rail. The surrounding area is not shown in the illustration for clarity purposes.*
- ◆ *The spindle cover is only present on an electrically adjustable seat.*

Spindle cover, removing

- Bring seat into service position. Refer to [⇒ "2.2.1 Front Seat", page 337](#).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin

- Pry spindle cover -1- from seat rail cover -3- and seat fore/aft adjustment spindle -2- with Trim Removal Wedge -3409- .

Spindle cover, installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Make sure the spindle cover is engaged correctly.

Seat rail cover, removing



Note

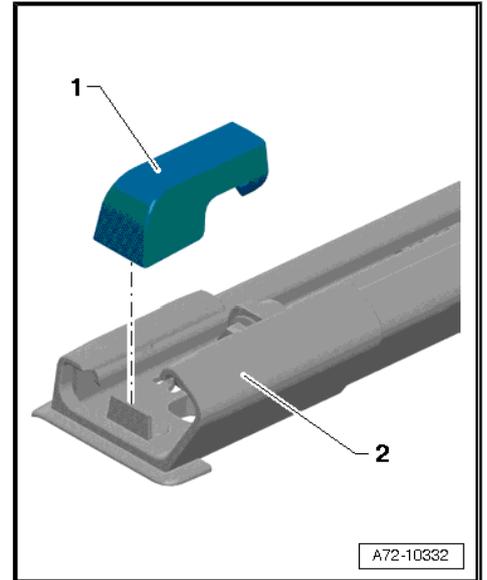
The removal and installation procedure for the seat rail covers describes the driver seat rail on the sill side. The procedure for the cover on the tunnel side is similar.



WARNING

- ◆ **Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures"](#), page 38 .**
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.**

- Remove the front seat. Refer to ⇒ ["2.2.1 Front Seat"](#), page 337 .



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin 

- Unclip retaining tabs -3-, -4- and -5- on cover -1- from seat rail -2-.
- Remove cover -1- forward, preferably parallel to seat rail.

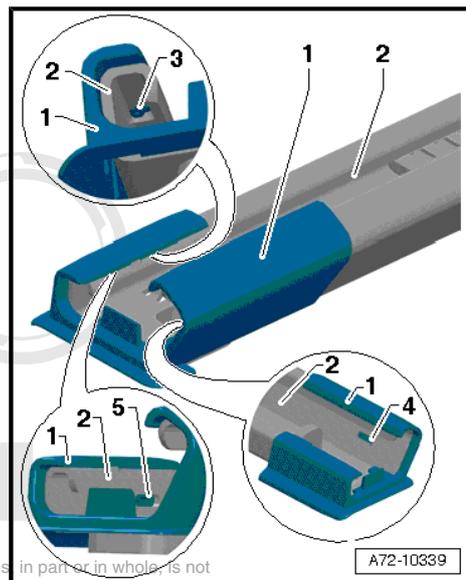
Seat Rail Cover, Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:



WARNING

- ◆ Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38](#).
- ◆ Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes in part or in whole is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Note

Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.

- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again.

2.2.4 Sill Side Trim



Note

The sill side trim can be removed and installed with the front seat installed.

Removing

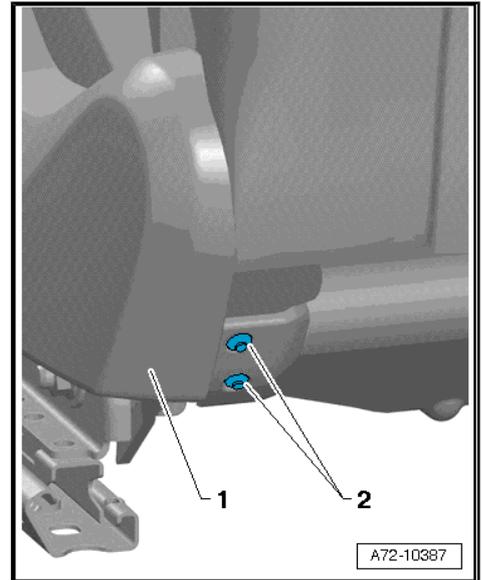


WARNING

- ◆ Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38](#).

- Bring seat as far up as possible.

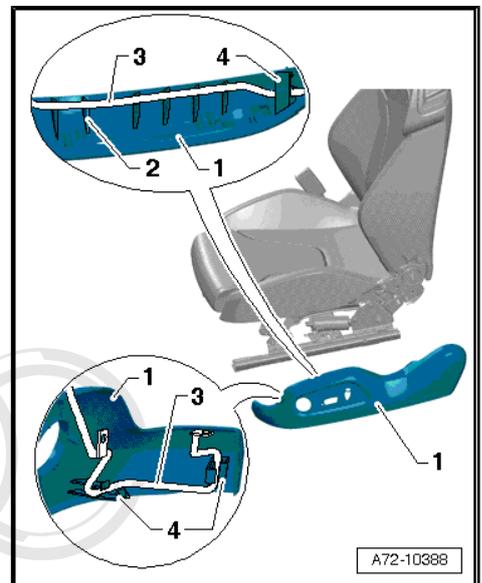
- Remove expanding rivets -2- (quantity: 2).
- 1 - Sill-side trim



- Open the clips -4-.
- Unclip trim -1- on retaining bracket -3-.
- Disengage trim in seat/backrest stop area.
- Pull the trim as far up from the retaining bracket -3- as the electrical wires allow.

 **Note**

- ◆ *Ensure bracket -2- is not damaged when removing trim.*
- ◆ *On vehicles with electrically adjustable front seat and passenger occupant detection system (for certain countries, the Driver Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch -E176- or -E177- and the housing for the Driver Seat Fore/Aft Switch -E363-, -E64-, -E222-, -E334-, -E364-, -E365-, -E96- and -E98- must be installed so the connector can be connected from above.*



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin 

- Disconnect Driver Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch - E176- connector -3-.
- Disconnect connectors -4- and -5- from housing -1-.

The following switches are installed in the housing -1-:

- ◆ Driver Seat Fore/Aft Switch -E363- or -E64-
- ◆ driver seat angle adjustment switch -E222- or -E334-
- ◆ Driver Seat Height Adjustment Switch -E364- or -E365-
- ◆ Driver Backrest Adjustment Switch -E96- or -E98-
- Remove sill side trim.

Installation

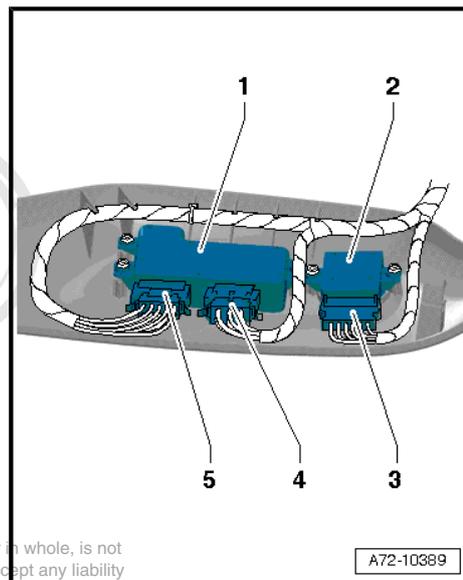
Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:



WARNING

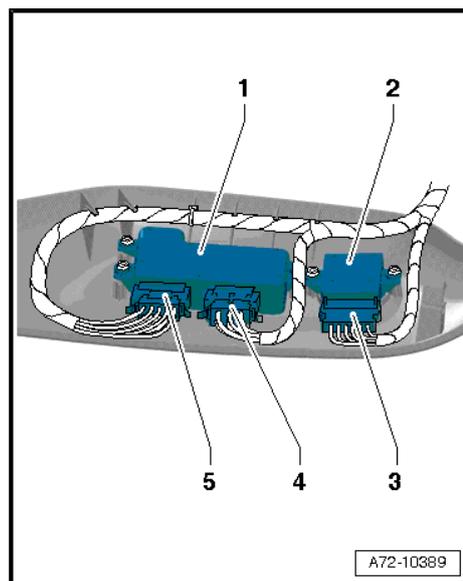
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for errors or omissions. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ◆ **Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .**



Note

- ◆ *Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.*
- ◆ *Make sure the sill side trim is engaged correctly on retaining bracket and lock clips are closed.*
- ◆ *Make sure the wires are as close to couplings -3-, -4- and -5- as possible.*



2.2.5 Tunnel Side Trim



Note

The tunnel side trim panel can only be removed and installed when the front seat removed.

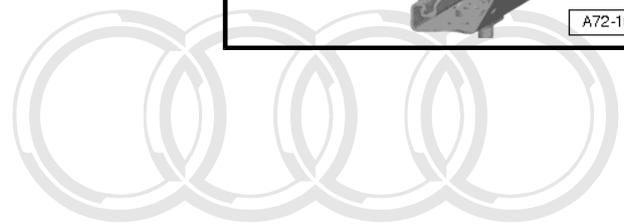
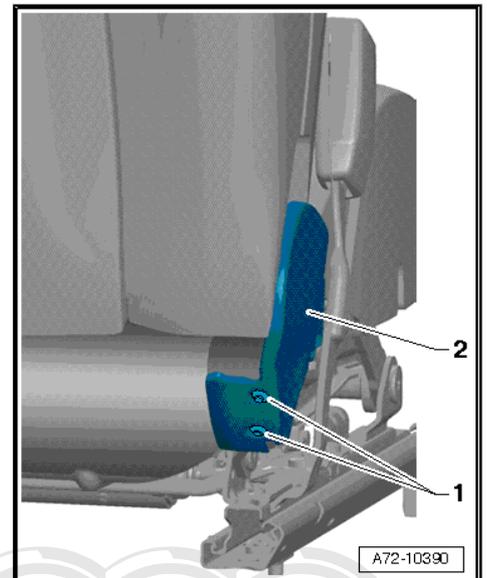
Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures"](#), page 38 .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*

- Remove the front seat:
 - ◆ Manual seat, refer to ⇒ ["2.1.1 Front Seat"](#), page 315 .
 - ◆ Power seat, refer to ⇒ ["2.2.1 Front Seat"](#), page 337 .
 - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136- . Refer to ⇒ ["1.3 Installing Front Seat On VAS 6136"](#), page 250 .
 - Remove expanding rivets -1- (quantity: 2).
- 2 - Tunnel side trim



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin 

- Remove the seat belt latch -3-. Refer to [⇒ "3.1.4 Front Belt Latch Anchorage Point", page 80](#) .
- Remove the bolt -2-.
- Remove tunnel side trim panel -1- upward.

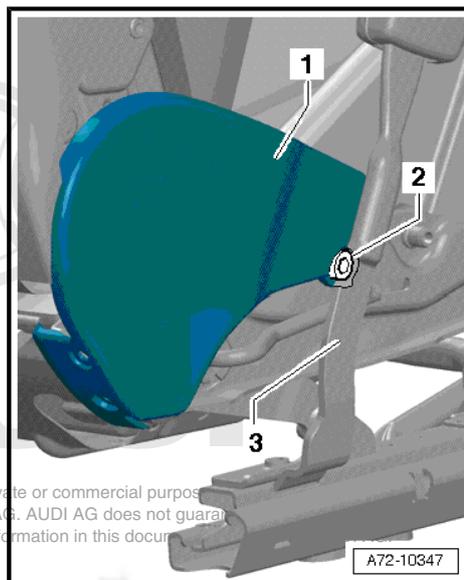
Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:



WARNING

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to [⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*



Note

Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.

- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again.

For the correct tightening specifications, refer to [⇒ "1.5.8 Sill and Tunnel Side Trim Assembly Overview", page 279](#)

2.2.6 Sill Side Retaining Bracket Trim

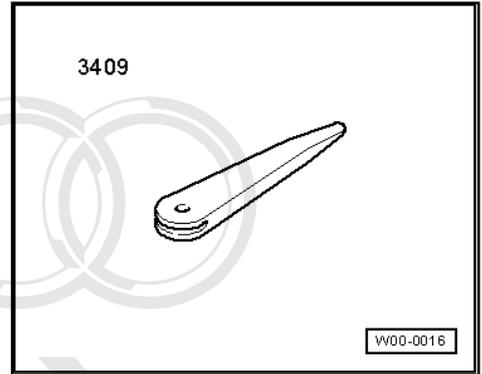
The following describes removing and installing the trim bracket on the sill side on a manual front seat.

Sill side trim retaining bracket, removing and installing, refer to [⇒ "2.1.8 Sill Side Retaining Bracket Trim", page 324](#)

2.2.7 Seat Adjustment Actuator

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



 **Note**

The seat adjustment actuator can be removed and installed with the front seat installed.

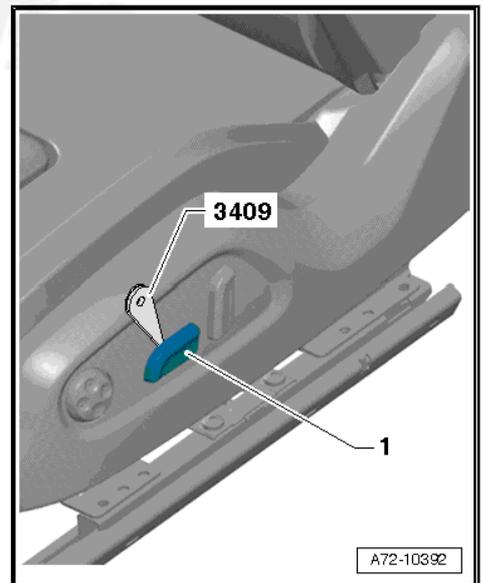
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

- Using Trim Removal Wedge -3409- , pry actuator -1- from retainer for:
 - ◆ Driver Seat Fore/Aft Switch -E363- or -E64-
 - ◆ driver seat angle adjustment switch -E222- or -E334-
 - ◆ Driver Seat Height Adjustment Switch -E364- or -E365-

Installation

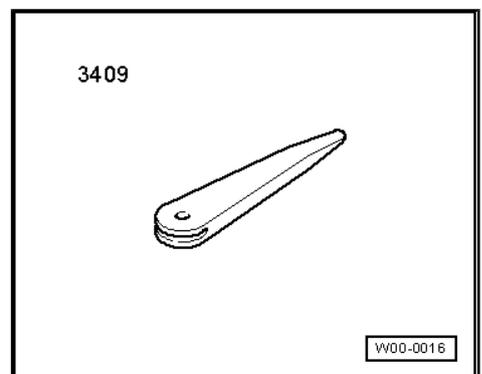
Install in reverse order of removal.



2.2.8 Backrest Adjustment Actuator

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



i Note

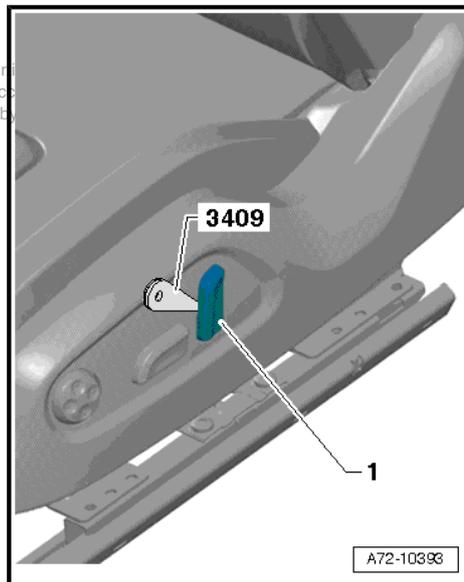
The backrest adjustment actuator can be removed and installed with the front seat installed.

Removing

- Using Trim Removal Wedge -3409-, pry actuator -1- out of catch on Driver Backrest Adjustment Switch -E96- or -E98-.

Installation

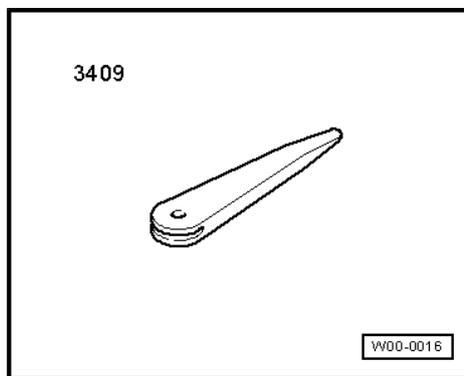
Install in reverse order of removal.



2.2.9 Front Backrest

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



i Note

*The removal and installation procedure describes a driver seat.
The procedure for the front passenger seat is identical.*

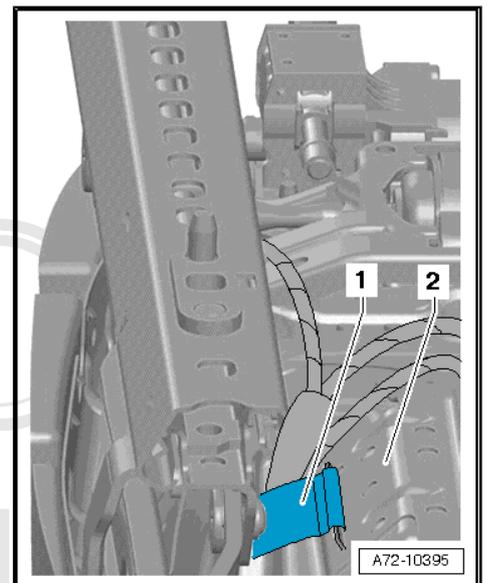
Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*

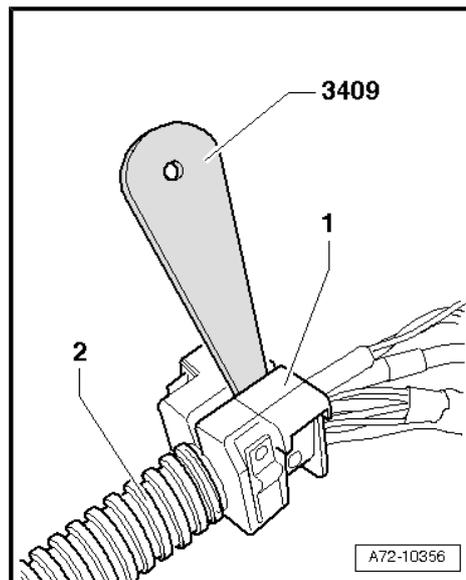
- Remove the front seat. Refer to ⇒ "2.2.1 Front Seat", page 337 .
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136- . Refer to ⇒ "1.3 Installing Front Seat On VAS 6136", page 250 .
- Remove tunnel side trim panel. Refer to ⇒ "2.2.4 Sill Side Trim", page 346 .
- Remove tunnel side trim panel. Refer to ⇒ "2.2.5 Tunnel Side Trim", page 348 .
- Disengage tab -1- at seat pan -2-.



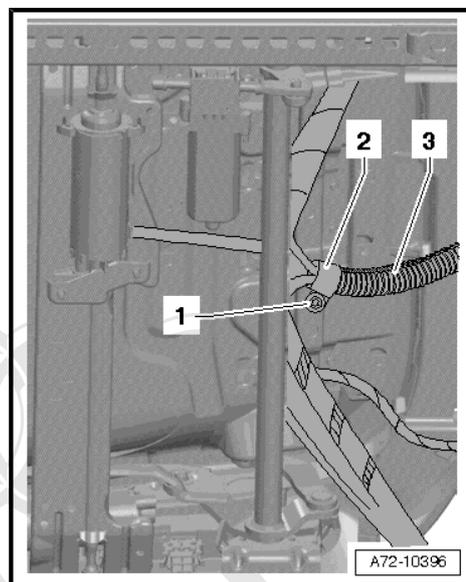
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin 

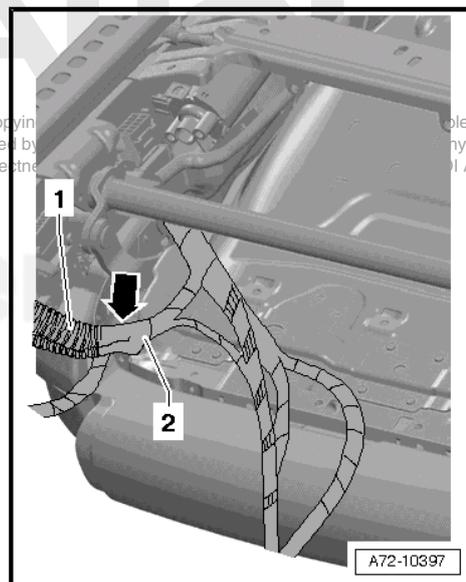
- Using Trim Removal Wedge -3409- , clip on cable bracket -1-.
- Remove cable bracket -1- from corrugated pipe -2-.



- Remove the bolt -1-.
- Remove cable clip -2- from corrugated pipe -3-.



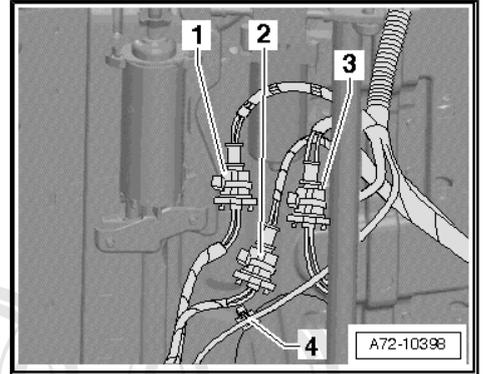
- Open fabric band -2- in area of -arrow-.
- Open corrugated pipe -1-.
- Remove corrugated pipe -1- from wiring harness.



protected by copyright. Copying is not permitted unless authorised by Audi AG with respect to the correctness of the information.

able is not permitted unless authorised by Audi AG with respect to the correctness of the information.

- Disconnect connectors, for example, -1-, -2- and -3-.
- Remove clip with cable tie -4-.



- Remove bolts -2- (quantity: 4).
- Tip backrest -3- forward onto seat pan -4-.
- Press upholstery to side and carefully remove side airbag wire -5- and, if necessary, all additional wires -5- (depending on optional equipment) on the seat pan.
- Remove backrest -3-.

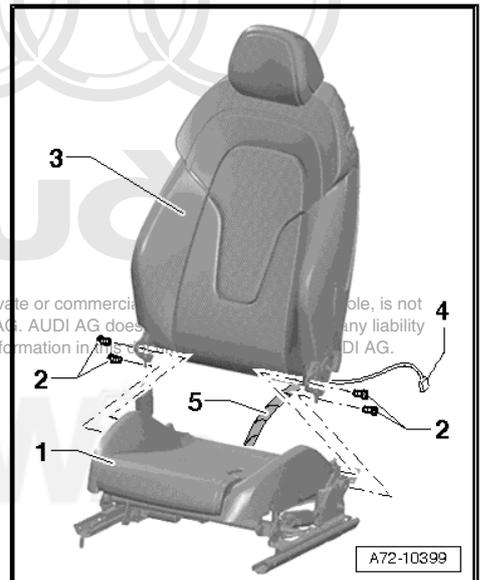
Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:



WARNING

- ◆ **Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .**
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.**



- Threaded bolt holes -2- must always be cleaned (for example, with thread cutter).
- Replace bolts -2- (quantity: 4) after each removal.
- Make sure the upper and lower part of corrugated pipe fit together precisely.

 **Note**

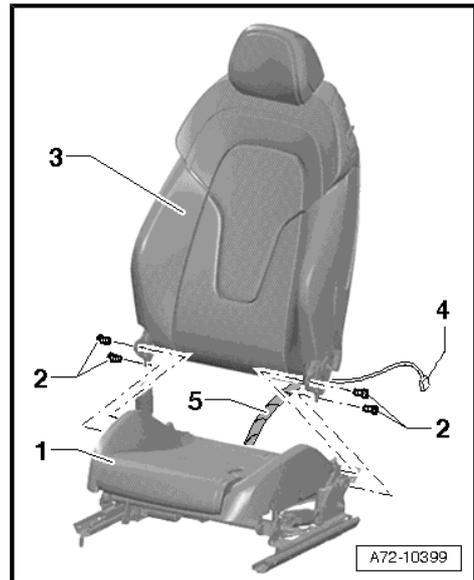
Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.

- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.



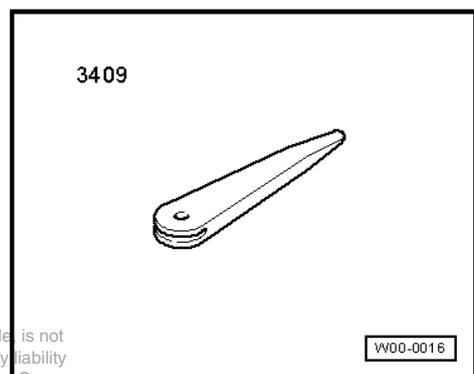
- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again.

For the correct tightening specifications, refer to ⇒ "1.5.11 Front Backrest Assembly Overview", page 281

2.2.10 Backrest Cover

Special tools and workshop equipment required

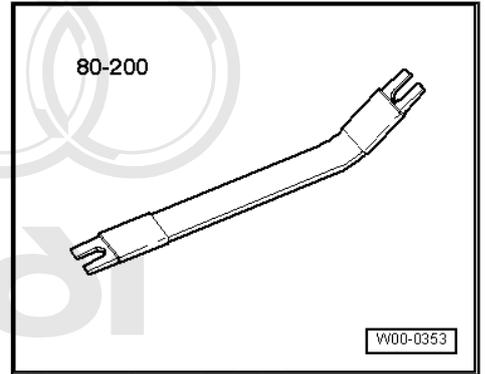
- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



◆ Pry lever -80 - 200-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

 **WARNING**

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*

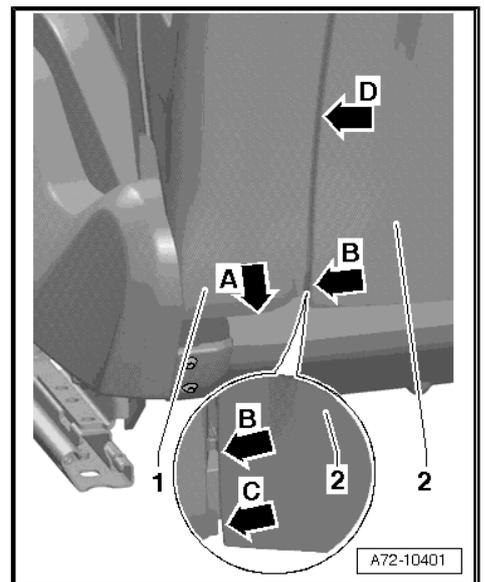
- Remove the front seat. Refer to ⇒ "2.2.1 Front Seat", page 337 .
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136-. Refer to ⇒ "1.3 Installing Front Seat On VAS 6136", page 250 .

 **Caution**

Do not pull on cover during the following steps, see items A, B and C in the following illustration, because the cover can tear.

- Fold up lower edge of cover -1- in area -arrow A-.
- Disengage bottom of cover -1- from slits -arrow C- in backrest cover -2-.

-  **Note**
- ◆ *The cover retaining strip can only be unclipped from the backrest cover groove with relatively great force.*
 - ◆ *Use the Trim Removal Wedge -3409- to unclip the retaining strip.*
 - Beginning unclipping clamping strip in area -arrow B- of backrest cover -2-.
 - Unclip rest of retaining strip from surrounding groove by pulling on strip.



- Unclip bottom of backrest cover -1- on both sides.
- 2 - Clip (quantity: 2)
- Use Pry lever -80 - 200- to unclip.
- Remove backrest cover -1- downward from backrest.

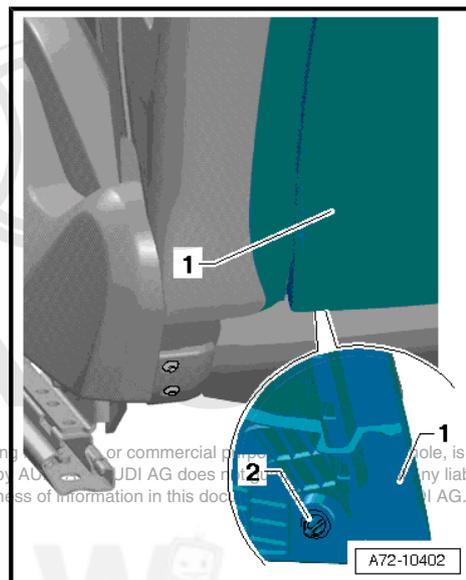
Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

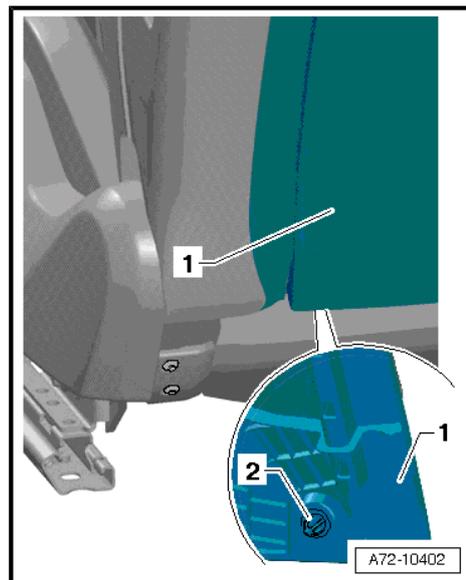


WARNING

- ◆ **Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38.**
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.**



- Check whether clip -2- in backrest cover has stayed in place when unclipping backrest cover -1-.
- If that is not the case, unclip clip -2- from backrest frame and clip it into the backrest cover -1-.

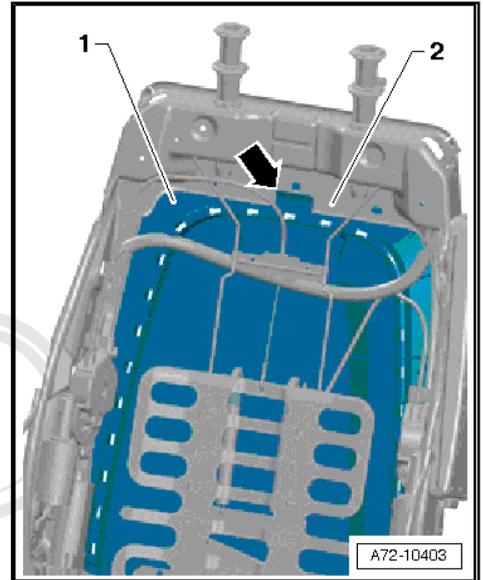


- When sliding backrest cover -1- in from below, ensure strap -arrow- is located in front of the backrest frame -2-.

 **Note**

- ◆ *The illustration shows engaging the backrest cover in the backrest frame on a Coupe seat. Engage the backrest cover the same way on the Roadster.*
- ◆ *The upholstery and cover are not shown in the illustration for clarity purposes.*
- ◆ *Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.*

- Switch on ignition.



 **WARNING**

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment, Rep. Gr. 27, Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again.

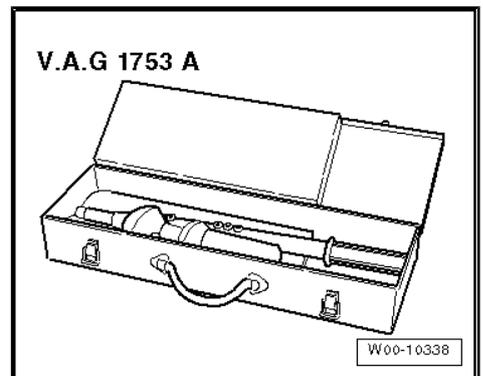
2.2.11 Four-Way Lumbar Support

 **Note**

The illustrations show the four-way lumbar support being removed and installed on a Coupe seat. The four-way lumbar support is removed and installed the same way on the Roadster.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753A-



Removing

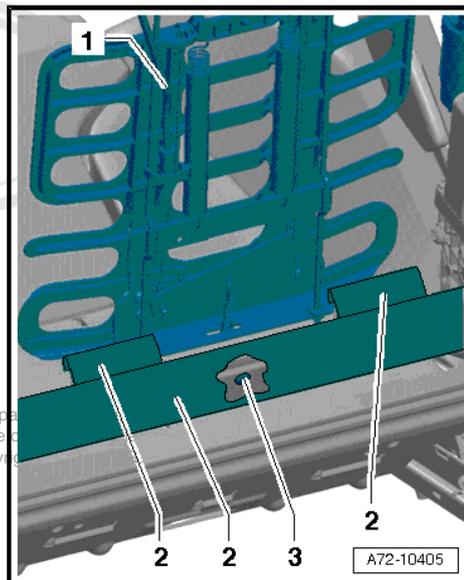


WARNING

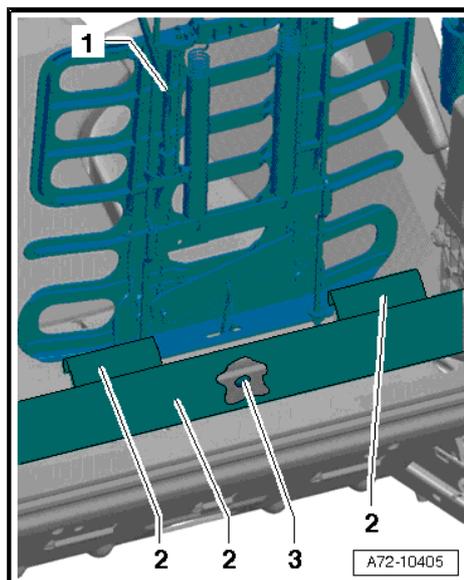
- ◆ Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures"](#), page 38 .
- ◆ Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.

- Remove the front seat. Refer to ⇒ ["2.2.1 Front Seat"](#), page 337 .
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136- . Refer to ⇒ ["1.3 Installing Front Seat On VAS 6136"](#), page 250 .
- Remove backrest cover panel. Refer to ⇒ ["2.2.10 Backrest Cover"](#), page 356 .
- Pry fastening strips -2- (quantity: 3) out with a screwdriver.
- Remove cover with upholstery. Refer to ⇒ ["2.1.3 Backrest Cover and Upholstery"](#), page 432 .

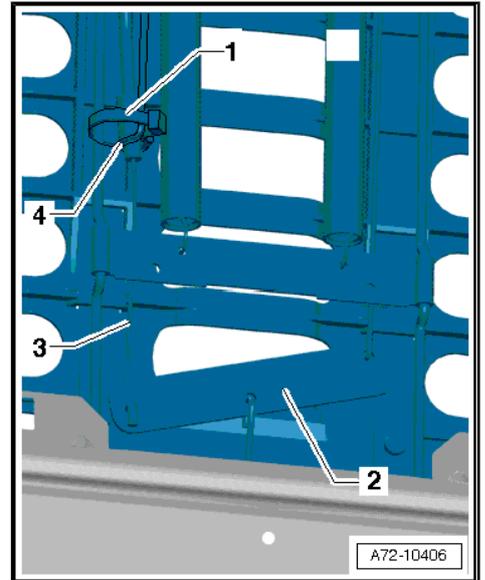
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the accuracy of the information with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copying for other purposes is prohibited.



- Drill out rivet -3-.



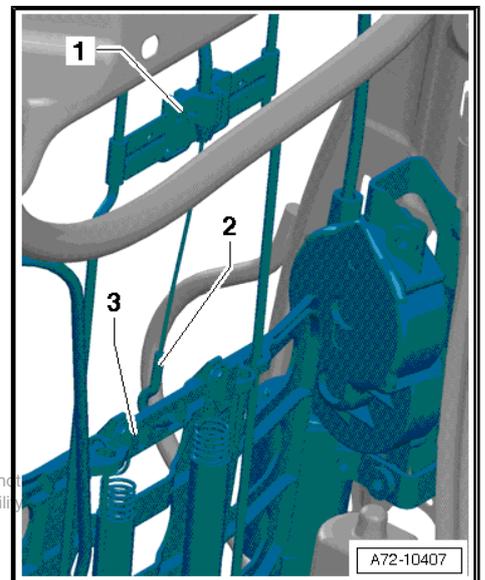
- Disengage release -3- from retaining plate -2-.
- Open cable tie -1-.
- Guide release -3- out of bracket -4-.



- Disengage release -2- from four-way lumbar support -3-.
- Disengage release -2- from clip -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



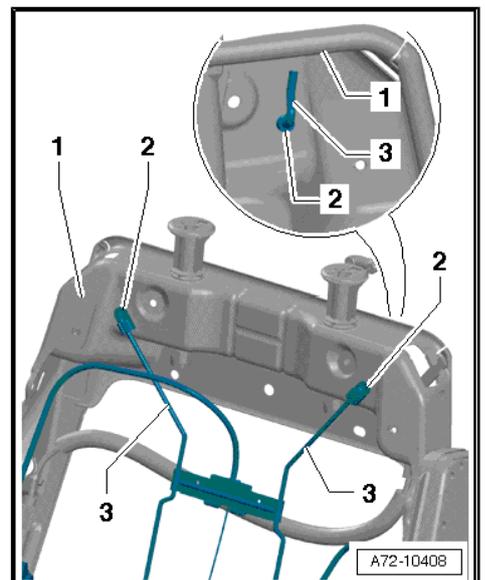
- Disengage four-way lumbar support -3- at top left and right from clips -2- and backrest frame -1-.
- Remove four-way lumbar support -3-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

 **WARNING**

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*



- Before riveting lumbar support, place a plastic washer -4- between lumbar support -1- and backrest frame -2-.
- 3 - Rivet



Note

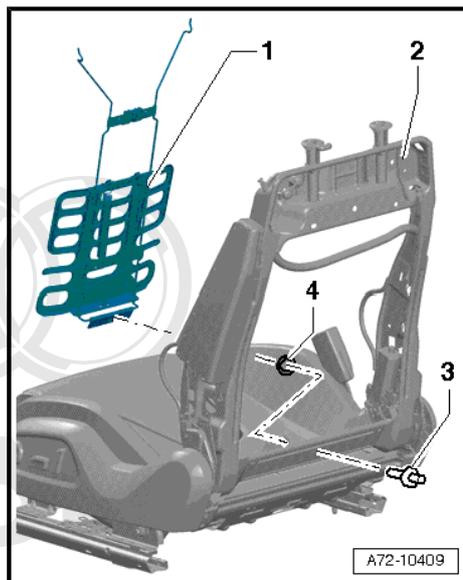
Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.

- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.



- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to => Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again.

2.2.12 Trim with Entry Assistance Handle, Coupe Only through 10.06

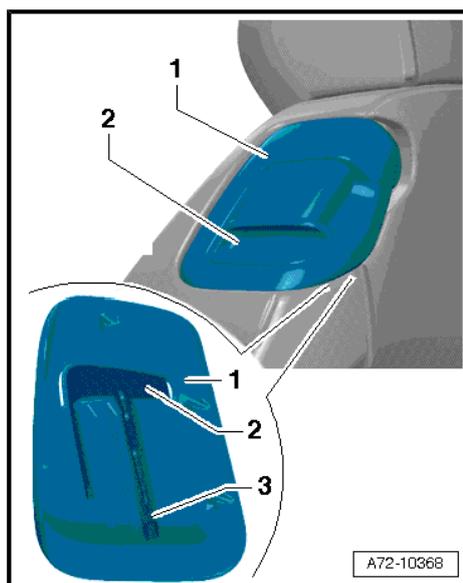


Note

- ◆ The trim with the handle can be removed and installed with the front seat installed.
- ◆ The trim and handle are both destroyed during removal.

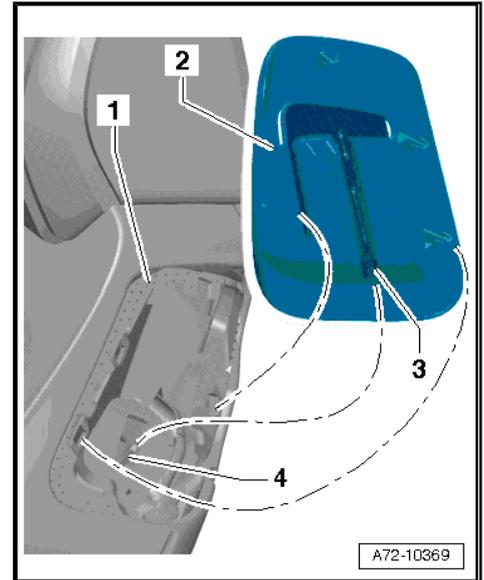
Removing

- Destroy trim -1- and connecting piece -3- for handle -2-.
- Do not damage cover when doing so.
- Make sure the no plastic pieces fall into cover or between upholstery and entry assistance bracket.
- Remove destroyed trim -1- with entry assistance handle -2- from front seat.



Installation

- Slide new handle -3- onto lever -4- as far as stop.
- At the same time, clip trim -2- with bracket -1- on backrest frame.
- Make sure the trim -2- cleanly covers the cover opening.
- Check function of the entry assistance handle.



2.2.13 Trim with Entry Assistance Handle, Coupe Only from 11.06



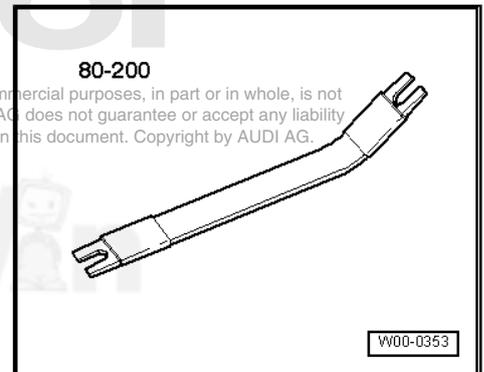
Note

The trim with the handle can be removed and installed with the front seat installed.

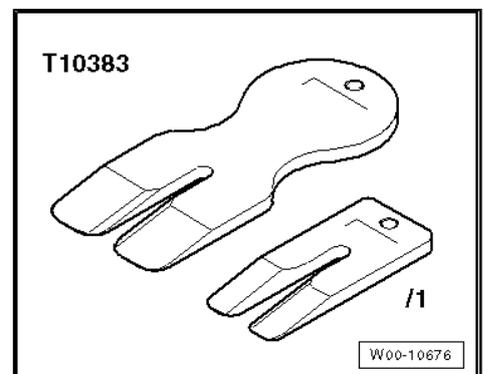
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Pry lever -80 - 200-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

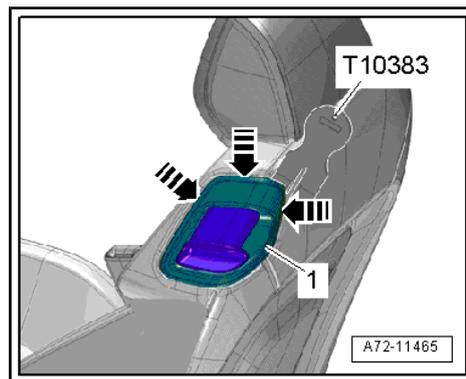


- ◆ Wedges -T10383-



Removing

- Carefully loosen the trim -1- at the top -arrows- with a trim removal wedge -T10383- .

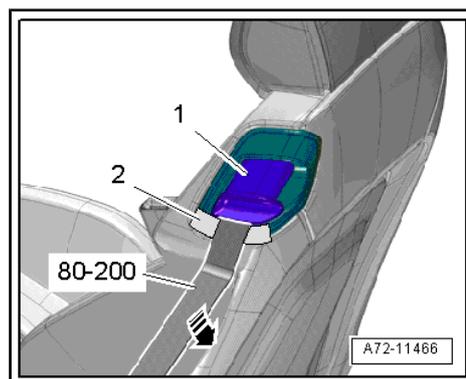


- To prevent indents in the trim, cover the trim with reinforced tape -2- as illustrated.
- Remove the handle -1- and the trim using the pry lever -80-200- -arrow-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Install the handle -1- and the trim until they click into place.
- Check function of the entry assistance handle.



2.2.14 Entry Assistance Bracket, Coupe Only



Note

The entry assistance bracket can be removed and installed with the front seat installed.

Removing

- Remove the entry assistance handle: through 10.06 refer to ⇒ [“2.2.12 Trim with Entry Assistance Handle, Coupe Only through 10.06”, page 362](#) , from 11.06 refer to ⇒ [“2.2.13 Trim with Entry Assistance Handle, Coupe Only from 11.06”, page 363](#) .

Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin

- Remove bolts -1- (quantity: 2).
- Remove the entry assistance bracket -2-.

 **Note**

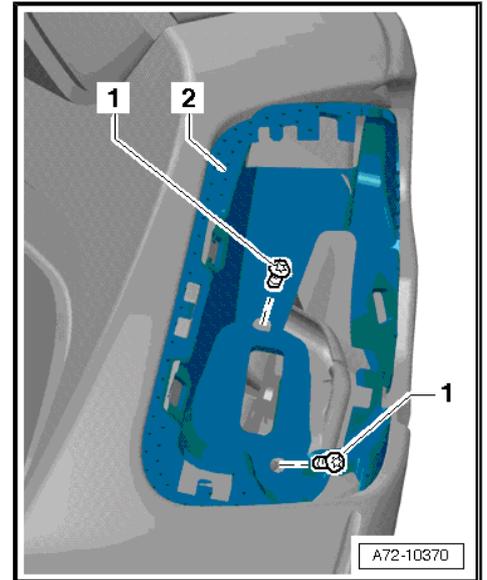
The surrounding area was not shown in the illustration for clarity purposes.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Carefully slide entry assistance bracket under the opening in the cover. Do not damage cover when doing so.
- Install the trim and entry assistance handle. Refer to ⇒ ["2.2.12 Trim with Entry Assistance Handle, Coupe Only through 10.06"](#), page 362 .

For the correct tightening specifications, refer to ⇒ ["1.5.14 Entry Assistance Assembly Overview, Coupe Only"](#), page 285



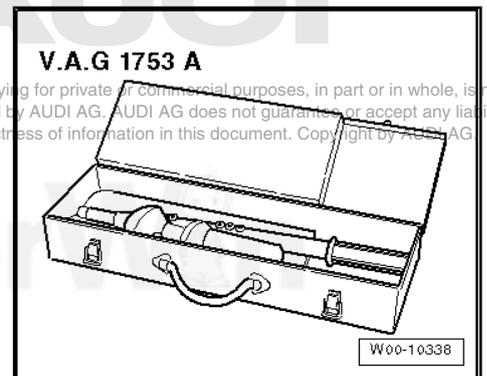
2.2.15 Left and Right Release Cables, Coupe Only

 **Note**

The left and right release cables cannot be replaced separately.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753A-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG.

Removing

 **WARNING**

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures"](#), page 38 .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*

- Remove the front seat. Refer to ⇒ ["2.2.1 Front Seat"](#), page 337 .

- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136- . Refer to
 => ["1.3 Installing Front Seat On VAS 6136", page 250](#) .
- Remove backrest cover panel. Refer to
 => ["2.2.10 Backrest Cover", page 356](#) .
- Remove the headrests. Refer to
 => ["2.2.16 Headrests with Locking Mechanism", page 368](#) .
- Remove the trim from the entry assistance handle. Refer to
 => ["2.2.12 Trim with Entry Assistance Handle, Coupe Only through 10.06", page 362](#) .
- Remove cover and padding from backrest. Refer to
 => ["2.1.3 Backrest Cover and Upholstery", page 432](#) .

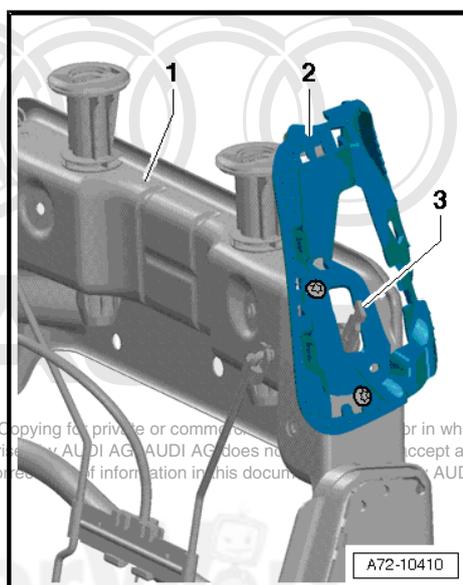
 **Note**

The lumbar support does not need to be removed when removing and installing the release cables.

- Press entry assistance handle lever -3- and fold backrest forward.

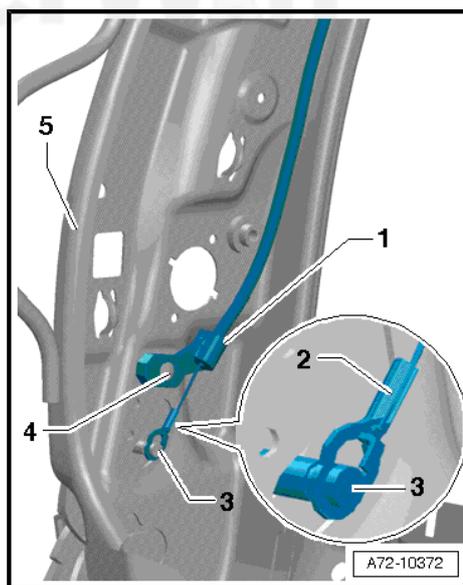
1 - Backrest frame

2 - Bracket

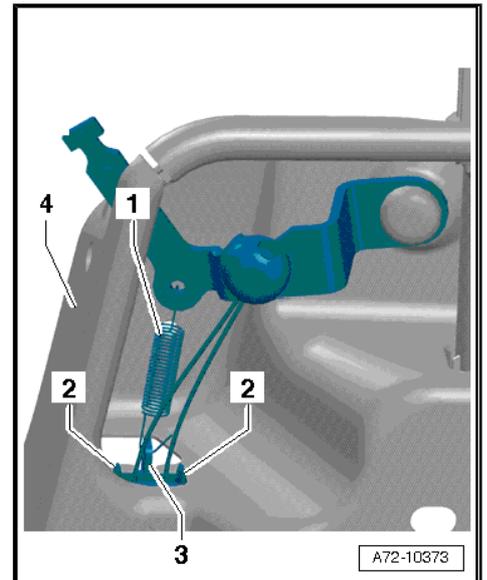


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use, in whole or in part, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. AUDI AG.

- Using pliers, disengage eyes -2- (quantity: 2) from pins -3- (quantity: 2).
 - Drill out rivets -4- on left and right release cable brackets -1-.
- 5 - Backrest frame
- Open cable ties on both sides.



- Disengage pull-spring -1- from bracket -3-.
- Press retaining tabs -2- (quantity: 2) and pull bracket -3- down out of backrest frame -4-.



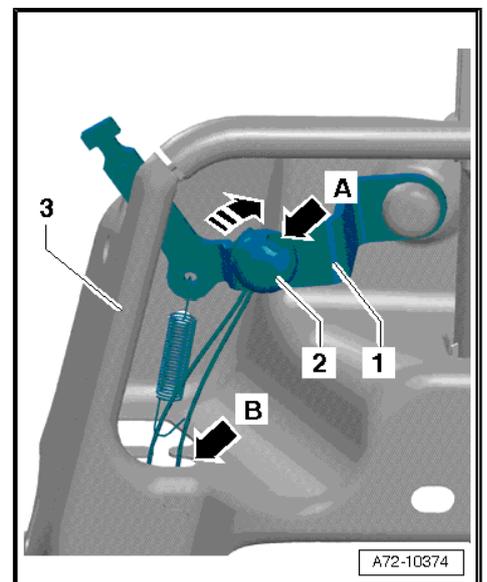
- Turn the knob -2- in the direction of -arrow- until the nipple on the release cables -arrow A- is horizontal to the center of the backrest.
- Hold knob -2- firmly in this position.
- Press knob -2- up out of lever -1-.
- Guide knob -2- through release cable opening -arrow B- in backrest frame -3-.
- Remove left and right release cables from backrest frame.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

 **WARNING**

- ◆ **Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures"](#), page 38 .**
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.**



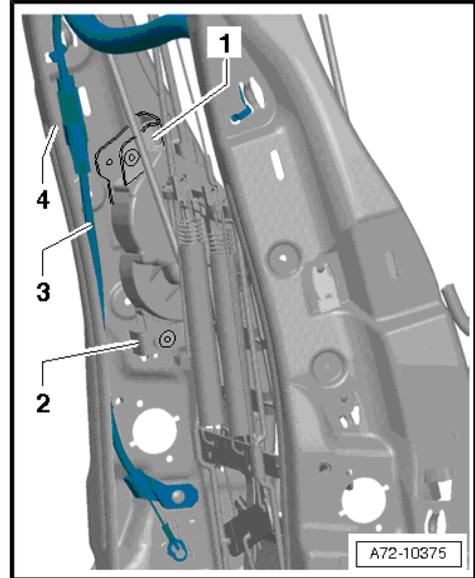
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin

- Ensure release cables -3- (quantity: 2) run behind retaining plates -1- and -2- (quantity: 2).

4 - Backrest frame

- Adjust release cables (quantity: 2) with release cable adjusters (quantity: 2). Refer to [⇒ "1.5.15 Entry Assistance Release Cables Adjusting, Coupe Only", page 286](#).



- Ensure pins -3- (quantity: 2) release at the same time when the entry assistance handle is pressed.



Note

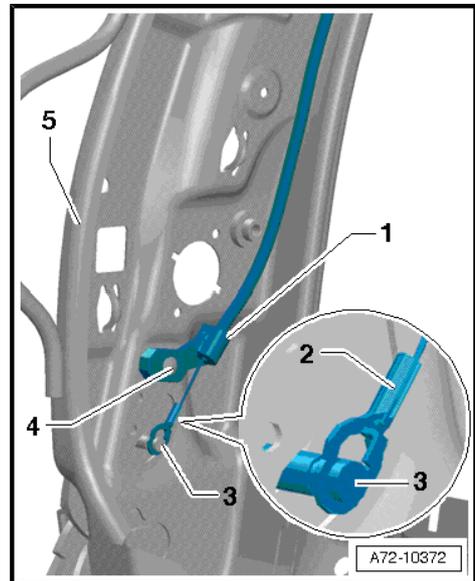
Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.

- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.



- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .

- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again.

2.2.16 Headrests with Locking Mechanism



Note

- ◆ The headrests can be removed with the front seats installed.
- ◆ The release button is located on the outer left of the driver's seat and inner left of the passenger's seat (in direction of travel).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing



Note

The illustration shows a Coupe backrest. The headrest is released the same way on the Coupe and Roadster.

- Find release button pressure point -3-.

The release button is approximately a = 95 mm under upper edge of backrest.

- Press the release button in the direction of -arrow- toward the center of the seat.
- Hold release button -3- down in this position.
- Pull headrest -1- up out of guides -2- and -4-.

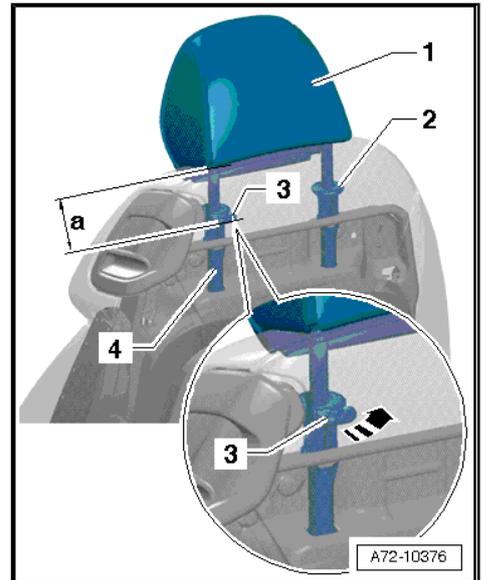
Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:



Note

Make sure the headrest is engaged correctly in headrest guides.



2.2.17 Headrest Guide

Removing



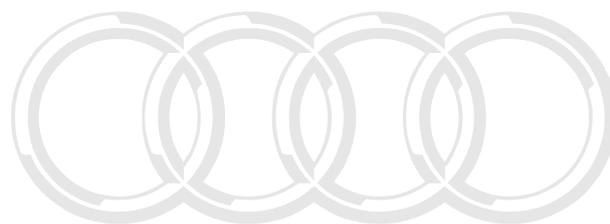
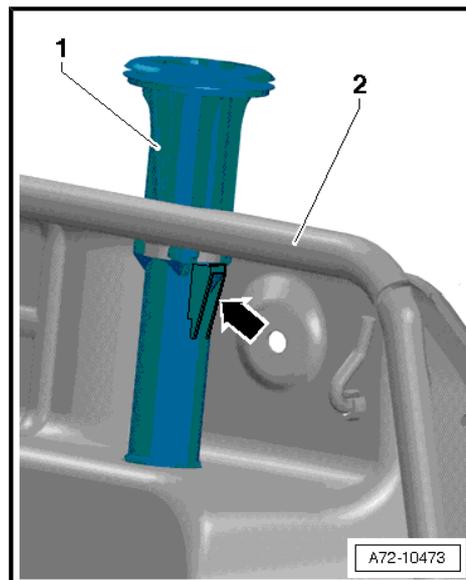
WARNING

- ◆ Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ [“1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures”, page 38](#).
- ◆ Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must “discharge static electricity”. For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.

- Remove the front seat:
 - ◆ Manual seat, refer to ⇒ [“2.1.1 Front Seat”, page 315](#).
 - ◆ Power seat, refer to ⇒ [“2.2.1 Front Seat”, page 337](#).
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136-. Refer to ⇒ [“1.3 Installing Front Seat On VAS 6136”, page 250](#).
- Remove backrest panel:
 - ◆ Manual seat, refer to ⇒ [“2.2.10 Backrest Cover”, page 356](#).
 - ◆ Power seat, refer to ⇒ [“2.2.10 Backrest Cover”, page 356](#).
- Remove the headrests. Refer to ⇒ [“2.2.16 Headrests with Locking Mechanism”, page 368](#).
- Remove cover with upholstery. Refer to ⇒ [“2.1.3 Backrest Cover and Upholstery”, page 432](#).

Headrest guide without release button

- Press retaining tab -arrow- on headrest guide -1- toward center of headrest guide.
- Hold retaining tab -arrow- down.
- Pull headrest guide -1- upward out of backrest frame -2-.



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Headrest guide with release button

- Press retaining tab on headrest guide -1- toward center of headrest guide.
- Hold retaining tab -arrow- down.
- Pull headrest guide -1- upward out of backrest frame -2-.

Installation

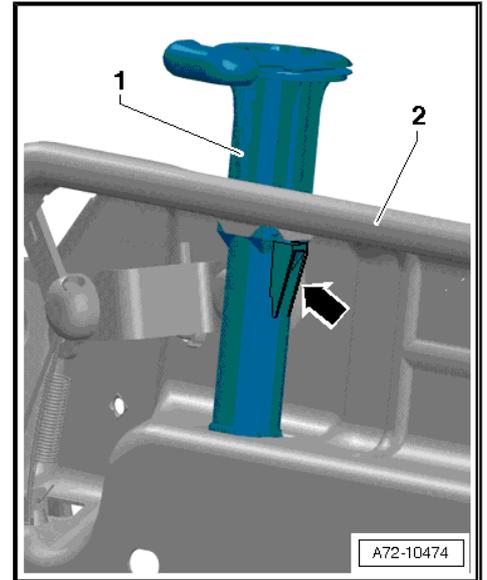
Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

 **WARNING**

◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the express written permission of Audi AG.

◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*



Note

- ◆ *Make sure the retaining tab is engaged correctly in backrest frame.*
- ◆ *Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.*
- Switch on ignition.

 **WARNING**

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again.

2.2.18 Seat Adjustment Switches, V288/V243/V244/V245/V246/V45/V46 Assembly Overview

1 - Sill-side trim

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.2.4 Sill Side Trim"](#),
page 346

2 - Backrest adjustment actuator

⇒ ["1.5.10 Seat and Backrest Adjustment Actuator Assembly Overview"](#), page 280

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.2.8 Backrest Adjustment Actuator"](#),
page 351
- ❑ Clipped onto switch

3 - Seat fore and aft, inclination and height adjustment actuator

⇒ ["1.5.10 Seat and Backrest Adjustment Actuator Assembly Overview"](#), page 280

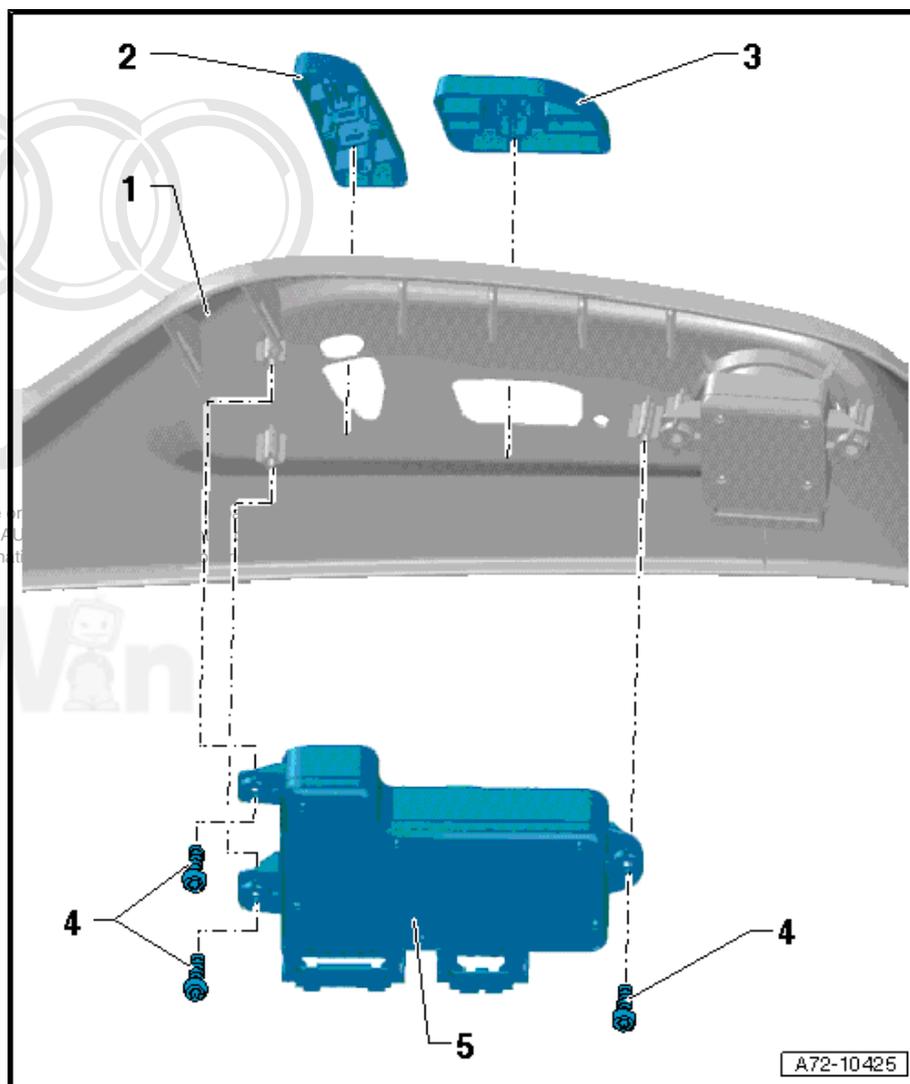
- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.2.7 Seat Adjustment Actuator"](#),
page 350
- ❑ Clipped onto switch

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 0.5 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 3

5 - Switch

- ❑ Driver Seat Fore/Aft Switch -E363- or -E64-
- ❑ Driver Seat Fore/Aft Switch -E222- or -E334-
- ❑ Driver Seat Fore/Aft Switch -E364- or -E365-
- ❑ Driver Backrest Adjustment Switch -E96- or -E98-
- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to
⇒ ["2.2.28 Seat Forward/Back, Angle, Height and Backrest Adjustment Switches V288/V243/V244/V245/V246/V45/V46"](#), page 392
- ❑ are installed in one housing and cannot be replaced individually
- ◆ Connector connecting direction from below
 - ❑ On a power front seat with passenger occupant detection system (country-specific), the seat adjustment switches are rotated 180° when installed
- ◆ Connector connecting direction from above



2.2.19 Storage Compartment



Note

The following describes the removing and installing the storage compartment on a power seat. Removal and installation on a mechanically adjustable seat is the same.

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures"](#), page 38 .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*

- Remove the front seat:
 - ◆ with mechanical adjustment, refer to Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written consent of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG. ⇒ ["2.1.1 Front Seat"](#), page 315 .
 - ◆ with electrical adjustment, refer to ⇒ ["2.2.1 Front Seat"](#), page 337 .
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136- . Refer to ⇒ ["1.3 Installing Front Seat On VAS 6136"](#), page 250 .
- Open storage compartment.

- Remove bolts -2- (quantity: 4).

 **Note**

For illustrative purposes, the storage compartment is shown closed in the illustration.

- Remove entire storage compartment -1- from front seat -3-.

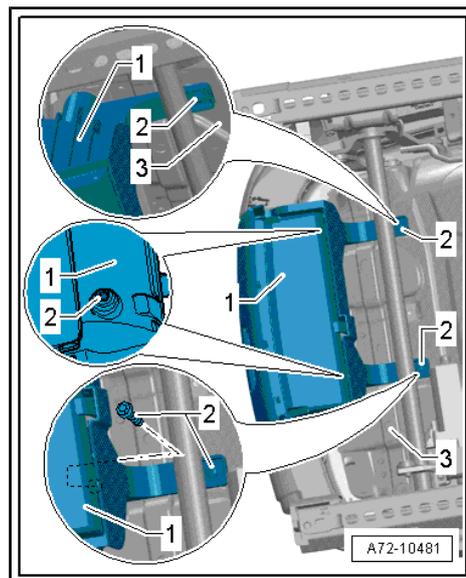
Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:



WARNING

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*



 **Note**

Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.

- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again.

For the correct tightening specifications, refer to ⇒ "1.5.19 Storage Compartment Assembly Overview", page 294



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.2.20 Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor V288

Note

- ◆ *If the motor is faulty, the seat pan lower frame must be replaced.*
- ◆ *Seat is shown without upholstery and without backrest in picture for the sake of a better illustration.*

Removing

| | | |
|---|----------------|---|
|  | WARNING | Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG. |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ <i>Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .</i> ◆ <i>Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.</i> | | |

- Remove the seat. Refer to ["2.2.1 Front Seat"](#), page 337 .
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136-. Refer to ["1.3 Installing Front Seat On VAS 6136"](#), page 250 .
- Separate seat pan upper frame from lower frame. Refer to ["1.5.18 Seat Pan, Disassembling and assembling"](#), page 291 .

Note

The seat angle adjustment motor and seat height adjustment motor must be installed in the new seat pan lower frame.

- Remove the seat angle adjustment motor -V243- or -V244- -1-. Refer to [⇒ "1.5.23 Driver Seat Angle Adjustment Motor V243/V244", page 298](#) .
- Remove the seat height adjustment motor -V245- or -V246- -3-. Refer to [⇒ "2.2.25 Seat Height Adjustment Motor V245 and V246", page 386](#) .

2 - Driver seat angle adjustment motor -V243- or front passenger seat angle adjustment motor -V244-

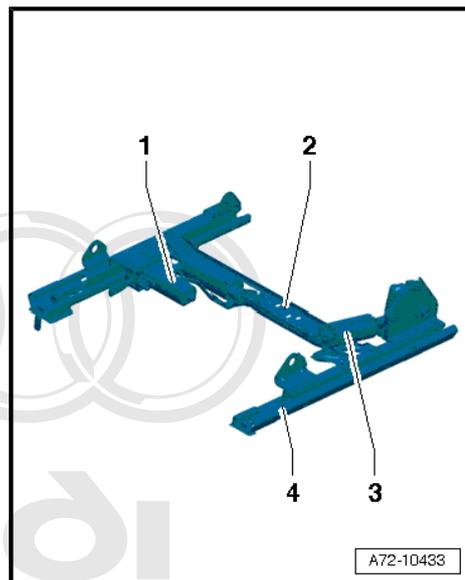
4 - Lower seat pan frame

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

WARNING

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to [⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38](#)*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*



mitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Install the seat height adjustment motor -V245- or -V246- -3- into the new lower frame -4-.
- Install the seat angle adjustment motor -V243- or -V244- -1- into new lower frame -4-.

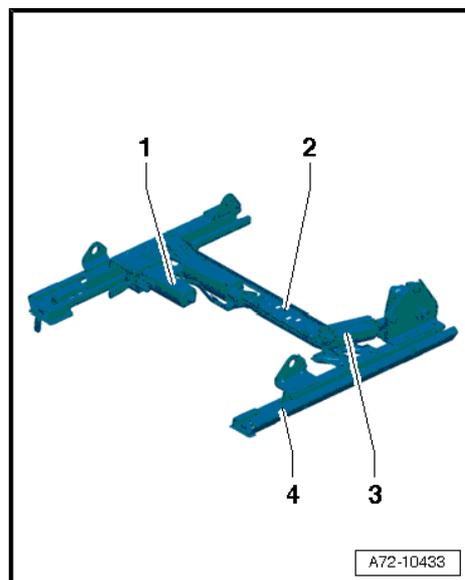
Note

Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.

- Switch on ignition.

WARNING

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.



- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again.

2.2.21 Driver's Backrest Adjustment Motor V45 or V46

Removing

 **Caution**

- ◆ *The driver backrest adjustment motor -V45- and/or the front passenger backrest adjustment motor -V46- must not be replaced because the end positions cannot be found again.*
- ◆ *If there is motor damage, the backrest frame should be replaced with the driver backrest adjustment motor -V45- or front passenger backrest adjustment motor -V46- as well as shaft and housing for driver backrest stop switch -E69- or front passenger backrest stop switch -E70- .*
- ◆ *Remove backrest frame with faulty backrest adjustment motor -V45- or -V46- , side airbag, four-way lumbar support with motors, stop switch and headrest guides and install these parts in the new backrest frame.*

 **WARNING**

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to [⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*

- Remove the backrest. Refer to [⇒ "2.2.9 Front Backrest", page 352](#) .
- Remove backrest cover panel. Refer to [⇒ "2.2.10 Backrest Cover", page 356](#) .
- Remove cover with upholstery. Refer to [⇒ "2.1.3 Backrest Cover and Upholstery", page 432](#) .
- Remove side airbag. Refer to [⇒ "3.7.1 Side Airbag", page 106](#) .
- Remove four-way lumbar support. Refer to [⇒ "2.2.11 Four-Way Lumbar Support", page 359](#) .
- Disconnect electrical connectors.
- Remove driver seat lumbar support curvature adjustment motor -V125- or front passenger seat lumbar support curvature adjustment motor -V126- . Refer to [⇒ "2.2.23 Lumbar Support Curvature Adjustment Motors V125 and V126", page 380](#) .
- Remove Driver Seat Lumbar Support Height Adjustment Motor -V129- or Front passenger Seat Lumbar Support Height Adjustment Motor -V130- . Refer to [⇒ "2.2.24 Lumbar Support Height Adjustment Motors V129 and V130", page 383](#) .
- Remove driver backrest stop switch -E69- or front passenger backrest stop switch -E70- . Refer to

⇒ ["2.2.22 Front Seat Backrest Stop Switches E69 and E70", page 379](#) .

- Remove headrest guides. Refer to ["2.2.17 Headrest Guide", page 369](#) .

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:



WARNING

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*

- Install removed assembly parts in new backrest frame. Refer to [page 377](#)
- Make sure the headrest guides engage correctly in backrest frame.
- Switch on ignition.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Note

Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.



WARNING

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again.

2.2.22 Front Seat Backrest Stop Switches E69 and E70

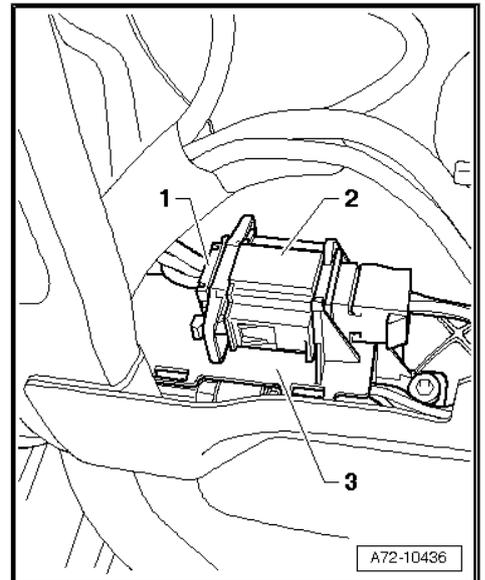
Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*

- Remove the backrest. Refer to ⇒ "2.2.9 Front Backrest", page 352 .
- Remove backrest cover panel. Refer to ⇒ "2.2.10 Backrest Cover", page 356 .
- Disconnect connector -1- from coupling -2-.
- Remove coupling -2- upward from mount on housing -3-.



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin

- Clip on housing cover -3-.
- Remove driver backrest stop switch -E69- or front passenger backrest stop switch -E70- -2- with wire and coupling from housing -1-.

**Note**

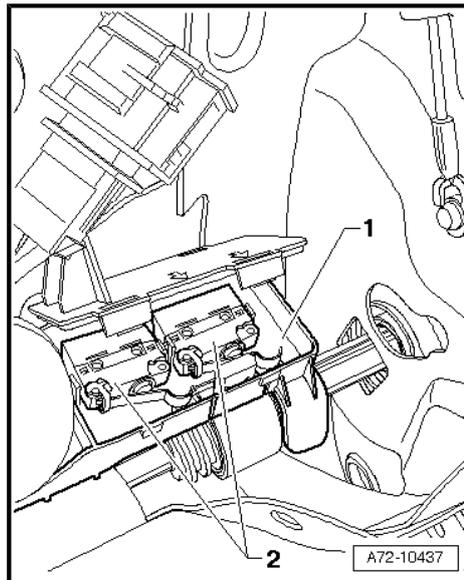
The two stop switches in the housing must not be separated and can only be replaced together with wire and coupling.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

**WARNING**

- ◆ Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ **"1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38**.
- ◆ Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.

**Note**

Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.

- Switch on ignition.

**WARNING**

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

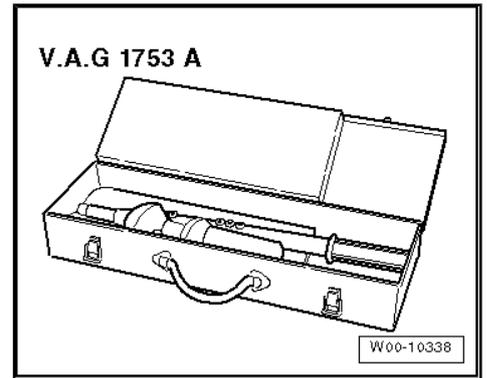
- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again.

2.2.23 Lumbar Support Curvature Adjustment Motors V125 and V126

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ◆ Special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753A-



Removing

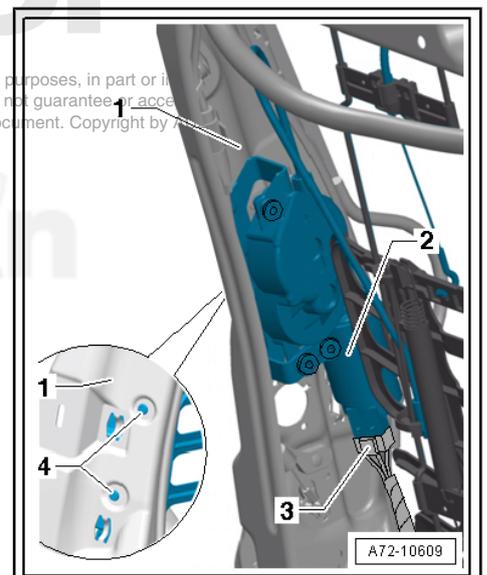


WARNING

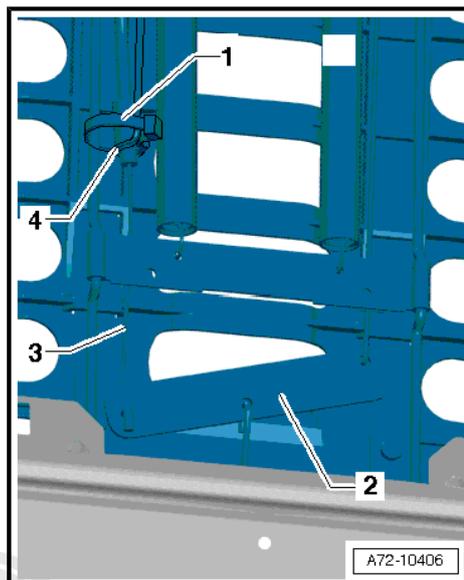
- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*

- Remove backrest cover panel. Refer to ⇒ "2.2.10 Backrest Cover", page 356 .
- Remove cover with upholstery. Refer to ⇒ "2.1.3 Backrest Cover and Upholstery", page 432 .
- Remove side airbag. Refer to ⇒ "3.7.1 Side Airbag", page 106 .
- Disconnect the connector -3-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee its accuracy or accept any responsibility with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG.



- Disengage release -3- on retaining plate -2-.
- Open cable tie -1-.
- Disengage the release cable -3- from the bracket -4-.



- Drill out rivets -4- (quantity: 2).
- 1 - Backrest frame
- Remove driver seat lumbar support curvature adjustment motor -V125- -2- or front passenger seat lumbar support curvature adjustment motor -V126- with release cable.

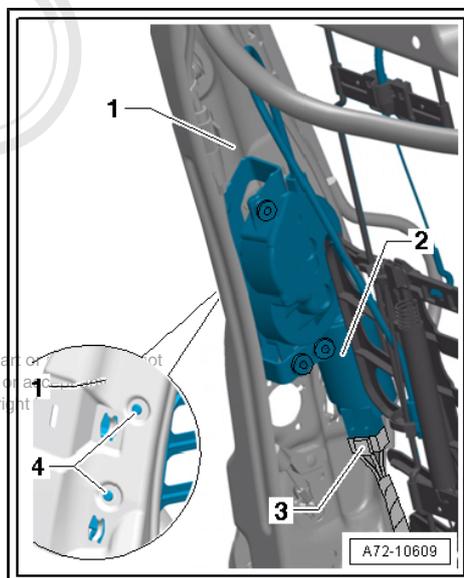
Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:



WARNING

- ◆ **Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .**
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.**



- Rivet driver seat lumbar support curvature adjustment motor - V125- -2- or front passenger seat lumbar support curvature adjustment motor -V126- with backrest frame -1- using Special Pop Rivet Pliers -V.A.G 1753A- .

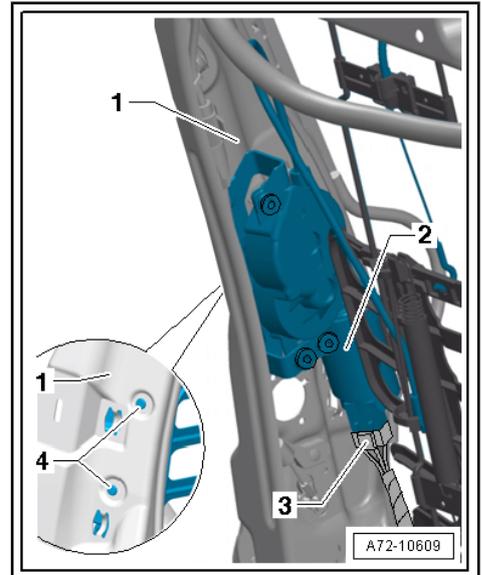
 **Note**

Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.

- Switch on ignition.

 **WARNING**

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

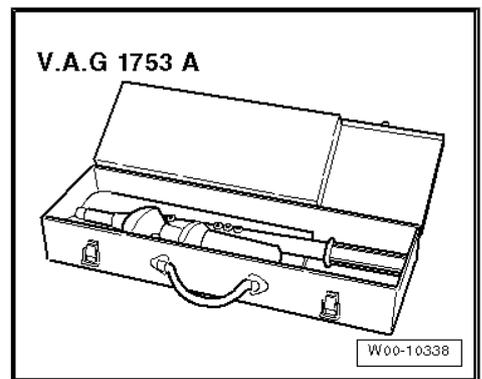


- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again.

2.2.24 Lumbar Support Height Adjustment Motors V129 and V130

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753A-



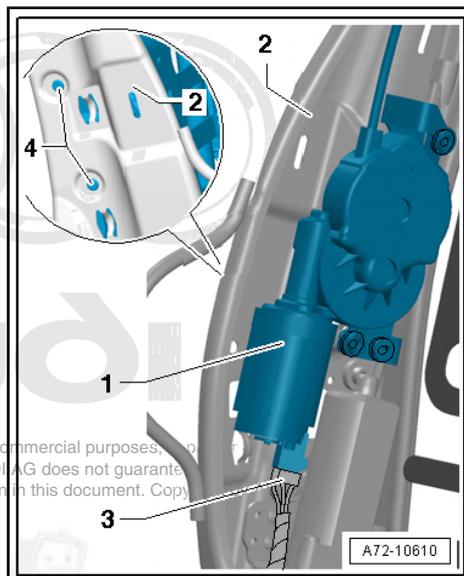
Removing

 **WARNING** Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ◆ **Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .**
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.**

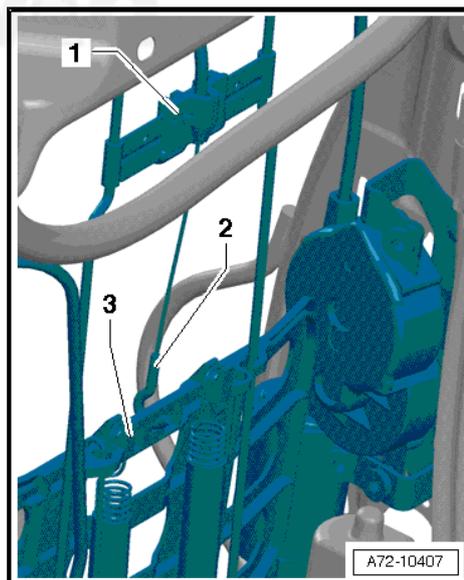
- Remove backrest cover panel. Refer to ⇒ "2.2.10 Backrest Cover", page 356 .

- Remove cover with upholstery. Refer to
⇒ ["2.1.3 Backrest Cover and Upholstery"](#), page 432 .
- Disconnect the connector -3-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, or for advertising or promotional purposes, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the accuracy of the information in this document. Copying with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copy

- Disengage release -2- from clip -1-.
- Disengage release -2- from four-way lumbar support -3-.



- Drill out rivets -4- (quantity: 2).

2 - Backrest frame

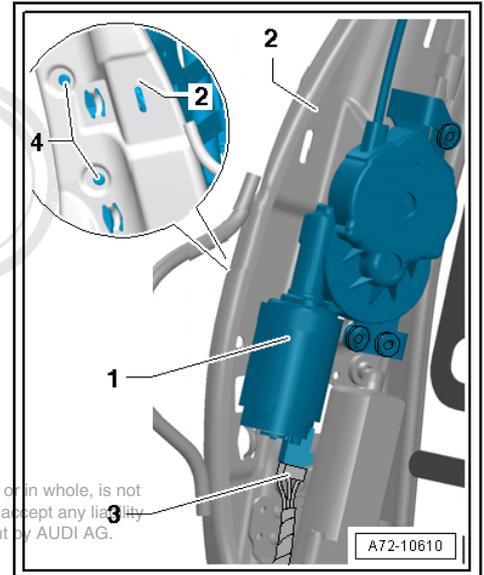
- Remove Driver Seat Lumbar Support Height Adjustment Motor -V129- -1- or Front passenger Seat Lumbar Support Height Adjustment Motor -V130- with release cable.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

 **WARNING**

- ◆ **Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to**
 ⇒ ***“1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures”, page 38 .***
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must “discharge static electricity”. For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.**



- Rivet Driver Seat Lumbar Support Height Adjustment Motor -V129- -1- or Front passenger Seat Lumbar Support Height Adjustment Motor -V130- with backrest frame -1- using Special Pop Rivet Pliers -V.A.G 1753A- .

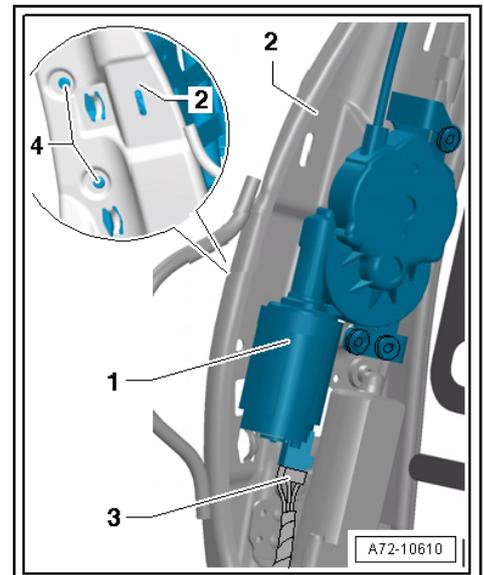
 **Note**

Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.

- Switch on ignition.

 **WARNING**

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.



- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again.

2.2.25 Seat Height Adjustment Motor V245 and V246

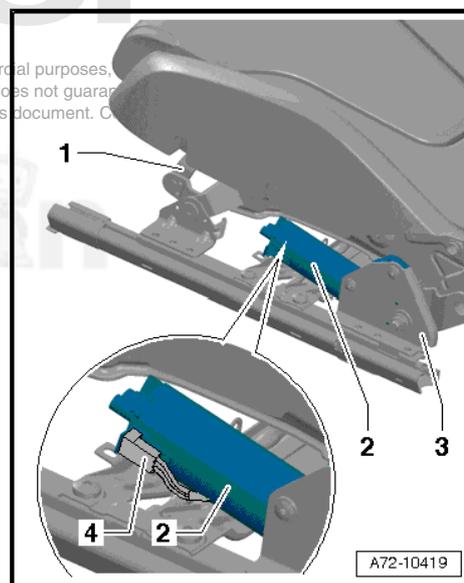
Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*

- Remove the seat. Refer to ⇒ "2.2.1 Front Seat", page 337 .
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136-. Refer to ⇒ "1.3 Installing Front Seat On VAS 6136", page 250 .
- Remove tunnel side trim panel. Refer to ⇒ "2.2.4 Sill Side Trim", page 346 .
- Remove tunnel side trim panel. Refer to ⇒ "2.2.5 Tunnel Side Trim", page 348 .
- Remove front backrest. Refer to ⇒ "2.2.9 Front Backrest", page 352 .
- Disconnect electrical connector -4- on Driver Seat Height Adjustment Motor -V245- -2- or Front Passenger's Seat Height Adjustment Motor -V246- .
- Disconnect seat pan upper frame -1- from lower frame -3-. Refer to ⇒ "1.5.18 Seat Pan, Disassembling and assembling", page 291 .
- Remove seat pan upper frame with cover and upholstery from lower frame.



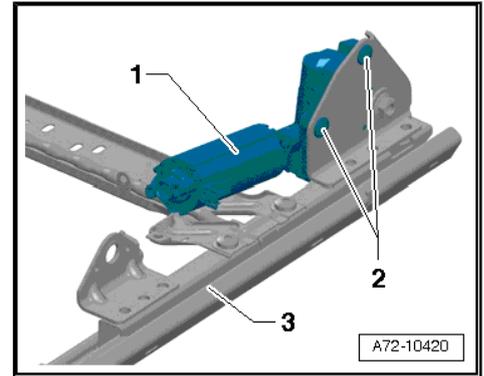
- Remove the bolts -2-.
- Remove the driver seat height adjustment motor -V245- -1- or front passenger seat height adjustment motor -V246- toward center of seat -3-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

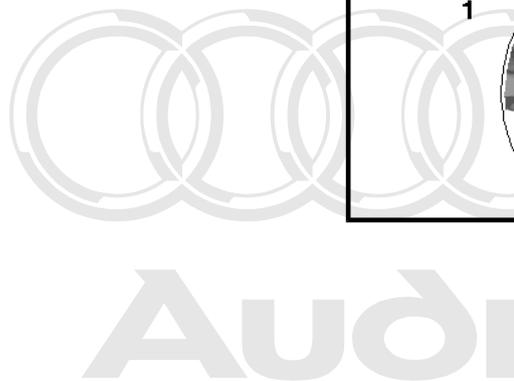
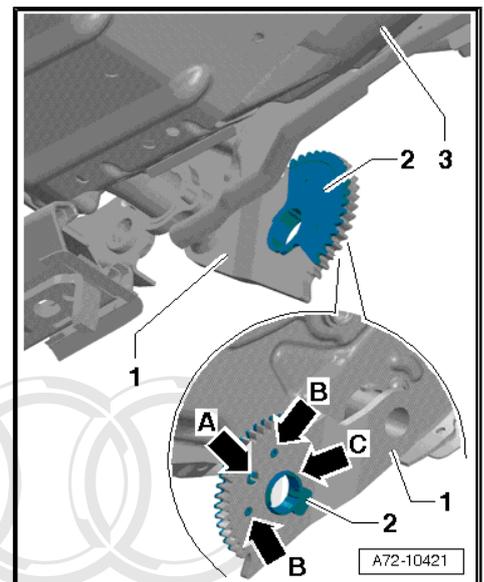
 **WARNING**

- ◆ **Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .**
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.**



- Make sure the clip -A- and plastic toothed segment collar -2- as well as locking pins -B arrows- are inserted correctly in holes on fitting -1-.
- Make sure the plastic toothed segment -2- is clipped to fitting -1- correctly.

Plastic toothed segment collar -arrow C- must contact fitting -1- evenly.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Make sure the locking pins -A arrows- are inserted correctly in holes -B arrows- on link plate -1-.

**Note**

Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.

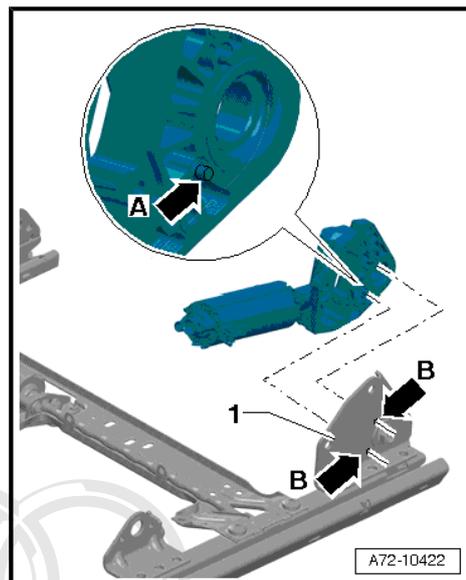
- Switch on ignition.

**WARNING**

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again.

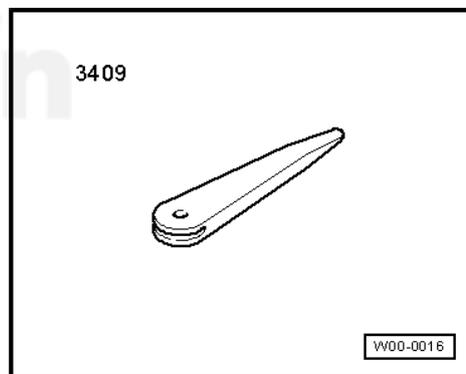
For the correct tightening specifications, refer to ⇒ ["1.5.28 Seat Height Adjustment Motors V245 and V246 Assembly Overview"](#), page 304



2.2.26 Seat Height Adjuster Toothed Segment

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



Removing

**WARNING**

- ◆ Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures"](#), page 38 .
- ◆ Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.

- Remove Driver Seat Height Adjustment Motor -V245- or Front Passenger's Seat Height Adjustment Motor -V246- . Refer to

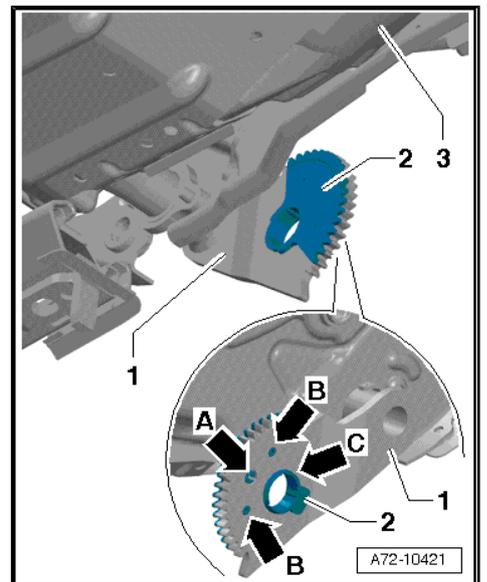
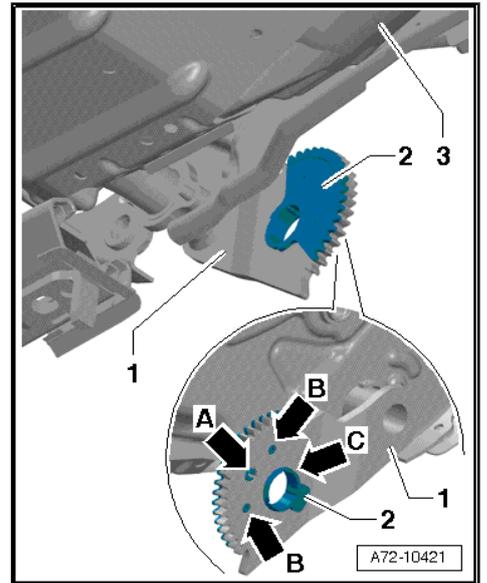
⇒ "2.2.25 Seat Height Adjustment Motor V245 and V246",
 page 386 .

- Using Trim Removal Wedge -3409- , unclip plastic toothed segment -2- from fitting -1-.

Installation

- Clip plastic toothed segment -2- into fitting -1-.
- Make sure the clip -A- and plastic toothed segment collar -2- as well as locking pins -B arrows- are inserted correctly in holes on fitting -1-.
- Make sure the plastic toothed segment -2- is clipped to fitting -1- correctly.

Plastic toothed segment collar -arrow C- must contact fitting -1- evenly.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Make sure the locking pins -A arrows- are inserted correctly in holes -B arrows- on link plate -1-.

Installation is in reverse order of removal, noting the following:

**WARNING**

- ◆ **Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .**
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.**

**Note**

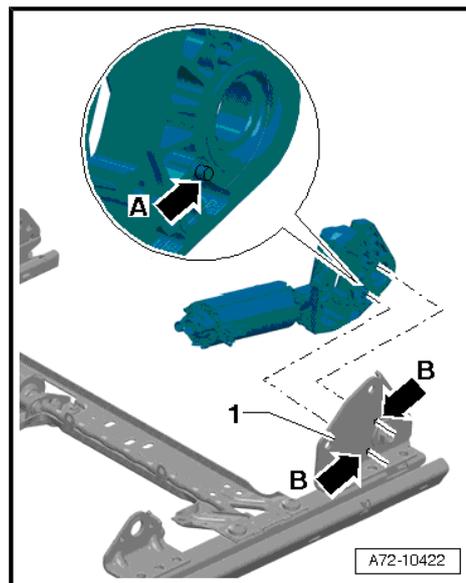
Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.

- Switch on ignition.

**WARNING**

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again.



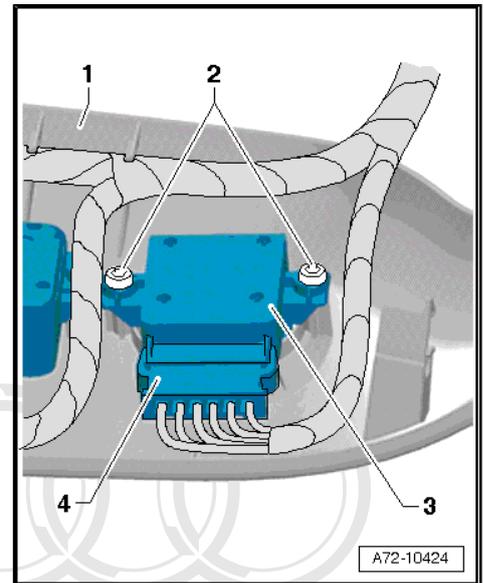
Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.2.27 Lumbar Support Adjustment Switches E176 and E177

Removing

- Remove sill side trim -1-. Refer to [⇒ "2.2.4 Sill Side Trim", page 346](#).
- Disconnect the connector -4-.
- Remove bolts -2- (quantity: 2).
- Remove driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- -3- or front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E177- from sill side trim -1-.

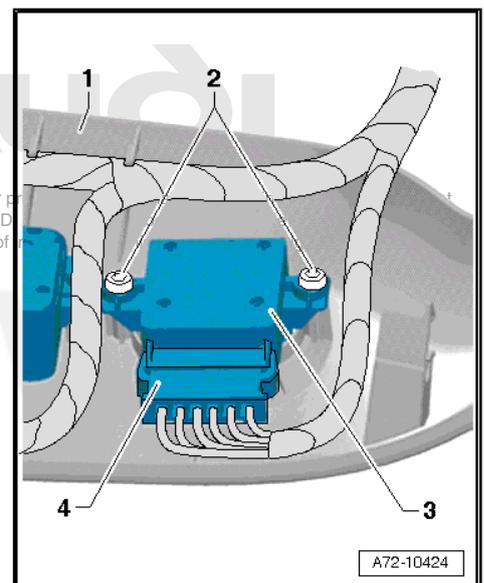


Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Route wires as close to the coupling -4- as possible.

For the correct tightening specifications, refer to [⇒ "1.5.29 Lumbar Support Adjustment Switches E176 and E177 Assembly Overview", page 305](#)



2.2.28 Seat Forward/Back, Angle, Height and Backrest Adjustment Switches V288/V243/V244/V245/V246/V45/V46

Removing

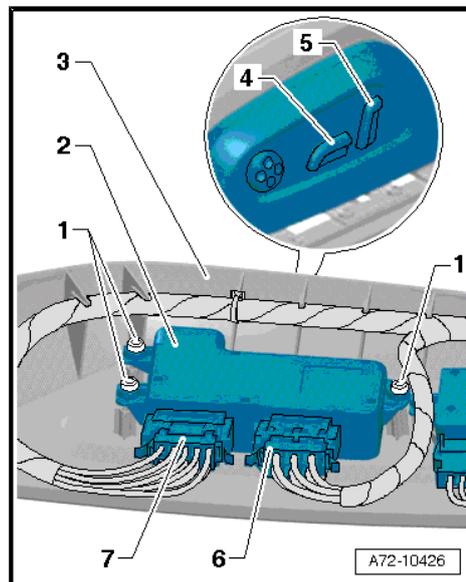
- Remove sill side trim -3-. Refer to [⇒ "2.2.4 Sill Side Trim", page 346](#) .
- Disconnect connectors -6- and -7-.
- Remove seat and backrest adjustment actuators -4- and -5-. Refer to [⇒ "1.5.10 Seat and Backrest Adjustment Actuator Assembly Overview", page 280](#) .
- Remove bolts -1- (quantity: 3).
- Remove seat fore and aft, inclination, height and backrest adjustment switch -2-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Route wires as close to couplings -6- and -7- as possible.

For the correct tightening specifications, refer to [⇒ "2.2.18 Seat Adjustment Switches, V288/V243/V244/V245/V246/V45/V46 Assembly Overview", page 372](#)



2.3 Bucket Seat

[⇒ "2.3.1 Seat", page 392](#)

[⇒ "2.3.2 Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Stop", page 393](#)

[⇒ "2.3.3 Seat Rail Covers", page 394](#)

[⇒ "2.3.4 Side Trim", page 394](#)

[⇒ "2.3.5 Backrest Adjustment Hand Wheel", page 396](#)

[⇒ "2.3.6 Seat Height Adjustment Handle", page 396](#)

[⇒ "2.3.7 Front Backrest and Seat Pan", page 397](#)

[⇒ "2.3.8 Seat Height Adjuster", page 400](#)

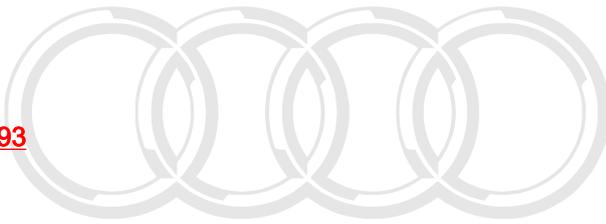
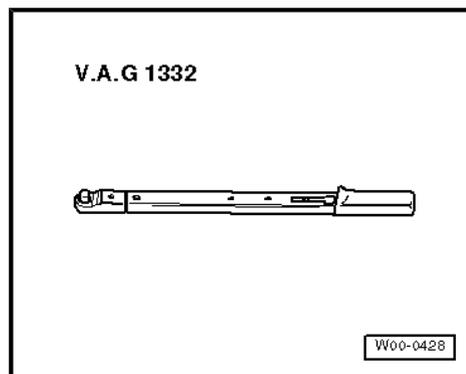
[⇒ "2.3.9 Backrest Cover", page 401](#)

[⇒ "2.3.10 Backrest Lock Actuating Link", page 403](#)

2.3.1 Seat

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench -V.A.G 1332-



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



 **Note**

- ◆ *The bucket seat does not have a side airbag. The side airbag electrical connector must have a terminal resistance in the vehicle wiring harness.*
- ◆ *The terminal resistance is a separate connector housing. Refer to ⇒ ["1.6.1 Connectors, Disconnecting"](#), page 306 .*

1 - Front seat

Removing

- Push front seat -1- fully upward and to the rear.
- Remove front bolts -3- (quantity: 2).
- Move seat forward.
- Remove rear bolts -4- (quantity: 2).
- Tip front seat -1- back.
- Disconnect electrical harness connectors. Refer to ⇒ ["1.6.1 Connectors, Disconnecting"](#), page 306 .
- Remove seat.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.

2 - Seat rail covers

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.3.3 Seat Rail Covers"](#), page 394

3 - Front bolts

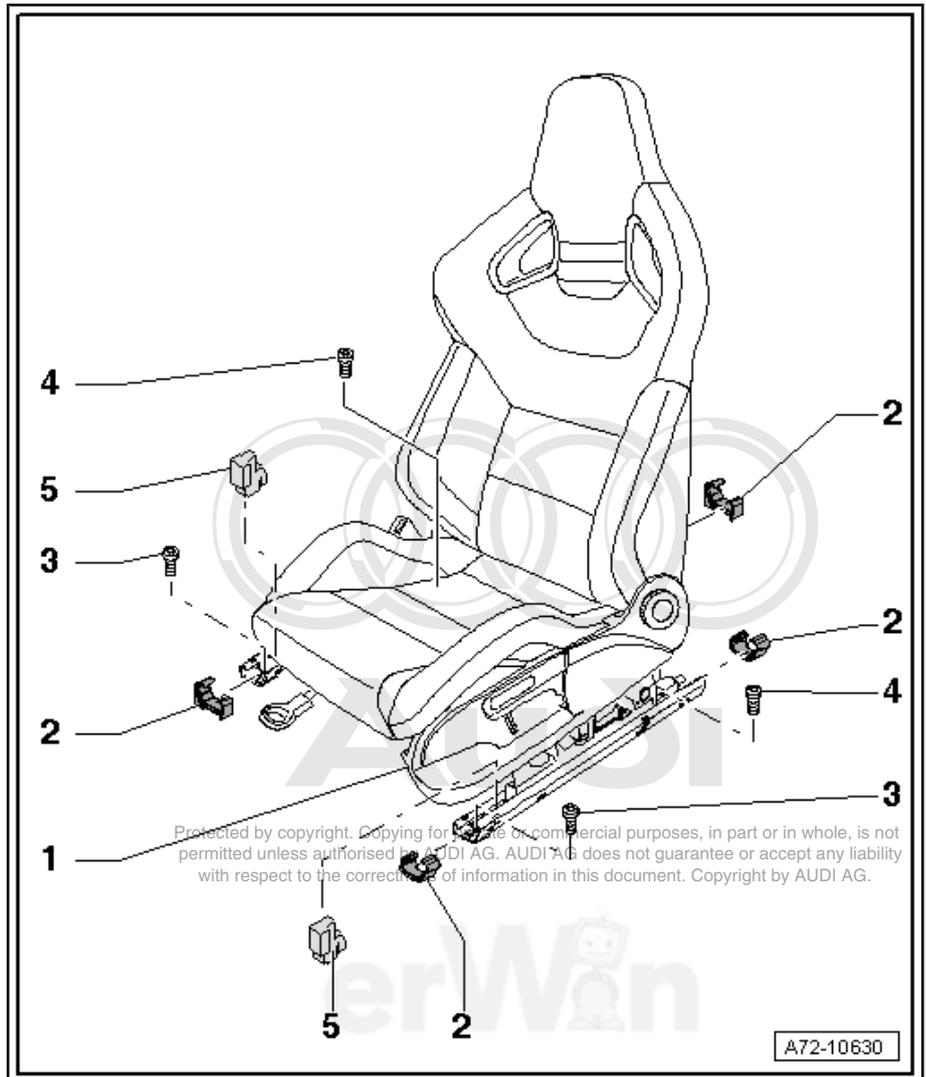
- Quantity: 2
- Tightening specification 50 Nm

4 - Rear bolts

- Quantity: 2
- Tightening specification 50 Nm

5 - Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Stop

- Quantity: 2
- Clipped
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.1.3 Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Stop"](#), page 319



2.3.2 Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Stop

- Removing and installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.1.3 Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Stop"](#), page 319

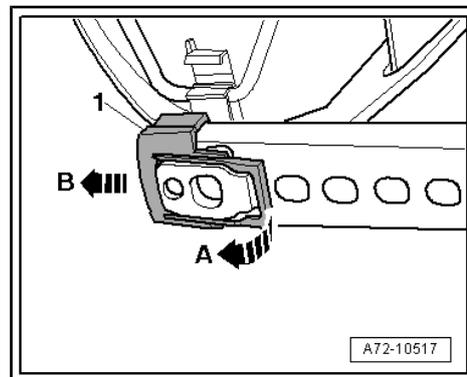
2.3.3 Seat Rail Covers

Removing

- Remove the seat. Refer to => ["2.3.1 Seat", page 392](#) .

Front Seat Rail Cover

- Carefully release retaining bracket in -direction of arrow A- and remove seat rail cover -1- -arrow B-.

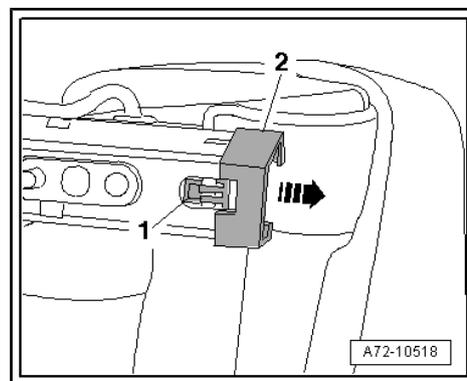


Rear Seat Rail Cover

- Carefully release retaining tab -1-.
- Then remove seat rail cover -2- in direction of -arrow-.

Installation

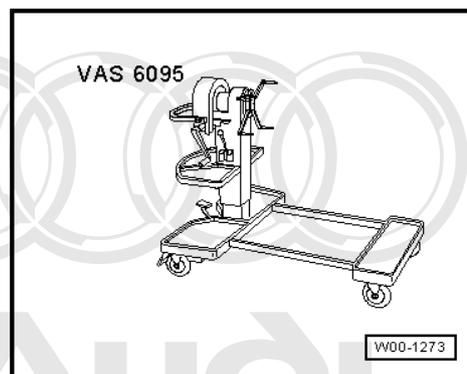
- Seat rail cover must be removed until it audibly engages.



2.3.4 Side Trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Engine and transmission holder -VAS 6095-



- ◆ Fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Audi AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG.



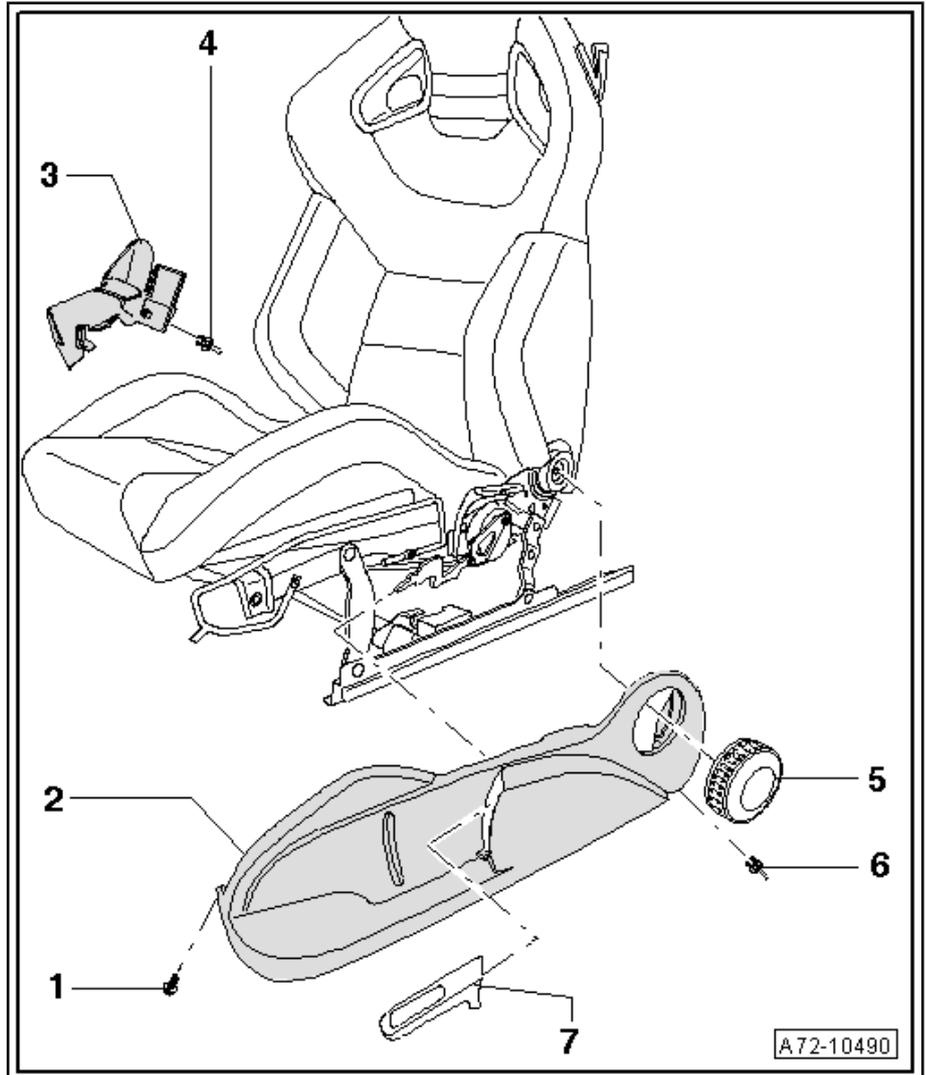
1 - Bolt

- Tightening specification
1.2 Nm

2 - Side trim (sill side)

Removing

- Remove the seat. Refer to [⇒ "2.3.1 Seat", page 392](#).
- Mount the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136- on the engine and transmission holder -VAS 6095-.
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136-.
- Remove backrest adjustment hand wheel -5-.
- Remove seat height adjustment handle -7-. Refer to [⇒ "2.3.6 Seat Height Adjustment Handle", page 396](#).
- Remove expanding clip -6-, press clamping pin through to the inside.
- Remove mounting bolt -1-.



- Remove side panel -2- at lower edge from retaining bracket on seat.
- Swing side panel upward at front edge.
- Remove side panel to side.
- Pull tab at rear of side panel out under backrest trim.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.

3 - Side trim (tunnel side)

Removing

- Remove the seat. Refer to [⇒ "2.3.1 Seat", page 392](#).
- Mount the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136- on the engine and transmission holder -VAS 6095-.
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136-.
- Remove expanding clip -4-, press clamping pin through to the inside.
- Disengage retaining detent at rear side of side panel on tunnel side.
- Remove the trim.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.

4 - Expanding clip

5 - Hand wheel for backrest adjustment

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.3.5 Backrest Adjustment Hand Wheel”, page 396](#)

6 - Expanding clip

7 - Seat height adjustment handle

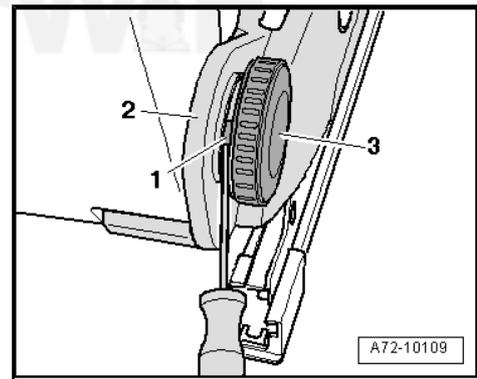
- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.3.6 Seat Height Adjustment Handle”, page 396](#)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.3.5 Backrest Adjustment Hand Wheel

Removing

- Press side panel -2- lightly in direction of backrest.
- Slightly lift and disengage retaining detent -1- using a screwdriver.
- Turn backrest adjustment hand wheel -3- and disengage another retaining detent.
- Remove hand wheel for backrest adjustment.



Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Hand wheel must be pressed on until it audibly engages.



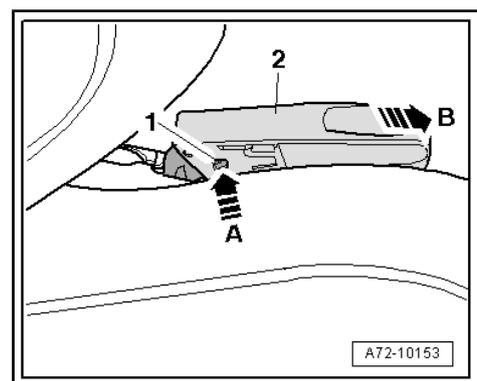
Note

If the hand wheel for backrest adjustment sits loosely on the adjustment shaft, the hand wheel for backrest adjustment must be replaced.

2.3.6 Seat Height Adjustment Handle

Removing

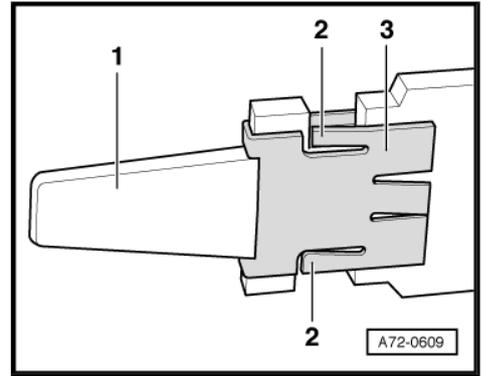
- Pull seat height adjustment handle up and hold in this position.
- Using a narrow screwdriver, press clips -1- inward -arrow A- and remove seat height adjustment handle -2- from lever -arrow B-.



Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Make sure the clip springs -2- (quantity: 2) -3- are positioned on outside of lever -1-.

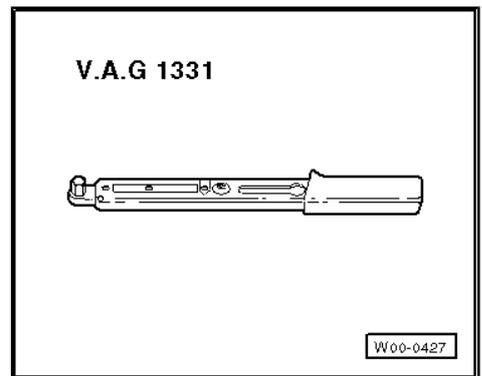


2.3.7 Front Backrest and Seat Pan

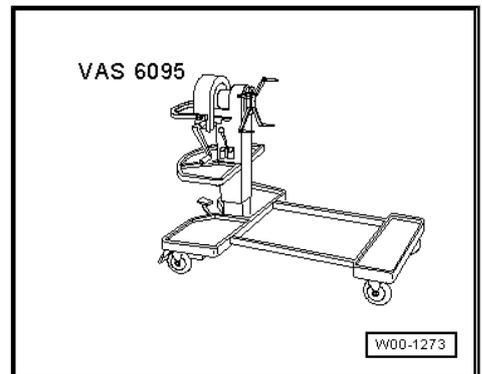
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for the content of this document. © Audi AG 2007. All rights reserved.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

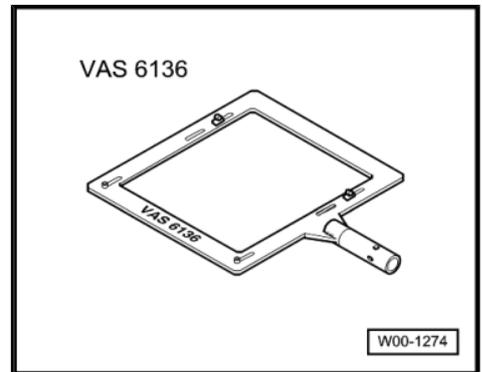
- ◆ Torque wrench -V.A.G 1331-



- ◆ Engine and transmission holder -VAS 6095-



- ◆ Fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136-



1 - Bolt

- Tightening specification
24 Nm
- replace with locking
compound
- Locking compound, re-
fer to ⇒ Parts Catalog

2 - Seat forward/back adjust- ment handle

- remove to remove from**
operating rod.

3 - Bolt

- Tightening specification
24 Nm
- replace with locking
compound
- Locking compound, re-
fer to ⇒ Parts Catalog

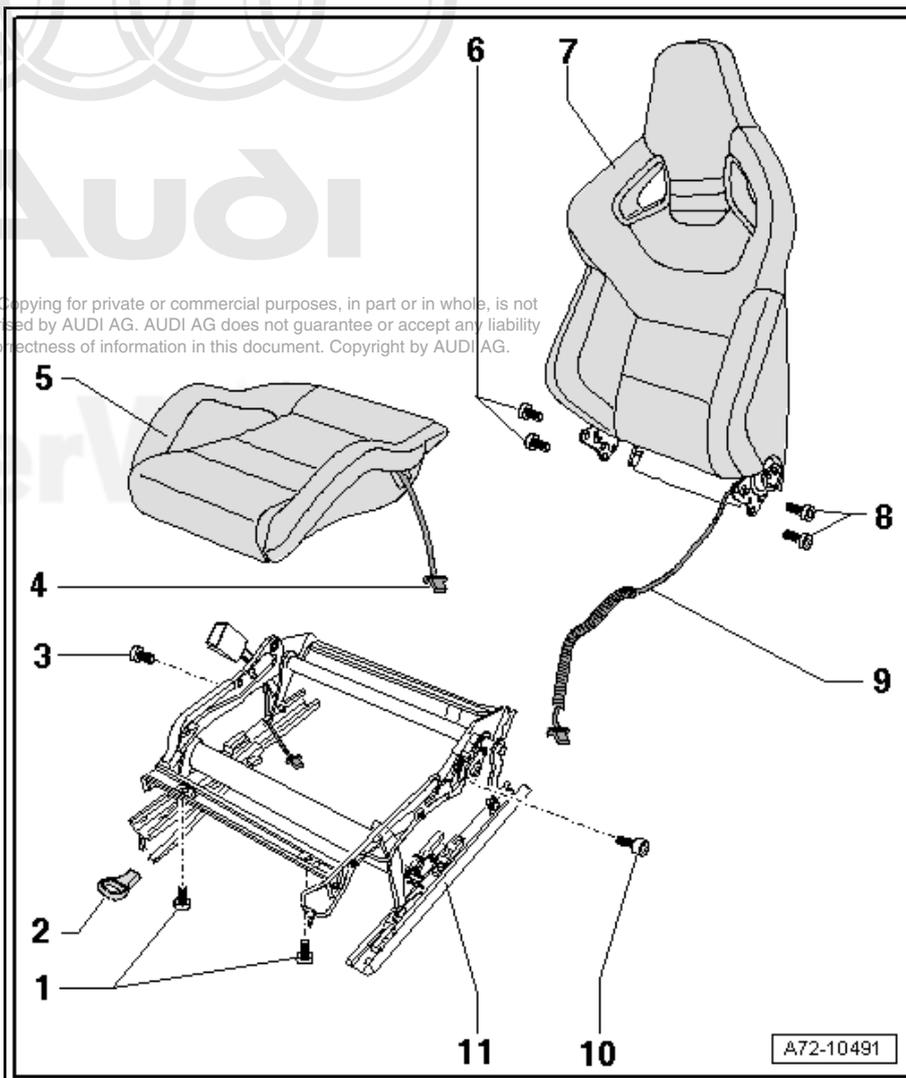
4 - Electric wire

- For seat heating

5 - Seat pan

Removing

- Remove the seat. Refer to
⇒ ["2.3.1 Seat",
page 392](#) .
- Mount the fixture for
seat repair -VAS 6136-
on the engine and trans-
mission holder -VAS
6095- .



- Attach the front seat to
the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136- .
- Remove side trim on sill side. Refer to ⇒ ["2.3.4 Side Trim", page 394](#) .
- Remove side trim on tunnel side. Refer to ⇒ ["2.3.4 Side Trim", page 394](#) .
- Disconnect seat heater connector. Refer to ⇒ [page 400](#) .
- Drill out pop rivets on connector retaining plate using a 4.0 mm drill bit and guide seat heating wiring harness out under retaining plate ⇒ [page 400](#) .
- Free up electrical wires on seat pan.
- Remove bolts -1, 3, 10-.
- Remove bolts -6 and 8- and set backrest aside behind seat pan.
- Remove seat pan.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Replace seat pan if threads are damaged or stripped.
- Insert bolts with locking compound; locking compound, refer to Parts Catalog.

6 - Bolt

- Tightening specification 20 Nm
- replace with locking compound
- Locking compound, refer to Parts Catalog

7 - Backrest

Removing

- Remove the seat. Refer to ⇒ ["2.3.1 Seat", page 392](#) .
- Mount the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136- on the engine and transmission holder -VAS 6095- .
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136- .
- Remove side trim on sill side. Refer to ⇒ ["2.3.4 Side Trim", page 394](#) .
- Remove side trim on tunnel side. Refer to ⇒ ["2.3.4 Side Trim", page 394](#) .
- Disconnect backrest heating electrical connector. Refer to ⇒ [page 400](#) .
- Drill out pop rivets on connector retaining plate using a 4.0 mm drill bit and guide backrest heating wiring harness out under retaining plate ⇒ [page 400](#) .
- Remove bolts -1, 3, 10-.
- Remove bolts -6 and 8- and set backrest aside behind seat pan.
- Remove seat pan -5-.
- Remove backrest and guide electrical wiring harness out of seat frame.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Insert bolts with locking compound; locking compound. Refer to Parts Catalog.

8 - Bolt

- Tightening specification 20 Nm
- replace with locking compound
- Locking compound. Refer to Parts Catalog

9 - Electric wire

- For backrest heating
- protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

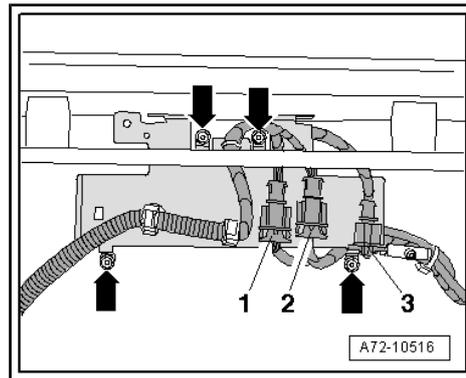
10 - Bolt

- Tightening specification 24 Nm
- replace with locking compound
- Locking compound, refer to Parts Catalog

11 - Seat frame

Drill Out Pop Rivet, Connectors

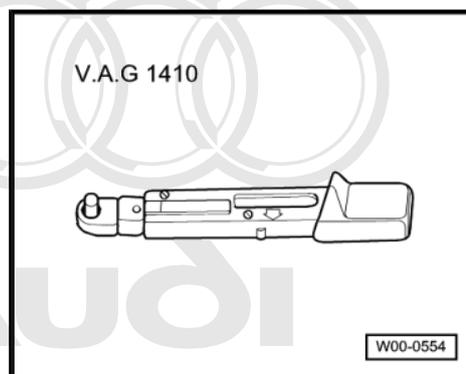
- Drill out the blind rivets -arrows- with a 4.0 mm drill bit.
- Disconnect electrical connectors:
 - 1 - Seat heating connector.
 - 2 - Backrest heating connector.
 - 3 - Belt latch connector.



2.3.8 Seat Height Adjuster

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench -V.A.G 1410-

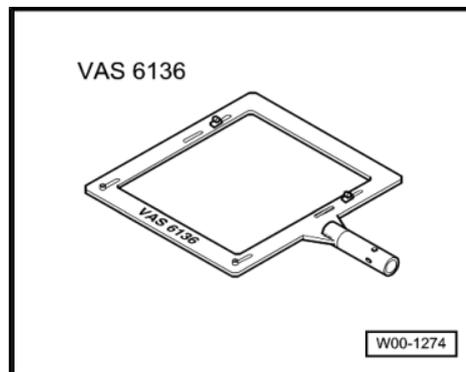


- ◆ Engine and transmission holder -VAS 6095-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- ◆ Fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136-



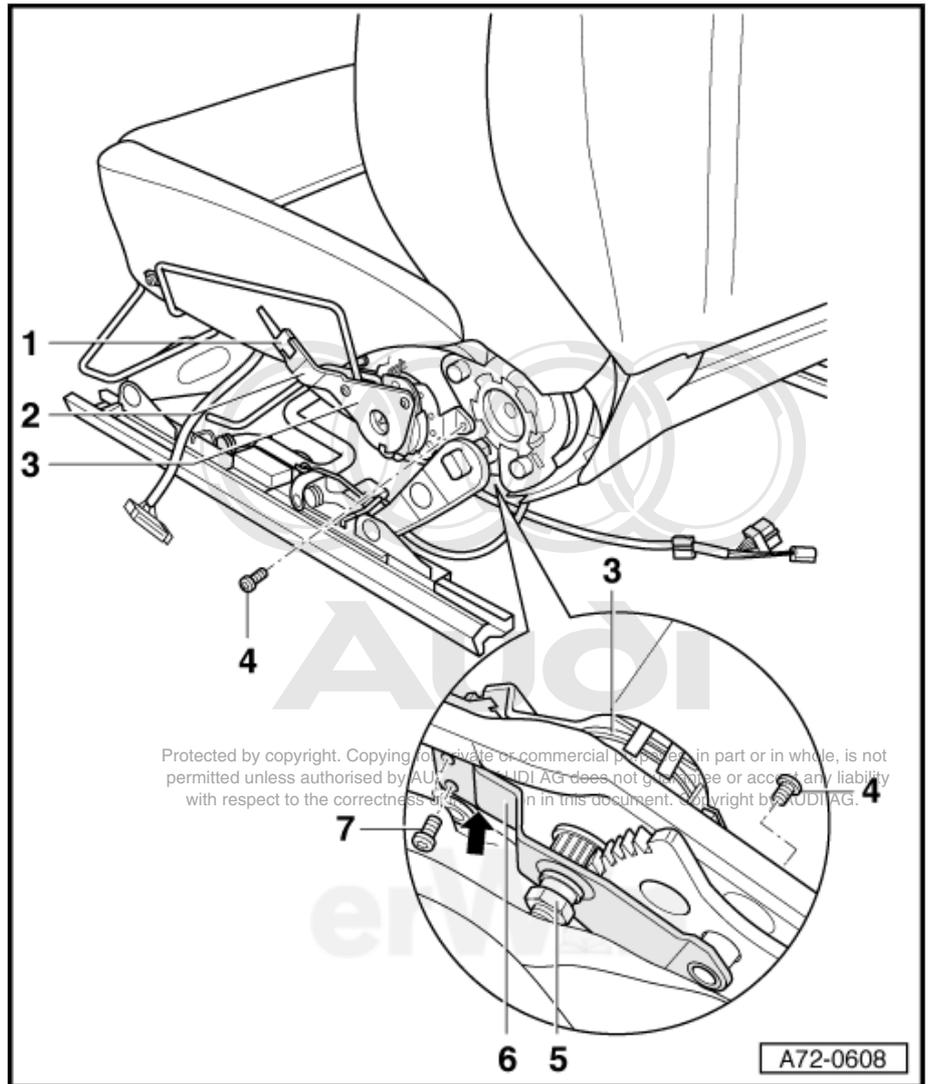
1 - Retaining clip

2 - Seat height adjustment handle lever

3 - Seat height adjuster

Removing

- Remove the seat. Refer to [⇒ "2.3.1 Seat", page 392](#).
- Mount the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136- on the engine and transmission holder -VAS 6095-.
- Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136-.
- Remove backrest and front seat pan. Refer to [⇒ "2.3.7 Front Backrest and Seat Pan", page 397](#).
- Remove nut -5-.
- Remove bolts -7- (quantity: 2).
- Remove the bolt -4-.
- Remove seat height adjustment unit -3- and retaining plate -6-.



Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Make sure the retaining plate -6- makes contact on backrest frame at -position of arrow-.

4 - Bolt

- Tightening specification 8 Nm

5 - Nut

- Tightening specification 12 Nm

6 - Retaining plate

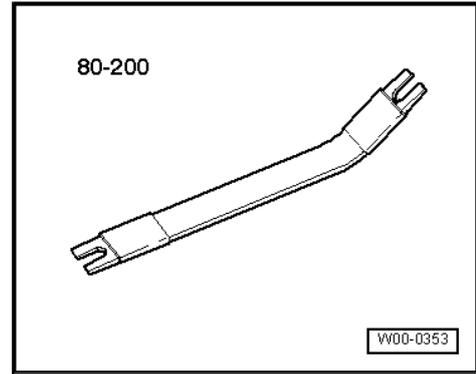
7 - Screws, (quantity: 2)

- Tightening specification 8 Nm

2.3.9 Backrest Cover

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Pry lever -80 - 200-

**1 - Right backrest cover**

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ page 403](#)

2 - Left backrest cover

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ page 403](#)

3 - Retaining clip**4 - Bolt**

- ❑ Tightening specification 2.5 Nm
- ❑ Replace with locking compound
- ❑ Locking compound, refer to Parts Catalog

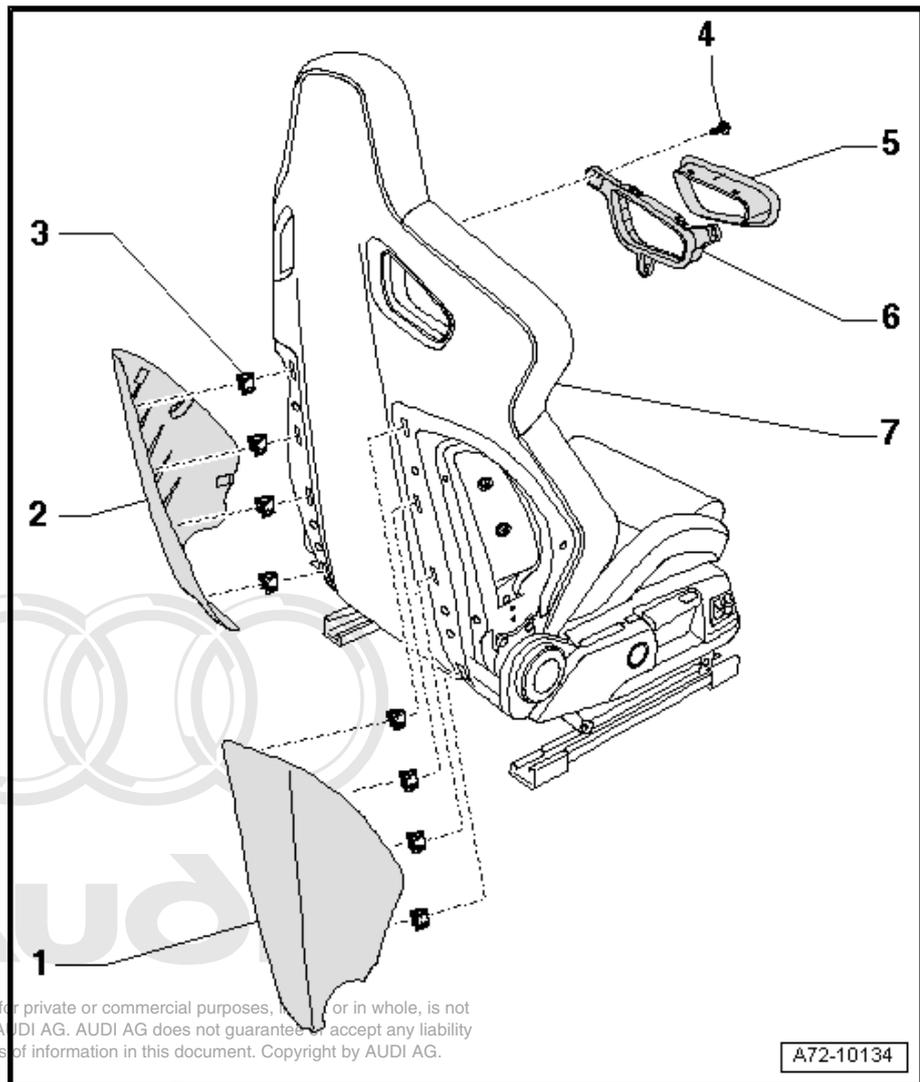
5 - Seat belt guide outer part

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ page 403](#)

6 - Seat belt guide inner part

- ❑ With release lever
- ❑ the version without the backrest release is shown in the illustration
- ❑ To remove, remove backrest cover. Refer to [⇒ "2.2.2 Backrest Cover and Upholstery", page 440](#)

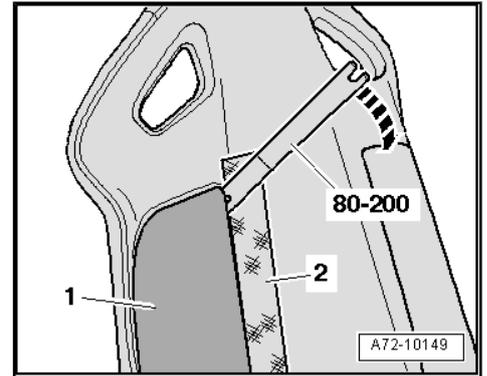
- ❑ **Disassembling** [⇒ page 405](#)

7 - Backrest frame

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole or in part, is not permitted. Press authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

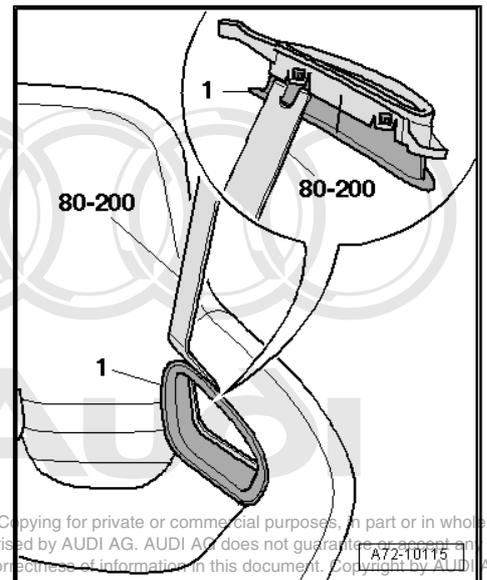
Backrest Cover, Removing and Installing

- Affix backrest panel all around trim -1- using adhesive tape -2-.
- Using pry lever -80-200- , pry off upper backrest cover at inner side, starting from backrest panel.
- Disengage clip at front corner of backrest panel extremely carefully.



Seat Belt Guide Outer Part, Removing and Installing

- Carefully guide the pry lever -80-200- between the backrest cover and belt guide outer part.
- Carefully press to disengage outer part of belt guide from inner part of belt guide.

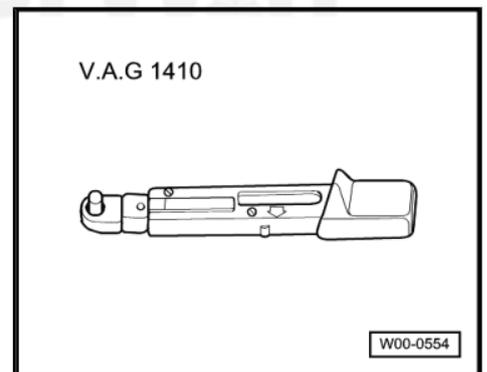


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the accuracy and liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

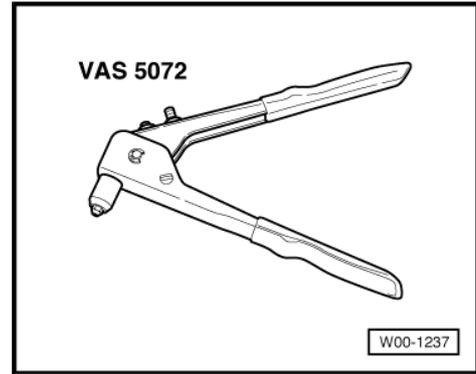
2.3.10 Backrest Lock Actuating Link

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque wrench -V.A.G 1410-



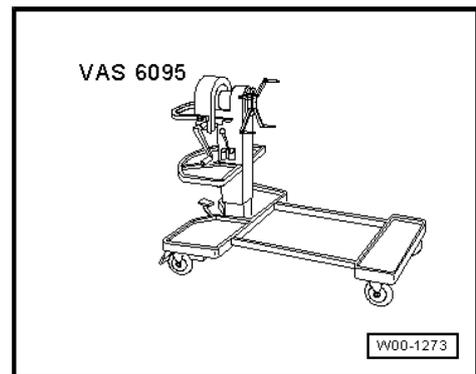
◆ Pop rivet pliers -VAS 5072-



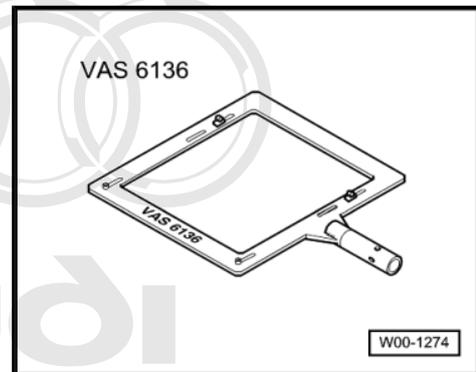
◆ Drill

◆ 6.0 mm drill bit

◆ Engine and transmission holder -VAS 6095-

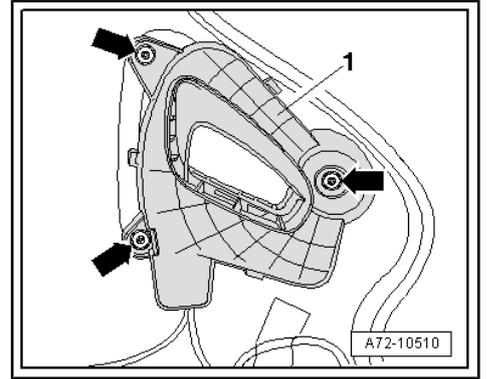


◆ Fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136-

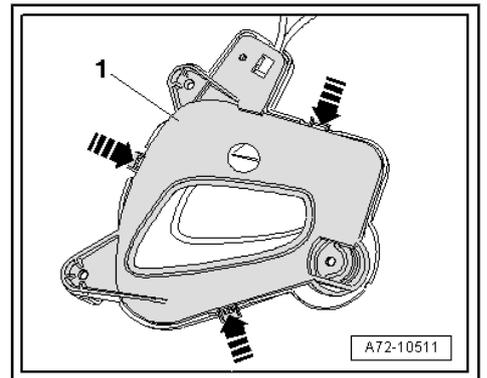
**Removing**

- Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.
- Remove the seat. Refer to ⇒ [“2.3.1 Seat”, page 392](#) .
 - Mount the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136- on the engine and transmission holder -VAS 6095- .
 - Attach the front seat to the fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136- .
 - Remove backrest and front seat pan. Refer to ⇒ [“2.3.7 Front Backrest and Seat Pan”, page 397](#) .
 - Remove backrest cover. Refer to ⇒ [“2.2.2 Backrest Cover and Upholstery”, page 440](#) .

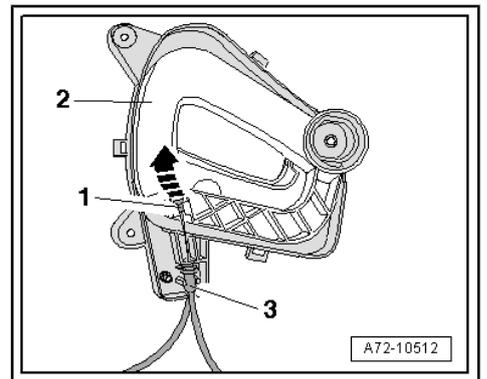
- Remove the bolts -arrows- from the seat belt guide inner part.
- Remove belt guide inner part -1-.



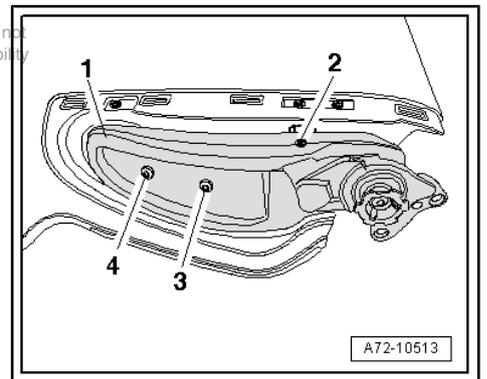
- Rotate inner part of belt guide and release retaining tabs -arrows-.
- Remove cover -1-.



- Remove the operating cable mounting bracket -3- on the seat belt guide inner part.
- Remove backrest lock release lever -2-.
- Disengage actuating link -1- in direction of -arrow-.
- Repeat work steps on opposite side.



- Remove backrest cover and backrest frame. Refer to ["2.3.9 Backrest Cover" page 401](#)
- Remove screws -3 and 4-.
- Drill out the blind rivet -2- on the backrest frame mount -1- with a 6.0 mm drill bit.

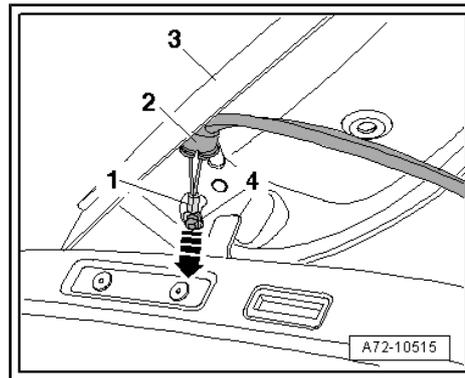


- Move the backrest frame mount to the side and remove the cable mounting bracket -2- on the backrest frame -3-.
- Disengage actuating link eye -1- at backrest lock release lever -4- by sliding eye forward -arrow- and removing.
- Remove actuating link upward from backrest frame.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Insert bolts with locking compound; locking compound, refer to Parts Catalog.
- Adjust backrest lock actuating link. Refer to [⇒ "1.6.3 Backrest Lock Actuating Link, Adjusting", page 308](#).



2.4 Rear Seat, Coupe

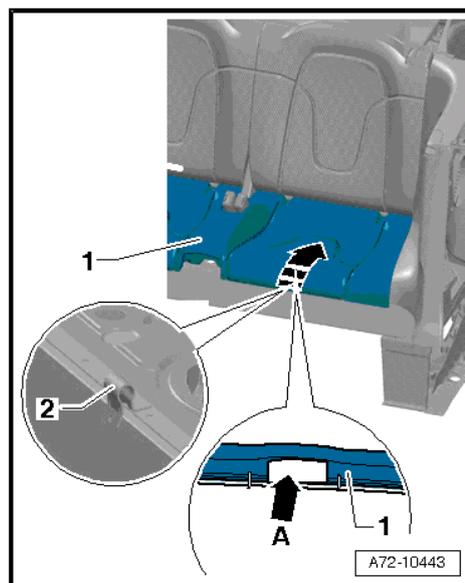
- ⇒ ["2.4.1 Bench Seat", page 406](#)
- ⇒ ["2.4.2 Seat Frame", page 408](#)
- ⇒ ["2.4.3 Backrest", page 408](#)
- ⇒ ["2.4.4 Center Bearing Cover Cap", page 411](#)
- ⇒ ["2.4.5 Left or Right Release", page 412](#)
- ⇒ ["2.4.6 Left or Right Trim", page 415](#)
- ⇒ ["2.4.7 Release Button", page 416](#)
- ⇒ ["2.4.8 Outer Left or Right Spacer", page 418](#)
- ⇒ ["2.4.9 Inner Left or Right Spacer", page 418](#)
- ⇒ ["2.4.10 Top Tether Child Seat Anchorage", page 419](#)
- ⇒ ["2.4.9 Inner Left or Right Spacer", page 418](#)
- ⇒ ["2.4.12 Backrest Panel", page 419](#)

2.4.1 Bench Seat

Removing

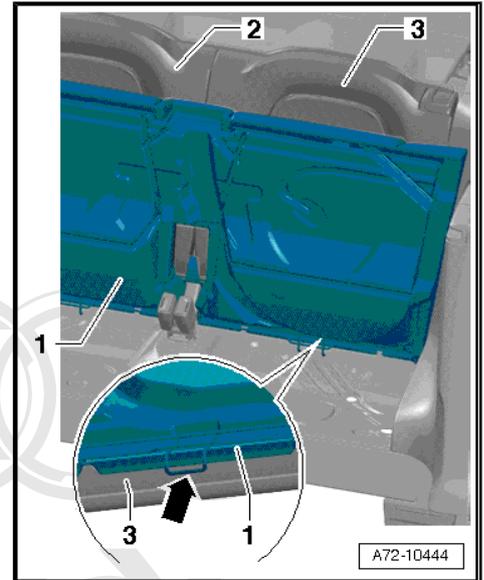
- Fold the front seat backrest forward as far as possible.
- Move the front seats forward as far as possible.
- Remove front edge of bench seat -1- in direction of -arrow- from omega clips -2- (quantity: 2).

Pfeil A - Omega clip mount



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

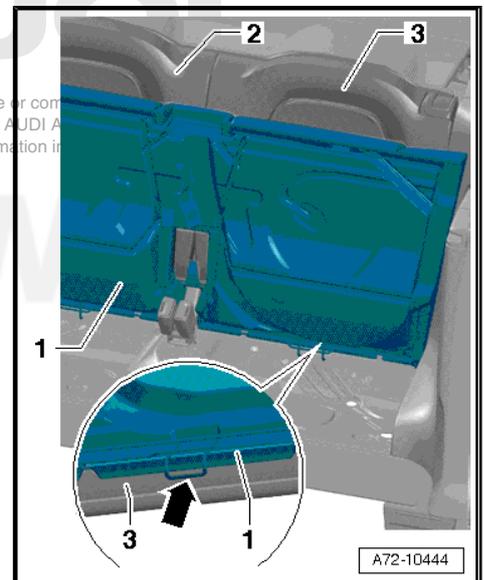
- Tip bench seat -1- onto backrest -2- or -3-.
- Disengage retaining eyes -arrow- on bench seat -1- at left and right of backrest tube frame -2- or -3-.
- Remove the bench seat -1- from the vehicle.



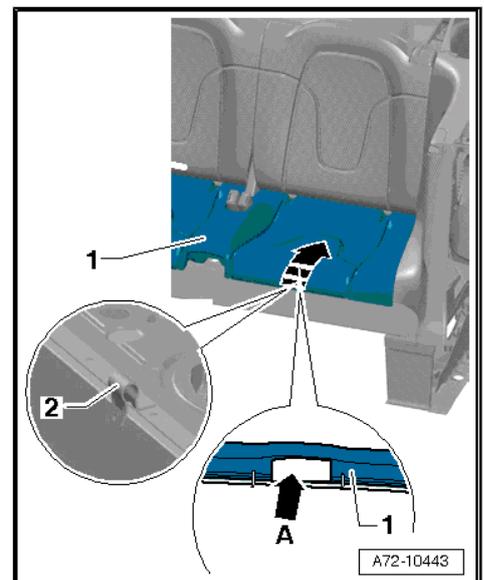
Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Make sure the retaining eyes -arrow- on bench seat -1- clamp the backrest frame connecting tube correctly.
- 2 - 1/2 right backrest
 3 - 1/2 left backrest



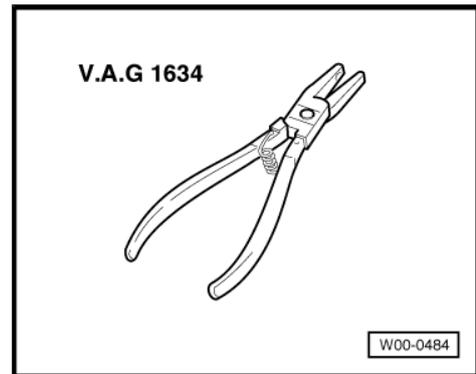
- Make sure the bench seat -1- is engaged correctly with the omega clips -2- (quantity: 2).



2.4.2 Seat Frame

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634-



Removing

- Remove the seat bench. Refer to [⇒ "2.4.1 Bench Seat", page 406](#) .
- Cut the upholstery clips -2-.
- Remove cover with upholstery -1- from seat frame -2-.

Installation

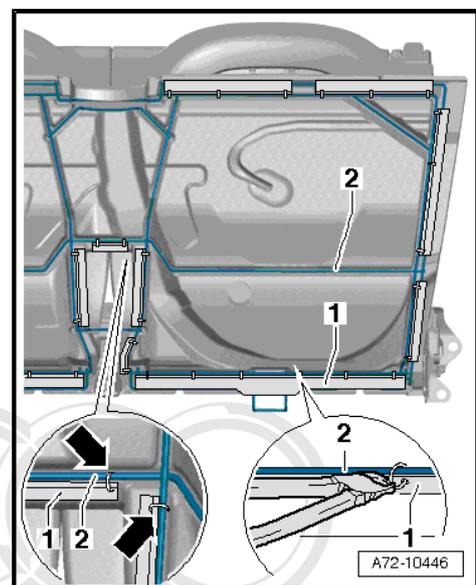
Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:



WARNING

Ends of upholstery clips must face in direction of upholstery after installing and must be bent correctly. Otherwise, there is a risk of injury.

- Use new upholstery clips.
- Close wire clips with upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634- .
- Place the upholstery clips in their original locations.



2.4.3 Backrest



Note

The left 1/2 and right 1/2 backrests can only be removed and installed together in the vehicle.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for the content of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

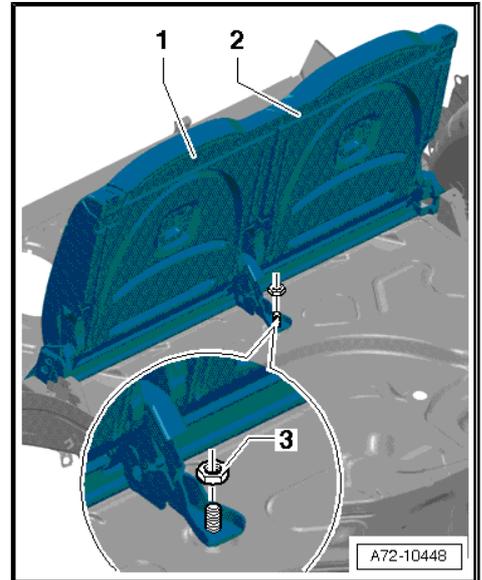
- Fold the front seat backrest forward as far as possible.
- Move the front seats forward as far as possible.
- Remove the seat bench. Refer to [⇒ "2.4.1 Bench Seat", page 406](#) .
- Remove the luggage compartment floor covering.
- Remove left and right side trim. Refer to [⇒ "2.4.7 Rear Side Trim", page 213](#) .
- Release 1/2 left and 1/2 right backrests and fold them forward.



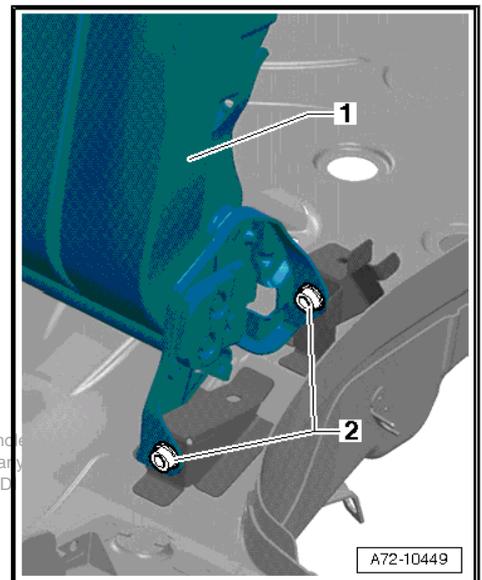
Caution

Do not kneel or support on folded backrest.

- Remove nut -3-.
- 1 - Left 1/2 backrest
- 2 - 1/2 right backrest



- Remove bolts -2- (quantity: 4).
- 1 - Left 1/2 backrest
- Fold 1/2 left and 1/2 right backrests back into normal position.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin

- Remove the bolt -2-.
- Remove seat belt latch -1-.
- Remove 1/2 left and 1/2 right backrests from vehicle together.

Installation



Caution

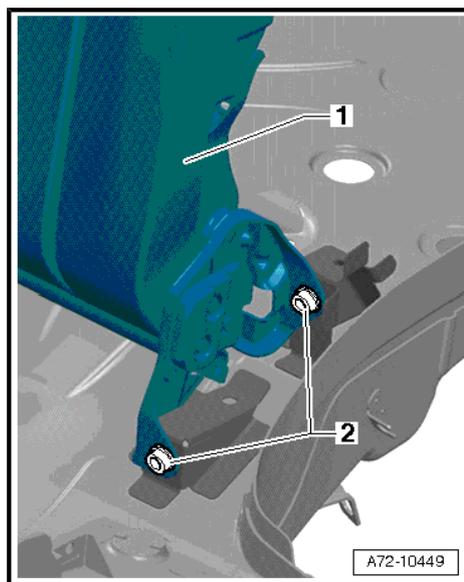
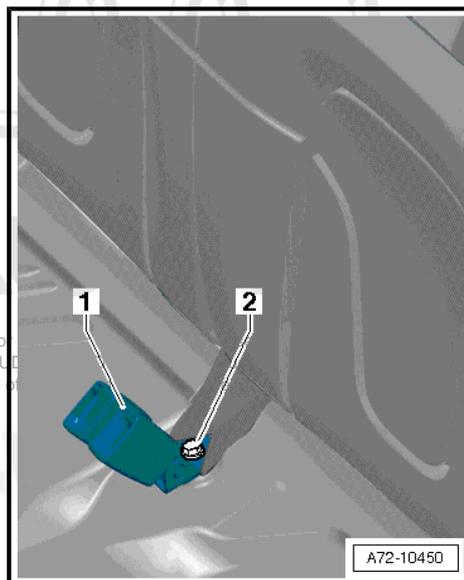
Do not kneel or support on folded backrest.



Note

When installing left and right 1/2 backrest, follow threaded connection installation sequence.

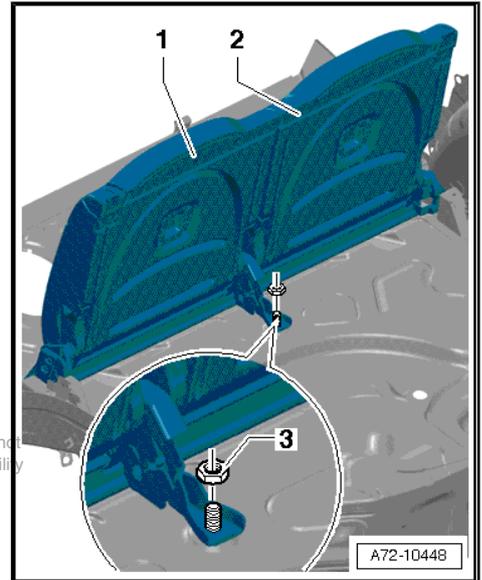
- Lift the 1/2 left and 1/2 right backrest into the vehicle.
- Install the seat belt latch -1- and tighten the screw and nut -2- hand-tight.
- Install bolts -2- (quantity: 4) and tighten to the specification.



- Install nut -3- and tighten to the specification.

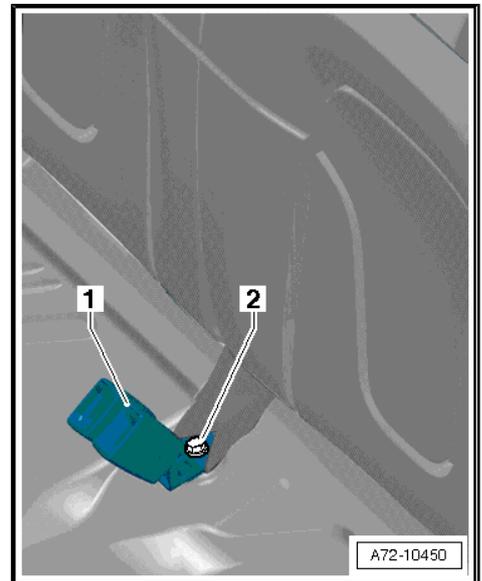


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Tighten the screw and nut -2- to the tightening specification.
Further installation is performed in the reverse order of removal.

For the correct tightening specifications, refer to
[⇒ "1.7.4 1/2 Left and Right Backrest Assembly Overview", page 311](#)



2.4.4 Center Bearing Cover Cap

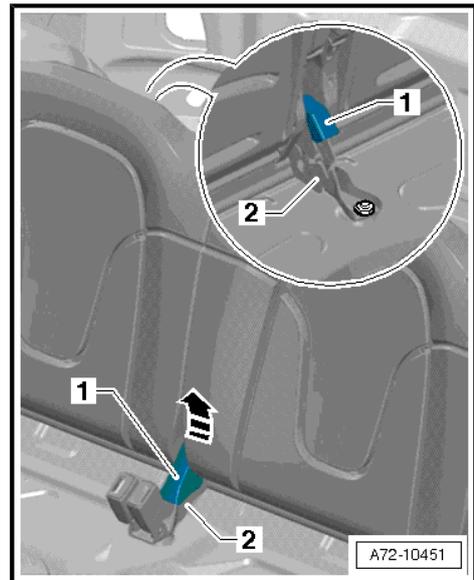
Removing

- Remove the seat bench. Refer to
[⇒ "2.4.1 Bench Seat", page 406](#) .

- Disengage cover cap -1- at center bearing -2-.
- Remove cover cap -1- up and toward the front in direction of -arrow-.

Installation

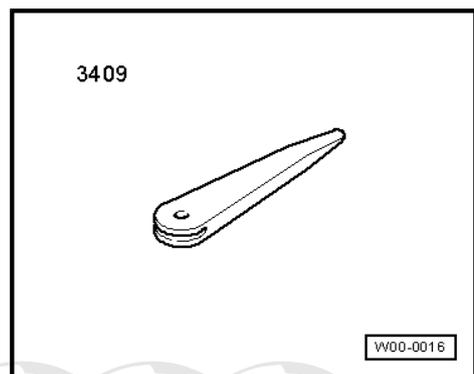
Install in reverse order of removal.



2.4.5 Left or Right Release

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



Note

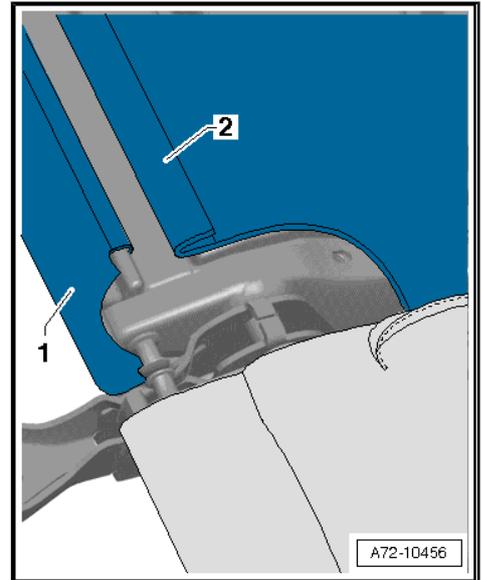
Removal and installation of the left release is described for a left 1/2 backrest. Removal and installation of the right release is the same.

Removing

- Remove the backrest. Refer to ⇒ [“2.4.3 Backrest”, page 408](#)
- Remove left trim. Refer to ⇒ [“2.4.6 Left or Right Trim”, page 415](#) .

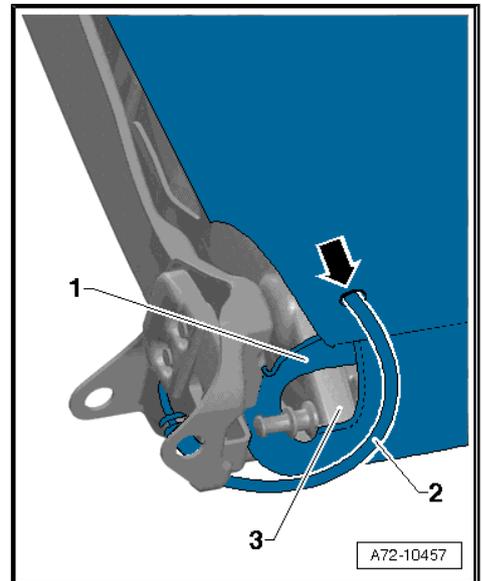
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Disengage piping on front part of cover -1- from clamping strip on rear of cover -2-.



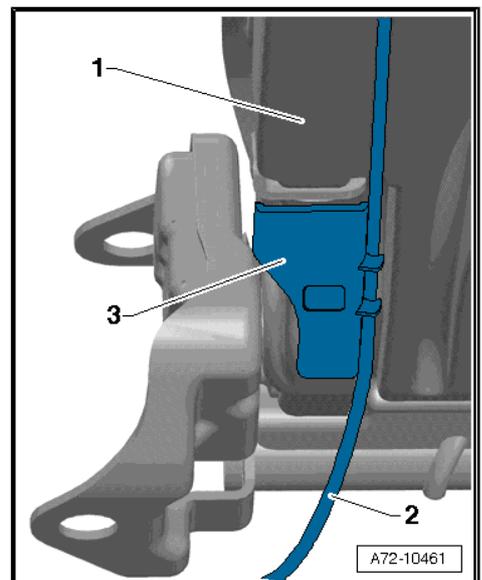
- Disengage tab on front part of cover -1- at backrest frame -3-.
- Open cover zip fastener.
- Fold cover to side.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

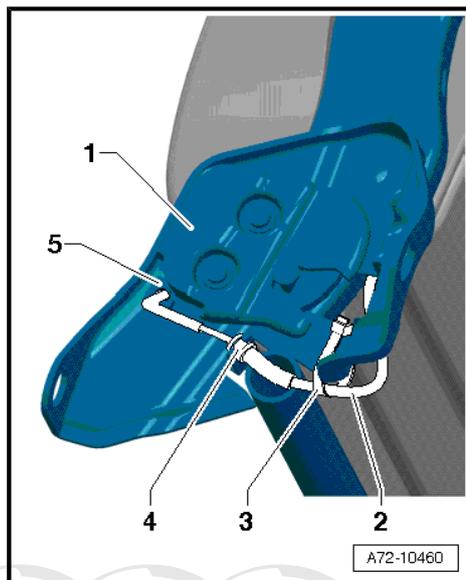


- Remove filler piece -3-. Refer to [⇒ "2.4.8 Outer Left or Right Spacer", page 418](#).

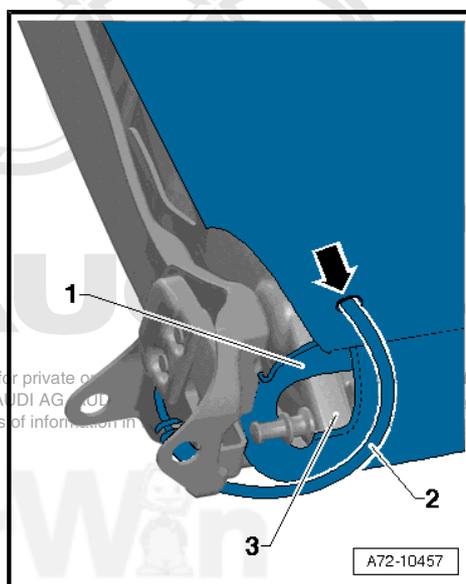
- 1 - Backrest shell
- 2 - Release cable



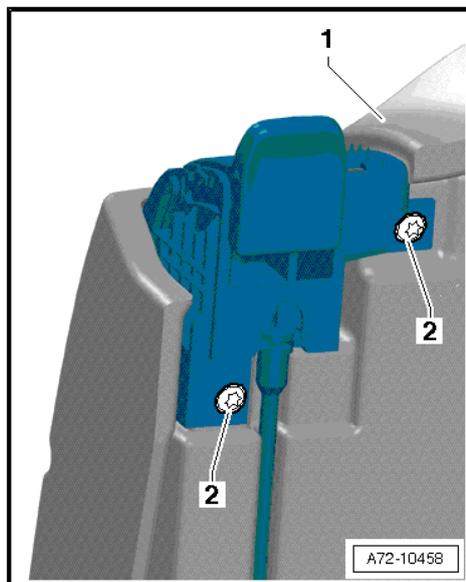
- Open cable tie -3-.
- Unclip release cable -2- from bracket -4-.
- Disengage release cable hook -2- on lever -5-.



- Thread release cable -2- through opening in back of cover -arrow-.



- Pull the cover -1- up just enough so that the screws -2- are visible.
- Remove the bolts -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private use is permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. All rights reserved with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

- Loosen upholstery from self-adhesive strips -4- on backrest frame in release area.
- Press upholster -1- to side in release area -2- until bolt -3- is visible.
- Remove the bolt -3-.
- Remove release with release cable -2- from backrest shell -5-.

 **Note**

Release cable is not designed to be disconnected from the release.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

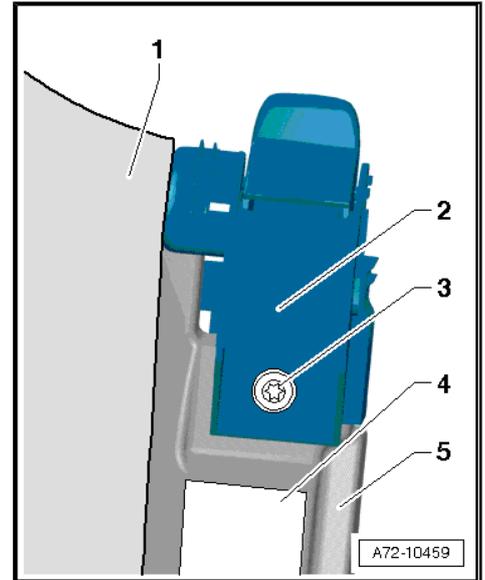
the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- It is not possible to adjust the release cable.

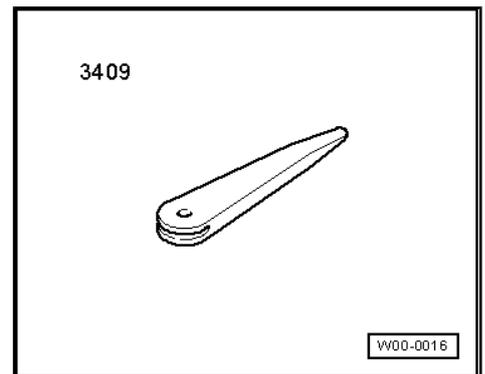
For the correct tightening specifications, refer to
 ⇒ **"1.7.5 Left or Right Release Assembly Overview", page 313**



2.4.6 Left or Right Trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-

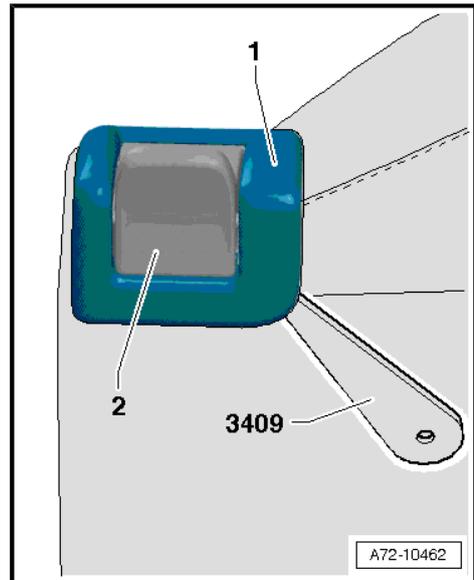


 **Note**

Removal and installation of the left trim is described for a left 1/2 backrest. Removal and installation of the right trim is the same.

Removing

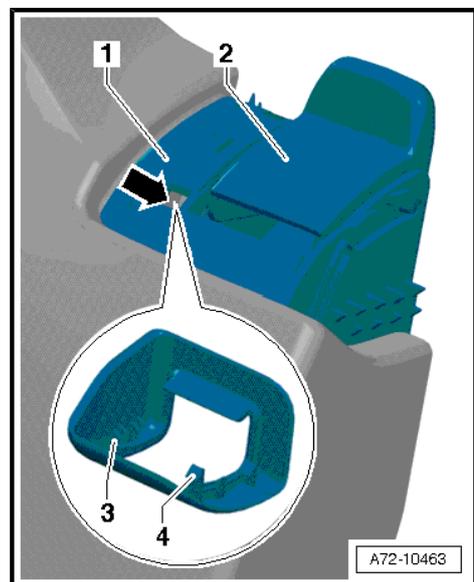
- Unclip right rear trim -1- starting at the bottom with Trim Removal Wedge -3409- .
- Press release button -2- forward (in direction of travel) as far as stop and hold in this position.
- Pry trim -1- from release with Trim Removal Wedge -3409- .
- Remove trim -1- toward rear.



Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

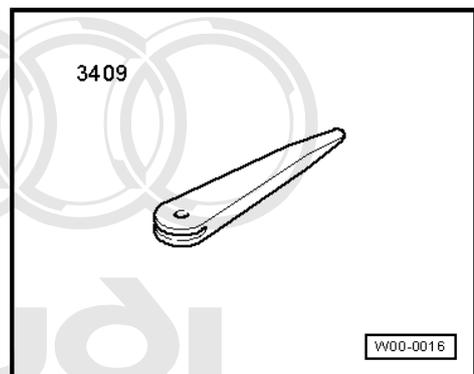
- First engage retaining tab -4- on trim -3- in opening -arrow- on release -1-.
- Press button -2- on release -1- forward (in direction of travel) as far as stop and hold in this position.
- Press trim down and engage with release.
- Make sure the all retaining tabs are engaged.
- Make sure the opening on cover is covered correctly and cover does not have any wrinkles in this area.



2.4.7 Release Button

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



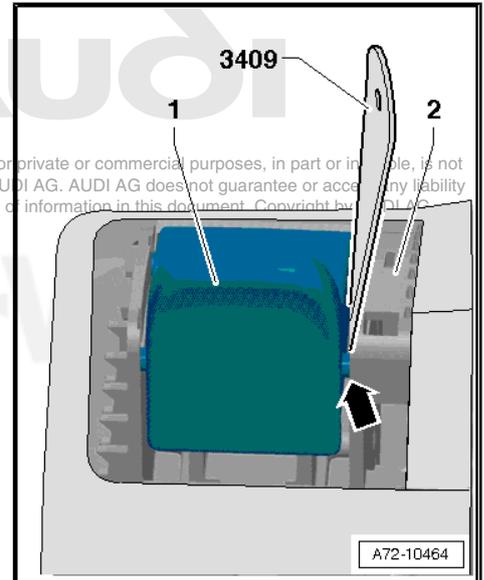
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

 **Note**

Removal and installation of the left button is described for a left 1/2 backrest. Removal and installation of the right button is the same.

Removing

- Remove left or right trim. Refer to [⇒ "2.4.6 Left or Right Trim", page 415](#) .
- Using Trim Removal Wedge -3409- , pry button -1- out of release -2-, beginning at back.
- Beginning prying with the pins facing the center of the vehicle -arrow-.

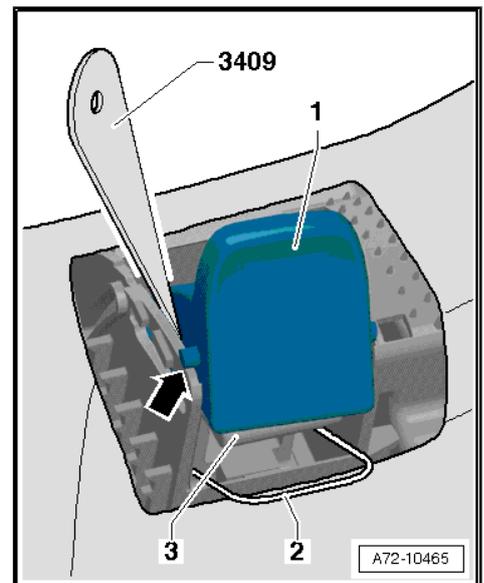


- Then pry pins facing in direction of vehicle exterior -arrow-.

 **Note**

After prying rear pins out of release, leg spring -2- and rocker -3- disengage themselves from the button -1-.

- Then pry front pin buttons out of release in the same sequence using the Trim Removal Wedge -3409- .
- Remove button from rocker.

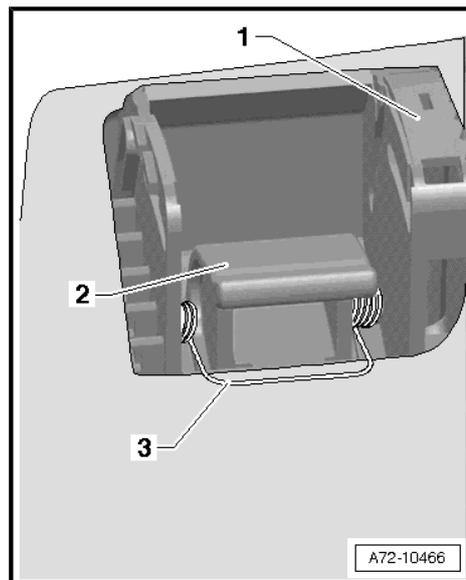


Installation

- Slide button from behind onto rocker -2- and leg spring -3-.
- 1 - Release
- Using trim removal wedge -3409-, engage left and right rear pins in release.
- Using trim removal wedge -3409-, engage left and right front pins in release.
- Make sure the leg spring is engaged correctly in the button.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written consent of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for errors or omissions in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

⇒ ["2.4.6 Left or Right Trim", page 415](#)



2.4.8 Outer Left or Right Spacer



Removal and installation of the left outer filler piece is described for a left 1/2 backrest. Removal and installation of the right outer filler piece is the same.

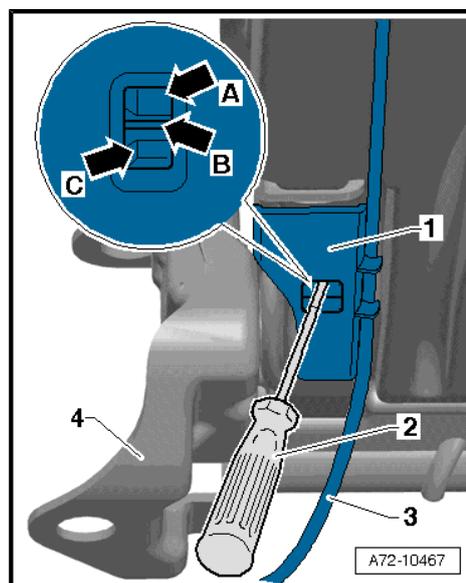
Removing

- Unclip filler piece -1- at anchor -4- using a screwdriver -2-.
- Insert screwdriver -2- in upper opening -arrow A- and press first retaining tab in direction of center bar -arrow B-.
- Then insert screwdriver -2- in lower opening -arrow C- and press second retaining tab in direction of center bar -arrow B-.
- Remove filler piece -1- from release cable -3-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Make sure the filler piece is engaged correctly with anchor.



2.4.9 Inner Left or Right Spacer

The left and right inner filler pieces are removed and installed the same way the left and right outer filler pieces are. Refer to ⇒ ["2.4.8 Outer Left or Right Spacer", page 418](#).

2.4.10 Top Tether Child Seat Anchorage

Child seat anchor (Top Tether), removing and installing, refer to
 ⇒ [“3.3.2 Top Tether Child Seat Anchorage”, page 93](#)

2.4.11 Backrest Frame

Removing

- Remove the backrest. Refer to ⇒ [“2.4.3 Backrest”, page 408](#) .
- Remove center bearing cover cap. Refer to
 ⇒ [“2.4.4 Center Bearing Cover Cap”, page 411](#) .
- Remove trim. Refer to
 ⇒ [“2.4.6 Left or Right Trim”, page 415](#) .

Vehicles with Top Tether

- Remove top tether. Refer to
 ⇒ [“3.3.2 Top Tether Child Seat Anchorage”, page 93](#) .
- Remove cover with upholstery. Refer to
 ⇒ [“2.3.3 Backrest Cover and Upholstery”, page 444](#) .

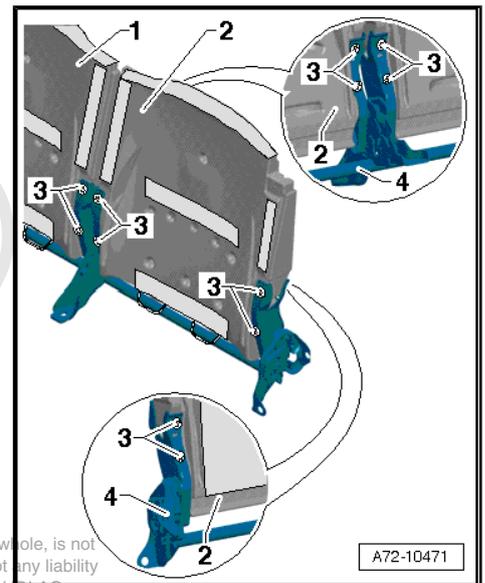
Procedure for All Vehicles

- Remove release. Refer to
 ⇒ [“2.4.5 Left or Right Release”, page 412](#) .
- Remove filler pieces. Refer to
 ⇒ [“2.4.8 Outer Left or Right Spacer”, page 418](#) .
- Remove the bolts -3-.
- Remove left backrest shell -2- and right backrest shell -1- up
 out of backrest frame guides -4-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.

For the correct tightening specifications, refer to
 ⇒ [“1.7.7 Backrest Frame and Panel Assembly Overview”,
 page 314](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.4.12 Backrest Panel



The backrest shell is removed and installed the same way the backrest frame is.

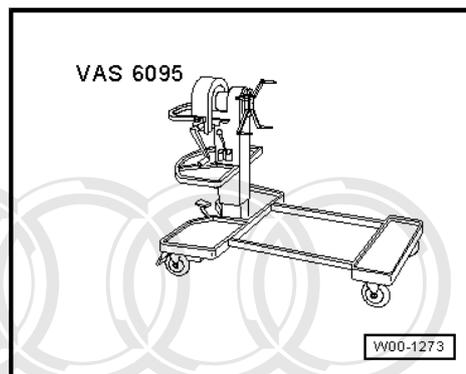
Backrest shell, removing and installing, refer to
 ⇒ [“2.4.11 Backrest Frame”, page 419](#)

For the correct tightening specifications, refer to
 ⇒ [“1.7.7 Backrest Frame and Panel Assembly Overview”,
 page 314](#)

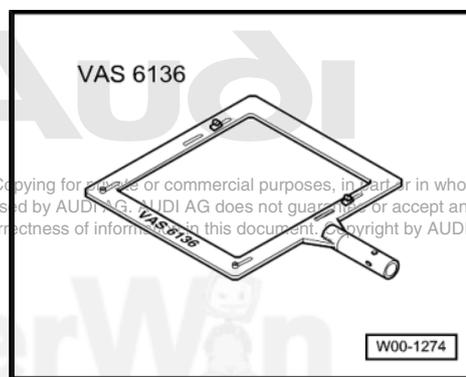
3 Special Tools

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Engine and transmission holder -VAS 6095-

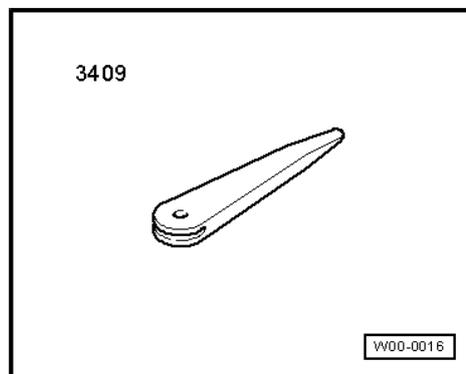


- ◆ Fixture for seat repair -VAS 6136-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



74 – Seat Upholstery, Covers

1 Description and Operation

⇒ [“1.1 Front Seat Covers and Padding”, page 421](#)

⇒ [“1.2 Rear Seat Covers and Upholstery, Coupe Only”, page 427](#)

1.1 Front Seat Covers and Padding

⇒ [“1.1.1 Seat Pan Cover and Upholstery Assembly Overview”, page 421](#)

⇒ [“1.1.2 Backrest Cover and Upholstery Assembly Overview”, page 423](#)

⇒ [“1.1.3 Seat Heating Element Assembly Overview”, page 424](#)

⇒ [“1.1.4 Backrest Heating Element Assembly Overview”, page 425](#)

⇒ [“1.1.5 Headrest Cover and Padding Assembly Overview”, page 426](#)

1.1.1 Seat Pan Cover and Upholstery Assembly Overview

The covers and upholstery are described for a front seat (electric seat). The covers and upholstery for a manual front seat are the same and are not described separately.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin

1 - Retaining strip

2 - Cover with upholstery

- Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.1.1 Seat Pan Cover and Upholstery", page 429](#)

3 - Cushion clamp

- For securing cover to upholstery
- Always replace if removed
- Install in same location as before removal

4 - Retaining strip

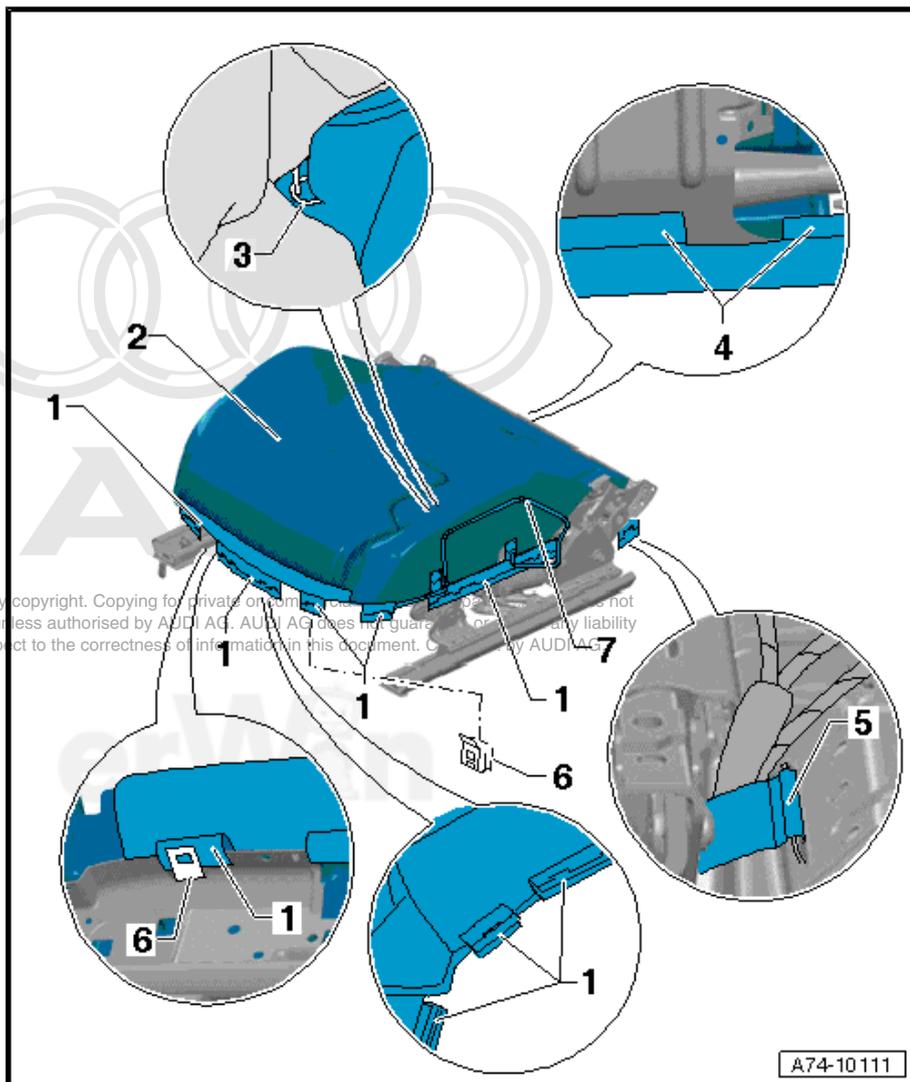
5 - Retaining strip

6 - Spring clamp

- Quantity: 2/seat
- Connected to seat pan

7 - Retaining bracket

- For sill side trim
- Assembly Overview, refer to [⇒ "1.4.10 Sill Side Trim Retaining Bracket Assembly Overview", page 261](#)
- Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.1.8 Sill Side Retaining Bracket Trim", page 324](#)



1.1.2 Backrest Cover and Upholstery Overview

1 - Retaining strip

2 - Side Airbag

- Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ [“3.7.1 Side Airbag”, page 106](#)

3 - Side airbag pocket

- Sewn into cover

4 - Wiring

- For side airbag

5 - Handle

- Coupe only
- Manual front seat:
- ◆ Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ [“2.1.16 Trim with Entry Assistance Handle, Coupe Only”, page 334](#)
- Power front seat:
- ◆ Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ [“2.2.12 Trim with Entry Assistance Handle, Coupe Only through 10.06”, page 362](#)

6 - Trim

- Coupe only
- Manual front seat:
- ◆ Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ [“2.1.16 Trim with Entry Assistance Handle, Coupe Only”, page 334](#)
- Power front seat:
- ◆ Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ [“2.2.12 Trim with Entry Assistance Handle, Coupe Only through 10.06”, page 362](#)

7 - Cover with upholstery

- Coupe only
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.1.3 Backrest Cover and Upholstery”, page 432](#)

8 - Retaining loop with push button

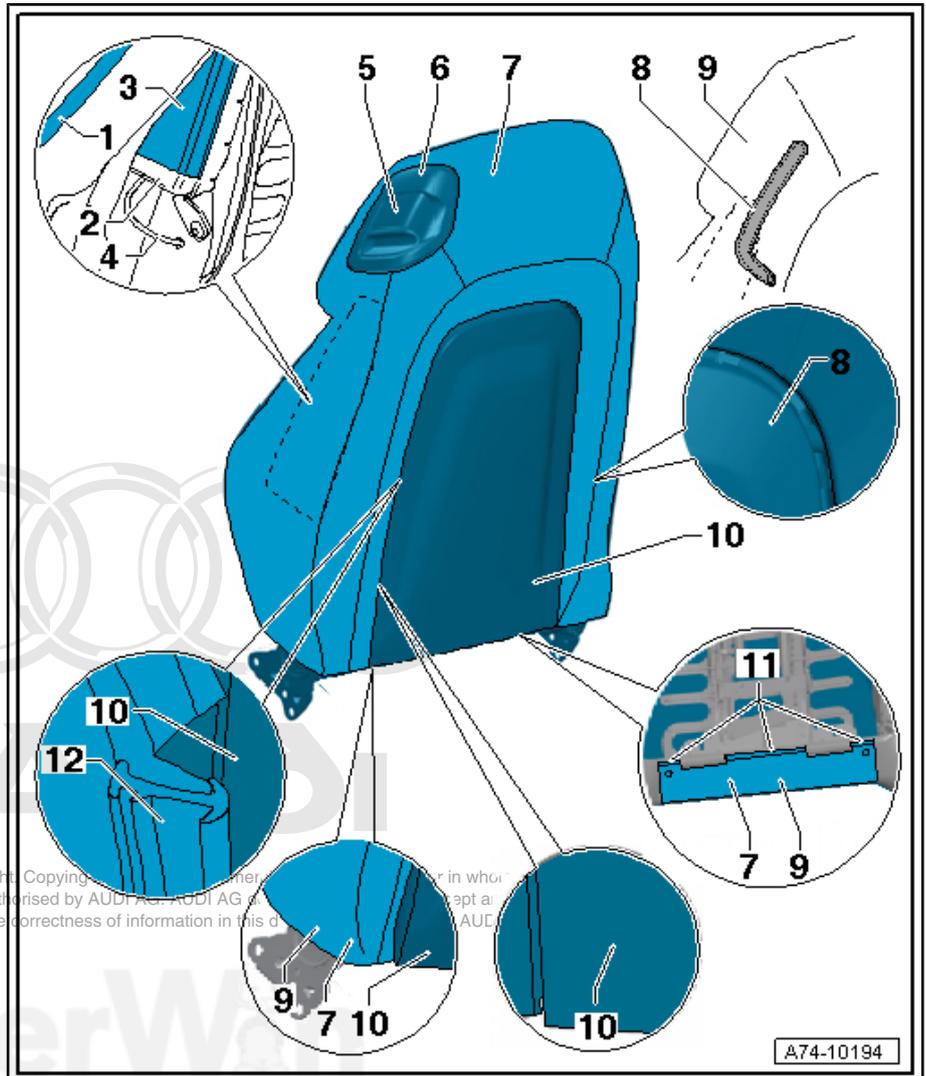
- For seat belt
- Roadster only

9 - Cover with upholstery

- Roadster only
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.1.3 Backrest Cover and Upholstery”, page 432](#)

10 - Backrest cover

- Manual front seat:
- ◆ Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.1.13 Backrest Cover”, page 331](#)
- Power front seat:



- ◆ Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.2.10 Backrest Cover"](#), page 356

11 - Retaining strip

- Quantity: 3

12 - Retaining strip

- Circular
- Securing backrest covering to backrest cover

1.1.3 Seat Heating Element Assembly Overview

1 - Cushion

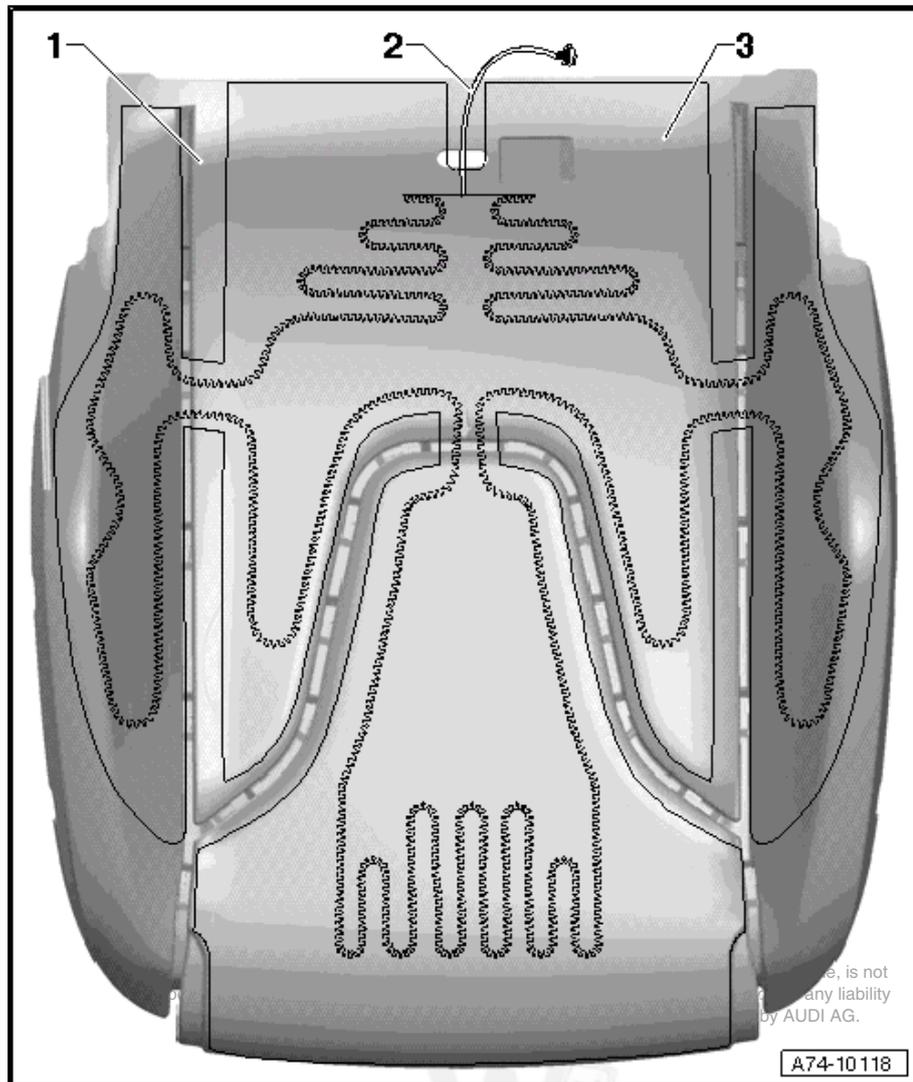
- For seat pan

2 - Wiring

- Firmly connected to seat heating element

3 - Seat heating element

- Bonded with upholstery
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ ["2.1.5 Seat Heating Element"](#), page 435



1.1.4 Backrest Heating Element Assembly Overview

1 - Cushion

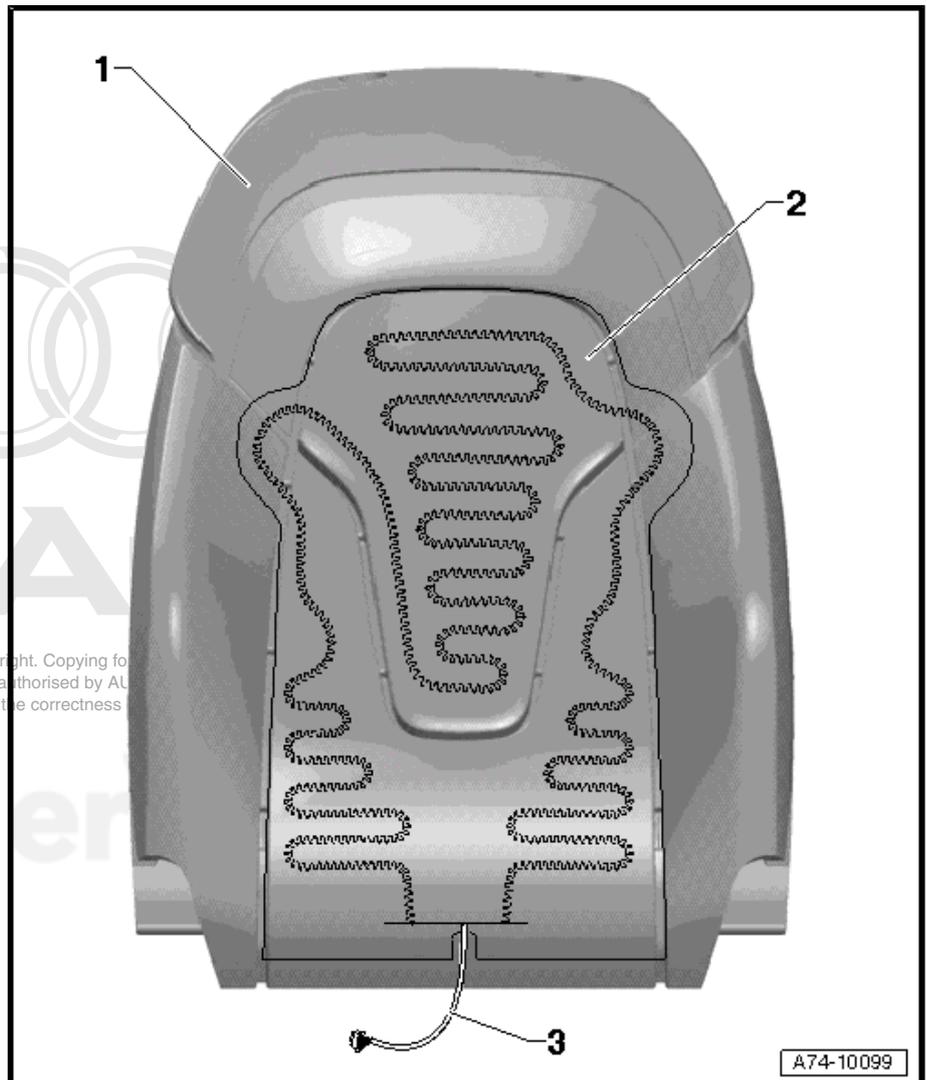
- For backrest

2 - Backrest heating element

- Bonded with upholstery
- Removing and Installing, refer to [⇒ "2.1.6 Backrest Heating Element", page 436](#)

3 - Wiring

- Firmly connected to seat heating element



Protected by copyright. Copying for permitted unless authorised by AL with respect to the correctness

1.1.5 Headrest Cover and Padding Assembly Overview

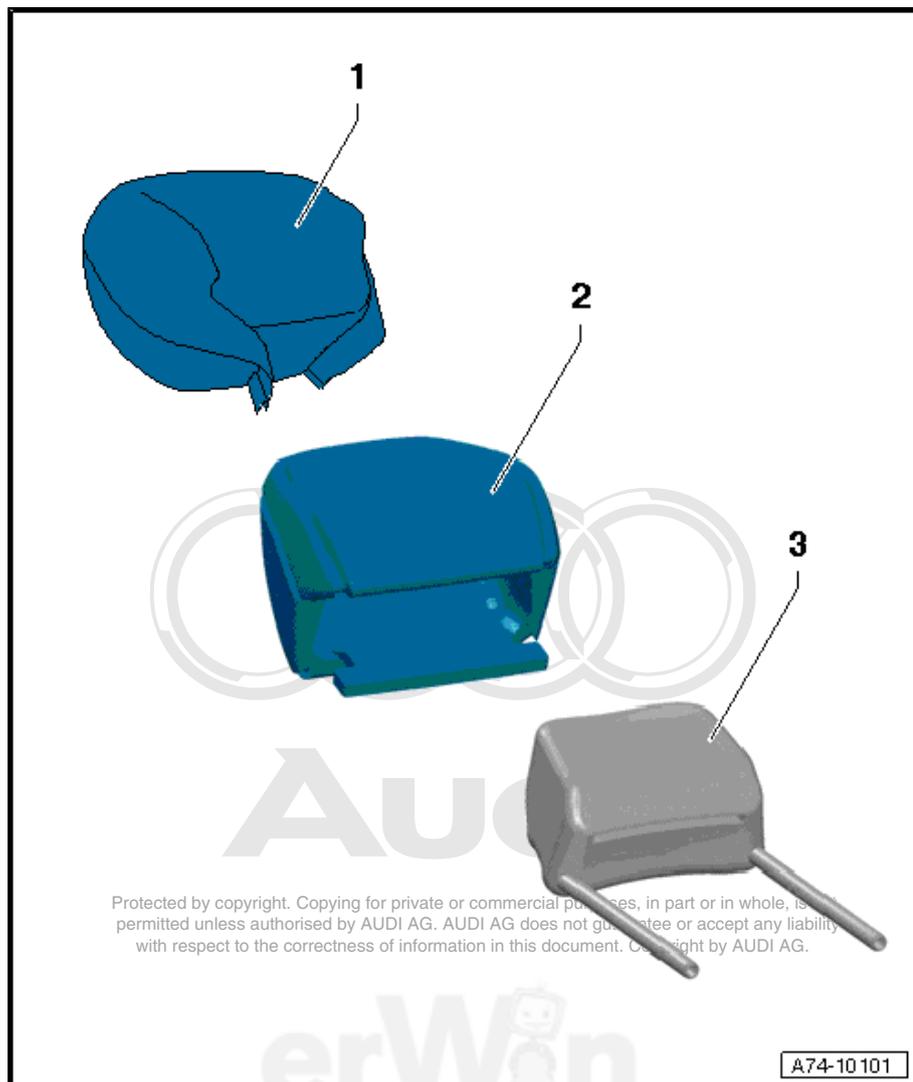
1 - Cover

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to ["2.1.7 Headrest Cover and Upholstery with Locking Mechanism"](#), page 436

2 - Cushion

- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to ["2.1.7 Headrest Cover and Upholstery with Locking Mechanism"](#), page 436

3 - Headrest support



1.2 Rear Seat Covers and Upholstery, Coupe Only

⇒ "1.2.1 Bench Seat Cover and Upholstery Assembly Overview", page 427

⇒ "1.2.1 Bench Seat Cover and Upholstery Assembly Overview", page 427

1.2.1 Bench Seat Cover and Upholstery Assembly Overview

1 - Cover with upholstery

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ "2.3.1 Bench Seat Cover and Upholstery", page 443
-

2 - Cushion clamp

- Quantity: 48
- Replacing
- Install in same location as before removal



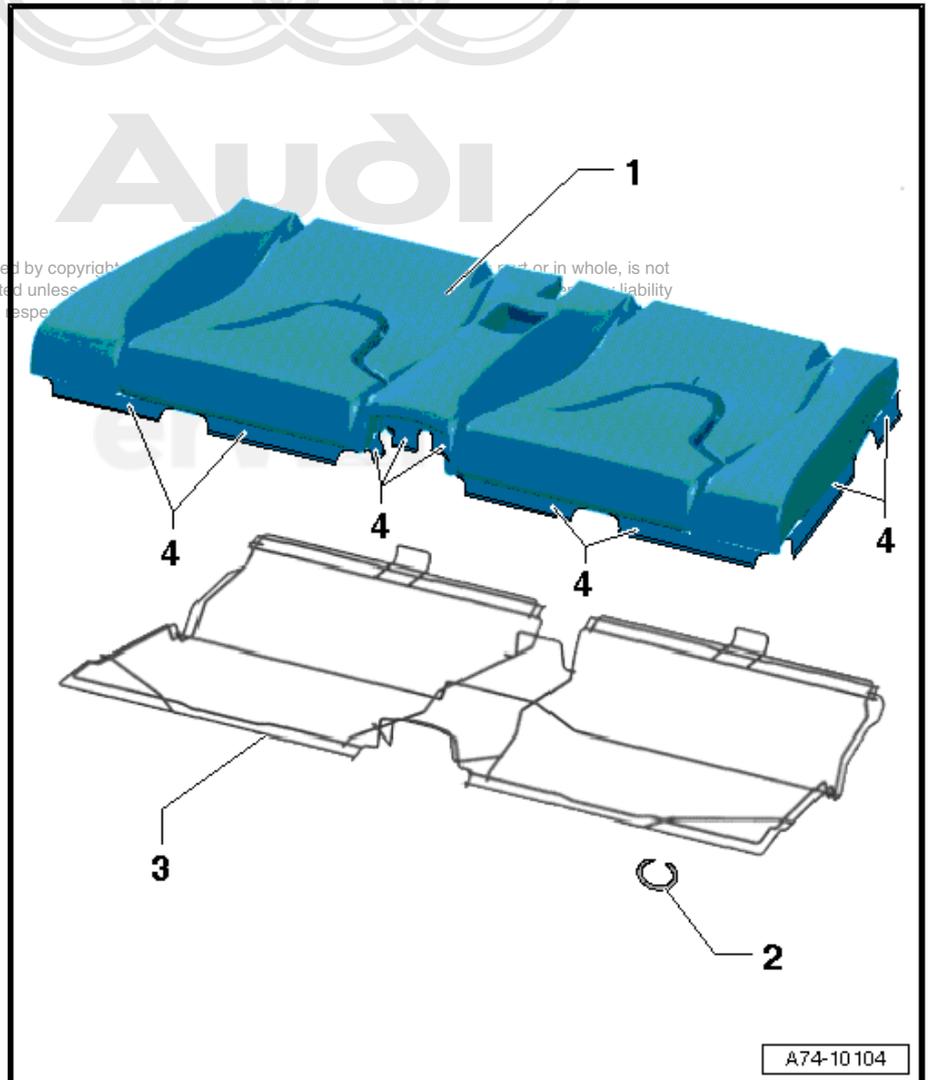
WARNING

Ends of upholstery clips must face in direction of upholstery after installing and must be bent correctly. Otherwise, there is a risk of injury.

3 - Seat frame

4 - Molding

- Sewn into cover



1.2.2 Backrest Cover and Upholstery Assembly Overview

1 - Cover with right upholstery

- Removing and Installing, refer to ["2.3.3 Backrest Cover and Upholstery"](#), page 444

2 - Top Tether

- Versions for specific countries:
- Removing and Installing, refer to ["2.3.3 Top Tether Child Seat Anchorages Assembly Overview"](#), page 63

3 - Cover with left upholstery

- Removing and Installing, refer to ["2.3.3 Backrest Cover and Upholstery"](#), page 444

4 - Trim

- For release
- Removing and Installing, refer to ["1.7.5 Left or Right Release Assembly Overview"](#), page 313

5 - Retaining strip

- Sewn onto front part of cover

6 - Retaining strip

- Sewn onto rear part of cover

7 - Release cable

- For release

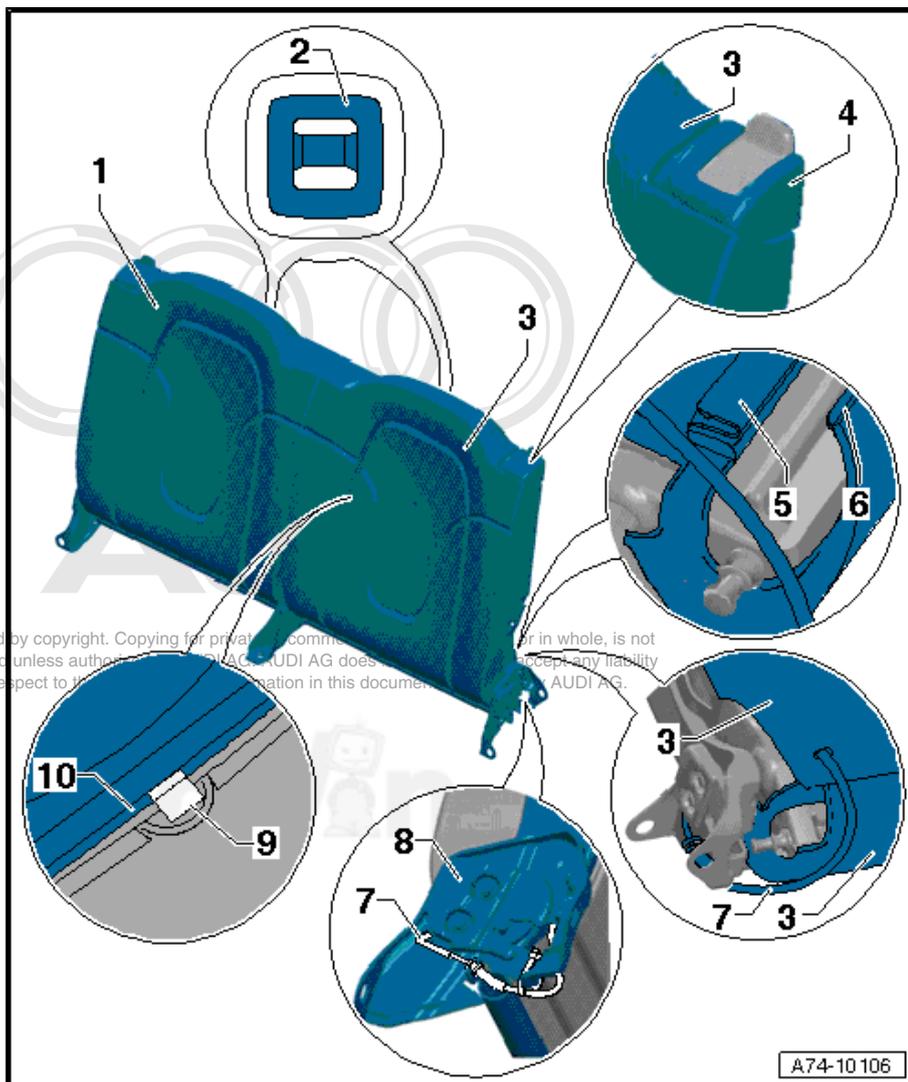
8 - Fitting

9 - Clip

- In foam in upholstery

10 - Retaining strip

- Sewn into cover



A74-10 106

2 Removal and Installation

- ⇒ ["2.1 Front Seat Covers and Padding", page 429](#)
- ⇒ ["2.2 Bucket Seat Covers and Upholstery", page 439](#)
- ⇒ ["2.3 Rear Seat Covers and Upholstery, Coupe Only", page 443](#)

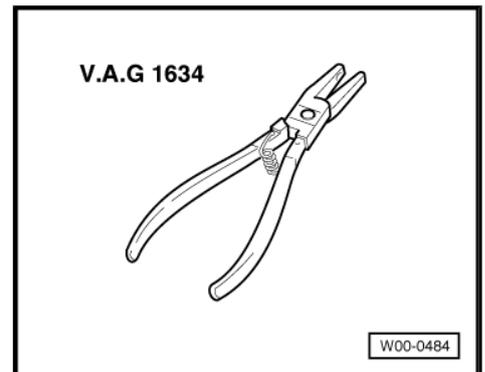
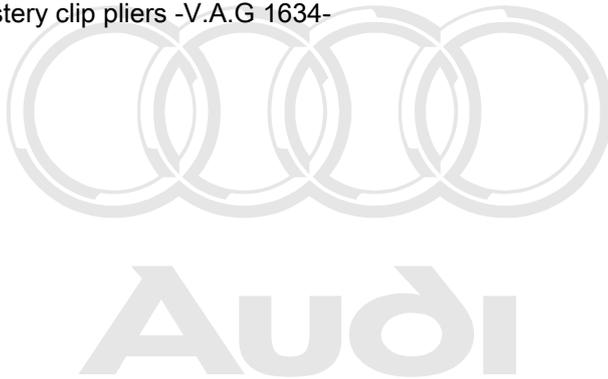
2.1 Front Seat Covers and Padding

- ⇒ ["2.1.1 Seat Pan Cover and Upholstery", page 429](#)
- ⇒ ["2.1.2 Seat Pan Cover, Separating from Upholstery", page 431](#)
- ⇒ ["2.1.3 Backrest Cover and Upholstery", page 432](#)
- ⇒ ["2.1.4 Backrest Cover, Separating from Upholstery", page 434](#)
- ⇒ ["2.1.5 Seat Heating Element", page 435](#)
- ⇒ ["2.1.6 Backrest Heating Element", page 436](#)
- ⇒ ["2.1.7 Headrest Cover and Upholstery with Locking Mechanism", page 436](#)

2.1.1 Seat Pan Cover and Upholstery

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634-



Removing is protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

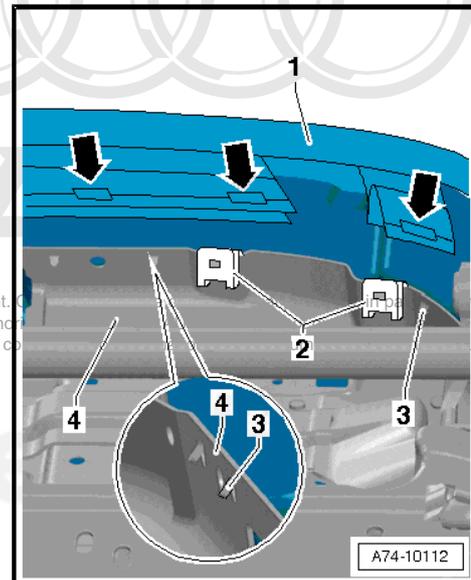


WARNING

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*

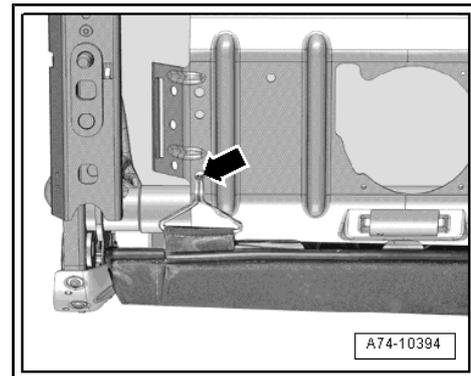
- Remove backrest:
- ◆ Manual front seat, refer to ["2.1.12 Front Backrest", page 327](#)
- ◆ Power front seat, refer to ["2.2.9 Front Backrest", page 352](#)
- Remove retaining bracket:

- ◆ Manual front seat, refer to
⇒ [“2.1.8 Sill Side Retaining Bracket Trim”, page 324](#)
- ◆ Power front seat, refer to
⇒ [“2.1.8 Sill Side Retaining Bracket Trim”, page 324](#)
- Disengage clamping strips -1- in front and side area from hooks -3- and spring clips -2-.
- Do not damage slits -arrows- in retaining strips when doing so.
- Make sure the spring clips -2- remain on seat pan -4-.
- If this is not the case, place spring clips on seat pan before installing cover.



Protected by copyright. No reproduction, copying, distribution, or other use is permitted unless authorized in writing by Audi AG. Audi AG is not liable for any liability.

- Unhook the tension clip -arrow- on the left and right sides, if equipped.



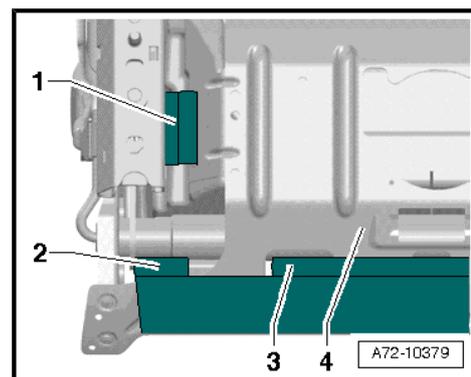
- Disengage retaining strips -1-, -2- and -3- on back of seat pan -4-.
- Remove cover with upholstery from seat pan.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

WARNING

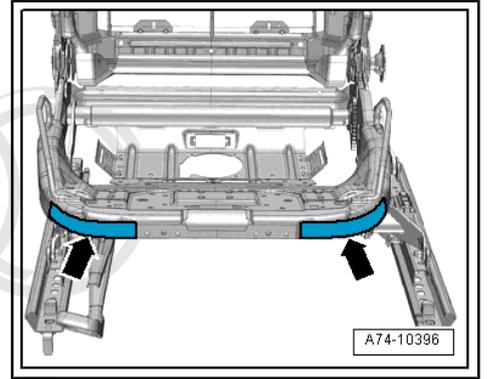
- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ [“1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures”, page 38](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must “discharge static electricity”. For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*



- Apply two-sided tape -arrows- on the lower seat frame as illustrated; two-sided tape, refer to the Parts Catalog.
- Line up the lower seat frame cushion and tape it secure.
- Secure the cover to the lower seat frame starting at the front and then pull it toward the rear so that it is tight.

 **Note**

Guide the tensioning strap for the seat cover under the bracket on the LATCH anchor and attach it to the LATCH cross bar.



- Make sure the retaining strips engage correctly and the cover is not wrinkled.

 **Note**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.

- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

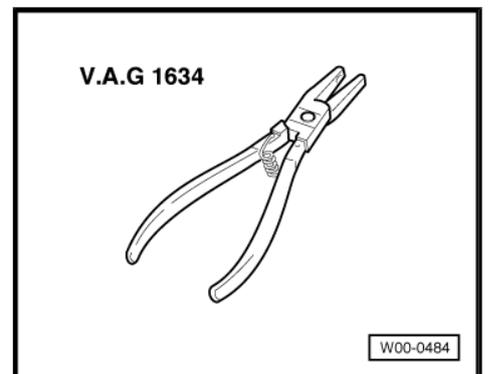
Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again.

2.1.2 Seat Pan Cover, Separating from Upholstery

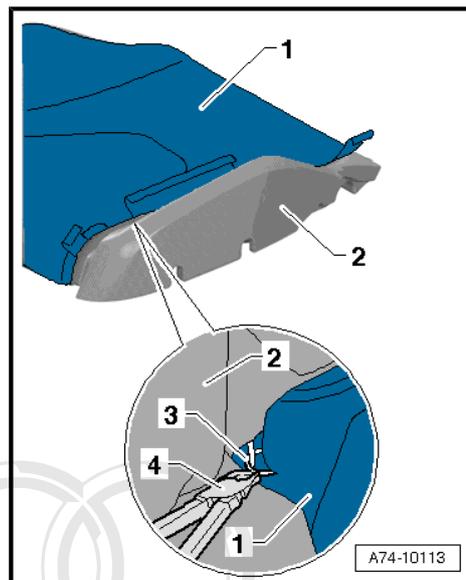
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634-



Removing

- Remove cover and upholstery from seat pan. Refer to [⇒ "2.1.1 Seat Pan Cover and Upholstery", page 429](#).
- Remove the cover -1- from the upholstery -2- as far as possible.
- Cut through the upholstery clips -3- using pliers -4-.

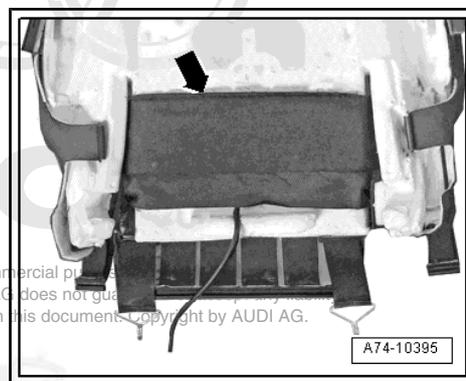


- On vehicle from 09.09, pull the seat cushion out of the cloth loop -arrow-.
- Remove cover from cushion.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

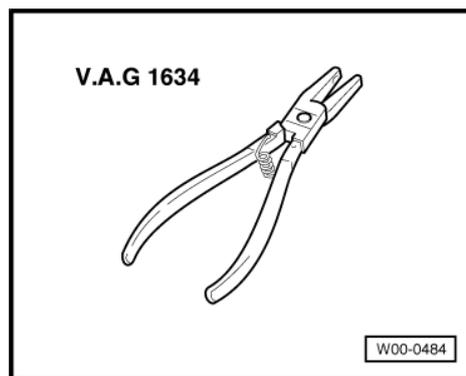
- Use new upholstery clips.
- Close wire clips with upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634-.
- Place the upholstery clips in their original locations.



2.1.3 Backrest Cover and Upholstery

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634-



Removing

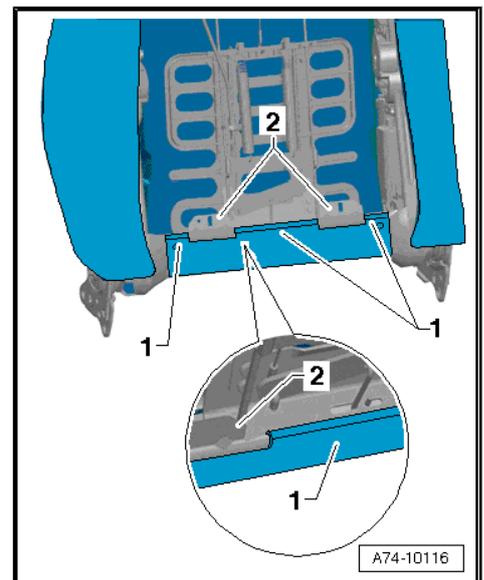


WARNING

- ◆ *Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ ["1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures"](#), page 38 .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.*

- Remove backrest:
 - ◆ Manual front seat, refer to ⇒ ["2.1.12 Front Backrest"](#), page 327
 - ◆ Power front seat, refer to ⇒ ["2.2.9 Front Backrest"](#), page 352
- Remove headrests.
 - ◆ Manual front seat, refer to ⇒ ["2.2.16 Headrests with Locking Mechanism"](#), page 368
 - ◆ Power front seat, refer to ⇒ ["2.2.16 Headrests with Locking Mechanism"](#), page 368
- Remove backrest panel:
 - ◆ Manual front seat, refer to ⇒ ["2.2.10 Backrest Cover"](#), page 356
 - ◆ Power front seat, refer to ⇒ ["2.2.10 Backrest Cover"](#), page 356
- Disengage lower retaining strips -1- (quantity: 3) on backrest frame -2-.
- Remove side airbag. Refer to ⇒ ["3.7.1 Side Airbag"](#), page 106 .
- Remove airbag from pocket and re-engage airbag in backrest frame.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- On vehicle from 04.08, remove the clip -4- and pull the strap -3- on the backrest cover -2- through the opening in the backrest cushion -1-.
- Remove cover with upholstery from backrest frame.

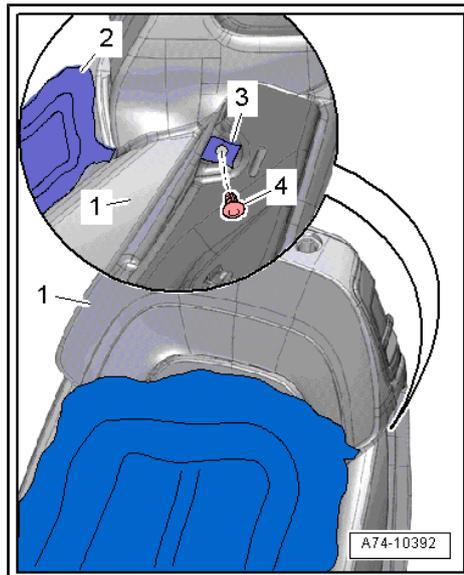
Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:



WARNING

- ◆ **Follow all safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Restraint System Components, Safety Precautions and Testing Procedures", page 38 .**
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnical components (for example, connecting electrical connector), the person handling them must "discharge static electricity". For example, by briefly touching the door striker pin.**



- Make sure the retaining strips engage correctly and the cover is not wrinkled.
- On vehicle from 04.08, pull the strap -3- on the backrest cover -2- through the opening in the backrest cushion -1- and attach it to the backrest frame with a new clip -4-.



Note

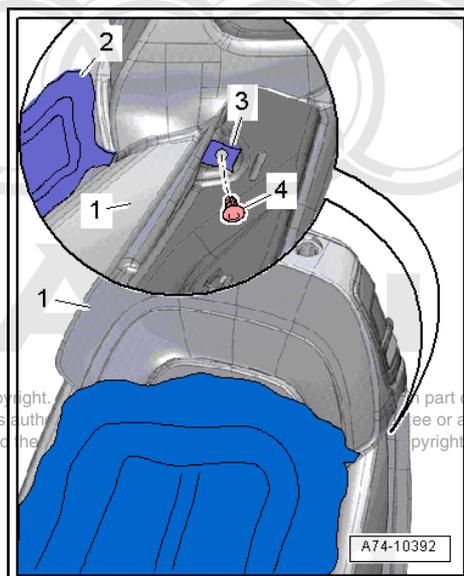
Make sure the connectors are installed all the way in and are secure.

- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

Connect the battery with the ignition switched on. Pyrotechnic components could deploy after connecting the battery if they were not repaired correctly. Individuals must not be inside the vehicle when connecting the battery.

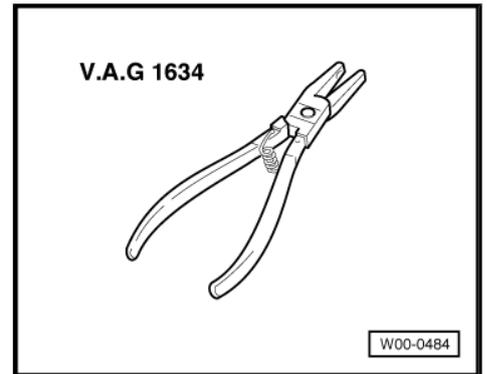


- Connect battery ground cable with ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Removal and Installation .
- If Airbag Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) -K75- indicates a fault after installation, DTC memory must be checked, deleted and checked again.

2.1.4 Backrest Cover, Separating from Upholstery

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634-



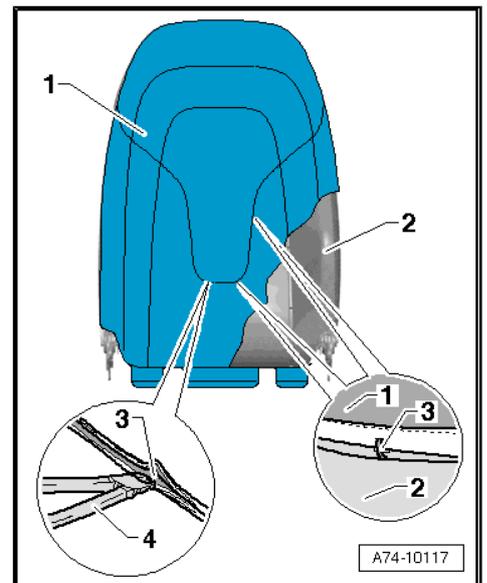
Removing

- Remove cover and upholstery from backrest. Refer to [⇒ "2.1.3 Backrest Cover and Upholstery", page 432](#) .
- Remove the cover -1- from the upholstery -2- as far as possible.
- Cut through the upholstery clips -3- using pliers -4-.
- Remove the cover -1- from cushion -2-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- When installing new upholstery clips, use Upholstery Clip Pliers -V.A.G 1634- .



2.1.5 Seat Heating Element

Removing

- Remove cover and upholstery from seat pan. Refer to [⇒ "2.1.1 Seat Pan Cover and Upholstery", page 429](#) .
- Disconnect cover from upholstery. Refer to [⇒ "2.1.2 Seat Pan Cover, Separating from Upholstery", page 431](#) .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability in respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Cut wire -2- off of old heating element -3-.

 **Note**

The old seat heating element remains on the upholstery -1- and the new seat heating element is bonded over it.

Installation

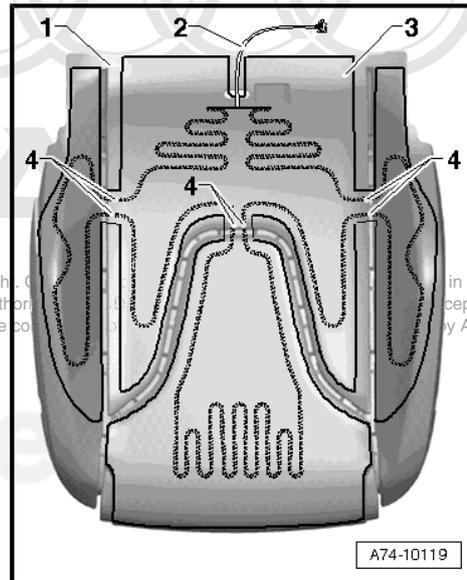
- Align new seat heating element -3- on upholstery -1-.
- Remove protective foil and bond new seat heating element -3- to upholstery -1- and the old seat heating element.

 **Caution**

Make sure the new seat heating element is affixed to the old heating element.

- Route connecting wires at locations -4- in bottom of gaps, avoiding crossover.

Further installation is performed in the reverse order of removal.



2.1.6 Backrest Heating Element

Removing

- Remove cover and padding from backrest. Refer to ⇒ ["2.1.3 Backrest Cover and Upholstery", page 432](#) .
- Disconnect cover from upholstery. Refer to ⇒ ["2.1.4 Backrest Cover, Separating from Upholstery", page 434](#) .
- Cut wire -3- from old backrest heating element -2-.

 **Note**

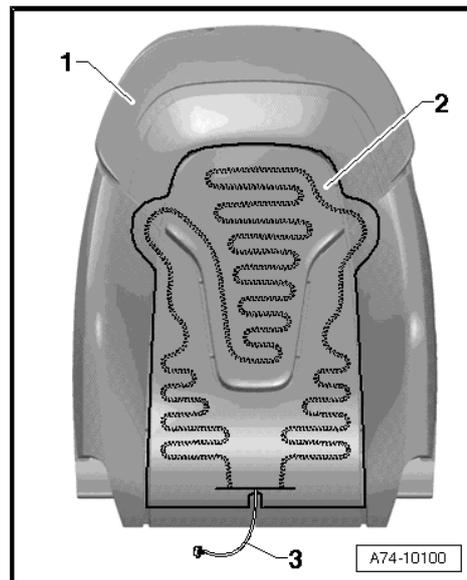
The old backrest heating element remains on the upholstery -1- and the new backrest heating element is bonded over it.

Installation

- Center the new backrest heating element -2- on the cushion -1-.
- Remove protective film and bond new backrest heating element -2- to upholstery -1- and the old backrest heating element.

 **Caution**

Make sure the new backrest heating element is affixed to the old heating element.

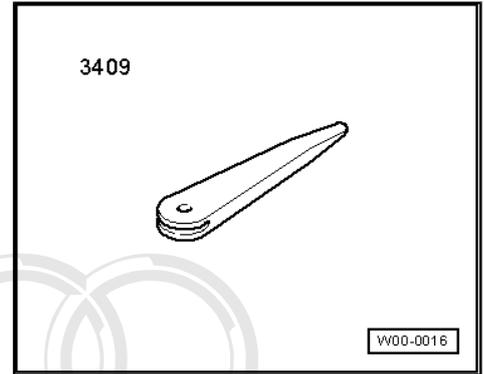


Further installation is performed in the reverse order of removal.

2.1.7 Headrest Cover and Upholstery with Locking Mechanism

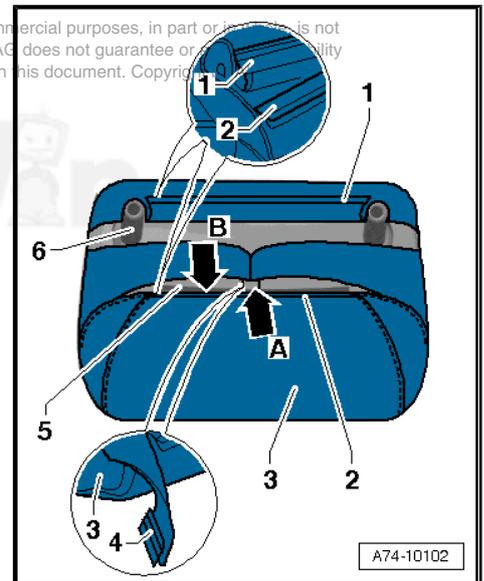
Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



Removing

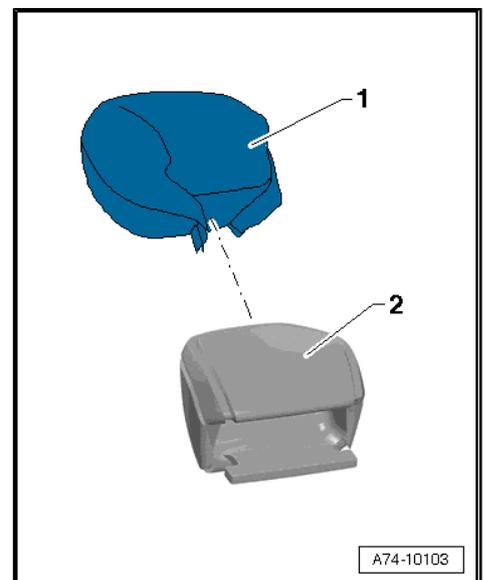
- Remove headrests.
 - ◆ Manual front seat, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.2.16 Headrests with Locking Mechanism", page 368](#)
 - ◆ Power front seat, refer to
 ⇒ ["2.2.16 Headrests with Locking Mechanism", page 368](#)
 - Disengage clamping strips -1- and -2- from guide channel -arrow B- by prying out with Trim Removal Wedge -3409-.
 - Disengage sill panel strips -4- from guide channel -arrow A- by prying with Trim Removal Wedge -3409- .
 - Remove cover -3- with upholstery -5- from headrest support.
- 6 - Headrest support guide tube



- Remove the padding -2- from the cover -1-.

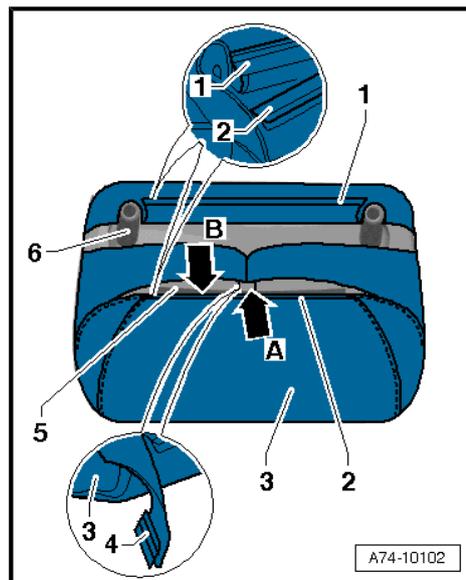
Installation

- Insert cushion -2- into cover -1- and make sure it fits properly.
- Insert headrest mount in upholstery with cover.



- Press retaining strips -4- firmly into guide channel -arrow A- and check by pulling.
- Press retaining strips -1- and -2- firmly into guide channel -arrow B- and check by pulling.
- Make sure the cover lies on the upholstery without any wrinkles and without seam markings.

Further installation is performed in the reverse order of removal.



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



2.2 Bucket Seat Covers and Upholstery

⇒ [“2.2.1 Seat Pan Cover and Upholstery”, page 439](#)

⇒ [“2.2.2 Backrest Cover and Upholstery”, page 440](#)

⇒ [“2.2.3 Seat Heating Element”, page 442](#)

⇒ [“2.2.4 Backrest Heating Element”, page 443](#)

2.2.1 Seat Pan Cover and Upholstery

1 - Seat pan

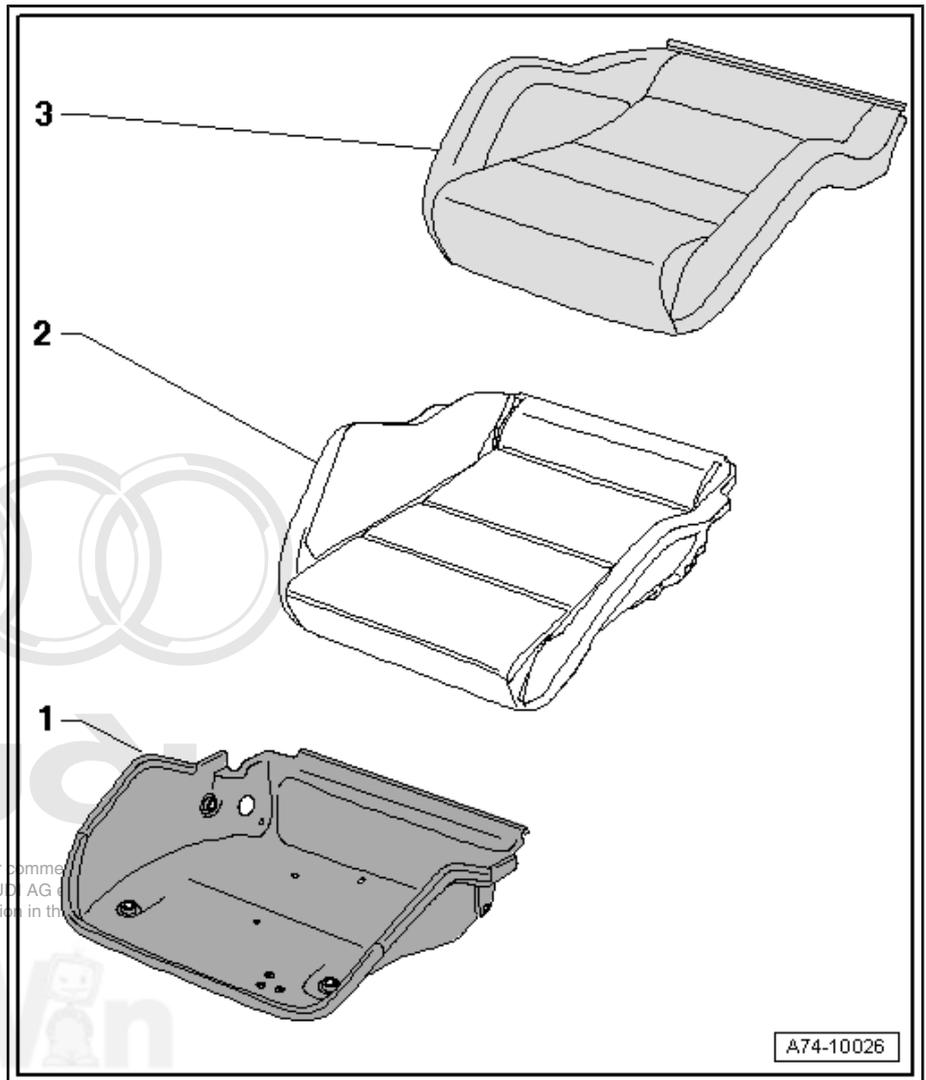
- ❑ Replace seat pan if threads are damaged or stripped.
- ❑ Removing and Installing, refer to
 ⇒ [“2.3.7 Front Backrest and Seat Pan”, page 397](#)

2 - Seat pan cushion

3 - Seat pan cover

Removing

- Remove the seat. Refer to
 ⇒ [“2.3.1 Seat”, page 392](#).
- Remove seat pan. Refer to
 ⇒ [“2.3.7 Front Backrest and Seat Pan”, page 397](#).
- Remove Velcro fastener on left and right from rear seat cover.
- Pry grip channel at edge of seat cover **3** all around out of guide at seat pan **-1-**.
- Carefully loosen seams of seat pan cover from Velcro fastener at seat pan cushion **-2-**.
- Remove seat cover.



Installation

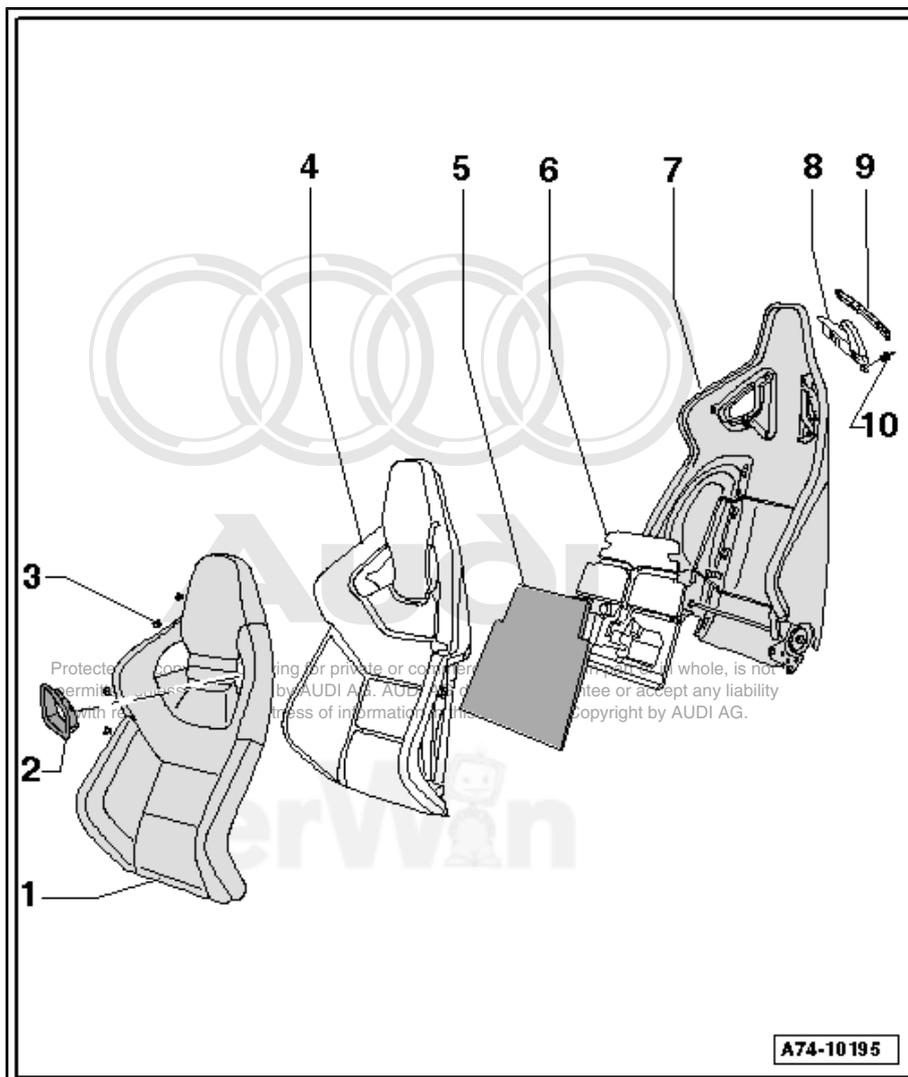
Install in reverse order of removal.

2.2.2 Backrest Cover and Upholstery

1 - Backrest cover

Removing

- Remove the seat. Refer to ["2.3.1 Seat"](#), page 392 .
- Remove the backrest. Refer to ["2.3.7 Front Backrest and Seat Pan"](#), page 397 .
- Remove both outer parts of the belt guide -2- [=> page 403](#) .
- Pry out cover on belt guide, drill out pop rivet with a 5.0 mm drill bit and remove belt guide [=> page 441](#) .
- Pry grip channel at edge of backrest cover -1- all around out of guide at backrest -7- [=> page 442](#) .
- in bending sections, grip channel is also secured using clips -3-, carefully remove clips.
- Carefully loosen seams of backrest cover from Velcro fastener at backrest cushion -4-.
- Disengage lower retaining strip at foam block -6-.
- Remove backrest cover.



Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.

2 - Seat belt guide outer part

- Removing and Installing, refer to [=> page 403](#)

3 - Clips (quantity: 8)

- For grip channel of backrest cover
- Install in bend in backrest

4 - Backrest padding

Removing

- Remove backrest cover -1-.
- Remove backrest cushion from backrest.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.

5 - Felt mat

- Glued

6 - Foam block

Removing

- Remove backrest cover -1-.
- Remove backrest cushion -4-.
- Carefully loosen foam block bonding from backrest.
- Tip foam block forward at upper edge.
- Remove foam block.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal.

- If necessary, replace double adhesive tape. Refer to Parts Catalog.

7 - Backrest

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [“2.3.7 Front Backrest and Seat Pan”, page 397](#)

8 - Belt guide

- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [page 441](#)

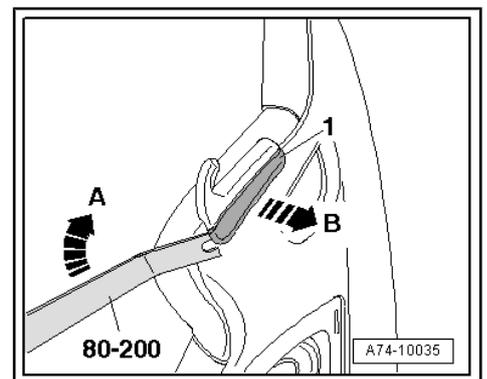
9 - Trim

- For belt guide
- Removing and Installing, refer to ⇒ [Fig. ““Seat Belt Guide, Removing and Installing””, page 441](#)

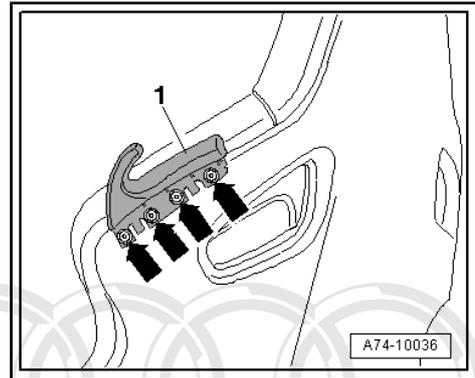
10 - Pop rivet

Seat Belt Guide, Removing and Installing

- Pry out trim -1- with Pry Lever -80 - 200- at outer corner -arrow A-.
- Remove trim downward -arrow B-.

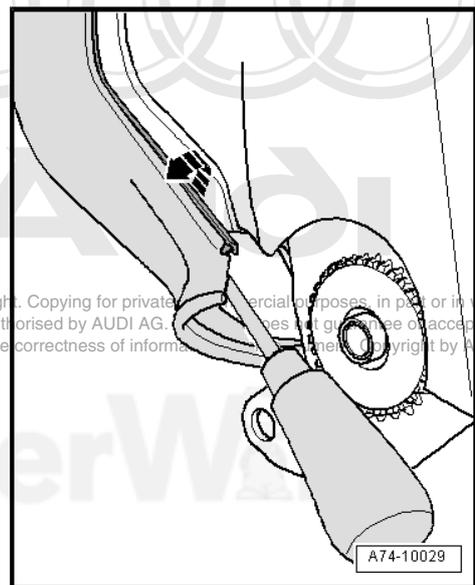


- Drill out pop rivets -arrows- with a 5.0 mm drill bit.
- Remove belt guide -1- from backrest frame.



Pry grip channel for backrest cover out of guide

- Starting at bottom, pry grip channel for backrest cover out of guide at backrest, using for example, an awl -arrow-; lightly press together backrest upholstery in order to release backrest cover.

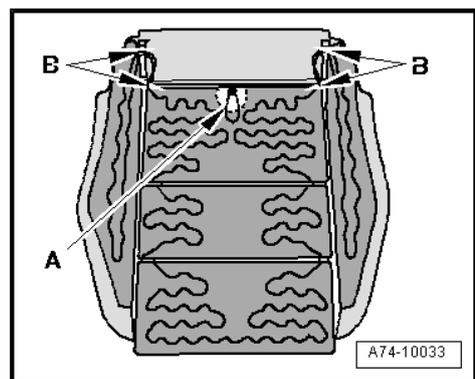


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. Audi does not give any guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. All rights reserved. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.2.3 Seat Heating Element

Removing

- Remove the seat. Refer to ⇒ [“2.3.1 Seat”, page 392](#) .
- Remove seat pan. Refer to ⇒ [“2.3.7 Front Backrest and Seat Pan”, page 397](#) .
- Remove seat pan cover and upholstery. Refer to ⇒ [“2.2.1 Seat Pan Cover and Upholstery”, page 439](#) .
- Cut out area -A- with electrical connection wire from old heating element.
- Pull out old electrical connection wire.
- Disconnect electrical wire connections to heating elements at seat bolsters at positions -B-.



Installation

- Align new heating element on seat surface, remove protective foil and glue new heating element to same positions as old heating elements.
- Route connecting wires to seat bolsters through openings in seat cushion without crossing.
- Guide electrical connection wire downward through designated opening in seat cushion.

2.2.4 Backrest Heating Element

Removing

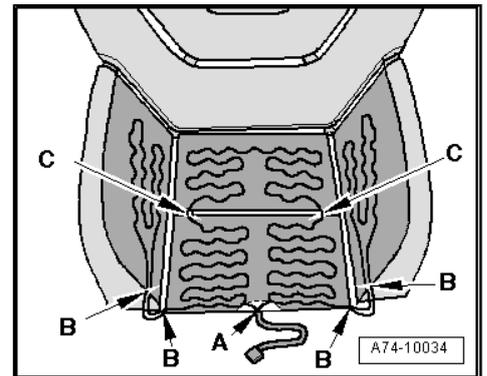
- Remove the seat. Refer to ⇒ [“2.3.1 Seat”, page 392](#) .
- Remove the backrest. Refer to ⇒ [“2.3.7 Front Backrest and Seat Pan”, page 397](#) .

Note

- ◆ *Electrical wiring harness must not be loosened at seat pan.*
- ◆ *Set aside backrest toward rear on soft surface.*
- Remove backrest cover and upholstery. Refer to ⇒ [“2.2.2 Backrest Cover and Upholstery”, page 440](#) .
- Cut out area -A- with electrical connection wire from old heating element.
- Remove old electrical connection wire.
- Disconnect electrical wire connections to heating elements at backrest bolsters at positions -B-.
- Disconnect electrical connection wires to upper backrest heating element at positions -C-.

Installation

- Align new heating element on backrest surface, remove protective foil and glue new heating element to same positions as old heating elements.
- Route connecting wires to backrest bolsters through openings in seat cushion without crossing.



2.3 Rear Seat Covers and Upholstery, Coupe Only

⇒ [“2.3.1 Bench Seat Cover and Upholstery”, page 443](#)

⇒ [“2.3.2 Bench Seat Cover, Separating from Upholstery”, page 444](#)

⇒ [“2.3.3 Backrest Cover and Upholstery”, page 444](#)

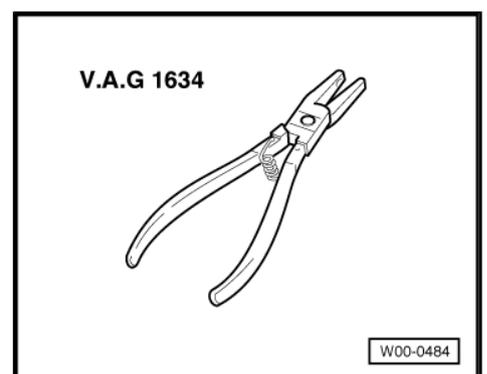
⇒ [“2.3.4 Backrest Cover, Separating from Upholstery”, page 446](#)

2.3.1 Bench Seat Cover and Upholstery

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Removing

- Remove the seat bench. Refer to [⇒ "2.4.1 Bench Seat", page 406](#) .
- Cut the upholstery clips -2-.
- Remove cover with upholstery -1- from seat frame -2-.

Installation

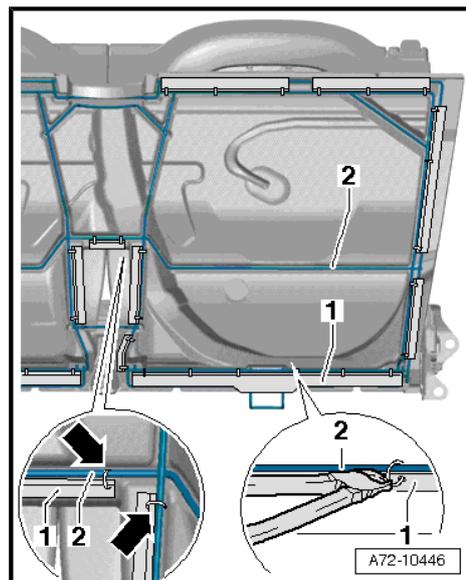
Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:



WARNING

Ends of upholstery clips must face in direction of upholstery after installing and must be bent correctly. Otherwise, there is a risk of injury.

- Use new upholstery clips.
- Close wire clips with upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634- .
- Place the upholstery clips in their original locations.



2.3.2 Bench Seat Cover, Separating from Upholstery

Removing

- Remove cover with upholstery. Refer to [⇒ "2.3.1 Bench Seat Cover and Upholstery", page 443](#) .
- Remove the cover -1- from the upholstery -2- as far as possible.

3 - retaining wire slid into cover

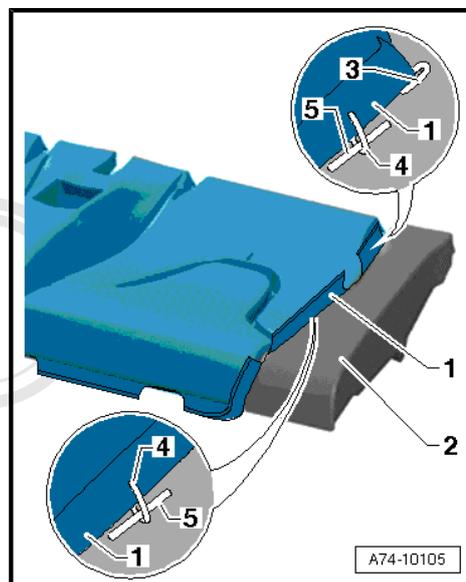
5 - wire in foam in upholstery

- Cut through clips -4- with pliers.
- Remove the cover -1- from cushion -2-.

Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Use new upholstery clips.
- Close wire clips with upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634- .
- Place the upholstery clips in their original locations.

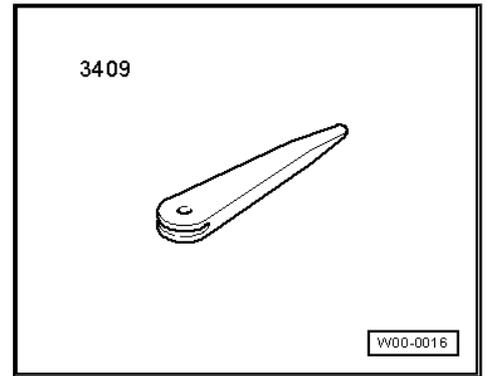


2.3.3 Backrest Cover and Upholstery

Special tools and workshop equipment required

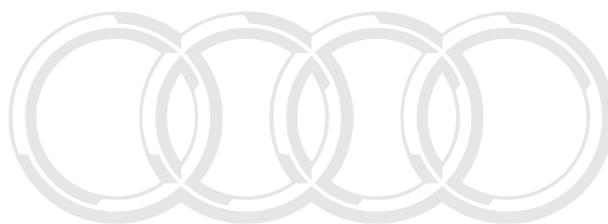
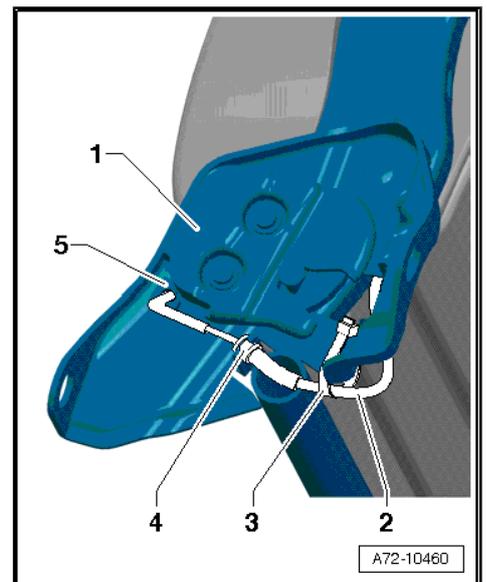
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



Removing

- Remove the seat bench. Refer to [⇒ "2.4.1 Bench Seat", page 406](#) .
 - Remove the backrest. Refer to [⇒ "2.4.3 Backrest", page 408](#) .
 - Remove release trim. Refer to [⇒ "2.4.6 Left or Right Trim", page 415](#) .
 - If present, remove Top Tether. Refer to [⇒ "3.3.2 Top Tether Child Seat Anchorage", page 93](#) .
 - Remove center bearing cover. Refer to [⇒ "2.4.4 Center Bearing Cover Cap", page 411](#) .
 - Open cable tie -3-.
 - Disengage release cable -2- from bracket -4- and lever -5-.
- 1 - Fitting
- Open zip fasteners on both sides of cover.

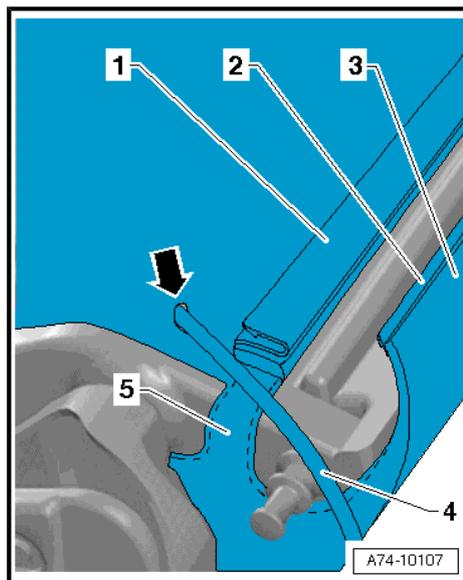


Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin

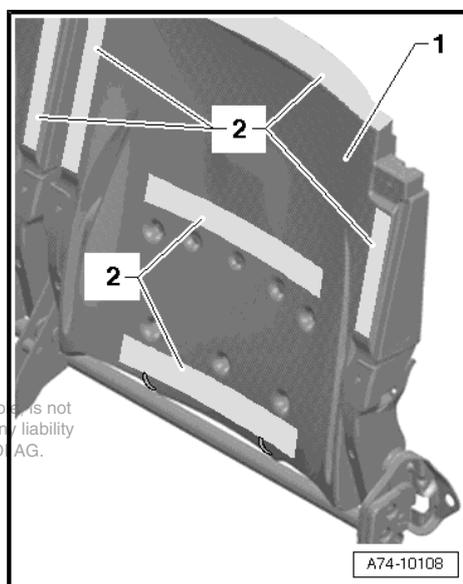
- Using Trim Removal Wedge -3409- , pry out clamping strips -1- and -2-.
- Disengage tab -5-.
- Remove release cable -4- from opening -arrow- in cover -3-.
- Remove upholstery with cover from adhesive strips on front side of backrest shell.



Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- When installing a new backrest shell -1-, protective film should be removed from adhesive strips -2- on front side of backrest shell before installing upholstery.

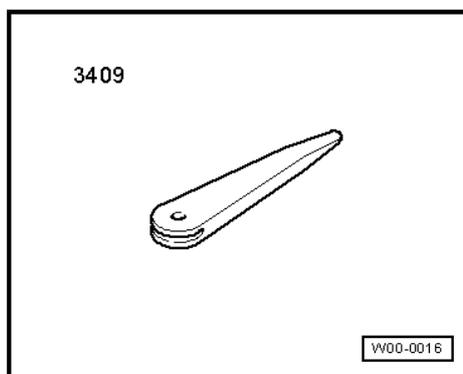


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.3.4 Backrest Cover, Separating from Upholstery

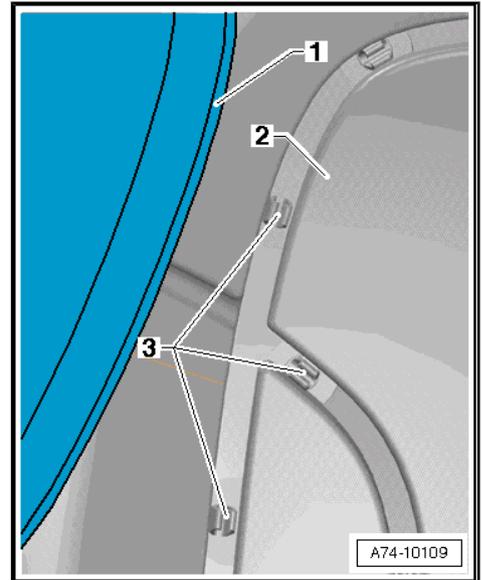
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



Removing

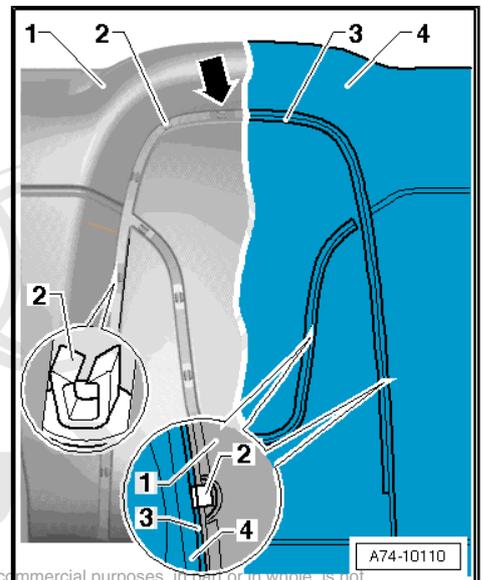
- Unclip cover retaining strip -1- from clips -3- in upholstery foam -2-.
- Use Trim Removal Wedge -3409- to unclip.
- Remove the cover -1- from cushion -2-.



Installation

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

- Align cover -4- to upholstery -1-.
- Begin clipping cover -4- to upholstery -1- in upper area -arrow-.
- To clip, press retaining strip -3- into clip -2-.
- Make sure the clip -2- and the retainer strip -3- are attached correctly.

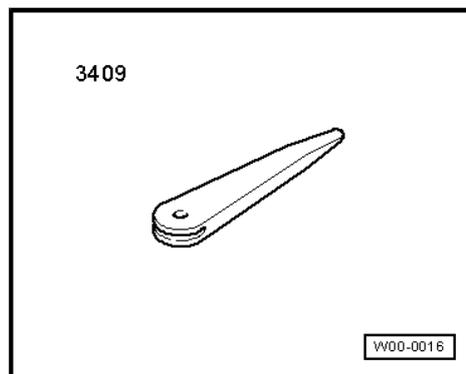


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

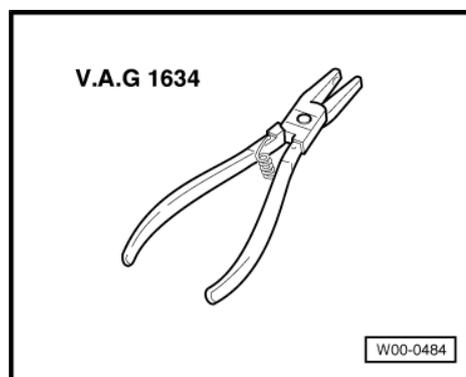
3 Special Tools

Special tools and workshop equipment required

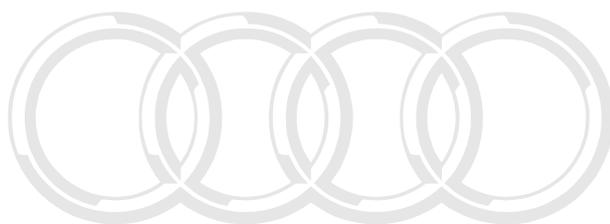
- ◆ Trim removal wedge -3409-



- ◆ Upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634-



Edition 08052011



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Cautions & Warnings

Please read these WARNINGS and CAUTIONS before proceeding with maintenance and repair work. You must answer that you have read and you understand these WARNINGS and CAUTIONS before you will be allowed to view this information.

- If you lack the skills, tools and equipment, or a suitable workshop for any procedure described in this manual, we suggest you leave such repairs to an authorized Audi retailer or other qualified shop. We especially urge you to consult an authorized Audi retailer before beginning repairs on any vehicle that may still be covered wholly or in part by any of the extensive warranties issued by Audi.
- Disconnect the battery negative terminal (ground strap) whenever you work on the fuel system or the electrical system. Do not smoke or work near heaters or other fire hazards. Keep an approved fire extinguisher handy.
- Audi is constantly improving its vehicles and sometimes these changes, both in parts and specifications, are made applicable to earlier models. Therefore, part numbers listed in this manual are for reference only. Always check with your authorized Audi retailer parts department for the latest information.
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.
- Any time the battery has been disconnected on an automatic transmission vehicle, it will be necessary to reestablish Transmission Control Module (TCM) basic settings using the VAG 1551 Scan Tool (ST).
- Never work under a lifted vehicle unless it is solidly supported on stands designed for the purpose. Do not support a vehicle on cinder blocks, hollow tiles or other props that may crumble under continuous load. Never work under a vehicle that is supported solely by a jack. Never work under the vehicle while the engine is running.
- For vehicles equipped with an anti-theft radio, be sure of the correct radio activation code before disconnecting the battery or removing the radio. If the wrong code is entered when the power is restored, the radio may lock up and become inoperable, even if the correct code is used in a later attempt.
- If you are going to work under a vehicle on the ground, make sure that the ground is level. Block the wheels to keep the vehicle from rolling. Disconnect the battery negative terminal (ground strap) to prevent others from starting the vehicle while you are under it.
- Do not attempt to work on your vehicle if you do not feel well. You increase the danger of injury to yourself and others if you are tired, upset or have taken medicine or any other substances that may impair you or keep you from being fully alert.
- Never run the engine unless the work area is well ventilated. Carbon monoxide (CO) kills.
- Always observe good workshop practices. Wear goggles when you operate machine tools or work with acid. Wear goggles, gloves and other protective clothing whenever the job requires working with harmful substances.
- Tie long hair behind your head. Do not wear a necktie, a scarf, loose clothing, or a necklace when you work near machine tools or running engines. If your hair, clothing, or jewelry were to get caught in the machinery, severe injury could result.

Cautions & Warnings

- Do not re-use any fasteners that are worn or deformed in normal use. Some fasteners are designed to be used only once and are unreliable and may fail if used a second time. This includes, but is not limited to, nuts, bolts, washers, circlips and cotter pins. Always follow the recommendations in this manual - replace these fasteners with new parts where indicated, and any other time it is deemed necessary by inspection.
- Illuminate the work area adequately but safely. Use a portable safety light for working inside or under the vehicle. Make sure the bulb is enclosed by a wire cage. The hot filament of an accidentally broken bulb can ignite spilled fuel or oil.
- Friction materials such as brake pads and clutch discs may contain asbestos fibers. Do not create dust by grinding, sanding, or by cleaning with compressed air. Avoid breathing asbestos fibers and asbestos dust. Breathing asbestos can cause serious diseases such as asbestosis or cancer, and may result in death.
- Finger rings should be removed so that they cannot cause electrical shorts, get caught in running machinery, or be crushed by heavy parts.
- Before starting a job, make certain that you have all the necessary tools and parts on hand. Read all the instructions thoroughly, do not attempt shortcuts. Use tools that are appropriate to the work and use only replacement parts meeting Audi specifications. Makeshift tools, parts and procedures will not make good repairs.
- Catch draining fuel, oil or brake fluid in suitable containers. Do not use empty food or beverage containers that might mislead someone into drinking from them. Store flammable fluids away from fire hazards. Wipe up spills at once, but do not store the oily rags, which can ignite and burn spontaneously.
- Use pneumatic and electric tools only to loosen threaded parts and fasteners. Never use these tools to tighten fasteners, especially on light alloy parts. Always use a torque wrench to tighten fasteners to the tightening torque listed.
- Keep sparks, lighted matches, and open flame away from the top of the battery. If escaping hydrogen gas is ignited, it will ignite gas trapped in the cells and cause the battery to explode.
- Be mindful of the environment and ecology. Before you drain the crankcase, find out the proper way to dispose of the oil. Do not pour oil onto the ground, down a drain, or into a stream, pond, or lake. Consult local ordinances that govern the disposal of wastes.
- The air-conditioning (A/C) system is filled with a chemical refrigerant that is hazardous. The A/C system should be serviced only by trained automotive service technicians using approved refrigerant recovery/recycling equipment, trained in related safety precautions, and familiar with regulations governing the discharging and disposal of automotive chemical refrigerants.
- Before doing any electrical welding on vehicles equipped with anti-lock brakes (ABS), disconnect the battery negative terminal (ground strap) and the ABS control module connector.
- Do not expose any part of the A/C system to high temperatures such as open flame. Excessive heat will increase system pressure and may cause the system to burst.

Cautions & Warnings

- When boost-charging the battery, first remove the fuses for the Engine Control Module (ECM), the Transmission Control Module (TCM), the ABS control module, and the trip computer. In cases where one or more of these components is not separately fused, disconnect the control module connector(s).
- Some of the vehicles covered by this manual are equipped with a supplemental restraint system (SRS), that automatically deploys an airbag in the event of a frontal impact. The airbag is operated by an explosive device. Handled improperly or without adequate safeguards, it can be accidentally activated and cause serious personal injury. To guard against personal injury or airbag system failure, only trained Audi Service technicians should test, disassemble or service the airbag system.
- Do not quick-charge the battery (for boost starting) for longer than one minute, and do not exceed 16.5 volts at the battery with the boosting cables attached. Wait at least one minute before boosting the battery a second time.
- Never use a test light to conduct electrical tests of the airbag system. The system must only be tested by trained Audi Service technicians using the VAG 1551 Scan Tool (ST) or an approved equivalent. The airbag unit must never be electrically tested while it is not installed in the vehicle.
- Some aerosol tire inflators are highly flammable. Be extremely cautious when repairing a tire that may have been inflated using an aerosol tire inflator. Keep sparks, open flame or other sources of ignition away from the tire repair area. Inflate and deflate the tire at least four times before breaking the bead from the rim. Completely remove the tire from the rim before attempting any repair.
- When driving or riding in an airbag-equipped vehicle, never hold test equipment in your hands or lap while the vehicle is in motion. Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident.

I have read and I understand these Cautions and Warnings.



Audi

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

erWin